

# WSM

---

## WORKSHOP MANUAL **UTILITY VEHICLE**

# RTV-X1140

---

**Kubota**

# TO THE READER

This Workshop Manual tells the servicing personnel about the mechanism, servicing and maintenance of the RTV-X1140. It contains 4 parts: **"Information"**, **"General"**, **"Mechanism"** and **"Servicing"**.

## ■ Information

This section primarily contains information below.

- Safety First
- Safety Decal
- Specifications
- Dimensions

## ■ General

This section primarily contains information below.

- Engine Identification
- Model Identification
- General Precautions
- Maintenance Check List
- Check and Maintenance
- Special Tools

## ■ Mechanism

This section contains information on the structure and the function of the unit. Before you continue with the subsequent sections, make sure that you read this section.

Refer to the latest version of Workshop Manual (Code No. 9Y021-01870) for the diesel engine that this workshop manual does not include.

## ■ Servicing

This section primarily contains information below.

- Troubleshooting
- Servicing Specifications
- Tightening Torques
- Checking, Disassembling and Servicing

All illustrations, photographs and specifications contained in this manual are of the newest information available at the time of publication.

KUBOTA reserves the right to change all information at any time without notice.

**November, 2015**

**© KUBOTA Corporation 2015**



# **I INFORMATION**

# INFORMATION

## CONTENTS

1. SAFETY FIRST .....	I-1
2. SAFETY DECALS .....	I-4
3. SPECIFICATIONS .....	I-9
4. TRAVELLING SPEEDS .....	I-10
5. DIMENSIONS .....	I-11

# 1. SAFETY FIRST

## SAFETY FIRST

- This symbol, the industry's "Safety Alert Symbol", is used throughout this manual and on labels on the machine itself to warn of the possibility of personal injury. Read these instructions carefully.
- It is essential that you read the instructions and safety regulations before you try to repair or use this unit.

### DANGER

- Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

### WARNING

- Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

### CAUTION

- Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

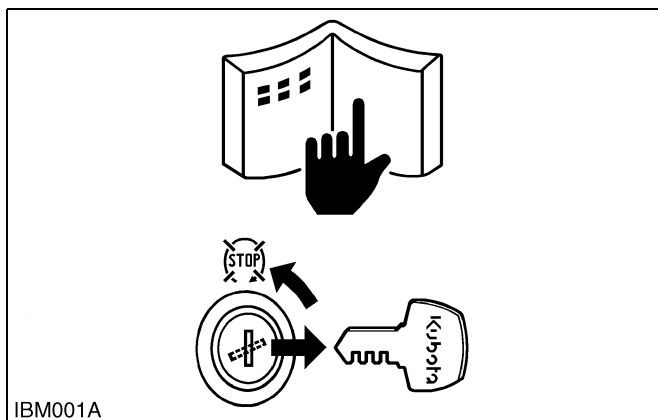
### ■ IMPORTANT

- Indicates that equipment or property damage could result if instructions are not followed.

### ■ NOTE

- Gives helpful information.

WSM000001INI0001US1

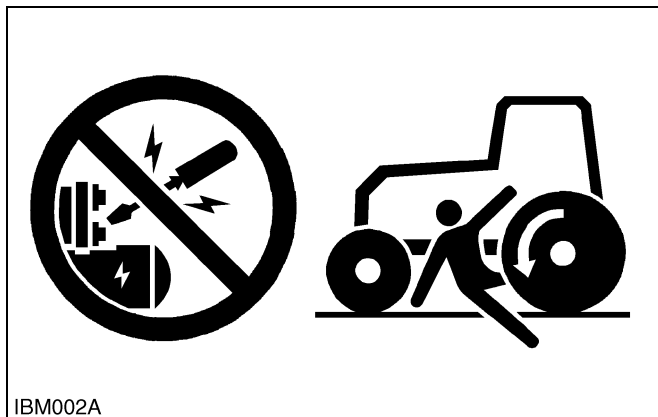


IBM001A

## **BEFORE YOU START SERVICE**

- Read all instructions and safety instructions in this manual and on your machine safety decals.
- Clean the work area and machine.
- Park the machine on a stable and level ground, and set the parking brake.
- Lower the implement to the ground.
- Stop the engine, then remove the key.
- Disconnect the battery negative cable.
- Hang a "DO NOT OPERATE" tag in the operator station.

WSM000001INI0010US0

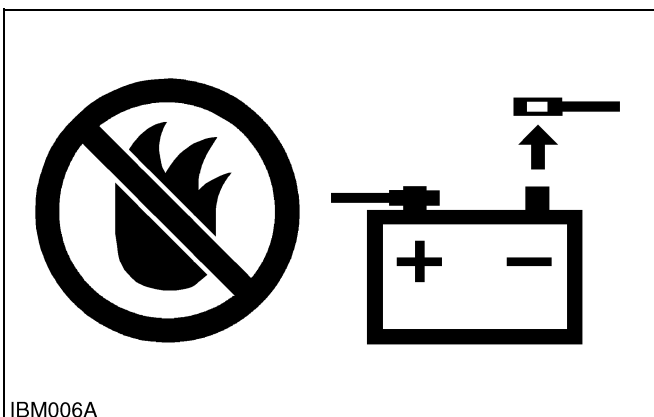
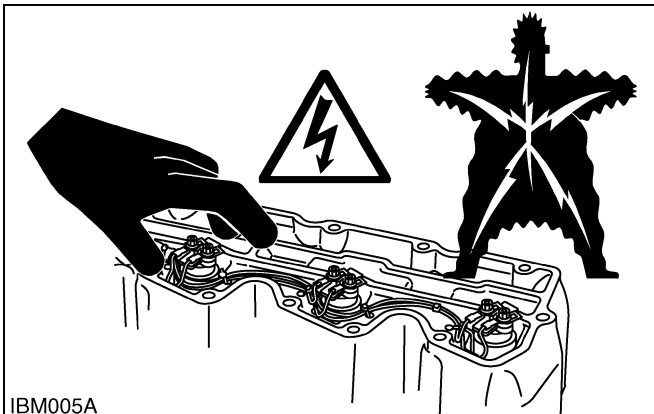
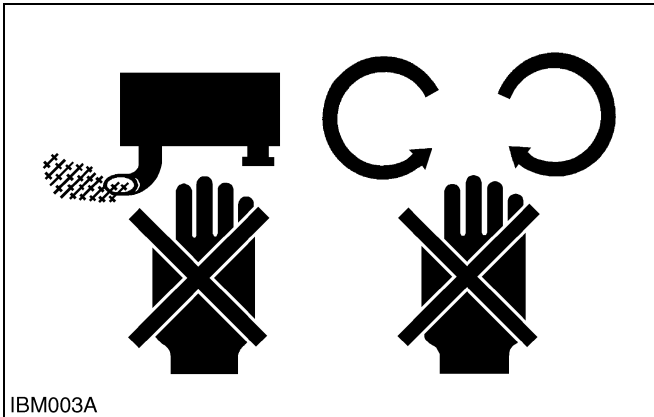


IBM002A

## **START SAFELY**

- Do not do the procedures below when you start the engine.
  - short across starter terminals
  - bypass the safety start switch
- Do not alter or remove any part of machine safety system.
- Before you start the engine, make sure that all shift levers are in neutral positions or in disengaged positions.
- Do not start the engine when you stay on the ground. Start the engine only from operator's seat.

WSM000001INI0015US0



### OPERATE SAFELY

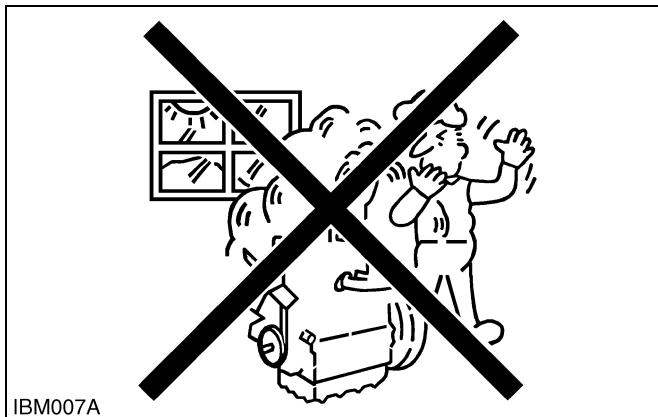
- Do not use the machine after you consume alcohol or medication or when you are tired.
- Put on applicable clothing and safety equipment.
- Use applicable tools only. Do not use alternative tools or parts.
- When 2 or more persons do servicing, make sure that you do it safely.
- Do not operate below the machine that only a jack holds. Always use a safety stand to hold the machine.
- Do not touch the hot parts or parts that turn when the engine operates.
- Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine operates, or immediately after it stops. If not, hot water can spout out from the radiator. Only remove the radiator cap when it is at a sufficiently low temperature to touch with bare hands. Slowly loosen the cap to release the pressure before you remove it fully.
- Released fluid (fuel or hydraulic oil) under pressure can cause damage to the skin and cause serious injury. Release the pressure before you disconnect hydraulic or fuel lines. Tighten all connections before you apply the pressure.
- Do not open a fuel system under high pressure. The fluid under high pressure that stays in fuel lines can cause serious injury. Do not disconnect or repair the fuel lines, sensors, or any other components between the fuel pump and injectors on engines with a common rail fuel system under high pressure.
- Put on an applicable ear protective device (earmuffs or earplugs) to prevent injury against loud noises.
- Be careful about electric shock. The engine generates a high voltage of more than DC100 V in the ECU and is applied to the injector.

WSM000001INI0012US0

### PREVENT A FIRE

- Fuel is very flammable and explosive under some conditions. Do not smoke or let flames or sparks in your work area.
- To prevent sparks from an accidental short circuit, always disconnect the battery negative cable first and connect it last.
- The battery gas can cause an explosion. Keep the sparks and open flame away from the top of battery, especially when you charge the battery.
- Make sure that you do not spill fuel on the engine.

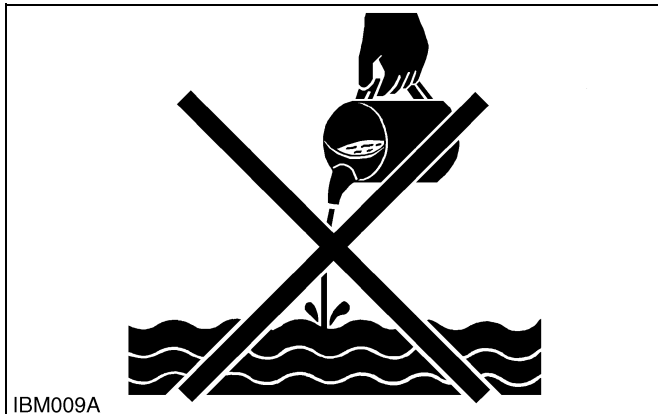
WSM000001INI0005US0



### **KEEP A GOOD AIRFLOW IN THE WORK AREA**

- If the engine is in operation, make sure that the area has good airflow. Do not operate the engine in a closed area. The exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide.

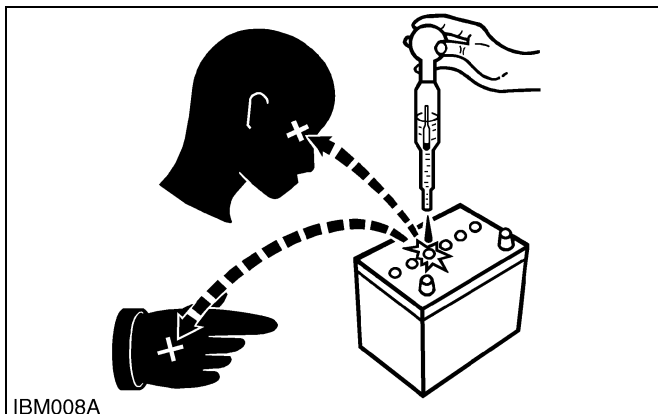
WSM000001INI0006US0



### **DISCARD FLUIDS CORRECTLY**

- Do not discard fluids on the ground, down the drain, into a stream, pond, or lake. Obey related environmental protection regulations when you discard oil, fuel, coolant, electrolyte and other dangerous waste.

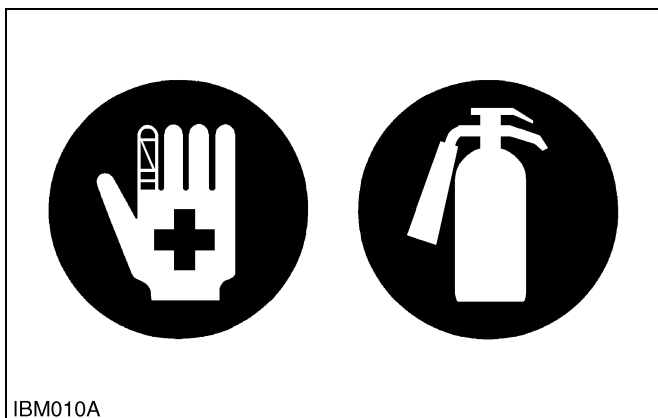
WSM000001INI0007US0



### **PREVENT ACID BURNS**

- Keep electrolyte away from your eyes, hands and clothing. Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous and it can burn your skin and clothing and cause blindness. If you spill electrolyte on yourself, clean yourself with water, and get medical aid immediately.

WSM000001INI0008US0



### **PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES**

- Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher ready at all times.
- Keep the emergency contact telephone numbers near your telephone at all times.

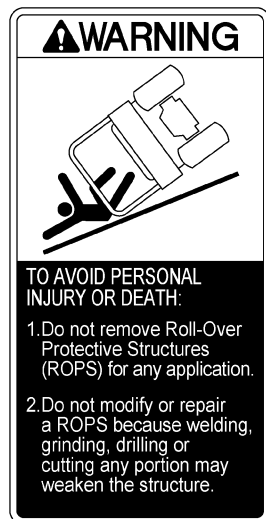
WSM000001INI0009US0

## 2. SAFETY DECALS

The following safety decals are installed on the machine. If a decal becomes damaged, illegible or is not on the machine, replace it. The decal part number is listed in the parts list.

WSM000001INI0013US0

(1) Part No. K7591-6541-1



1AYAACQAP006A

(2) Part No. K7591-6526-1



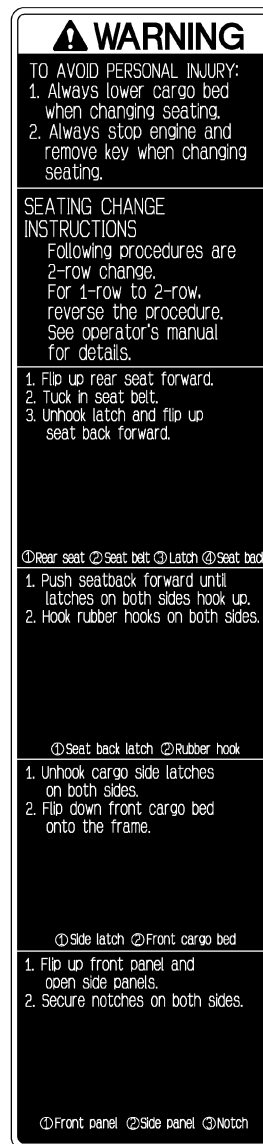
1AYAACQAP014A

(3) Part No. K7591-6528-2



1AYAACQAP019A

(6) Part No. K7621-6589-1



1AYAACZAP097A

(4) Part No. K7621-6538-1

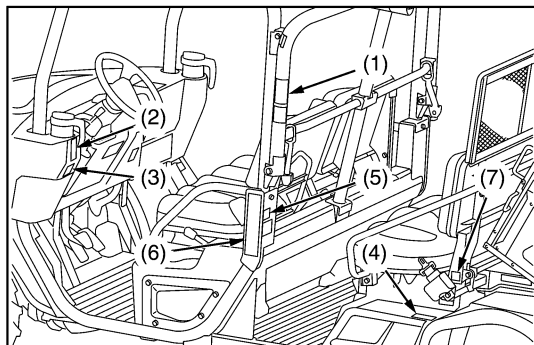


1AYAACZAP065A

(5) Part No. K7621-6527-1



1AYAACQAP013A



(7) Part No. K7621-6588-1



1AYAACZAP098A

9Y1210996ICI001US

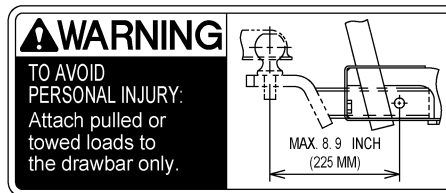
9Y1210996INI0001US0

(1) Part No. K7591-6524-1



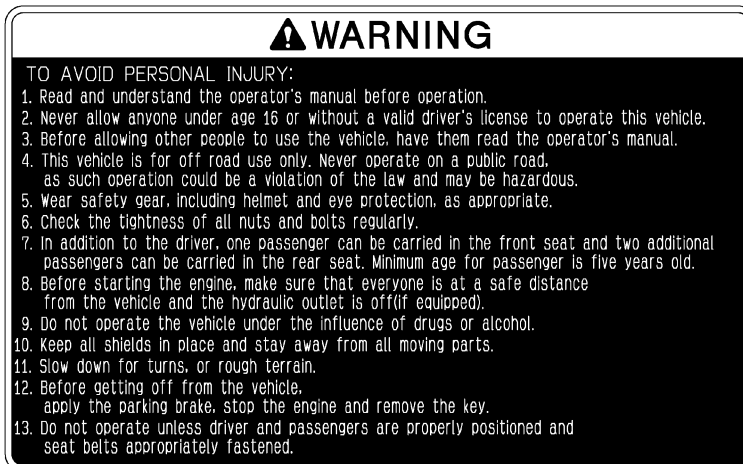
1AYAACQAP002A

(2) Part No. K7591-6544-2



1AYAACQAP007A

(3) Part No. K7621-6521-1



1AYAACZAP067A

(4) Part No. K7621-6527-1

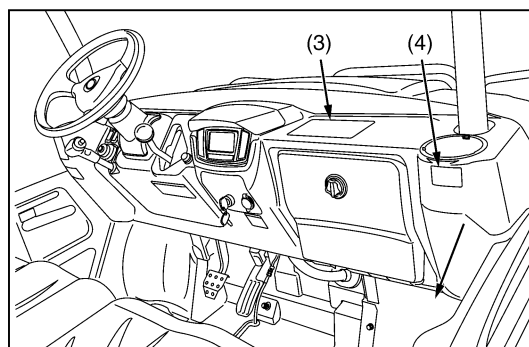
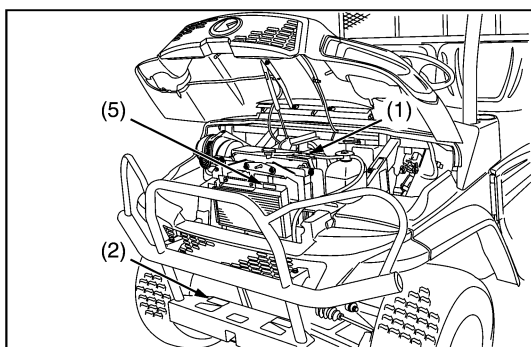


1AYAACQAP013A

(5) Part No. K7591-6548-1



1AYAACQAP011A



9Y1210996ICI002US

9Y1210996INI0002US0

(1) Part No. K7591-6542-1



1AYAACQAP005A

(2) Part No. K7621-6551-1



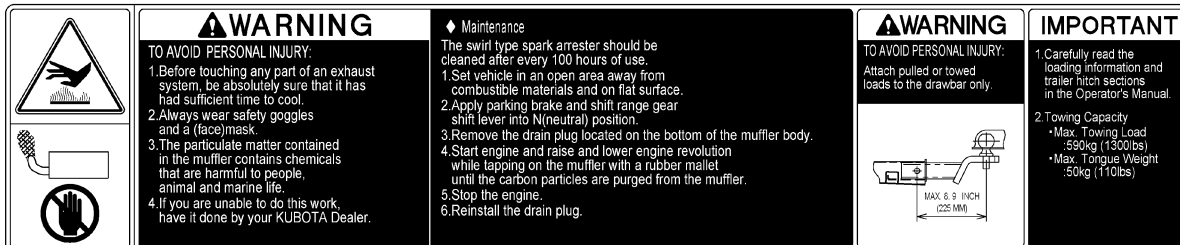
1AYAACZAP066A

(3) Part No. K7621-6532-1



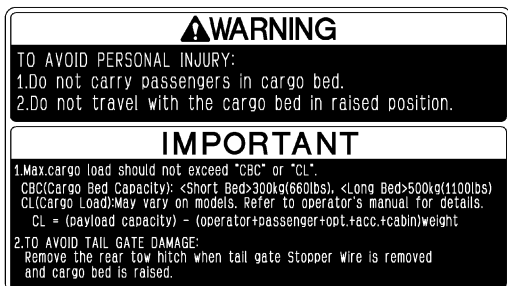
1AYAACZAP070A

(4) Part No. K7591-6546-2



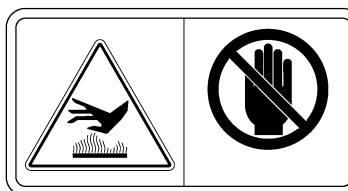
1AYAACQAP009A

(5) Part No. K7621-6523-1

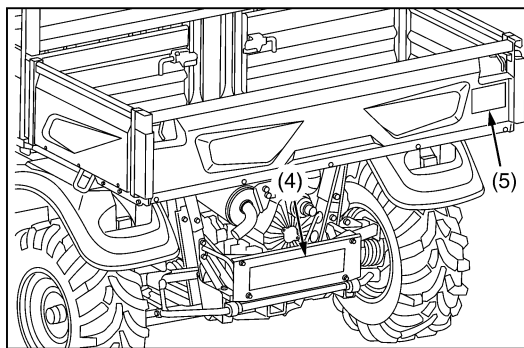
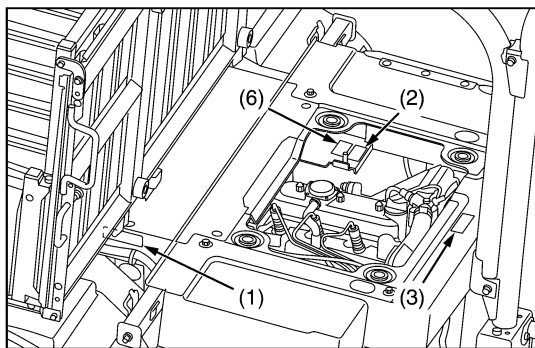


1AYAACZAP064A

(6) Part No. K7621-6552-1



1AYAACZAP099A



9Y1210996IC1003US

9Y1210996INI0003US0



(1) Part No. K7621-6534-2



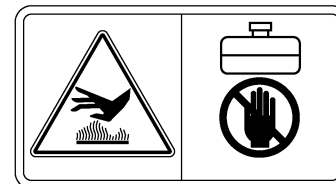
1AYAACZAP069A

(2) Part No. K7621-6527-1



1AYAACQAP013A

(3) Part No. K7591-6547-1



1AYAACQAP010A

(5) Part No. K7621-6522-1

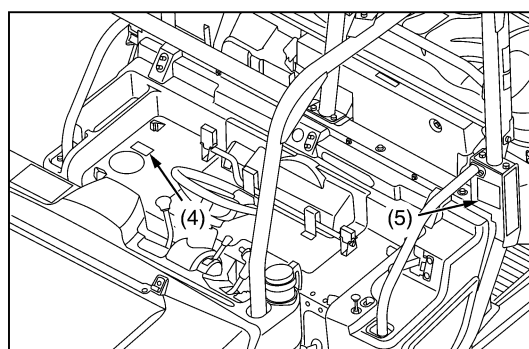
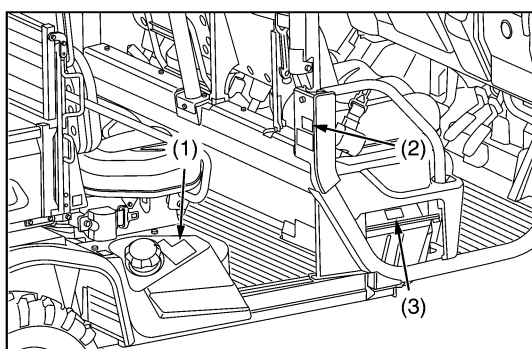


1AYAACZAP063A

(4) Part No. K7591-6533-1



1AYAACQAP010A



9Y1210996ICI004US

9Y1210996INI0004US0

(1) Part No. K7731-6114-1

						<h1>SMF 24R-670</h1> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>NOMINAL VOLTAGE</td> <td>12V</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COLD CRANKING AMPS(SAE)</td> <td>670</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COLD CRANKING AMPS(EN)</td> <td>800</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AMP HOURS(@20 hr Rate)</td> <td>115</td> </tr> </table>	NOMINAL VOLTAGE	12V	COLD CRANKING AMPS(SAE)	670	COLD CRANKING AMPS(EN)	800	AMP HOURS(@20 hr Rate)	115
NOMINAL VOLTAGE	12V													
COLD CRANKING AMPS(SAE)	670													
COLD CRANKING AMPS(EN)	800													
AMP HOURS(@20 hr Rate)	115													
<b>FLAMMABLES</b> <b>DANGER EXPLOSIVE GASES</b> CIGARETTES, FLAMES OR SPARKS COULD CAUSE BATTERY TO EXPLODE. ALWAYS SHIELD EYES AND FACE FROM BATTERY. DO NOT CHARGE OR USE BOOSTER CABLES OR ADJUST POST CONNECTIONS WITHOUT PROPER INSTRUCTION AND TRAINING.			<b>CAUTION OF SULFURIC ACID</b> <b>POISON CAUSES SEVERE BURNS</b> CONTAINS SULFURIC ACID. AVOID CONTACT WITH SKIN, EYES OR CLOTHING. IN EVENT OF ACCIDENT FLUSH WITH WATER AND CALL A PHYSICIAN IMMEDIATELY.											
KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING: Batteries, battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.														
<b>FITTING DATE</b> 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 YEAR 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 MONTH <b>INDICATOR</b> ● OK    ○ CHARGE    ● REPLACE <b>MADE IN KOREA</b>														

1AYAACQAP249A

(2) Part No. K7591-6531-1

**⚠ WARNING**

Operation of this equipment may create sparks that can start fires around dry vegetation. A spark arrester may be required. The operator should contact local fire agencies for laws or regulations relating to fire prevention requirements.

1AYAACQAP018A

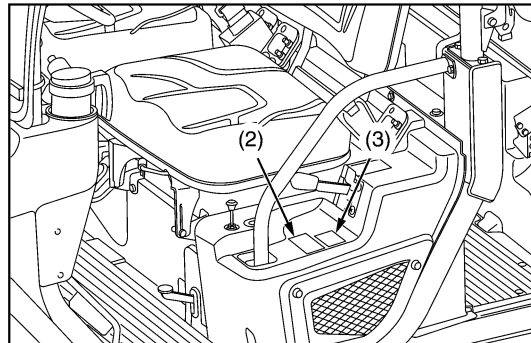
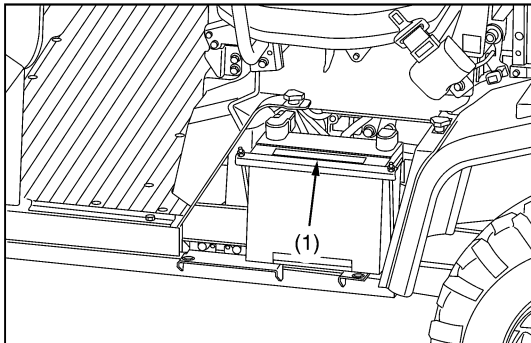
(3) Part No. K7591-6583-3

**⚠ WARNING**

TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY FROM CRUSHING:

1. Do not utilize the lever lock for machine maintenance or repair.
2. The lever lock is in order to prevent accidental actuation.

1AYAACQAP183A



9Y1210996ICI005US

9Y1210996INI0005US0

### CARE OF DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION LABELS

1. Keep danger, warning and caution labels clean and free from obstructing material.
2. Clean danger, warning and caution labels with soap and water, dry with a soft cloth.
3. Replace damaged or missing danger, warning and caution labels with new labels.
4. If a component with danger, warning and caution label(s) affixed is replaced with new part, make sure new label(s) is (are) attached in the same location(s) as the replace component.
5. Mount new danger, warning and caution labels by applying on a clean dry surface and pressing any bubbles to outside edge.

9Y1210996INI0006US0

### 3. SPECIFICATIONS

Model			RTV-X1140	
			Worksite / Orange	Worksite / Camo
Engine	Make		D1105	
	Type		3 cylinders, 4-cycle, diesel, OHV	
	Displacement		1.123 L (68.530 cu. in.)	
	Horsepower		18.5 kw (24.8 HP)	
	Rated revolution		3000 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
	Low idling revolution		1350 to 1450 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Fuel Capacity			30 L (7.9 U.S.gals, 6.6 Imp.gals)	
Transmission			Continuously variable hydro transmission (VHT)	
Wheels, Drive system			4, Rear 2WD or 4WD	
Differential lock			Standard; foot operated with mechanical holder	
Gear selection			Hi-Low range forward, neutral, reverse	
Brakes	Front / Rear		Wet disk brake	
	Parking brake		Rear wheel, hand lever	
Steering			Hydrostatic power	
Suspension	Front		Independent, Dual A-Arm type	
	Rear			
Dimensions	Length		3640 mm (143.3 in.)	
	Width		1605 mm (63.2 in.)	
	Height, overall		2035 mm (80.1 in.)	
	Front tread centers		1280 mm (50.4 in.) HDWS, ATV	
	Rear tread centers			
	Wheelbase		2495 mm (98.2 in.)	
	Ground clearance	front axle	275 mm (10.8 in.)	
		rear axle	235 mm (9.3 in.)	
	Turning diameter		10.4 m (34.1 ft)	
Max. Rolling weight (Towing capacity)			Rear: 590 kg (1300 lbs), Front: 295 kg (650 lbs)	
Payload capacity			739 kg (1629 lbs)	
Weight			1075 kg (2370 lbs)	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)			1814 kg (4000 lbs)	
Cargo bed	Width		1465 mm (57.7 in.)	
	Length (1 row / 2 row)		1300 mm (50.1 in.) / 660 mm (26.0 in.)	
	Depth		285 mm (11.2 in.)	
	Volume (1 row / 2 row)		0.54 m <sup>3</sup> (19.1 cu.ft.) / 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (9.9 cu.ft.)	
	Bed height (unloaded)		900 mm (39.4 in.)	
	Cargo bed capacity (1 row / 2 row)		500 kg (1102 lbs) / 300 kg (66 lbs)	
Sound level, operator ear			84 db (A)	
Tire	Front		25 × 10-12 ATV, 6PLY, 25 × 10-12 HDWS, 6PLY	
	Rear		25 × 10-12 ATV, 6PLY 25 × 10-12 HDWS, 6PLY	
Tilt steering wheel			Standard	
Seat belt			3 point type	
Front deluxe guard			—	
Front deluxe guard with light guard			Standard	
Body color			Orange	
Bed lift			Standard	
Speedometer			Standard	
Seat slide			Standard	

#### NOTE

- The company reserves the right to change the specifications without notice.
- The values in "Ground clearance" and "Weight" are those of the machine equipped with the tires in the table above.

9Y1210996INI0007US0

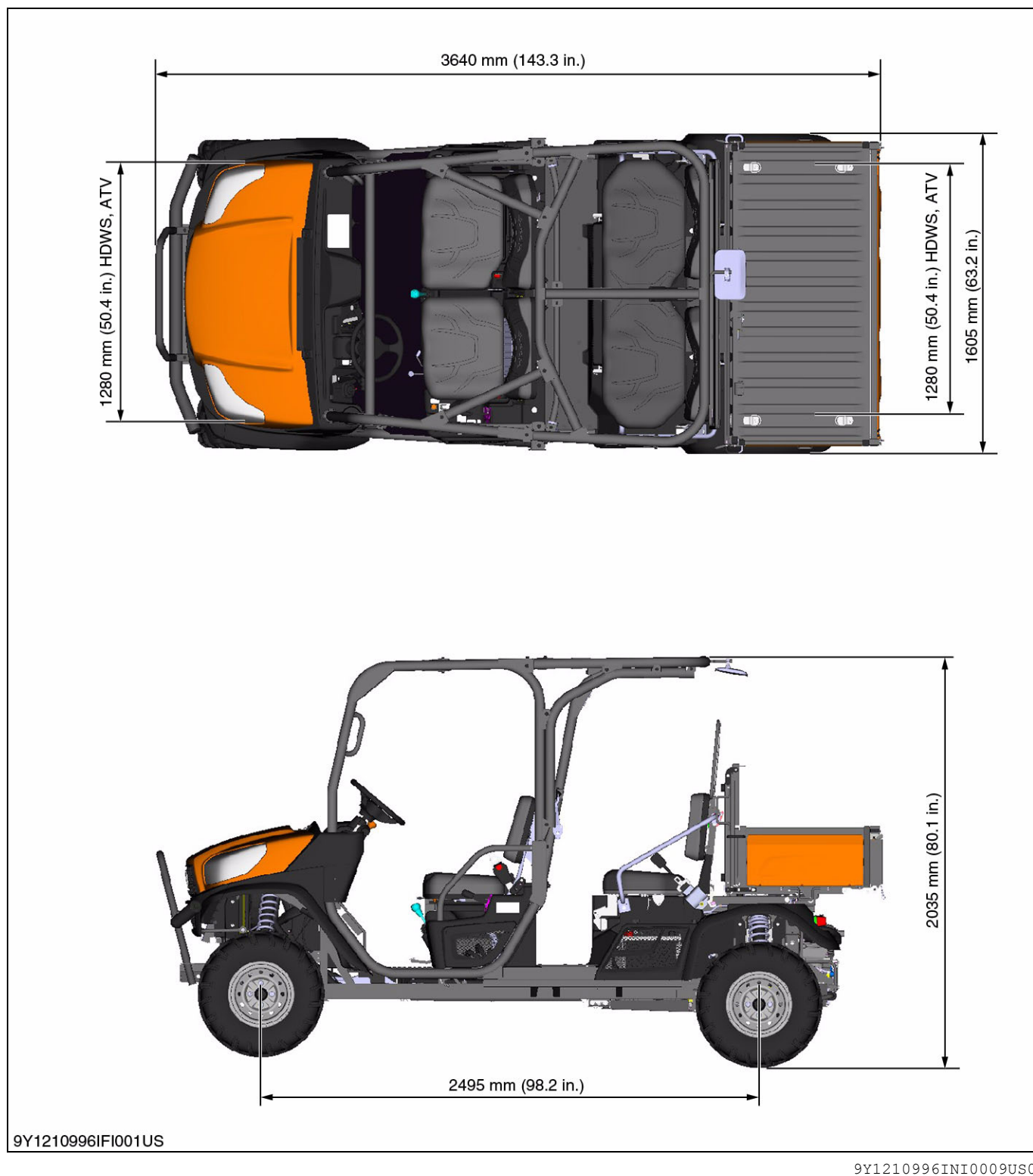
## 4. TRAVELLING SPEEDS

(At rated engine rpm)

Model	RTV-X1140
Range gear shift lever	km/h (mph)
Low	24 (15)
High	40 (25)
Reverse	27 (17)

9Y1210996INI0008US0

## 5. DIMENSIONS



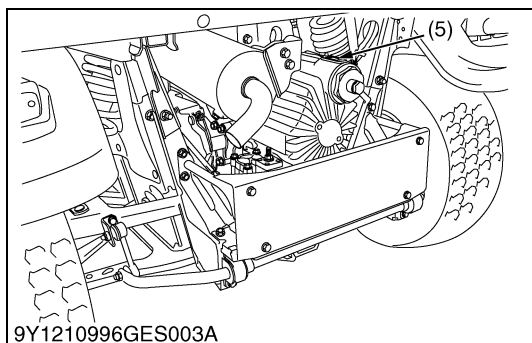
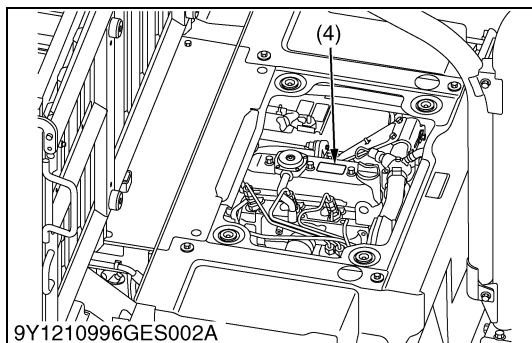
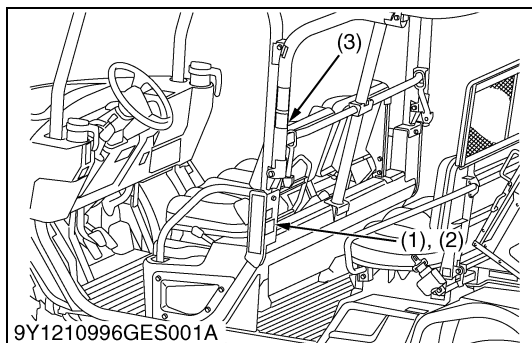
**G GENERAL**

# GENERAL

## CONTENTS

1. PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION .....	G-1
2. GENERAL PRECAUTIONS.....	G-2
3. HANDLING PRECAUTIONS FOR ELECTRICAL PARTS AND WIRING .....	G-3
[1] WIRING .....	G-3
[2] BATTERY .....	G-5
[3] FUSE .....	G-5
[4] CONNECTOR .....	G-5
[5] HANDLING OF CIRCUIT TESTER .....	G-6
[6] COLOR OF WIRING .....	G-7
4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT.....	G-8
5. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	G-12
[1] GENERAL USE SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS .....	G-12
[2] STUD BOLTS .....	G-12
[3] HYDRAULIC FITTINGS .....	G-13
(1) Hydraulic Hose Fittings.....	G-13
(2) Hydraulic Pipe Cap Nuts .....	G-13
(3) Adaptors, Elbows and Others.....	G-13
[4] METRIC SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS .....	G-14
[5] AMERICAN STANDARD SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS WITH UNC OR UNF THREADS .....	G-14
[6] PLUGS .....	G-14
6. MAINTENANCE CHECK LIST .....	G-15
7. CHECK AND MAINTENANCE .....	G-18
[1] DAILY CHECK.....	G-18
[2] CHECK POINTS OF INITIAL 50 HOURS .....	G-25
[3] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 50 HOURS .....	G-29
[4] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 100 HOURS .....	G-32
[5] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 200 HOURS .....	G-39
[6] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 300 HOURS .....	G-44
[7] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 400 HOURS .....	G-44
[8] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 800 HOURS .....	G-45
[9] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 1500 HOURS .....	G-45
[10]CHECK POINT OF EVERY 3000 HOURS .....	G-46
[11]CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 1 YEAR.....	G-46
[12]CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 2 YEARS .....	G-49
[13]CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 4 YEARS .....	G-52
[14]OTHERS.....	G-53
8. SPECIAL TOOLS .....	G-56
[1] SPECIAL TOOLS FOR ENGINE .....	G-56
[2] SPECIAL TOOLS FOR MACHINE .....	G-63
9. TIRES .....	G-69
[1] TYPE OF TIRES.....	G-69
[2] TIRE PRESSURE.....	G-69
[3] VEHICLE LIMITATIONS.....	G-70
[4] CARGO BED .....	G-71
[5] SHOCK ABSORBERS .....	G-72

# 1. PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION



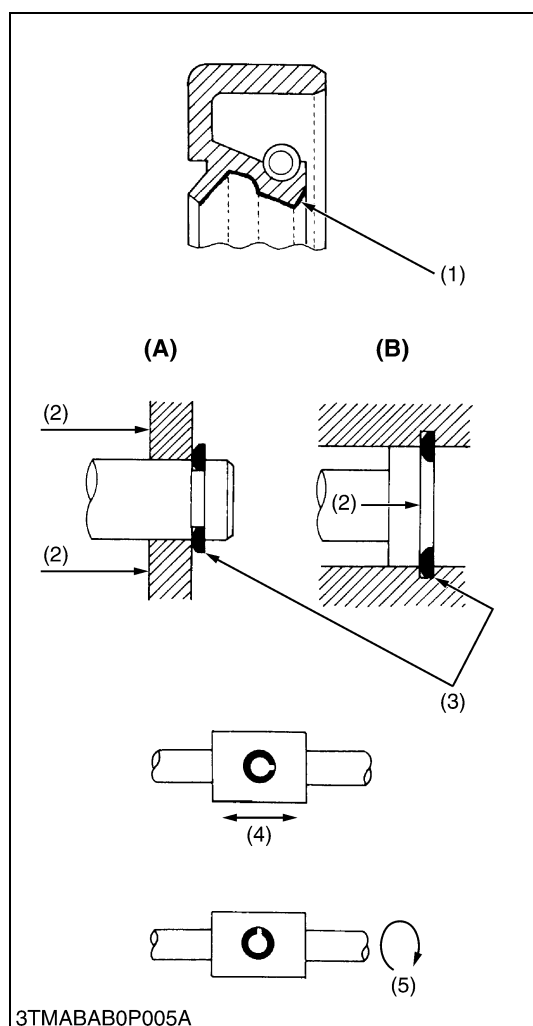
When contacting your local KUBOTA distributor, always specify engine serial number, product serial number and hour meter reading.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (1) Vehicle Identification Plate  | (4) Engine Serial Number                |
| (2) Product Identification Number | (5) Transmission Assembly Serial Number |
| (3) ROPS Serial Number            |   |

9Y1210996GEG0001US0



## 2. GENERAL PRECAUTIONS



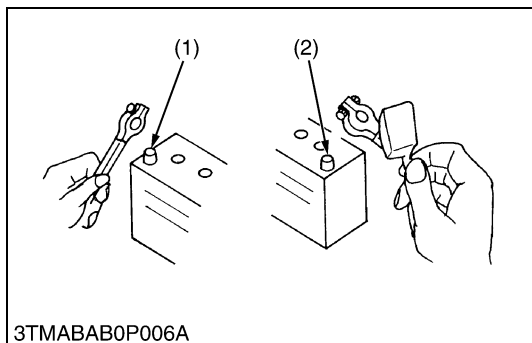
- When you disassemble, carefully put the parts in a clean area to make it easy to find the parts. You must install the screws, bolts and nuts in their initial position to prevent the reassembly errors.
- When it is necessary to use special tools, use KUBOTA special tools. Refer to the drawings when you make special tools that you do not use frequently.
- Before you disassemble or repair machine, make sure that you always disconnect the ground cable from the battery first.
- Remove oil and dirt from parts before you measure.
- Use only KUBOTA genuine parts for replacement to keep the machine performance and to make sure of safety.
- You must replace the gaskets and O-rings when you assemble again. Apply grease (1) to new O-rings or oil seals before you assemble.
- When you assemble the external or internal snap rings, make sure that the sharp edge (3) faces against the direction from which force (2) is applied.
- When inserting spring pins, their splits must face the direction from which a force is applied. See the figure on the left side.
- To prevent damage to the hydraulic system, use only specified fluid or equivalent.
- Clean the parts before you measure them.
- Tighten the fittings to the specified torque. Too much torque can cause damage to the hydraulic units or the fittings. Not sufficient torque can cause oil leakage.
- When you use a new hose or pipe, tighten the nuts to the specified torque. Then loosen (approx. by 45 °) and let them be stable before you tighten to the specified torque (This is not applied to the parts with seal tape).
- When you remove the two ends of a pipe, remove the lower end first.
- Use two pliers in removal and installation. One to hold the stable side, and the other to turn the side you remove to prevent twists.
- Make sure that the sleeves of flared connectors and tapers of hoses are free of dust and scratches.
- After you tighten the fittings, clean the joint and apply the maximum operation pressure 2 to 3 times to check oil leakage.

- (1) Grease
- (2) Force
- (3) Sharp Edge
- (4) Axial Force
- (5) Rotating Movement

- (A) External Cir-clip
- (B) Internal Cir-clip

WSM000001GEG0106US0

### 3. HANDLING PRECAUTIONS FOR ELECTRICAL PARTS AND WIRING



To ensure safety and prevent damage to the machine and surrounding equipment, obey the following precautions in handling electrical parts and wiring.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

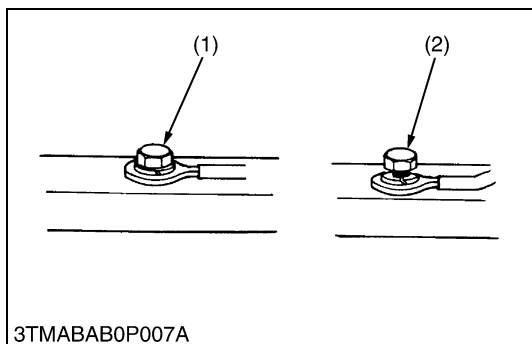
- Check electrical wiring for damage and loosened connection every year. To this end, educate the customer to do his or her own check and at the same time recommend the dealer to perform periodic check for a fee.
- Do not try to modify or remodel any electrical parts and wiring.
- When removing the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable first. When installing the battery cables, connect the positive cable first.

(1) Negative Terminal

(2) Positive Terminal

WSM000001GEG0062US0

#### [1] WIRING

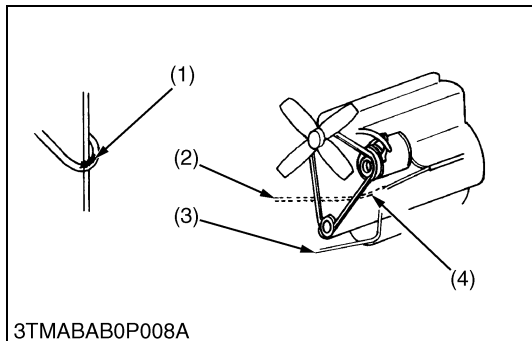


- Securely tighten wiring terminals.

(1) Correct  
(Securely Tighten)

(2) Incorrect  
(Loosening Leads to Faulty Contact)

WSM000001GEG0063US0

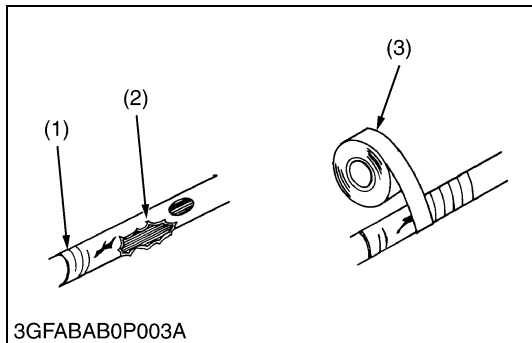


- Do not let wiring contact dangerous part.

(1) Dangerous Part (Sharp Edge)  
(2) Wiring (Incorrect)

(3) Wiring (Correct)  
(4) Dangerous Part

WSM000001GEG0064US0

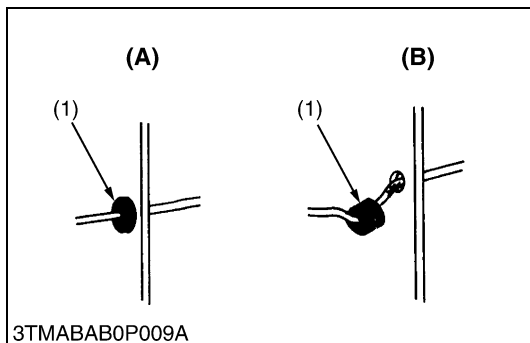


- Repair or change torn or aged wiring immediately.

(1) Aged  
(2) Torn

(3) Insulating Vinyl Tape

WSM000001GEG0065US0

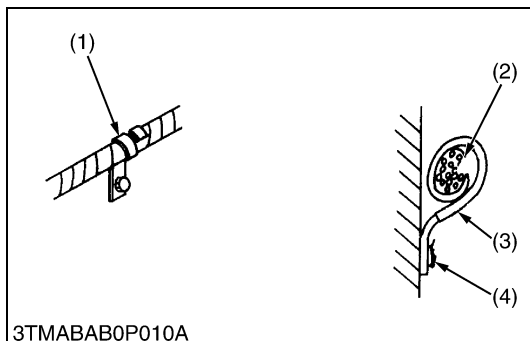


- Securely insert grommet.

(1) Grommet

(A) **Correct**  
(B) **Incorrect**

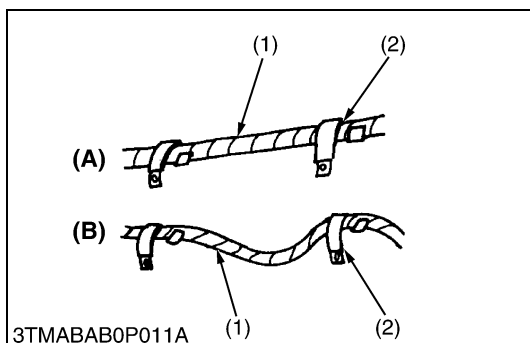
WSM000001GEG0066US0



- Securely clamp, being careful not to damage wiring.

(1) Clamp  
(2) Wire Harness  
(3) Clamp  
(4) Welding Dent

WSM000001GEG0067US0

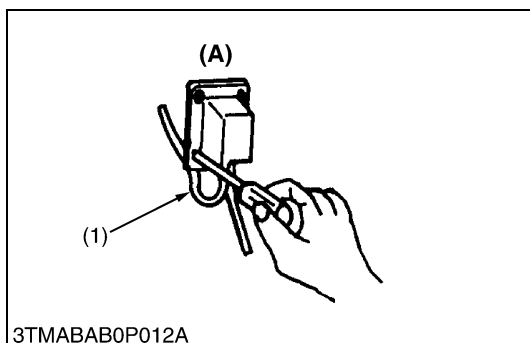


- Clamp wiring so that there is no twist, unnecessary sag, or excessive tension, except for movable part, where sag be required.

(1) Wiring  
(2) Clamp

(A) **Correct**  
(B) **Incorrect**

WSM000001GEG0068US0

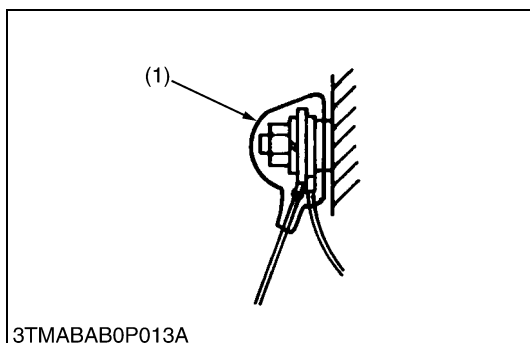


- In installing a part, be careful not to get wiring caught by it.

(1) Wiring

(A) **Incorrect**

WSM000001GEG0069US0

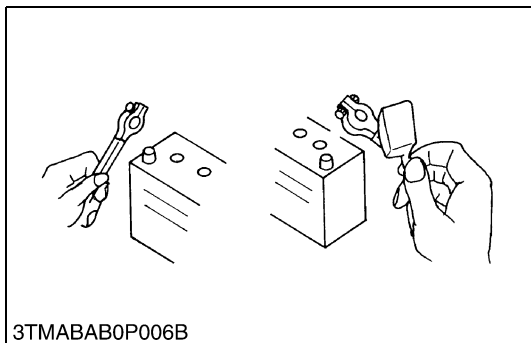


- After installing wiring, check protection of terminals and clamped condition of wiring.

(1) Cover  
(Securely Install Cover)

WSM000001GEG0070US0

## [2] BATTERY



- Be careful not to confuse positive and negative terminal posts.
- When you remove battery cables, disconnect negative cable first. When you install battery cables, check for polarity and connect positive cable first.
- Do not install any battery with capacity other than is specified (Ah).
- After you connect cables to battery terminal posts, apply high temperature grease to them and securely install terminal covers on them.
- Do not allow dirt and dust to collect on battery.



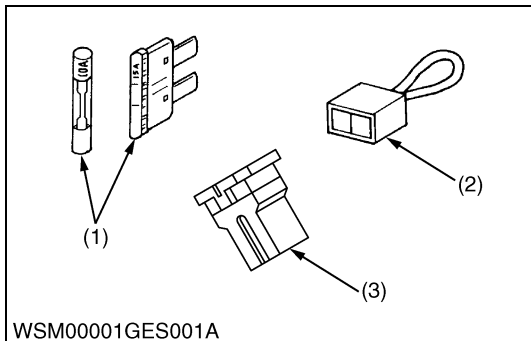
### DANGER

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Be careful not to let battery liquid spill on your skin and clothes. If contaminated, wash it off with water immediately.
- Before you recharge the battery, remove it from the machine.
- Before you recharge, remove cell caps.
- Recharge in a well-ventilated place where there is no open flame nearby, as hydrogen gas and oxygen are formed.

WSM000001GEG0071US0

## [3] FUSE



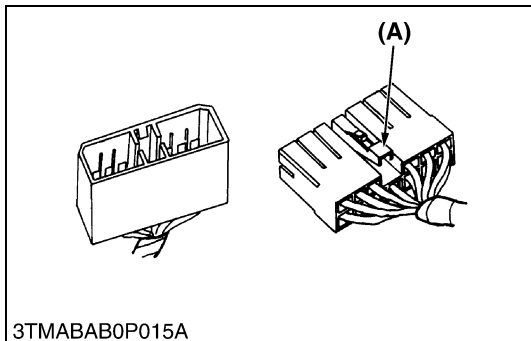
- Use fuses with specified capacity. Neither too large nor small capacity fuse is acceptable.
- Never use steel nor copper wire in place of fuse.
- Do not install working light, radio set, etc. on machine which is not provided with reserve power supply.
- Do not install accessories if fuse capacity of reserve power supply is exceeded.

(1) Fuse  
(2) Fusible Link

(3) Slow Blow Fuse

WSM000001GEG0072US0

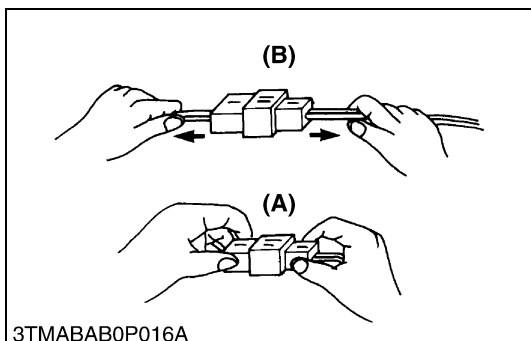
## [4] CONNECTOR



- For connector with lock, push lock to separate.

(A) Push

WSM000001GEG0073US0

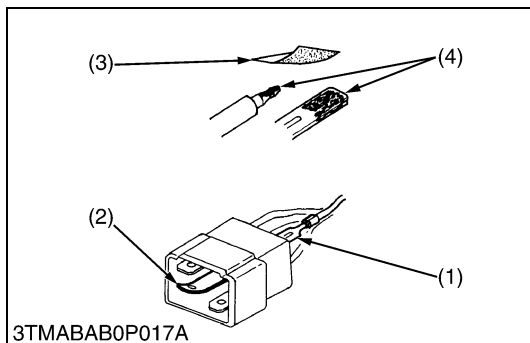


- In separating connectors, do not pull wire harnesses.
- Hold connector bodies to separate.

(A) Correct

(B) Incorrect

WSM000001GEG0074US0

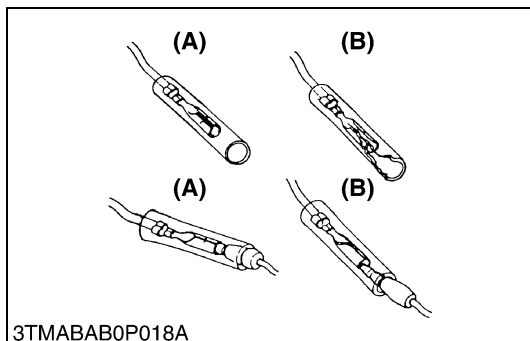


- Use sandpaper to remove rust from terminals.
- Repair deformed terminal. Make sure that there is no terminal being exposed or displaced.

(1) Exposed Terminal  
(2) Deformed Terminal

(3) Sandpaper  
(4) Rust

WSM000001GEG0075US0

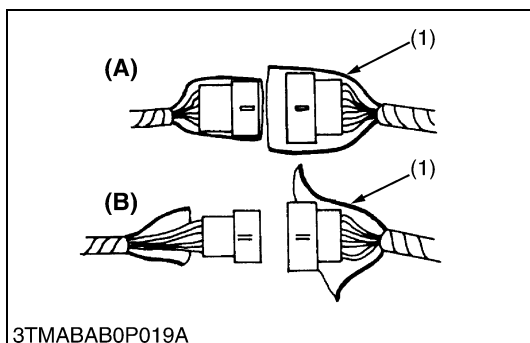


- Make sure that there is no female connector being too open.

(A) Correct

(B) Incorrect

WSM000001GEG0076US0



- Make sure that plastic cover is large enough to cover whole connector.

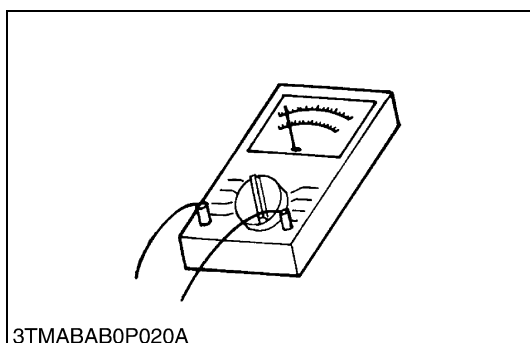
(1) Cover

(A) Correct

(B) Incorrect

WSM000001GEG0077US0

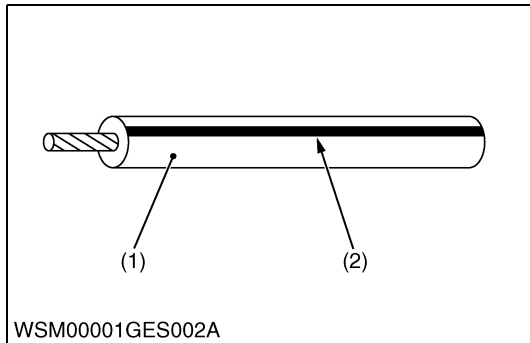
## [5] HANDLING OF CIRCUIT TESTER



- Use tester correctly following manual provided with tester.
- Check for polarity and range.

WSM000001GEG0078US0

## [6] COLOR OF WIRING



- Colors of wire are specified to the color codes.
- This symbol of "/" shows color with stripe(s).

**(An example)**

Red stripe on white color: W/R

Color of wiring	Color code
Black	B
Brown	Br
Green	G
Gray	Gy or Gr
Blue	L
Light Green	Lg
Orange	Or
Pink	P
Purple	Pu or V
Red	R
Sky Blue	Sb
White	W
Yellow	Y

(1) Wire Color

(2) Stripe

WSM000001GEG0079US0

## 4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT

No.	Place		Capacity	Lubricants, fuel and coolant
			RTV-X1140	
1	Fuel		30 L 7.9 U.S.gals 6.6 Imp.gals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No. 2-D diesel fuel</li> <li>No. 1-D diesel fuel if temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F)</li> </ul>
2	Coolant (with reserve tank)		6.1 L 6.4 U.S.qts 5.4 Imp.qts	Fresh clean water with anti-freeze
3	Engine crankcase	Filter exchanged	4.1 L 4.3 U.S.qts 3.6 Imp.qts	<b>Engine oil</b> API Service Classification CF or higher <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Above 25 °C (77 °F) SAE30, SAE10W-30 or 15W-40</li> <li>0 to 25 °C (32 to 77 °F) SAE20, SAE10W-30 or 15W-40</li> <li>Below 0 °C (32 °F) SAE10W, SAE10W-30</li> </ul>
		Filter non-ex- changed	3.8 L 4.0 U.S.qts 3.3 Imp.qts	
4	Transmission case		7.0 L 1.8 U.S.gals 1.5 Imp.gals	For U.S.A. market: KUBOTA SUPER UDT2 fluid* For Canada market: Premium UDT fluid* For other than the above: KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid*
5	Front axle case		0.6 L 0.6 U.S.qts 0.52 Imp.qts	For U.S.A. market: KUBOTA SUPER UDT2 fluid* For Canada market: Premium UDT fluid* For other than the above: KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid*
6	Front knuckle case		(Reference) 0.25 L 0.26 U.S.qts 0.22 Imp.qts	For U.S.A. market: KUBOTA SUPER UDT2 fluid* For Canada market: Premium UDT fluid* For other than the above: KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid*
7	Brake fluid (reservoir and lines)		0.4 L 0.4 U.S.qts 0.35 Imp.qts	KUBOTA <b>DOT3</b> GENUINE BRAKE FLUID
8	Hydraulic tank oil		18.0 L 19.0 U.S.qts 15.8 Imp.qts	For U.S.A. market: KUBOTA SUPER UDT2 fluid* For Canada market: Premium UDT fluid* For other than the above: KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid*

Greasing				
No.	Place	No. of greasing point	Capacity	Type of grease
9	Parking brake lever	2	moderate amount	Multipurpose EP2 Grease (NLGI Grade No. 2)
	Battery terminal	2		
	Cargo lift cylinder pivot	1	Until grease overflows	
	Cargo bed pivot	2	moderate amount	
	VHT link	2	Until grease overflows	
		1	moderate amount	
	Valve lever link	1		
	4WD lever link	1		
	Range gear shift link	1		
	Unload link	1		
	Differential lock pedal	2		
	DT shaft bearing	1	Until grease overflows	
	Front A-ARM	6		
	Rear A-ARM	8		
	Parking brake link	1	moderate amount	Antirust silicone grease
Hand throttle cable [if equipped]	—			

■ **NOTE**

- **\*KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid - KUBOTA original transmission hydraulic fluid**

9Y1210996GEG0002US0



<b>For North American market</b>
----------------------------------

**■ NOTE****Engine Oil**

- Oil used in the engine should have an American Petroleum Institute (API) service classification and Proper SAE Engine Oil according to the ambient temperatures as shown above:
- Refer to the following table for the suitable API classification engine oil according to the engine type (with internal EGR, external EGR or non-EGR) and the fuel.

Fuel used	Engine oil classification (API classification)	
	Oil class of engines except external EGR	Oil class of engines with external EGR
Ultra Low Sulfur Fuel [< 0.0015 % (15 ppm)]	<b>CF, CF-4, CG-4, CH-4 or CI-4</b>	<b>CF or CI-4</b> (Class CF-4, CG-4 and CH-4 engine oils cannot be used on EGR type engines)

EGR: Exhaust Gas Re-circulation

- The **CJ-4** engine oil is intended for DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) type engines, and cannot be used on this vehicle.

	except external EGR	With external EGR
Model	RTV-X1140	—

**Fuel**

- Cetane number of 45 is minimum. Cetane number greater than 50 is preferred, especially for temperatures below -20 °C (-4 °F) or elevations above 1500 m (5000 ft).
- Diesel fuels specified to EN 590 or ASTM D975 are recommended.
- No.2-D is a distillate fuel of lower volatility for engines in industrial and heavy mobile service. (SAE J313 JUN87)

**Transmission oil**

- To complete lubrication of the transmission, it is important that a multi-grade transmission fluid is used in this system.  
We recommend the use of KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid for optimum protection and performance.  
Do not mix different brands together.

**Hydraulic tank oil:**

- To insure proper operation of the hydraulic and VHT system, it is important that a multi-grade transmission fluid is used in this system. We recommend the use of KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid for optimum protection and performance.  
Do not mix different brands together.

**Brake fluid:**

- Always use KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID from a sealed container. If it is not available, you should use only DOT3 fluid as a temporary replacement from a sealed container.  
However, the use of any non-KUBOTA brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID as soon as possible.

- Indicated capacities of water and oil are manufacturer's estimate.

9Y1210996GEG0003US0

## For other than North American market

## ■ NOTE

## Engine Oil

- Oil used in the engine should have an American Petroleum Institute (API) service classification and Proper SAE Engine Oil according to the ambient temperatures as shown above:
- With the emission control now in effect, the CF-4 and CG-4 lubricating oils have been developed for use of a low sulfur fuel on on-road vehicle engines. When an off-road vehicle engine runs on a high-sulfur fuel, it is advisable to employ the "CF or better" lubricating oil with a high Total Base Number (TBN of 10 minimum).
- Refer to the following table for the suitable API classification engine oil according to the engine type (with internal EGR, external EGR or non-EGR) and the fuel (low-sulfur or high-sulfur fuel).

Fuel used	Engine oil classification (API classification)	
	Oil class of engines except external EGR	Oil class of engines with external EGR
High Sulfur Fuel [ $\geq 0.05$ % (500 ppm)]	<b>CF</b> (If the "CF-4, CG-4, CH-4, or CI-4" lubricating oil is used with a high-sulfur fuel, change the lubricating oil at shorter intervals. (approximately half))	—
Low Sulfur Fuel [ $< 0.05$ % (500 ppm)] or Ultra Low Sulfur Fuel [ $< 0.0015$ % (15 ppm)]	<b>CF, CF-4, CG-4, CH-4 or CI-4</b>	<b>CF, CI-4</b> (Class CF-4, CG-4 and CH-4 engine oils cannot be used on EGR type engines)

EGR: Exhaust Gas re-circulation

- The **CJ-4** engine oil is intended for DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) type engines, and cannot be used on this vehicle.

	except external EGR	with external EGR
Model	RTV-X1140	—

## Fuel

- Cetane number of 45 minimum. Cetane number greater than 50 is preferred, especially for temperatures below  $-20$  °C or elevations above 1500 m.
- If diesel fuel with sulfur content greater than 0.5 % (5000 ppm) sulfur content is used, reduce the service interval for engine oil and filter by 50 %.
- NEVER use diesel fuel with sulfur content greater than 0.05 % (500 ppm) for EXTERNAL EGR type engine.
- DO NOT use diesel fuel with sulfur content greater than 1.0 % (10000 ppm).
- Diesel fuels specified to EN 590 or ASTM D975 are recommended.
- No.2-D is a distillate fuel of lower volatility for engines in industrial and heavy mobile service. (SAE J313 JUN87)

## Transmission oil

- To complete lubrication of the transmission, it is important that a multi-grade transmission fluid is used in this system.  
We recommend the use of KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid for optimum protection and performance.  
Do not mix different brands together.

## Hydraulic tank oil:

- To insure proper operation of the hydraulic and VHT system, it is important that a multi-grade transmission fluid is used in this system. We recommend the use of KUBOTA UDT or SUPER UDT fluid for optimum protection and performance.  
Do not mix different brands together.

## Brake fluid:

- Always use KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID from a sealed container. If it is not available, you should use only DOT3 fluid as a temporary replacement from a sealed container.  
However, the use of any non-KUBOTA brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system.  
Have the brake system flushed and refilled with KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID as soon as possible.

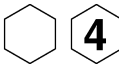


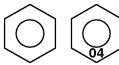
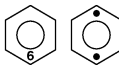
- Indicated capacities of water and oil are manufacturer's estimate.

## 5. TIGHTENING TORQUES

Tighten screws, bolts and nuts whose tightening torques are not specified in this Workshop Manual according to the table below.

WSM000001GEG0116US0

### [1] GENERAL USE SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS

Indication on top of bolt	 No-grade or 4T						 7T						 9T		
Indication on top of nut	 No-grade or 4T												 6T		
Material of opponent part	Ordinariness			Aluminum			Ordinariness			Aluminum			Ordinariness		
Unit	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M6	7.9 to 9.3	0.80 to 0.95	5.8 to 6.8	7.9 to 8.8	0.80 to 0.90	5.8 to 6.5	9.81 to 11.2	1.00 to 1.15	7.24 to 8.31	7.9 to 8.8	0.80 to 0.90	5.8 to 6.5	12.3 to 14.2	1.25 to 1.45	9.05 to 10.4
M8	18 to 20	1.8 to 2.1	13 to 15	17 to 19	1.7 to 2.0	13 to 14	24 to 27	2.4 to 2.8	18 to 20	18 to 20	1.8 to 2.1	13 to 15	30 to 34	3.0 to 3.5	22 to 25
M10	40 to 45	4.0 to 4.6	29 to 33	32 to 34	3.2 to 3.5	24 to 25	48 to 55	4.9 to 5.7	36 to 41	40 to 44	4.0 to 4.5	29 to 32	61 to 70	6.2 to 7.2	45 to 52
M12	63 to 72	6.4 to 7.4	47 to 53	—	—	—	78 to 90	7.9 to 9.2	58 to 66	63 to 72	6.4 to 7.4	47 to 53	103 to 117	10.5 to 12.0	76.0 to 86.7
M14	108 to 125	11.0 to 12.8	79.6 to 92.5	—	—	—	124 to 147	12.6 to 15.0	91.2 to 108	—	—	—	167 to 196	17.0 to 20.0	123 to 144
M16	167 to 191	17.0 to 19.5	123 to 141	—	—	—	197 to 225	20.0 to 23.0	145 to 166	—	—	—	260 to 304	26.5 to 31.0	192 to 224
M18	246 to 284	25.0 to 29.0	181 to 209	—	—	—	275 to 318	28.0 to 32.5	203 to 235	—	—	—	344 to 402	35.0 to 41.0	254 to 296
M20	334 to 392	34.0 to 40.0	246 to 289	—	—	—	368 to 431	37.5 to 44.0	272 to 318	—	—	—	491 to 568	50.0 to 58.0	362 to 419

WSM000001GEG0117US0

### [2] STUD BOLTS

Material of opponent part	Ordinariness			Aluminum		
Unit	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M8	12 to 15	1.2 to 1.6	8.7 to 11	8.9 to 11	0.90 to 1.2	6.5 to 8.6
M10	25 to 31	2.5 to 3.2	18 to 23	20 to 25	2.0 to 2.6	15 to 18
M12	30 to 49	3.0 to 5.0	22 to 36	31	3.2	23
M14	62 to 73	6.3 to 7.5	46 to 54	—	—	—
M16	98.1 to 112	10.0 to 11.5	72.4 to 83.1	—	—	—
M18	172 to 201	17.5 to 20.5	127 to 148	—	—	—

WSM000001GEG0002US0

### [3] HYDRAULIC FITTINGS

#### (1) Hydraulic Hose Fittings

Hose size	Thread size	Tightening torque		
		N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
02	1/8	13.8 to 15.6	1.40 to 1.60	10.2 to 11.5
03	1/4	22.6 to 27.4	2.30 to 2.80	16.7 to 20.2
04				
05	3/8	45.2 to 52.9	4.60 to 5.40	33.3 to 39.0
06				

WSM000001GEG0097US0

#### (2) Hydraulic Pipe Cap Nuts

Pipe size	Tightening torque		
	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
φ4 × t1.0	19.7 to 29.4	2.00 to 3.00	14.5 to 21.6
φ6 × t1.0	24.6 to 34.3	2.50 to 3.50	18.1 to 25.3
φ8 × t1.0	29.5 to 39.2	3.00 to 4.00	21.7 to 28.9
φ10 × t1.0	39.3 to 49.0	4.00 to 5.00	29.0 to 36.1
φ12 × t1.5	49.1 to 68.6	5.00 to 7.00	36.2 to 50.6
φ15 × t1.6	108 to 117	11.0 to 12.0	79.6 to 86.7
φ18 × t1.6	108 to 117	11.0 to 12.0	79.6 to 86.7



WSM000001GEG0098US0

#### (3) Adaptors, Elbows and Others

Item	Thread size	Tightening torque		
		N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Fitting with O-ring	G 1/8	45 to 53	4.5 to 5.5	33 to 39
	G 1/4	74 to 83	7.5 to 8.5	55 to 61
	G 3/8	93.2 to 102	9.50 to 10.5	68.8 to 75.9
	G 1/2	113 to 122	11.5 to 12.5	83.2 to 90.4
Elbow with O-ring	G 1/8	23 to 26	2.3 to 2.7	17 to 19
	G 1/4	36 to 43	3.6 to 4.4	26 to 31
	G 3/8	54 to 63	5.5 to 6.5	40 to 47
	G 1/2	73 to 83	7.4 to 8.5	54 to 61
Adaptor	G 1/8	9.8 to 14	1.0 to 1.5	7.3 to 10
	G 1/4	30 to 34	3.0 to 3.5	22 to 25
	G 3/8	49 to 68	5.0 to 7.0	37 to 50
	G 1/2	69 to 88	7.0 to 9.0	51 to 65



WSM000001GEG0099US0

## [4] METRIC SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS

Grade	 Property class 8.8			 Property class 10.9		
Unit	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
<b>M8</b>	24 to 27	2.4 to 2.8	18 to 20	30 to 34	3.0 to 3.5	22 to 25
<b>M10</b>	48 to 55	4.9 to 5.7	36 to 41	61 to 70	6.2 to 7.2	45 to 52
<b>M12</b>	78 to 90	7.9 to 9.2	58 to 66	103 to 117	10.5 to 12.0	76.0 to 86.7
<b>M14</b>	124 to 147	12.6 to 15.0	91.2 to 108	167 to 196	17.0 to 20.0	123 to 144
<b>M16</b>	197 to 225	20.0 to 23.0	145 to 166	260 to 304	26.5 to 31.0	192 to 224



WSM000001GEG0003US0

## [5] AMERICAN STANDARD SCREWS, BOLTS AND NUTS WITH UNC OR UNF THREADS

Grade	 SAE GR.5			 SAE GR.8		
Unit	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
<b>1/4</b>	11.7 to 15.7	1.20 to 1.60	8.63 to 11.5	16.3 to 19.7	1.67 to 2.00	12.0 to 14.6
<b>5/16</b>	23.1 to 27.7	2.36 to 2.82	17.0 to 20.5	33 to 39	3.4 to 3.9	25 to 28
<b>3/8</b>	48 to 56	4.9 to 5.7	36 to 41	61 to 73	6.3 to 7.4	45 to 53
<b>1/2</b>	110 to 130	11.3 to 13.2	81.2 to 95.8	150 to 178	15.3 to 18.1	111 to 131
<b>9/16</b>	150 to 178	15.3 to 18.1	111 to 131	217 to 260	22.2 to 26.5	160 to 191
<b>5/8</b>	204 to 244	20.8 to 24.8	151 to 179	299 to 357	30.5 to 36.4	221 to 263

WSM000001GEG0008US0

## [6] PLUGS

Shape	Size	Material of opponent part					
		Ordinariness			Aluminum		
		N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
<b>Tapered screw</b> 	<b>R1/8</b>	13 to 21	1.3 to 2.2	9.4 to 15	13 to 19	1.3 to 2.0	9.4 to 14
	<b>R1/4</b>	25 to 44	2.5 to 4.5	18 to 32	25 to 34	2.5 to 3.5	18 to 25
	<b>R3/8</b>	49 to 88	5.0 to 9.0	37 to 65	49 to 58	5.0 to 6.0	37 to 43
	<b>R1/2</b>	58.9 to 107	6.00 to 11.0	43.4 to 79.5	59 to 78	6.0 to 8.0	44 to 57
<b>Straight screw</b> 	<b>G1/4</b>	25 to 34	2.5 to 3.5	18 to 25	—	—	—
	<b>G3/8</b>	62 to 82	6.3 to 8.4	46 to 60	—	—	—
	<b>G1/2</b>	49 to 88	5.0 to 9.0	37 to 65	—	—	—

WSM000001GEG0005US0

## 6. MAINTENANCE CHECK LIST



### WARNING

To avoid serious injury and vehicle damage:

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.

### SERVICE INTERVALS

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- The jobs indicated by ★ must be done after the first 50 hours of operation.  
 \*1 The initial 50 hours should not be a replacement cycle.  
 \*2 Air cleaner should be cleaned more often in dusty conditions than in normal conditions.  
 \*3 Replace if any deterioration (crack, hardening, scar, or deformation) or damage occurred.
- The items listed below (@marked) are registered as emission related critical parts by KUBOTA in the U.S.EPA non road emission regulation. As the engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance on the engine according to the below instruction. Please see Warranty Statement in detail.

No.	Item		Service Interval													After 700 hrs	Refer- ence page		
			50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600	650	700			
1	Engine start system	Check	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	every 50 hrs	G-29	
2	Greasing (Except DT shaft bearing)	Apply	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	☆	every 50 hrs	G-30	
3	Greasing (DT shaft bearing)	Apply				☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-39	
4	Engine oil	Change	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-39	*1
5	Muffler [Spark arrester]	Clean		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-32	
6	Wheel fastener torque	Check	★	☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-32	*1
7	Battery condition	Check		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-33	
8	Alternator belt	Adjust		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-35	
9	VHT neutral spring	Check		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-35	
10	VHT pressure release	Check		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-36	
11	Toe-in	Adjust		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-36	
12	Fuel filter element	Check		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-37	
		Replace								☆							every 400 hrs	G-45	@
13	Fuel line	Check															every 1 year	G-37	*3
		Replace															every 4 years	G-46	@
14	Air cleaner element	Clean		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆		☆	every 100 hrs	G-38	*2
		Replace															every 1000 hrs or 1 year	G-46	@
15	Engine oil filter	Replace	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-40	*1
16	Transmission oil filter (VHT) (Yellow color)	Replace	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-40	*1
17	Transmission oil filter (Suction) (Black color)	Replace	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-41	*1
18	Brake pedal	Check	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-41	*1

No.	Item		Service Interval														After 700 hrs	Reference page		
			50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600	650	700				
19	Parking brake	Adjust	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-42	*1	
20	Brake light switch	Check	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-42	*1	
21	Front brake case	Check	★			☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-43		
22	Hydraulic tank oil	Change				☆				☆				☆			every 200 hrs	G-43		
23	Radiator hose, pipe and clamp	Check															every 1 year	G-46	*3	
		Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
24	Hydraulic oil line	Check															every 1 year	G-47	*3	
		Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
25	Intake air line	Check				☆				☆				☆			every 1 year	G-48	*3	@
		Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
26	Engine breather hose	Check															every 1 year	G-48	*3	
		Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
27	Brake hose and pipe	Check															every 1 year	G-49	*3	
		Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
28	Tire wear	Check	★					☆						☆			every 300 hrs	G-44	*1	
29	Transmission fluid	Change								☆							every 400 hrs	G-44		
30	Front axle case oil	Change								☆							every 400 hrs	G-45		
31	Knuckle case oil	Change								☆							every 400 hrs	G-45		
32	Engine valve clearance	Adjust															every 800 hrs	G-45		
33	Fuel injection nozzle Injection pressure	Check															every 1500 hrs	G-45		@
34	Injection pump	Check															every 3000 hrs	G-46		@
35	Brake master cylinder [inner parts]	Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
36	Brake fluid	Change															every 2 years	G-49		
37	Rear brake cylinder seal	Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
38	Front brake seal	Replace															every 4 years	G-52		
39	Cooling system	Flush															every 2000 hrs or 2 years	G-50		
40	Coolant	Change															every 2000 hrs or 2 years	G-50		

No.	Item		Service Interval														After 700 hrs	Refer- ence page		
			50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600	650	700				
41	Fuel system	Bleed															Service as re- quired	G-53		
42	Fuse	Replace																G-53, G-54		
43	Around engine	Clean																G-53		
44	Light bulb	Replace																G-54		
45	Hydraulic tank	Check																G-55		

9Y1210996GEG0005US0



## 7. CHECK AND MAINTENANCE

### [1] DAILY CHECK

For your own safety and maximum service life of the vehicle, make a thorough daily inspection before operating the vehicle to start the engine.



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to check and service the vehicle on a flat surface with the engine shut off and the parking brake "ON".

9Y1210996GEG0006US0

#### Walk around Inspection

Look around and under the vehicle for such items as loose bolts, trash build-up, oil or coolant leaks, broken or worn parts.

9Y1210996GEG0007US0

#### Checking around Engine

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Raise the cargo bed.
4. Mount the safety support.
5. Check around the engine for mud or foreign materials.
6. Remove all foreign materials if they are found.

9Y1210996GEG0008US0

#### Checking and Refueling

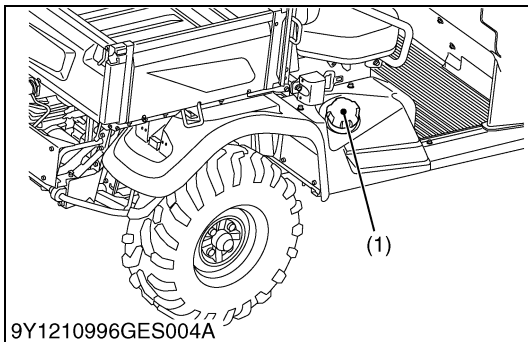


#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not smoke while refueling.
- Be sure to stop the engine before refueling.

1. Turn the key switch to "ON", check the amount of fuel by fuel gauge.
2. Fill fuel tank when fuel gauge shows 1/4 or less fuel in tank.
3. Use grade No.2-Diesel fuel at temperatures above -10 °C (14 °F).  
Use grade No.1-Diesel fuel at temperatures below -10 °C (14 °F).



9Y1210996GES004A

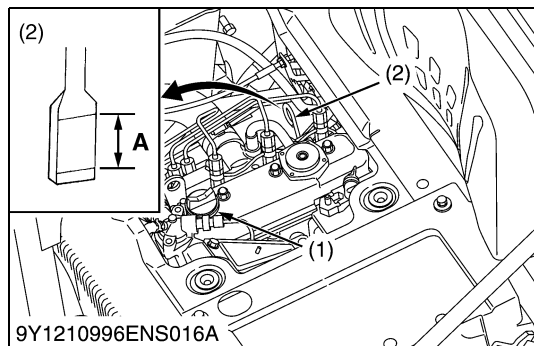
Fuel tank	Capacity	30 L 7.9 U.S.gals 6.2 Imp.gals
-----------	----------	--------------------------------------

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not permit dirt or trash to get into the fuel system.
- Be careful not to let the fuel tank become empty, otherwise air will enter the fuel system, necessitating bleeding before next engine start.
- Be careful not to spill during refueling. If should spill, wipe it off at once, or it may cause a fire.
- To prevent water condensation from accumulating in the fuel tank, fill the tank before parking overnight.

(1) Fuel Tank Cap

9Y1210996GEG0009US0



### Checking Engine Oil Level



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- **Be sure to stop the engine before checking the oil level.**
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. Raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
  3. Stop the engine.
  4. Check engine oil before starting the engine or 5 minutes or more after the engine has stopped.
  5. To check the oil level, draw out the dipstick, wipe it clean, replace it, and draw it out again. Check to see that the oil level lies between the 2 debossed lines.
- If the level is too low, add new oil to the prescribed level at the oil inlet.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

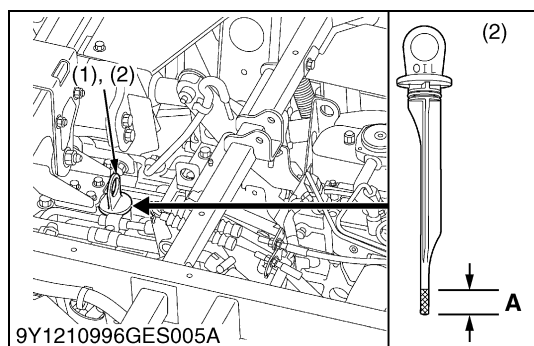
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- **When using an oil of different maker or viscosity from the previous one, remove all of the old oil. Never mix 2 different types of oil.**
- **If oil level is low, do not run engine.**

- (1) Oil Inlet  
(2) Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996GEG0010US0



### Checking Transmission Fluid Level

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. Raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
  3. Stop the engine.
  4. To check the oil level, draw out the dipstick, wipe it clean, replace it, and draw it out again. Check to see that the oil level lies within the cross hatched area.
- If the level is too low, add new oil to the prescribed level at the oil inlet.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

#### ■ IMPORTANT

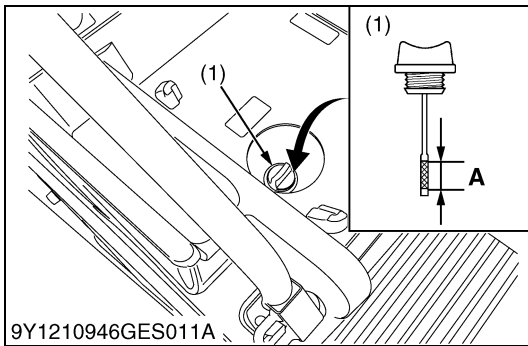
- **If oil level is low, do not run engine.**

Transmission oil	Capacity	7.0 L 1.8 U.S.gals 1.5 Imp.gals
------------------	----------	---------------------------------------

- (1) Oil Inlet  
(2) Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996GEG0011US0



### Checking Hydraulic Oil Tank Level

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Open the seat and remove the utility box.
4. Remove the rubber cap.
5. To check the oil level, remove the dipstick, wipe it clean, screw it into filling hole and remove dipstick again.  
If the level is too low, add new oil to the prescribed level at the oil inlet.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

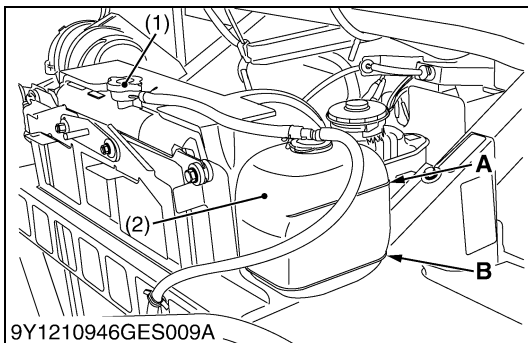
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- If oil level is low, do not run engine.

(1) Filling Plug with Dipstick

A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.

9Y1210996GEG0012US0



### Checking Coolant Level

#### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not remove radiator cap while coolant is hot. When cool, slowly rotate cap to the first stop and allow sufficient time for excess pressure to escape before removing the cap completely.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Open the hood.
4. Check to see that the coolant level is between the "FULL" and "LOW" marks of recovery tank.
5. When the coolant level drops due to evaporation, add water only up to the full level.  
In case of leakage, add anti-freeze and water in the specified mixing ratio up to the full level.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- If the radiator cap has to be removed, follow the caution above and securely retighten the cap.
- Use clean, fresh water and anti-freeze to fill the recovery tank.

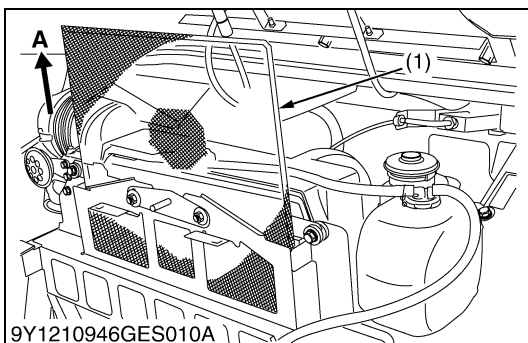
(1) Radiator Cap

A: FULL

(2) Recovery Tank

B: LOW

9Y1210996GEG0013US0



### Cleaning Radiator Screen

#### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before removing the screen.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Open the hood.
4. Detach the screen and remove all foreign materials.

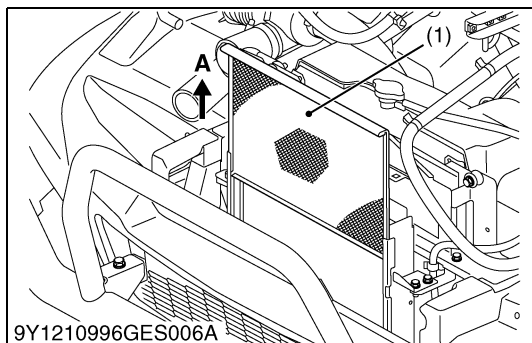
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Radiator screen must be clean from debris to prevent engine from overheating.

(1) Radiator Screen

A: DETACH

9Y1210996GEG0014US0



### Cleaning Oil Cooler Net



#### **WARNING**

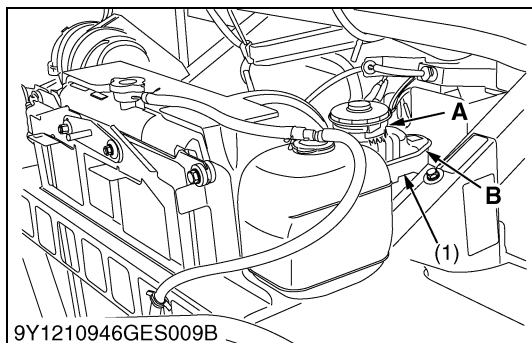
To avoid serious injury:

- Allow oil cooler or oil line parts to cool down sufficiently, they can be hot and can cause injury.
1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
  2. Stop the engine.
  3. Open the hood.
  4. Detach the oil cooler net and remove all trash.

(1) Oil Cooler Net

A: DETACH

9Y1210996GEG0015US0



### Checking Brake Fluid Level



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

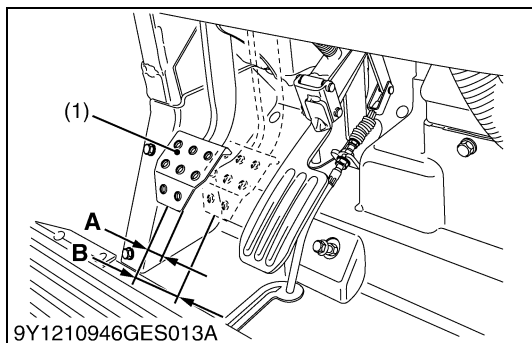
- Never operate the vehicle, if the brake fluid is below the "MIN" mark.
  - Use only KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID from a sealed container. Using other type of oil ruins synthetic resin or rubber installed in brake system components, and may cause brake failure.
  - Avoid contamination of the brake fluid.  
Thoroughly clean area around the filler cap before removing. Do not open the brake fluid reservoir cap unless absolutely necessary.
  - Use extreme care when filling the reservoir. If brake fluid is spilled on the power steering hose, wash off with water immediately. Brake fluid quickly ruins synthetic resin or rubber hoses.
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. Open the hood.
  3. Check to see that the brake fluid level is between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks.
  4. If it is below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid to the "MAX" mark.

(1) Oil Tank

A: MAX

B: MIN

9Y1210996GEG0016US0



### Checking Brake Pedal



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

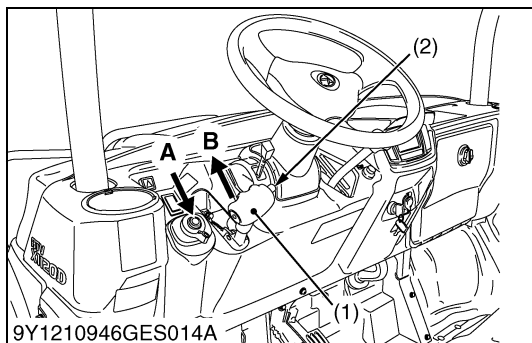
- Stop the engine and chock the wheels before checking brake pedal.
1. Inspect the brake pedals for free travel, and smooth operation.
  2. Adjust if incorrect measurement is found. (See page XXX "Checking Brake Pedal" in "EVERY 200 HOURS".)

(1) Brake Pedal

A: FREE TRAVEL

B: PEDAL STROKE

9Y1210996GEG0017US0



### **Checking Parking Brake**

Pull the parking brake lever to apply the brakes. With the key switch at **"ON"** position, the parking brake indicator on the instrument panel lights up. To release the brakes, push in the button at the side of the parking brake lever and tilt the lever forward the lever.

#### ■ **NOTE**

- **Make sure the parking brake warning lamp on the Easy Checker™ goes off when parking brake lever is forward.**

- (1) Parking Brake Lever  
(2) Release Button

A: **"PULL"**  
B: **"RELEASE"**

9Y1210996GEG0018US0

### **Checking Easy Checker™**

1. Inspect the instrument panel for broken Easy Checker™ lamps.

9Y1210996GEG0019US0

### **Checking Head Light, Turn Signal Light (If Equipped) etc.**

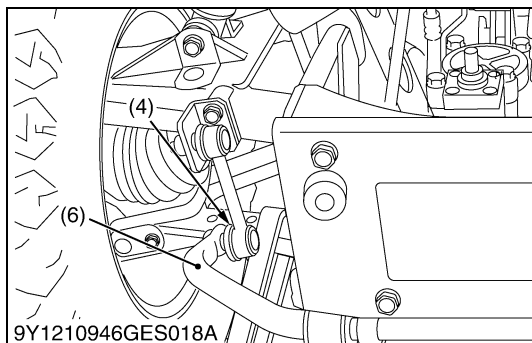
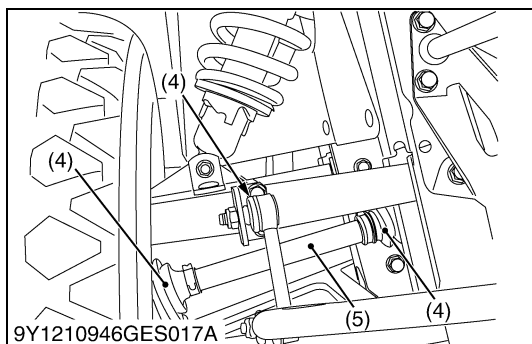
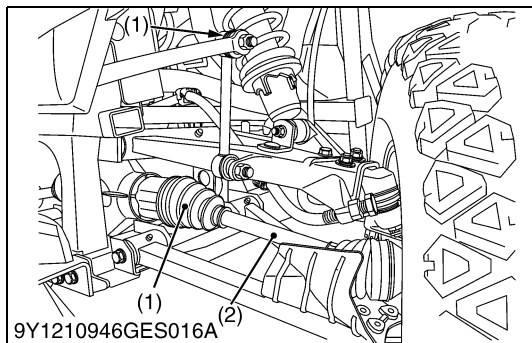
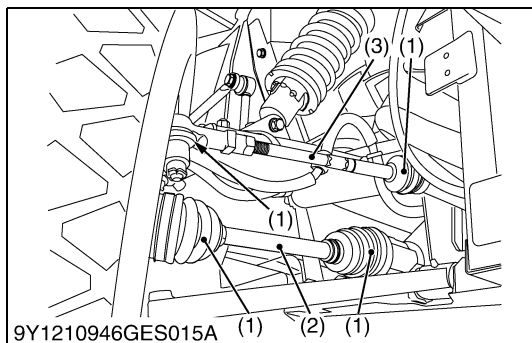
1. Inspect the lights for broken bulbs and lenses.
2. Replace if broken.

9Y1210996GEG0020US0

### **Checking Seat Belt and ROPS**

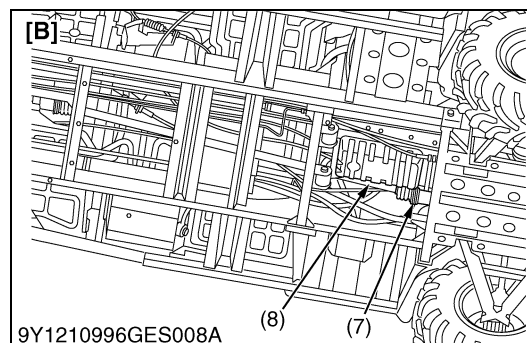
1. Always check condition of the seat belts before operating the vehicle.
2. Replace if damaged.

9Y1210996GEG0021US0



### Checking Joint Boot

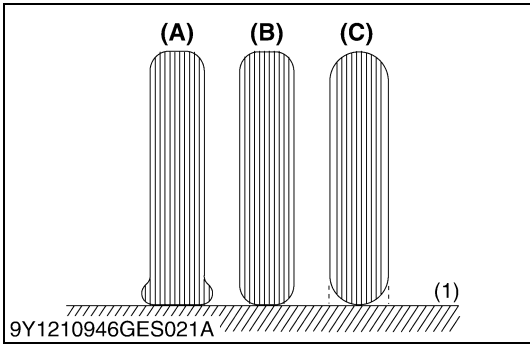
1. Check to see if the joint boots are not damaged.
2. If the boots are cuts, cracked or deterioration, replace the new one.



- (1) Joint Boot (Front)
- (2) Front Drive Shaft
- (3) Tie-rod
- (4) Joint Boot (Rear)
- (5) Rear Drive Shaft
- (6) Rear Stabilizer
- (7) Joint Boot
- (8) Drive Shaft

[A] Front  
[B] Rear

9Y1210996GEG0022US0



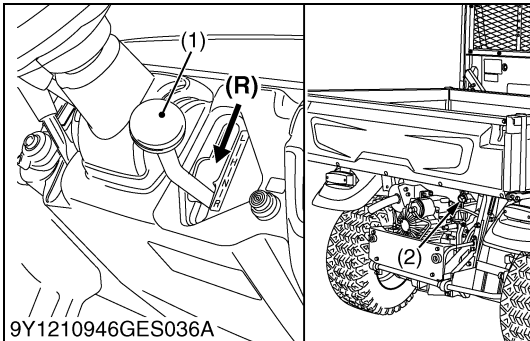
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure

Though the tire pressure is factory-set to the prescribed level, it naturally drops slowly in the course of time. Thus, check it everyday and inflate as necessary.

Tire sizes	Inflation Pressure	
	0 to 249 kg (0 to 550 lbs)	249 to 500 kg (550 to 1000 lbs)
25 × 10 – 12 HDWS, Front and Rear	Front: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi) Rear: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi)	Front: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi) Rear: 0.17 MPa (1.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 24psi)
25 × 10 – 12 ATV, Front and Rear		

- (1) Ground
- (A) **INSUFFICIENT**  
 (B) **NORMAL**  
 (C) **EXCESSIVE**

9Y1210996GEG0023US0



Checking Backup Beeper

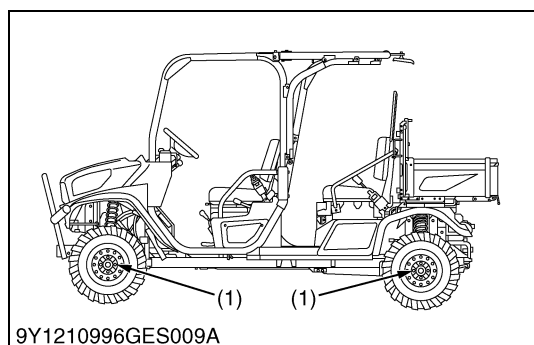
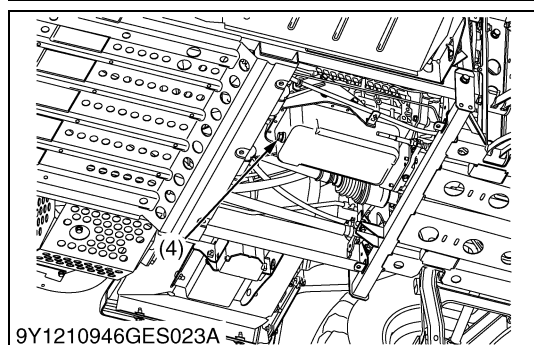
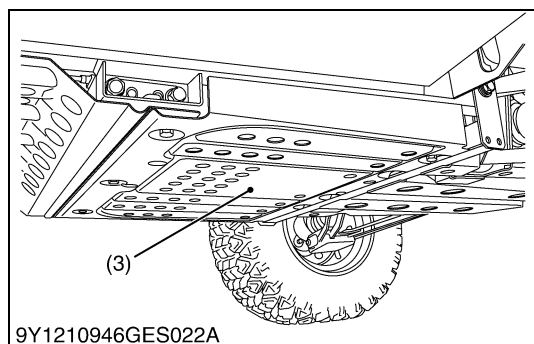
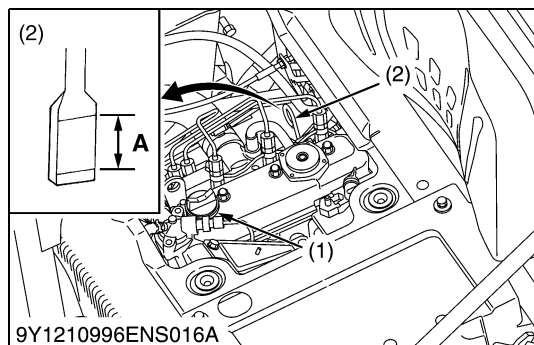
[if equipped]

1. Sit on the operator's seat.
2. Set the parking brake and stop the engine.
3. Shift the range gear shift lever to the **NEUTRAL** position.
4. Turn the key to **ON** position.
5. Shift the range gear shift lever to the **REVERSE** position.

- (1) Range Gear Shift Lever
- (R) **REVERSE**
- (2) Backup Beeper (if equipped)

9Y1210996GEG0024US0

## [2] CHECK POINTS OF INITIAL 50 HOURS



### Changing Engine Oil



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
  - Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. In 1 row seating mode, raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
  3. Stop the engine.
  4. Remove the rear skid plate.
  5. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug at the bottom of the engine and completely drain the oil into an oil pan.  
All the used oil can be drained out easily when the engine is still warm.
  6. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
  7. In 2 row seating mode, raise the rear seat.
  8. Remove the rear cover.
  9. Fill with the new oil up to the upper line on the dipstick.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

Engine oil	Capacity	[Filter exchanged] 4.1 L 4.3 U.S.qts 3.6 Imp.qts
		[Filter non-exchanged] 3.8 L 4.0 U.S.qts 3.3 Imp.qts

- (1) Oil Inlet
- (2) Dipstick
- (3) Rear Skid Plate
- (4) Drain Plug

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996GEG0025US0

### Checking Wheel Fastener Torque



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

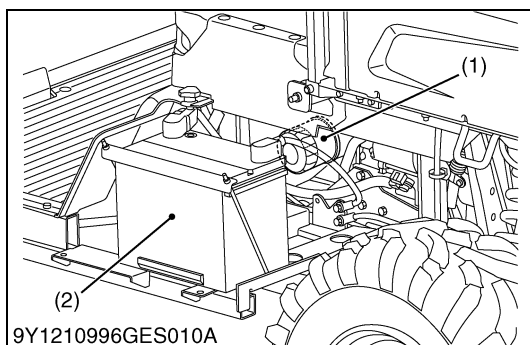
- Never operate vehicle with a loose wheel bolts.
  - Any time bolts are loosened, retighten to the specified torque.
  - Check all bolts frequently and keep them tight.
- Check wheel bolts regularly especially when new. If they are loose, tighten them as follows.

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting bolt	90 to 110 N·m 9.2 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting bolt and nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Wheel Mounting Bolts

9Y1210996GEG0026US0





## Replacing Engine Oil Filter

### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil filter.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Remove the rear skid plate.
4. Remove the oil filter.
5. Put a film of clean engine oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
6. Tighten the filter quickly until it contacts the mounting surface. Tighten the filter by hand an additional 1/2 turn only.
7. After the new filter has been replaced, the engine oil normally decreases a little. Make sure that the engine oil does not leak through the seal and be sure to check the oil level on the dipstick. Then, replenish the engine oil up to the prescribed level.
8. Properly dispose of used filter.

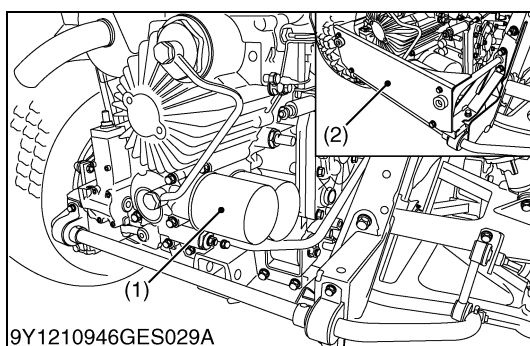
### ■ IMPORTANT

- To prevent serious damage to the engine, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

(1) Engine Oil Filter

(2) Battery

9Y1210996GEG0027US0



## Replacing Transmission Oil Filter [VHT]

### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil filter.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Remove the rear guard.
3. Remove the oil filter.
4. Put a film of clean transmission oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
5. Quickly tighten the filter by hand until it contacts the mounting surface, then, with a filter wrench, tighten it an additional 1/2 turn only.
6. After the new filter has been replaced, fill the transmission oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.
7. After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again, add oil to the prescribed level.
8. Make sure that the transmission fluid doesn't leak past the seal on the filters.
9. Install the rear guard.

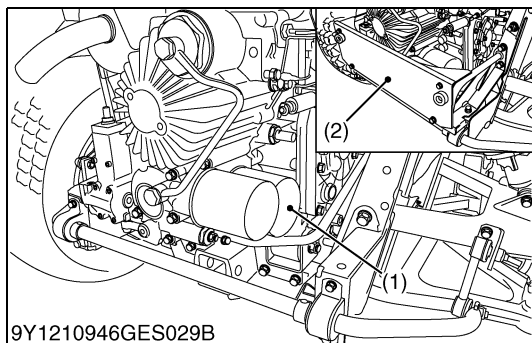
### ■ IMPORTANT

- To prevent serious damage to the transmission, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

(1) Transmission Oil Filter (VHT):  
(Yellow Color)

(2) Rear Guard

9Y1210996GEG0028US0



## Replacing Transmission Oil Filter [SUCTION]

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

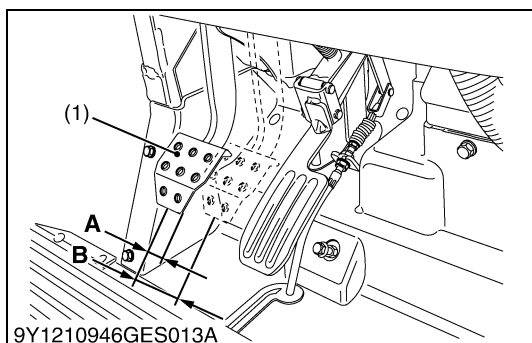
1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Remove the rear guard.
3. Remove the oil filter.
4. Put a film of clean transmission oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
5. Quickly tighten the filter by hand until it contacts the mounting surface, then, with a filter wrench, tighten it an additional 1/2 turn only.
6. After the new filter has been replaced, fill the transmission oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.
7. After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again, add oil to the prescribed level.
8. Make sure that the transmission fluid doesn't leak past the seal on the filters.
9. Install the rear guard.

### **■ IMPORTANT**

- To prevent serious damage to the transmission, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

- (1) Transmission Oil Filter (Suction) (2) Rear Guard (Black Color)

9Y1210996GEG0029US0



## Checking Brake Pedal

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Stop the engine and chock the wheels before checking brake pedal.
- If movement is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

### **■ Checking the brake pedal free travel**

Proper brake pedal free travel	8 to 18 mm (0.3 to 0.7 in.) on the pedal
--------------------------------	--

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Slightly depress the brake pedal and measure free travel at the top of the pedal stroke.
3. If brake pedal free travel is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

### **■ Checking the brake pedal stroke**

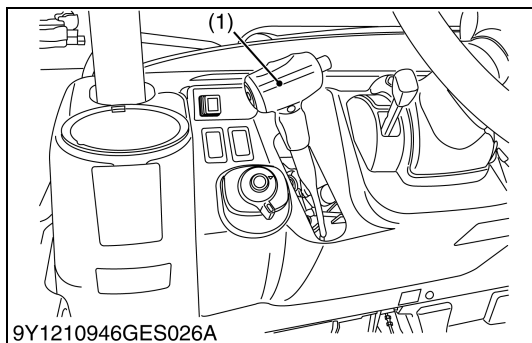
Pedal stroke	Less than 150 mm (5.9 in.) on the pedal
--------------	---

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Step on the pedal and measure the pedal stroke.
3. If brake pedal stroke is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

- (1) Brake Pedal

A: FREE TRAVEL  
B: PEDAL STROKE

9Y1210996GEG0030US0



### Adjusting Parking Brake

Proper parking brake lever free play range

1 notch

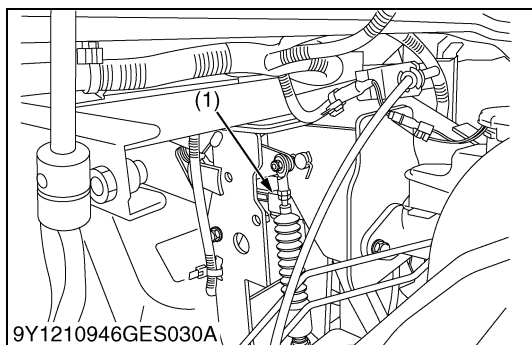
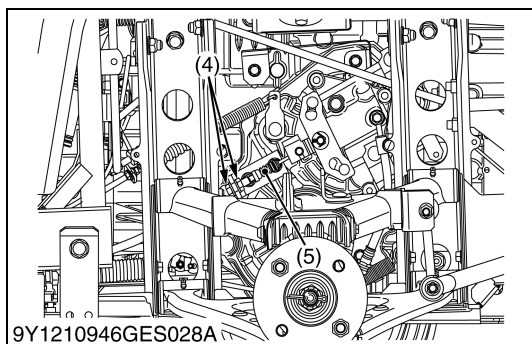
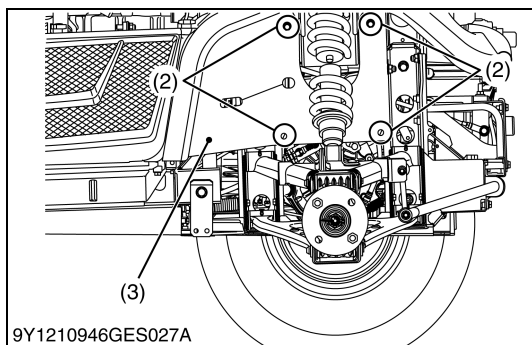
#### ■ Adjusting procedure

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Jack up the rear wheels.
4. Remove the left rear tire.
5. Remove the mud guard of rubber.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Loosen the lock nuts.
8. Adjust the cable wire length.
9. Tighten the lock nuts securely.
10. Install the mud guard.
11. Install the left rear tire.

- (1) Parking Brake Lever  
(2) Push Rivet  
(3) Mud Guard

- (4) Lock Nut  
(5) Cable Wire

9Y1210996GEG0031US0

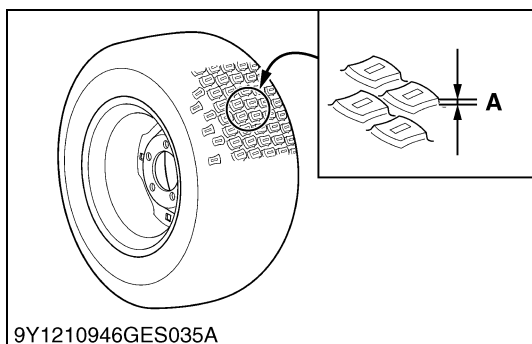
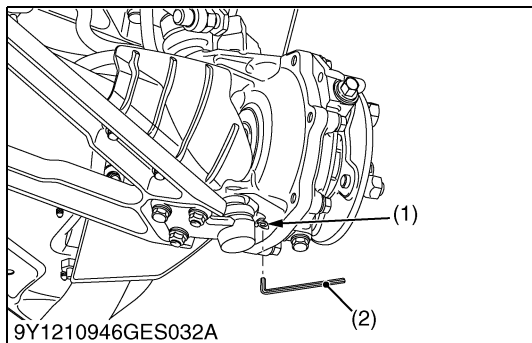
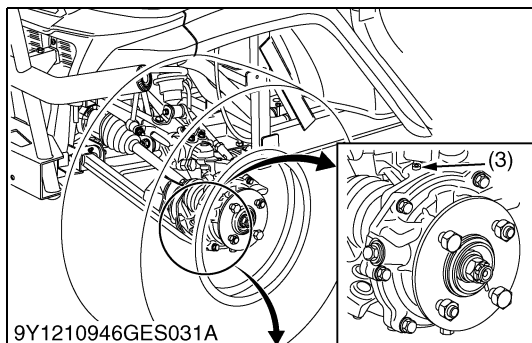


### Checking Brake Light Switch

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Step on the brake pedal to check if the brake light comes on.
3. If it does not, check the bulb or brake light switch.

- (1) Brake Light Switch

9Y1210996GEG0032US0



### Checking Front Brake Case

1. Remove the drain plugs and the air-bleeding hole plugs.
2. Check the brake case for brake fluid leak.

- (1) Drain Plug  
(2) Allen Key

- (3) Air-Bleeding Hole Plug

9Y1210996GEG0033US0

### Checking Tire

1. Check to see if tires are not damaged.
2. If the tires are cracked, bulged, or cut, or they are worn out, replace or repair them at once.

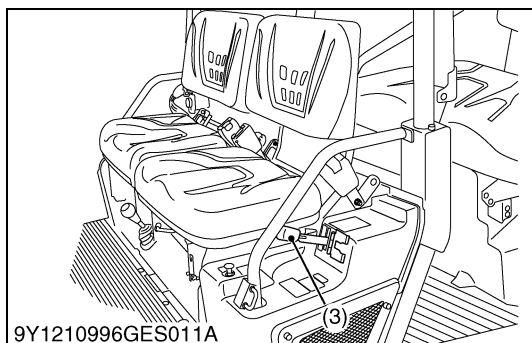
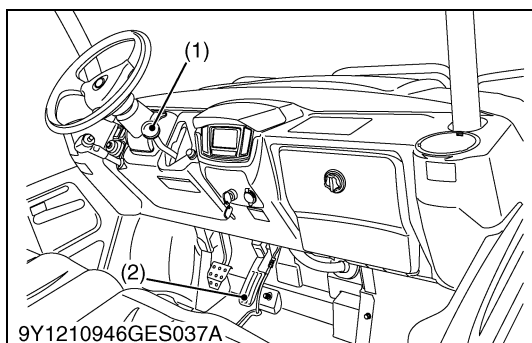
#### ■ Tire Tread Depth

Always replace the tires when the tread depth is worn to minimum allowable.

A: 3 mm (0.12 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0034US0

## [3] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 50 HOURS



### Checking Engine Start System



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not allow anyone near the vehicle while testing.
- If the vehicle does not pass the test do not operate the vehicle.

#### ■ Preparation before testing.

1. Place all control levers in the **NEUTRAL** position.
2. Set the parking brake and stop the engine.

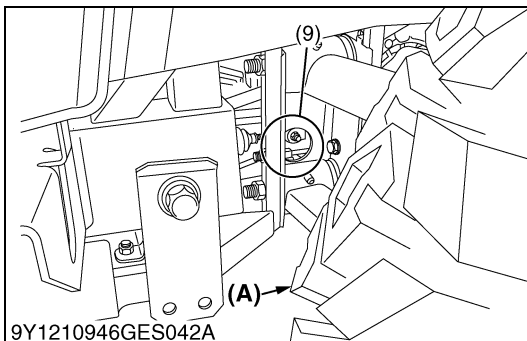
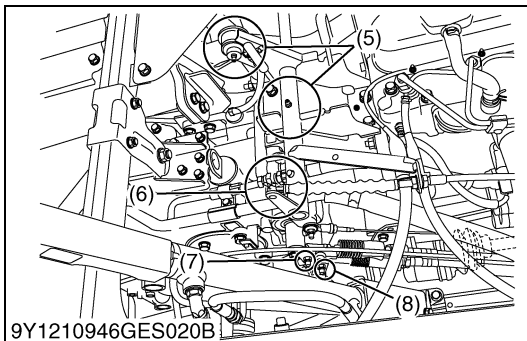
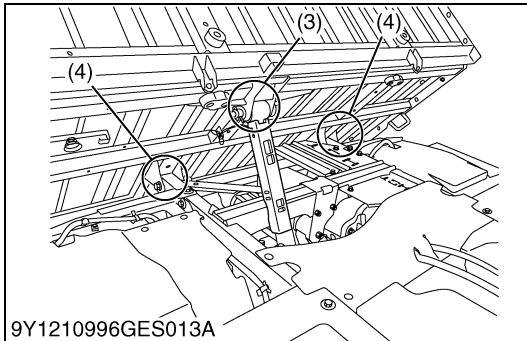
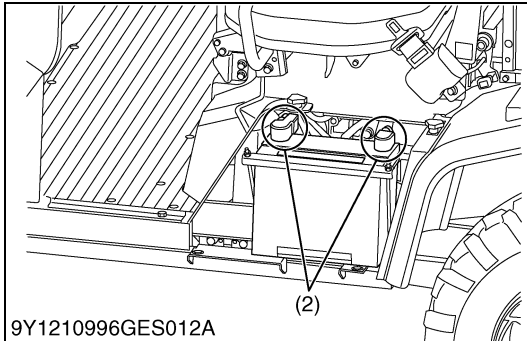
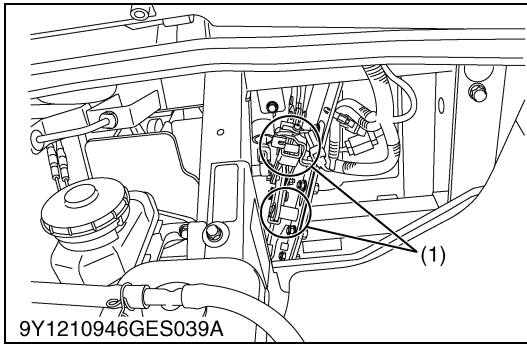
#### ■ Test: Range gear shift lever safety switch

1. Sit on the operator's seat.
2. Shift the range gear shift lever to **H** position.
3. Return the Speed control pedal to the **NEUTRAL** position.
4. Shift the hydraulic lift cylinder lever to the **NEUTRAL** position.
5. Turn the key to **START** position.
6. The engine must not crank.
7. Repeat the step 2 to 6 with the range gear shift lever at **L** and **R** each position.
8. If it cranks, adjust or replace the required safety switch.

- (1) Range Gear Shift Lever  
(2) Speed Control Pedal

- (3) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder Lever

9Y1210996GEG0035US0



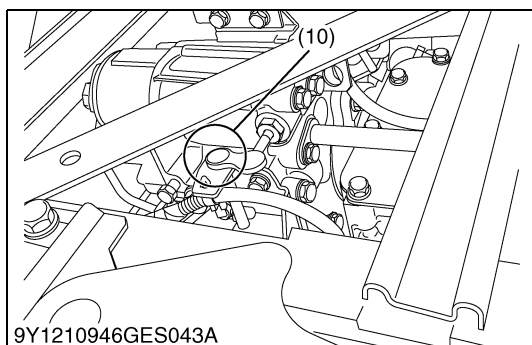
### Greasing

1. Apply a small amount of multi-purpose grease to the following points every 50 hours: If you operated the machine in extremely wet and muddy conditions, lubricate grease fittings more often.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) Parking Brake Lever<br>(Spray Type Grease)    | (7) Valve Lever Link<br>(Spray Type Grease)      |
| (2) Battery Terminals                             | (8) 4WD Lever Link<br>(Spray Type Grease)        |
| (3) Cargo Lift Cylinder Pivot<br>(Grease Fitting) | (9) Range Gear Shift Link<br>(Spray Type Grease) |
| (4) Cargo Bed Pivot<br>(Spray Type Grease)        |  |
| (5) VHT Link (Grease Fitting)                     |  |
| (6) VHT Link (Spray Type Grease)                  |  |

#### (A) Left Rear Tire

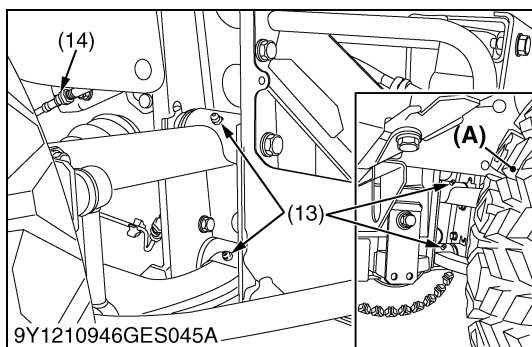
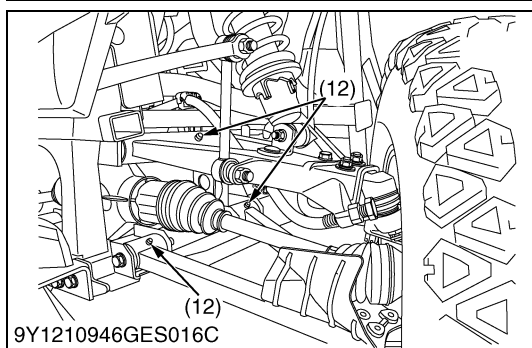
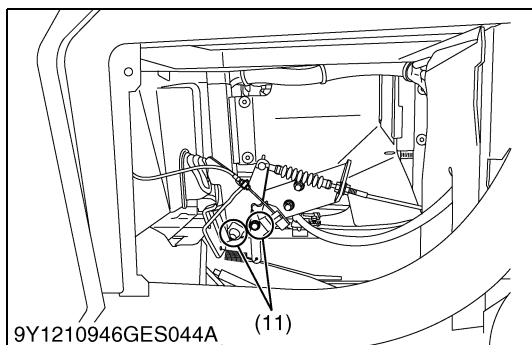
(To be continued)

**(Continued)**

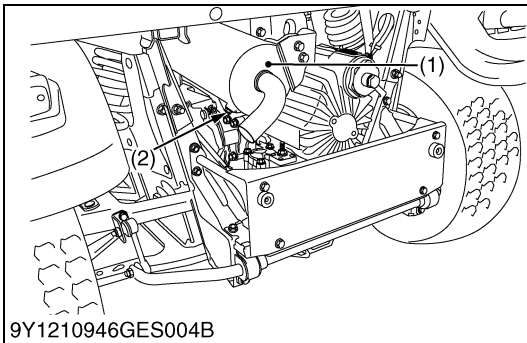
- (10) Unload Link (Spray Type Grease)
- (11) Differential Lock Pedal (Spray Type Grease)
- (12) Front A-ARM (Grease Fitting)
- (13) Rear A-ARM (Grease Fitting)
- (14) Parking Brake Link (Spray Type Grease)

**(A) Left Rear Tire**

9Y1210996GEG0036US0



## [4] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 100 HOURS



### Cleaning Muffler

[For Swirl Type Spark Arrester]



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Before touching any part of an exhaust system, be absolutely sure that it has sufficient time to cool!
- Always wear safety goggles and a (face) mask.
- The particulate matter contained in the muffler contains chemicals that are harmful to people, animals and marine life.

#### ■ **Cleaning spark arrester of muffler**

This swirl type spark arrester was examined, tested, and qualified in accordance with the USDA Forest Service Standard 5100-1c, "Spark Arresters for Internal Combustion Engines".

#### **Maintenance and cleanout procedure:**

The swirl type spark arrester should be cleaned and inspected after every 100 hours of use.

1. Set vehicle in an open area away from combustible materials and on flat surface.
2. Apply the parking brake and shift range gear shift lever into the **NEUTRAL** position.
3. Remove the drain plug located on the bottom of the muffler body.
4. Start engine and raise and lower engine revolution while tapping on the muffler with a rubber mallet until the carbon particles are purged from the muffler.
5. Stop the engine.
6. Reinstall the drain plug.

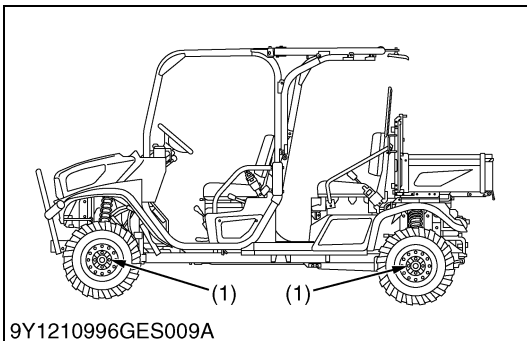
#### ■ **IMPORTANT**

- Visually check the muffler for cracks or holes in the body, weldment or pipes at regular intervals.
- Replace the entire muffler if it is damaged.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a damaged muffler.

(1) Muffler

(2) Drain Plug

9Y1210996GEG0037US0



### Checking Wheel Fastener Torque



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

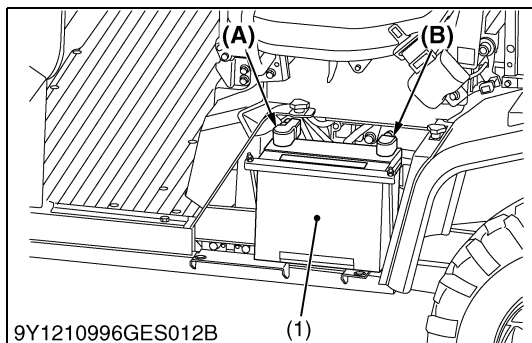
- Never operate vehicle with a loose wheel bolts.
- Any time bolts are loosened, retighten to the specified torque.
- Check all bolts frequently and keep them tight.

Check wheel bolts regularly especially when new. If they are loose, tighten them as follows.

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting bolt	90 to 110 N·m 9.2 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting bolt and nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

(1) Wheel Mounting Bolts

9Y1210996GEG0038US0



### Checking Battery Condition

The factory-installed battery is non-refillable type. If the battery is weak, charge the battery or replace it with new one.



#### **DANGER**

To avoid the possibility of battery explosion:

For the refillable type battery, follow the instructions below.

- Do not use or charge the refillable type battery if the fluid level is below the LOWER (lower limit level) mark. Otherwise, the battery component parts may prematurely deteriorate, which may shorten the battery's service life or cause an explosion. Check the fluid level regularly and add distilled water as required so that the fluid level is between the UPPER and LOWER levels.



#### **DANGER**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- When the battery is being activated, hydrogen and oxygen gases in the battery are extremely explosive. Keep open sparks and flames away from the battery at all times, especially when charging the battery.



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Batteries, battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth problems or other reproductive harm. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.**
- Never remove the battery cap while the engine is running.
- Keep electrolyte away from eyes, hands and clothes. If you are splattered with it, wash it away completely with water immediately and get medical attention.
- Keep open sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Hydrogen gas mixed with oxygen becomes very explosive.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when working around battery.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Mishandling the battery shortens the service life and adds to maintenance costs.

The original battery is maintenance free, but needs some servicing.

If the battery is weak, the engine will be difficult to start and the lights will be dim. It is important to check the battery periodically.

- When exchanging an old battery for new one, use battery of equal specification in table below.

(1) Battery

(A) Positive Terminal

(B) Negative Terminal

(To be continued)



(Continued)

Battery Type	Volts (V)	Reserve Capacity (min)	Cold Cranking Amps	Capacity at 20 hrs (A. H.)	Normal Charging Rate (A)
24R-670	12	140	670	115	115 11.5

(For non-accessible maintenance-free type batteries.)

Maintenance-free, non-accessible batteries are designed to eliminate the need to add water. Yet the volume of electrolyte above plates may eventually become depleted due to abnormal conditions such as high heat or improper regulator setting. Use a voltmeter to check the state of charge. (See reference chart below to determine if charging is necessary.)

Battery voltage	Reference state of charge
12.6	100 % (Full charge)
12.4	75 %
12.2	50 %
12.0	25 %
11.8	0 %

### ■ Battery Charging



#### **DANGER**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- When the battery is being activated, hydrogen and oxygen gases in the battery are extremely explosive. Keep open sparks and flames away from the battery at all times, especially when charging the battery.



#### **WARNING**

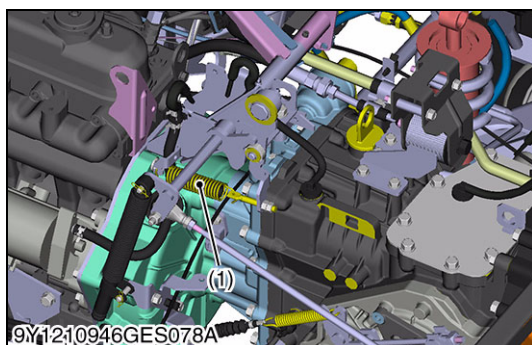
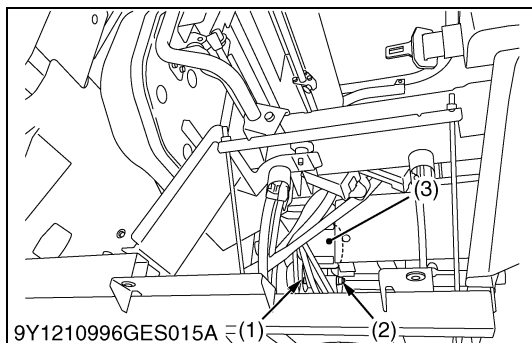
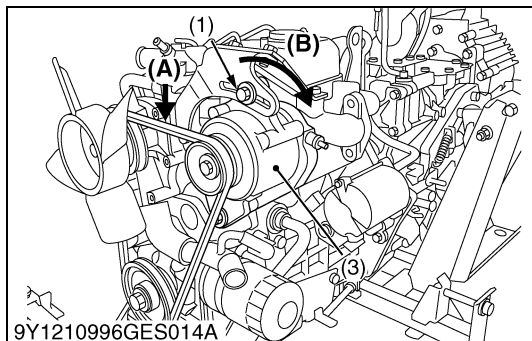
To avoid serious injury:

- When disconnecting the cable from the battery, start with the negative terminal first. When connecting the cable to the battery, start with the positive terminal first.
  - Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts.
- Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.**

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Remove the battery cover.
4. To slow charge the battery, connect the battery positive terminal to the charger positive terminal and the negative to the negative, then recharge in the standard fashion.
5. A boost charge is only for emergencies. It will partially charge the battery at a high rate and in a short time. When using a boost-charged battery, it is necessary to recharge the battery as early as possible. Failure to do this will shorten the battery's service life.
6. When exchanging an old battery for a new one, use battery of equal specification shown in table 1.

**(To be continued)**

(Continued)



### Direction for Storage

1. When storing the vehicle for a long period, remove the battery from vehicle, adjust the electrolyte to the proper level (refillable type only) and store in a dry place out of direct sunlight.
2. The battery self-discharges while it is stored. Recharge it once every 3 months in hot seasons and once every 6 months in cold seasons.

9Y1210996GEG0039US0

### Adjusting Alternator Belt Tension



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before checking belt tension.

Proper alternator belt tension	A deflection of between 7 to 9 mm (0.28 to 0.34 in.) when the belt is pressed in the middle of the span.
--------------------------------	--

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface, open the seat, remove utility box and maintenance cover.
2. Stop the engine and open the seat rear in 2 row (raise the cargo bed in 1 row and stop the engine). Remove the rear cover.
3. Apply moderate thumb pressure to the middle of the belt span between the fan drive pulley and alternator pulley.
4. If tension is incorrect, remove the battery and loosen the alternator mounting bolts and nut. Using a lever between the alternator and the engine block, pull the alternator out until the deflection of the belt falls within acceptable limits.
5. Replace alternator belt if it is damaged.

- (1) Alternator Mounting Bolt  
(2) Nut  
(3) Alternator

- (A) Check the Belt Tension  
(B) To Tighten

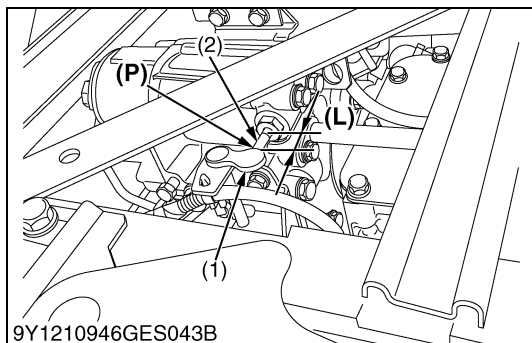
9Y1210996GEG0040US0

### Checking VHT Neutral Spring

1. Park the vehicle on a flat place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Shift the range gear shift lever to the **NEUTRAL** position.
4. Lock the hydraulic lift cylinder lever to the **NEUTRAL** position with restricting plate.
5. Start the engine.
6. Make sure that the rotation speed of the engine returns to the idling rotation immediately when taking the foot off the pedal, after depressing the speed control pedal several times.
7. If does not operate normally check the linkage. (See page 2-S36.)

- (1) Neutral Spring

9Y1210996GEG0041US0



### Checking VHT Pressure Release



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

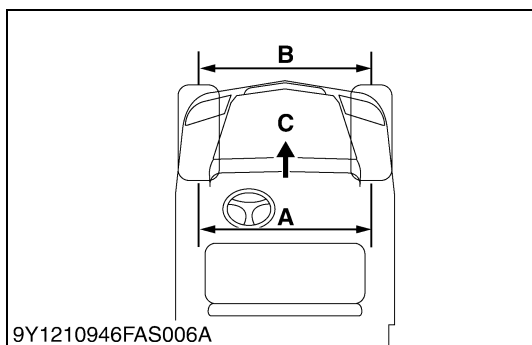
- Do not touch muffler or exhaust pipes while they are hot; severe burns could result.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface and set the parking brake.
- Start the engine and shut it off quickly.
- Check the points as shown in the figures below.
  - No clearance between rod and link.
  - The length of the rod is appeared 21.5 mm (0.85 in.) and over.

- (1) Unload Link  
(2) Unload Valve Rod

- (L) 21.5 mm and over  
(P) The Link is contact with the Rod.

9Y1210996GEG0042US0



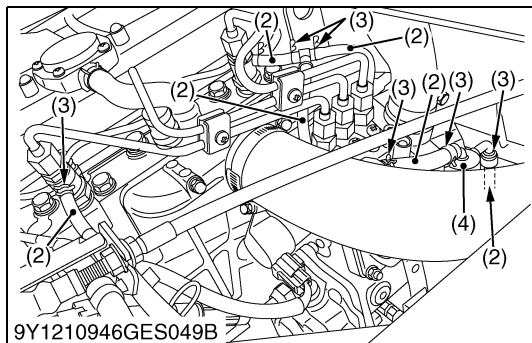
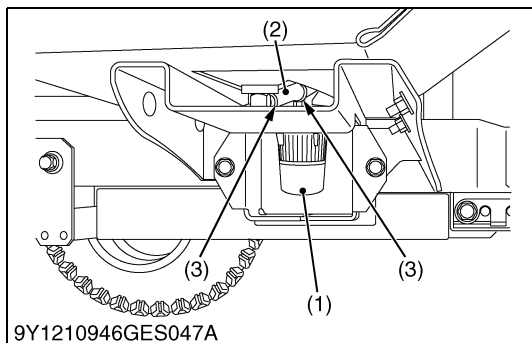
### Adjusting Toe-in

Proper toe-in	5 to 15 mm 0.2 to 0.59 in.
---------------	-------------------------------

- Park vehicle on a flat place.
- Turn steering wheel so front wheels are in the straight ahead position.
- Lock the park brake and stop the engine.
- Measure distance between tire beads at front of tire, at hub height.
- Measure distance between tire beads at rear of tire, at hub height.
- Front distance should be shorter than rear distance. If not, adjust tie rod length.

- A: Wheel-to-Wheel Distance at Rear C: FRONT  
B: Wheel-to-Wheel Distance at Front

9Y1210996GEG0043US0



## Checking Fuel Line and Fuel Filter

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine and remove the key when attempting to make the following checks and changes.
- Never fail to check the fuel lines periodically. The fuel lines are subject to wear and aging. Fuel may leak out onto the running engine, causing a fire.

The fuel line connections should be checked annually or every 100 service hours, whichever comes first.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface, raise the cargo bed, mount the safety support and shut off the engine.
2. The fuel line is made of rubber and ages regardless of service period.
3. If the fuel line and clamps are found to be damaged or deteriorated, replace them.
4. Check fuel filter, if it is clogged by debris or contaminated with water, replace it.

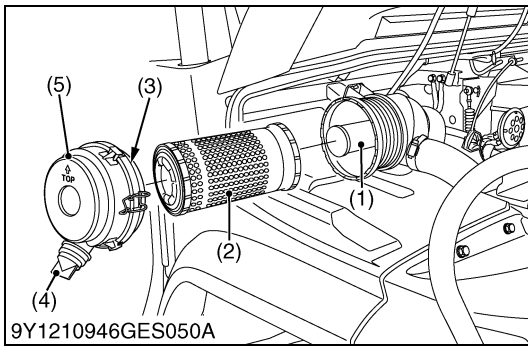
### **■ IMPORTANT**

- When the fuel line is disconnected for maintenance or repair, close both ends of the fuel line with a piece of clean cloth or paper to prevent dust and dirt from entering. In addition, particular care must be taken not to admit dust and dirt into the fuel pump. Entrance of even a small amount of dust or dirt cause premature wear and malfunction of the fuel pump and injector components.

- (1) Fuel Filter  
(2) Fuel Line

- (3) Pipe Clamp  
(4) Fuel Pump

9Y1210996GEG0044US0



### **Cleaning Air Cleaner Primary Element**

1. Remove the air cleaner cover and primary element.
2. Clean the primary element:
  - (1) When dry dust adheres to the element, blow compressed air from the inside, turning the element. Pressure of compressed air must be under 205 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 30 psi).
  - (2) When carbon or oil adheres to the element, replace the element with new one even if it has not been used for 1 year.
3. Replace the primary element:  
Once yearly or after every sixth cleaning, whichever comes first.

#### ■ **NOTE**

- Check to see if the evacuator valve is blocked with dust.
- Check the rubber seal. Replace if damaged.

#### ■ **IMPORTANT**

- The air cleaner uses a dry element, never apply oil.
- Do not run the engine with filter element removed.
- Be sure to refit the cover with the arrow (on the rear of cover) upright. If the cover is improperly fitted, evacuator valve will not function and dust will adhere to the element.
- Do not touch the secondary element except in cases where replacing is required.

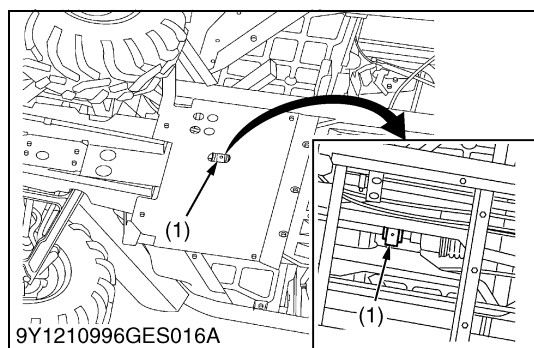
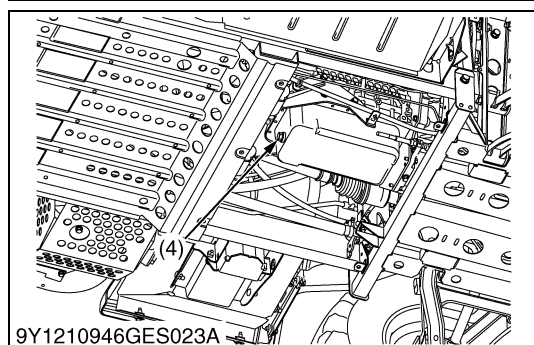
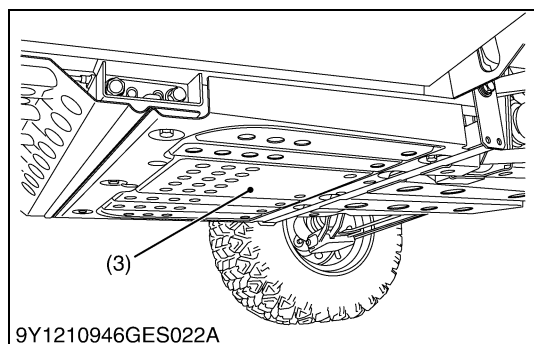
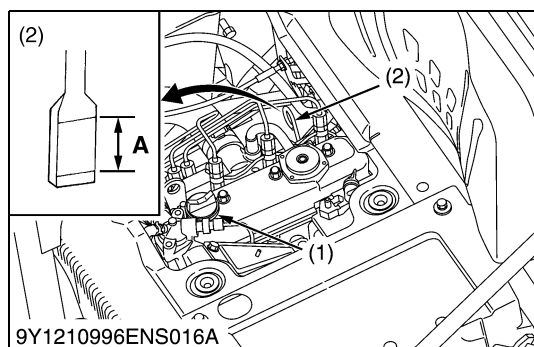
#### ■ **Evacuator Valve**

Open the evacuator valve once a week under ordinary conditions-or daily when used in a dusty place-to get rid of large particles of dust and dirt.

- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Secondary (Safety) Element | (4) Evacuator Valve |
| (2) Primary Element            | (5) Cover           |
| (3) Rubber Seal                |                     |

9Y1210996GEG0045US0

## [5] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 200 HOURS



### Changing Engine Oil



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
  - Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. In 1 row seating mode, raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
  3. Stop the engine.
  4. Remove the rear skid plate.
  5. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug at the bottom of the engine and completely drain the oil into an oil pan.  
All the used oil can be drained out easily when the engine is still warm.
  6. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
  7. In 2 row seating mode, raise the rear seat.
  8. Remove the rear cover.
  9. Fill with the new oil up to the upper line on the dipstick.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

Engine oil	Capacity	[Filter exchanged] 4.1 L 4.3 U.S.qts 3.6 Imp.qts
		[Filter non-exchanged] 3.8 L 4.0 U.S.qts 3.3 Imp.qts

- (1) Oil Inlet
- (2) Dipstick
- (3) Rear Skid Plate
- (4) Drain Plug

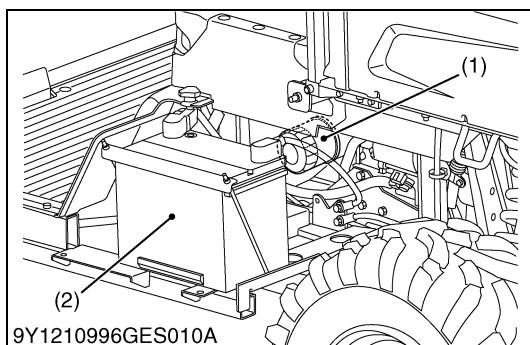
**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996GEG0025US0

### Greasing

1. Apply a small amount of multi-purpose grease every 200 hours.
- (1) DT Shaft Bearing (Grease Fitting)

9Y1210996GEG0046US0



## Replacing Engine Oil Filter

### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil filter.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Remove the rear skid plate.
4. Remove the oil filter.
5. Put a film of clean engine oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
6. Tighten the filter quickly until it contacts the mounting surface. Tighten the filter by hand an additional 1/2 turn only.
7. After the new filter has been replaced, the engine oil normally decreases a little. Make sure that the engine oil does not leak through the seal and be sure to check the oil level on the dipstick. Then, replenish the engine oil up to the prescribed level.
8. Properly dispose of used filter.

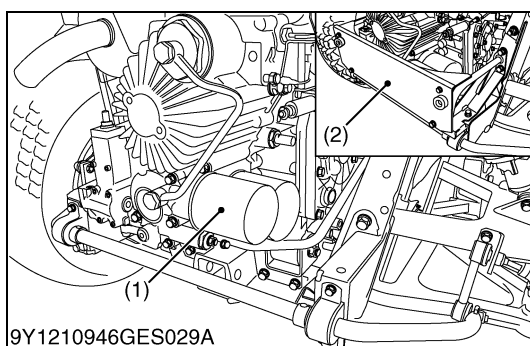
### ■ IMPORTANT

- To prevent serious damage to the engine, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

(1) Engine Oil Filter

(2) Battery

9Y1210996GEG0027US0



## Replacing Transmission Oil Filter [VHT]

### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil filter.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Remove the rear guard.
3. Remove the oil filter.
4. Put a film of clean transmission oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
5. Quickly tighten the filter by hand until it contacts the mounting surface, then, with a filter wrench, tighten it an additional 1/2 turn only.
6. After the new filter has been replaced, fill the transmission oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.
7. After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again, add oil to the prescribed level.
8. Make sure that the transmission fluid doesn't leak past the seal on the filters.
9. Install the rear guard.

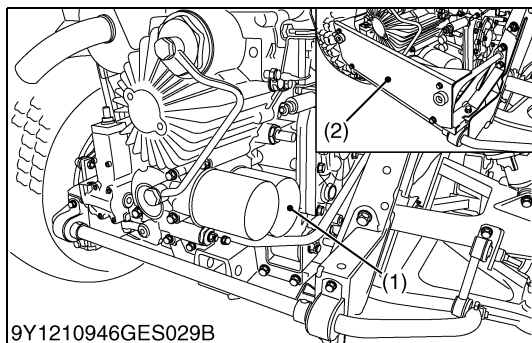
### ■ IMPORTANT

- To prevent serious damage to the transmission, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

(1) Transmission Oil Filter (VHT):  
(Yellow Color)

(2) Rear Guard

9Y1210996GEG0028US0



## Replacing Transmission Oil Filter [SUCTION]

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

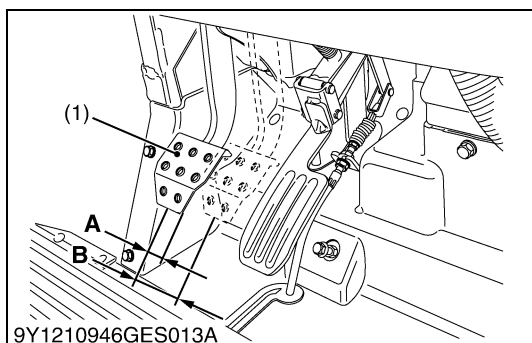
- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
  - Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.
1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
  2. Remove the rear guard.
  3. Remove the oil filter.
  4. Put a film of clean transmission oil on the rubber seal of the new filter.
  5. Quickly tighten the filter by hand until it contacts the mounting surface, then, with a filter wrench, tighten it an additional 1/2 turn only.
  6. After the new filter has been replaced, fill the transmission oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.
  7. After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again, add oil to the prescribed level.
  8. Make sure that the transmission fluid doesn't leak past the seal on the filters.
  9. Install the rear guard.

### **■ IMPORTANT**

- To prevent serious damage to the transmission, use only a KUBOTA genuine filter.

(1) Transmission Oil Filter (Suction) (2) Rear Guard (Black Color)

9Y1210996GEG0029US0



## Checking Brake Pedal

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Stop the engine and chock the wheels before checking brake pedal.
- If movement is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

### **■ Checking the brake pedal free travel**

Proper brake pedal free travel	8 to 18 mm (0.3 to 0.7 in.) on the pedal
--------------------------------	--

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Slightly depress the brake pedal and measure free travel at the top of the pedal stroke.
3. If brake pedal free travel is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

### **■ Checking the brake pedal stroke**

Pedal stroke	Less than 150 mm (5.9 in.) on the pedal
--------------	---

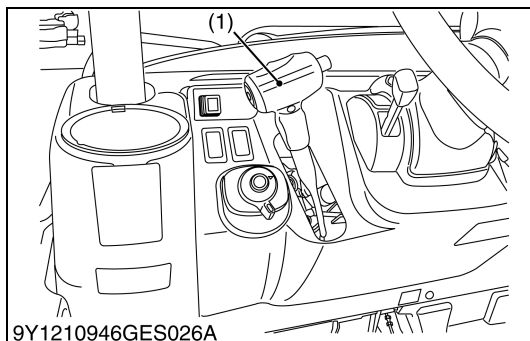
1. Release the parking brake.
2. Step on the pedal and measure the pedal stroke.
3. If brake pedal stroke is outside of the specifications, adjusting the brake.

(1) Brake Pedal

**A: FREE TRAVEL**  
**B: PEDAL STROKE**

9Y1210996GEG0030US0





### Adjusting Parking Brake

Proper parking brake lever free play range

1 notch

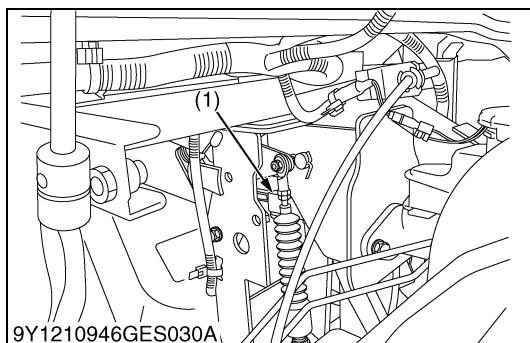
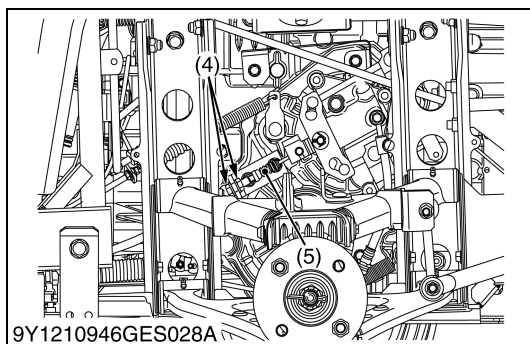
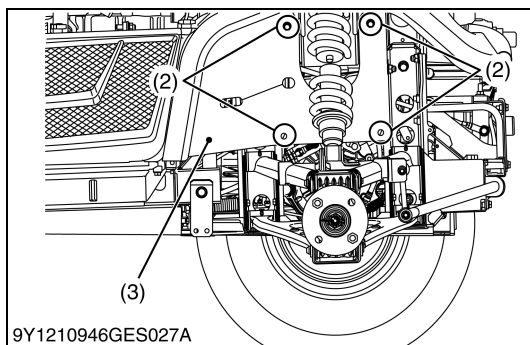
#### ■ Adjusting procedure

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Jack up the rear wheels.
4. Remove the left rear tire.
5. Remove the mud guard of rubber.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Loosen the lock nuts.
8. Adjust the cable wire length.
9. Tighten the lock nuts securely.
10. Install the mud guard.
11. Install the left rear tire.

- (1) Parking Brake Lever  
(2) Push Rivet  
(3) Mud Guard

- (4) Lock Nut  
(5) Cable Wire

9Y1210996GEG0031US0

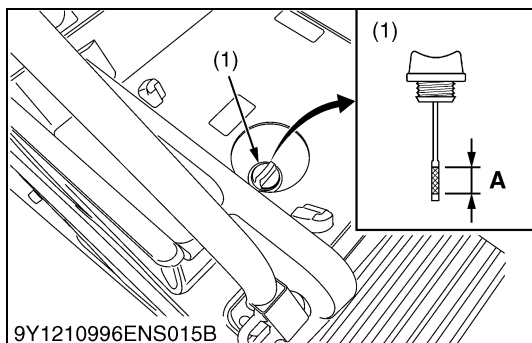
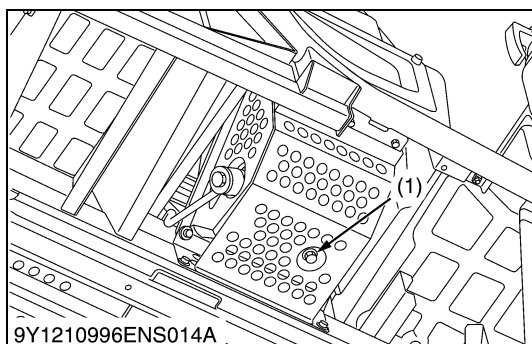
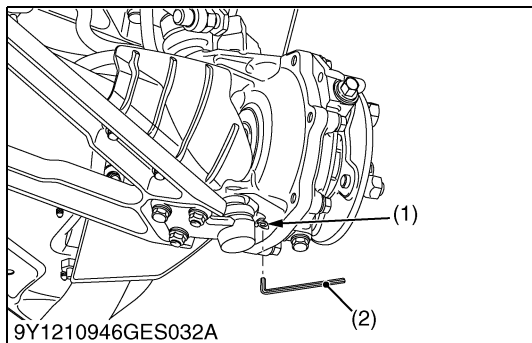
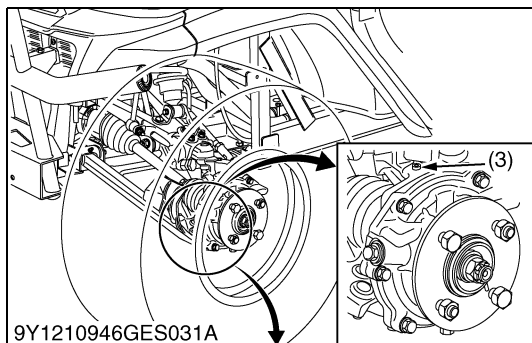


### Checking Brake Light Switch

1. Park the vehicle on a flat surface.
2. Step on the brake pedal to check if the brake light comes on.
3. If it does not, check the bulb or brake light switch.

- (1) Brake Light Switch

9Y1210996GEG0032US0



### Checking Front Brake Case

1. Remove the drain plugs and the air-bleeding hole plugs.
2. Check the brake case for brake fluid leak.

(1) Drain Plug  
(2) Allen Key

(3) Air-Bleeding Hole Plug

9Y1210996GEG0033US0

### Changing Hydraulic Tank Oil



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the seat and remove the utility box.
3. Remove the rubber cap.
4. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug and filling plug and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
5. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
6. Fill with new KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid up to the upper line on the dipstick.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)

How to check:

Wipe dipstick clean with a rag and screw it into filling hole. Remove dipstick again to see if the oil level is between the upper and lower line.

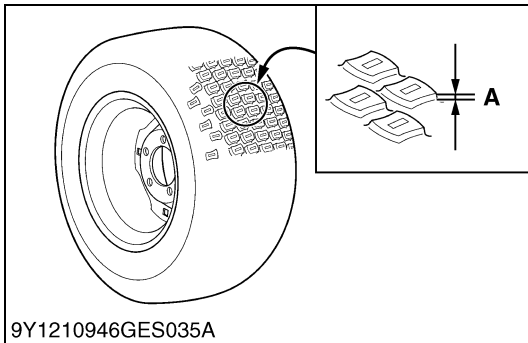
7. After filling, reinstall the filling plug.
8. Properly dispose of used filter.

Hydraulic tank oil	Capacity	18.0 L 19.0 U.S.qts 16.0 Imp.qts
--------------------	----------	--

(1) Drain Plug

9Y1210996GEG0047US0

## [6] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 300 HOURS



### Checking Tire

1. Check to see if tires are not damaged.
2. If the tires are cracked, bulged, or cut, or they are worn out, replace or repair them at once.

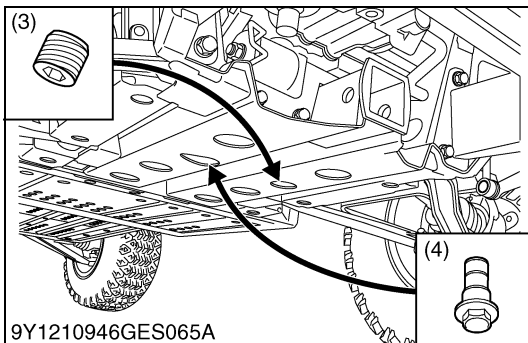
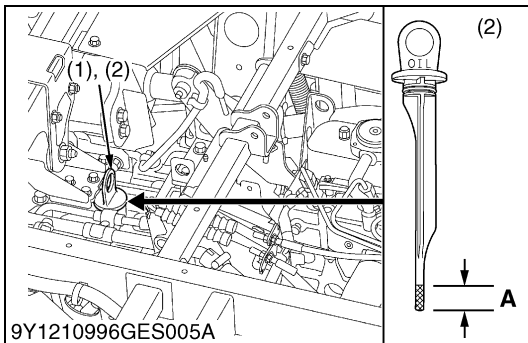
### ■ Tire Tread Depth

Always replace the tires when the tread depth is worn to minimum allowable.

A: 3 mm (0.12 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0034US0

## [7] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 400 HOURS



### Changing Transmission Fluid



### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug at the bottom of the transmission case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
5. Fill with the new KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid up to the upper cross hatched area on the dipstick.  
(Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)
6. After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again; add oil to prescribed level.

Transmission oil	Capacity	7.0 L 1.8 U.S.gals 1.5 Imp.gals
------------------	----------	---------------------------------------

### ■ IMPORTANT

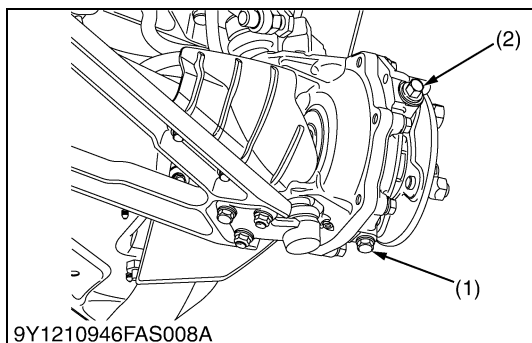
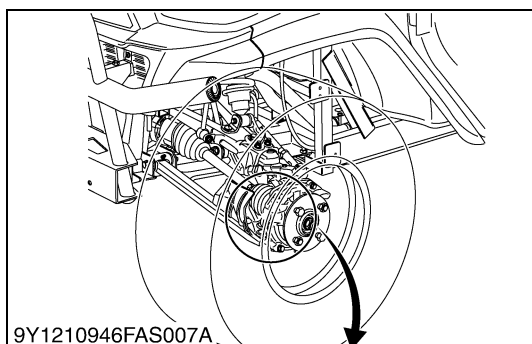
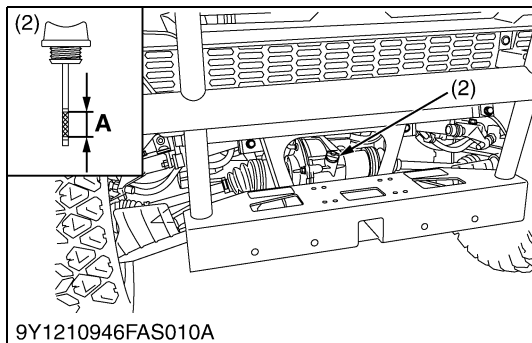
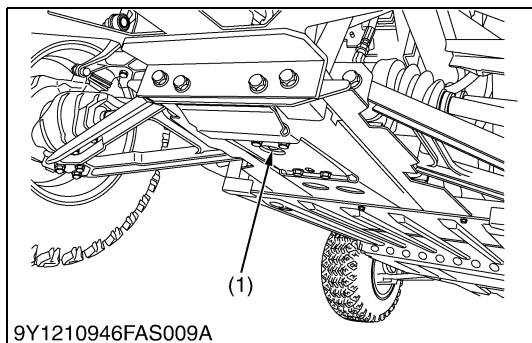
- Do not operate the vehicle immediately after changing the transmission fluid.

Run the engine at medium speed for a few minutes to prevent damage to the transmission.

- (1) Oil Inlet
- (2) Dipstick
- (3) Drain Plug
- (4) Magnet Plug

A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.

9Y1210996GEG0048US0



### Changing Front Axle Case Oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Turn over the rubber sheet.
3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug and the filling plug at the front axle case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
5. Fill with the new oil up to the upper line on the dipstick. (Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)
6. After filling, reinstall the filling plug.

Front axle case oil	Capacity	0.6 L 0.6 U.S.qts 0.52 Imp.qts
---------------------	----------	--------------------------------------

- (1) Drain Plug  
(2) Filling Plug with Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable with in this range.**

9Y1210996GEG0049US0

### Changing Front Knuckle Case Oil

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, flat and level surface.
2. Remove the tire.
3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain and filling plugs at the L.H. knuckle case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
5. Fill with the new oil up to the filling port level. (Refer to "4. LUBRICANTS, FUEL AND COOLANT" on page G-8.)
6. After filling, reinstall the filling plug.
7. Use the same procedure to change the R.H. knuckle case oil.

Front knuckle case oil	Capacity (one side)	(Reference) 0.25 L 0.26 U.S.qts 0.22 Imp.qts
------------------------	---------------------	---

- (1) Drain Plug

- (2) Filling Plug

9Y1210996GEG0050US0

### Replacing Fuel Filter

1. See page G-37.

9Y1210996GEG0051US0

## **[8] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 800 HOURS**

### Adjusting Engine Valve Clearance

1. See page 1-S12.

9Y1210996GEG0052US0

## **[9] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 1500 HOURS**

### Checking Fuel Injection Nozzle Injection Pressure

1. See page 1-S14.

9Y1210996GEG0053US0

## [10] CHECK POINT OF EVERY 3000 HOURS

### Checking Injection Pump

1. See page 1-S42.

9Y1210996GEG0054US0

## [11] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 1 YEAR

### Replacing Fuel Line

1. See page G-37.

9Y1210996GEG0055US0

### Replacing Air Cleaner Primary Element

1. Replace the both primary Refer to "Cleaning Air Cleaner Primary Element". (See page G-38.)

9Y1210996GEG0056US0

### Checking Radiator Hose, Pipe and Clamp

Park the vehicle on a flat surface. Raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.

Check to see if radiator hoses are properly fixed every 1 year of operation.

1. If hose clamps are loose or water leaks, tighten bands securely.
2. Replace hoses and tighten hose clamps securely, if radiator hoses are swollen, hardened or cracked.

Replace hoses and hose clamps every 4 years or earlier if checked and found that hoses are swollen, hardened or cracked.

#### ■ **Precaution at Overheating**

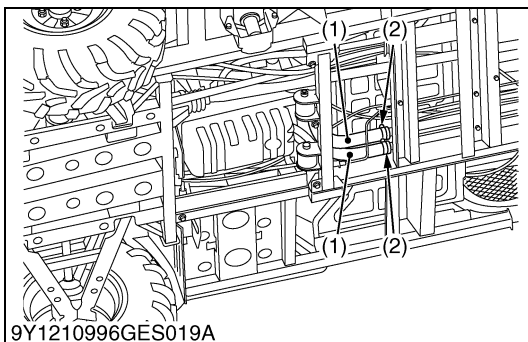
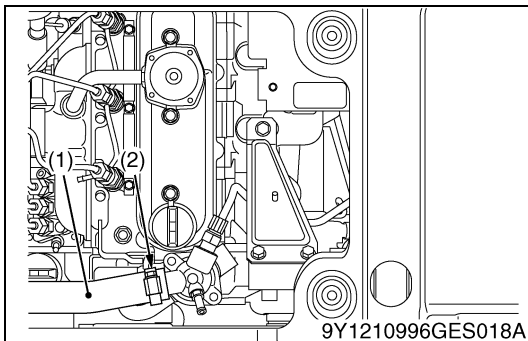
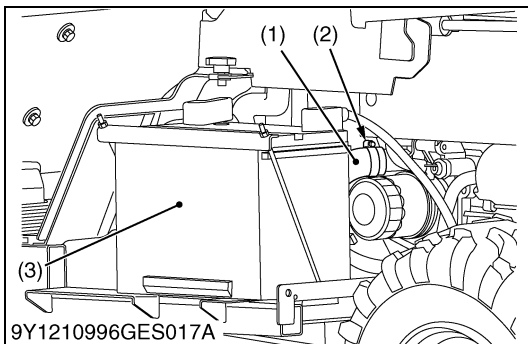
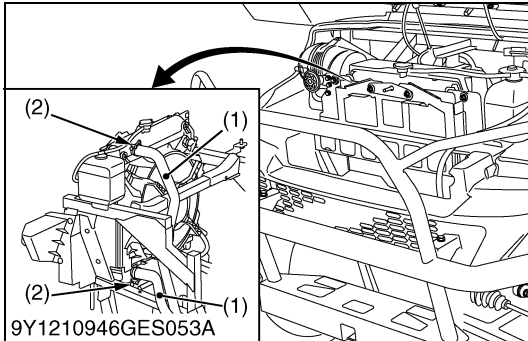
Take the following actions in the event the coolant temperature is close to or more than the boiling point, which is called Overheating.

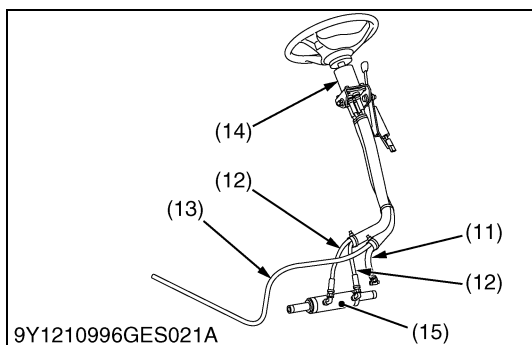
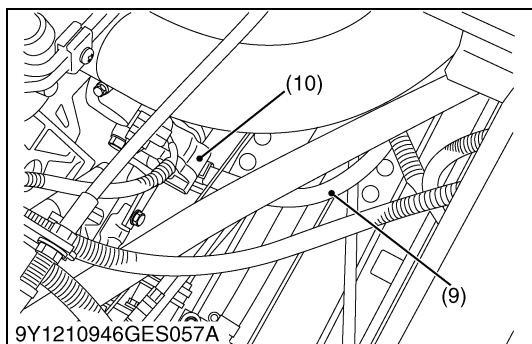
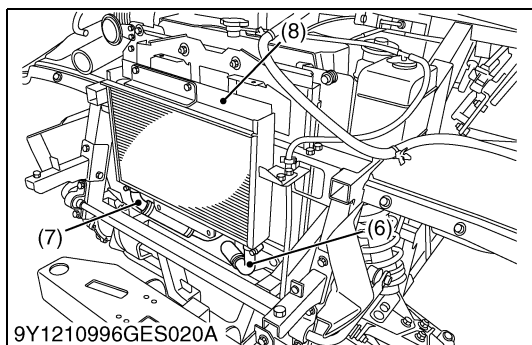
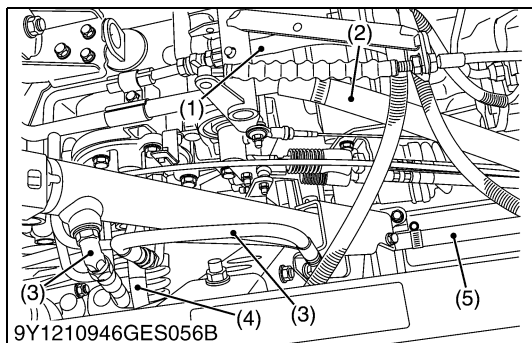
1. Stop the vehicle operation in a safe place, unload the engine and remain at idle.
2. Don't stop the engine suddenly, but stop it after about 5 minutes of unloaded idling.
3. Keep yourself well away from the vehicle for at least 10 minutes or while the steam is blowing out.
4. Check to confirm that there is no danger from the overheat condition, check the cause of the overheat and fix the cause. After the engine has cooled, re-start the engine.

- (1) Radiator Hose
- (2) Clamp Band

- (3) Battery
- (4) Oil Cooler

9Y1210996GEG0057US0



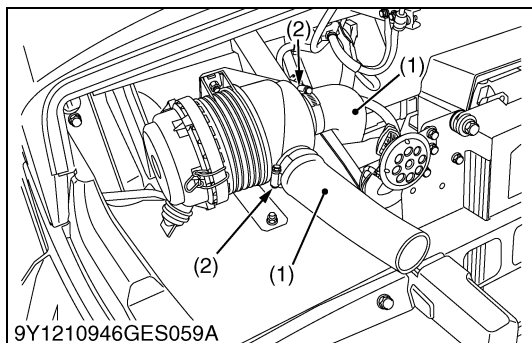


### Checking Hydraulic Oil Line

1. Check to see if the hoses and hose clamps are tight and not damaged.
2. If hoses and clamps are found to be worn or damaged, replace or repair them at once.

- (1) Hydraulic Pump → Control Valve
- (2) HST → Oil Tank
- (3) Control Valve ↔ Lift Cylinder
- (4) Control Valve → Power Steering Unit
- (5) Oil Tank → HST
- (6) Power Steering Unit → Oil Cooler
- (7) Oil Cooler → Oil Tank
- (8) Oil Cooler
- (9) Oil Tank → Hydraulic Pump
- (10) Hydraulic Pump
- (11) Power Steering Hose (Power Steering Unit → Oil Cooler)
- (12) Power Steering Hose (Power Steering Unit ↔ Power Steering Cylinder)
- (13) Power Steering Hose  
(With Hydraulic Dump: Power Steering Unit ← Control Valve,  
Without Hydraulic Dump: Power Steering Unit ← Hydraulic Pump)
- (14) Power Steering Unit
- (15) Power Steering Cylinder

9Y1210996GEG0058US0



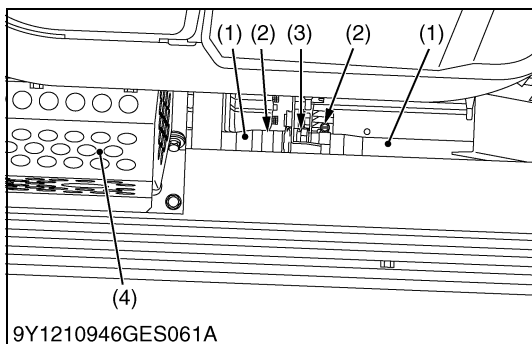
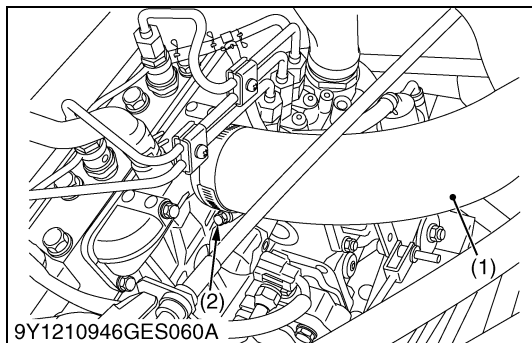
### Checking Intake Air Line

1. Check to see if the hoses and hose clamps are tight and not damaged.
2. If hoses and clamps are found to be worn or damaged, replace or repair them at once.

- (1) Hose  
(2) Hose Clamp

- (3) Joint  
(4) Hydraulic Tank

9Y1210996GEG0059US0



### Checking Engine Breather Hose



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine and remove the key before checking engine breather hose.

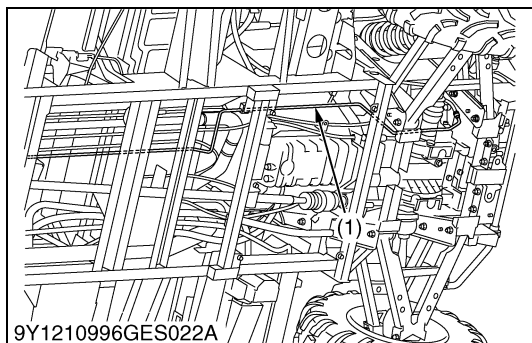
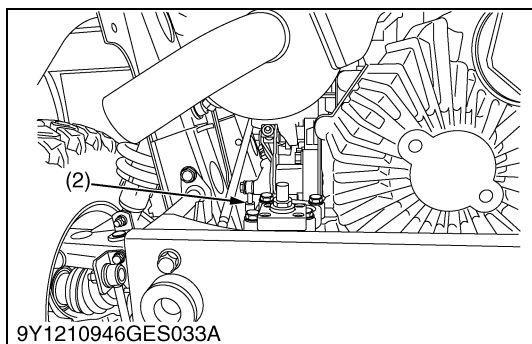
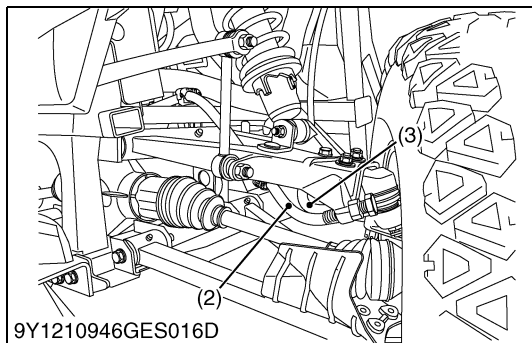
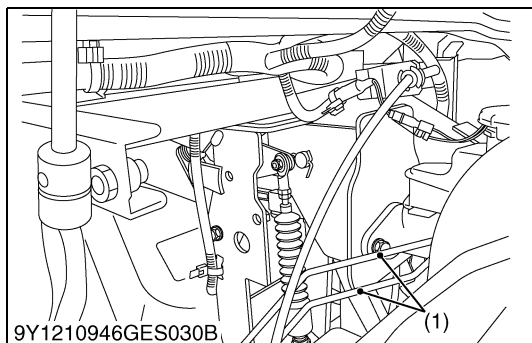
Check to see if engine breather hoses are properly fixed every 1 year.

1. Stop the engine and let cool down.
2. If hose clamps are loose or water leaks, tighten bands securely.
3. Replace hoses and tighten hose clamps securely, if engine breather hoses are swollen, hardened or cracked.

Replace hoses and hose clamps every 4 years or earlier if you checked and found that hoses are swollen, hardened or cracked.

- (1) Engine Breather Hose

9Y1210996GEG0100US0



### Checking Brake Hose and Pipe

1. Check to see that brake hose and pipe are not swollen, hardened or cracked.
2. Check the brake hose and pipe joints for oil leaks.
3. If there is any abnormality, replace the new one.

- (1) Brake Pipe  
(2) Brake Hose

- (3) Breather Hose

9Y1210996GEG0061US0

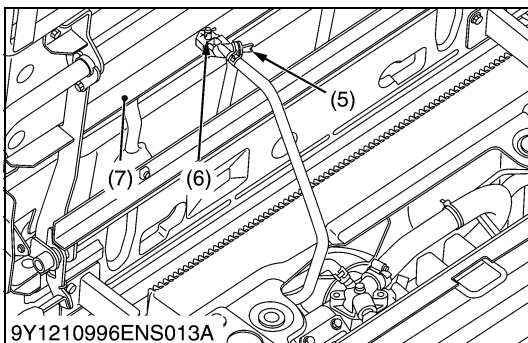
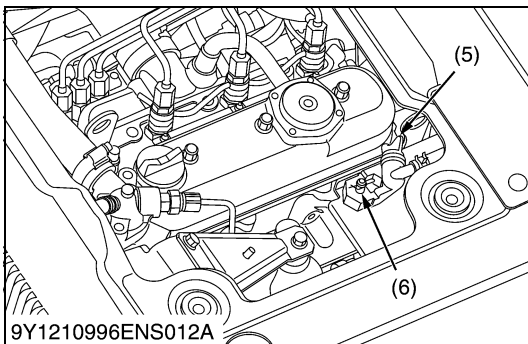
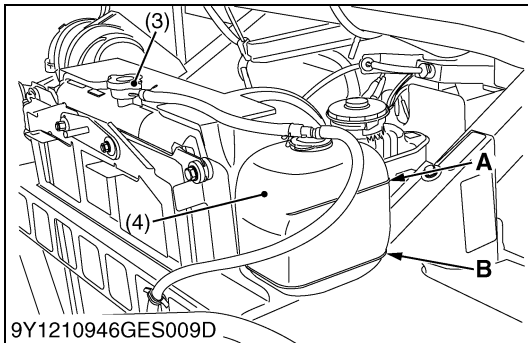
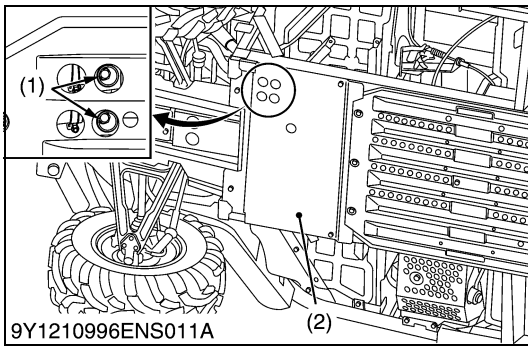
## **[12] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 2 YEARS**

### Changing Brake Fluid

1. See page 4-S5.

9Y1210996GEG0062US0





## Flushing Cooling System and Changing Coolant

### **⚠ WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not remove the radiator cap while coolant is hot. When cool, slowly rotate cap to the first stop and allow sufficient time for excess pressure to escape before removing the cap completely.
- When the coolant has cooled down, remove the coolant breather together with the pin at the rear seat back.

1. Stop the engine and let cool down.
2. Open the plastic cover located below the rear seat. Draw out the coolant breather hose and secure it to the pin of the rear seat back.
3. Open the hood.
4. To drain the coolant, open the radiator drain plug and remove radiator cap and engine coolant breather. The radiator cap must be removed to completely drain the coolant.
5. After all coolant is drained, close the drain plug.
6. Fill with clean water and cooling system cleaner.
7. Follow directions of the cleaner instruction.
8. After flushing, fill with clean distilled water and antifreeze until the coolant level is just below the radiator cap. Install the radiator cap securely.
9. Fill with fresh distilled water up to the **"FULL"** mark on the recovery tank.
10. Close the engine coolant breather.
11. Start and operate the engine for few minutes.
12. Stop the engine and let cool.
13. Check coolant level of recovery tank and add coolant if necessary.
14. Place the coolant breather hose back to its original position. Close the plastic cover. Finally set the rear seat back into position.

Coolant	Capacity	
		6.1 L
		6.4 U.S.qts
		5.4 Imp.qts

### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not start engine without coolant.
- Do not remove the cap on the radiator.
- Use clean, fresh distilled water and anti-freeze to fill the radiator and recovery tank.
- When the anti-freeze is mixed with distilled water, the antifreeze mixing ratio is 50 %.
- Securely tighten radiator cap. If the cap is loose or improperly fitted, water may leak out and the engine could overheat.
- Make sure that the engine coolant breather is closed, after filling the coolant.

- (1) Drain Plug
- (2) Front Skid Plate
- (3) Radiator Cap
- (4) Recovery Tank
- (5) Engine Coolant Breather
- (6) Pin
- (7) Rear Seat

A: FULL  
B: LOW

9Y1210996GEG0063US0

## ■ Anti-Freeze



### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- When using anti-freeze, put on some protection such as rubber gloves. (Anti-freeze contains poison.)
- If it is swallowed, seek immediate medical help. Do NOT make a person throw up unless told to do so by poison control or a health care professional. Use standard first aid and CPR for signs of shock or cardiac arrest. Call your local Poison Control Center or your local emergency number for further assistance.
- When anti-freeze comes in contact with the skin or clothing, wash it off immediately.
- Do not mix different types of Anti-freeze. The mixture can produce chemical reaction causing harmful substances.
- Anti-freeze is extremely flammable and explosive under certain conditions. Keep fire and children away from anti-freeze.
- When draining fluids from the engine, place some container underneath the engine body.
- Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
- Also, observe the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of antifreeze.

Always use a 50/50 mix of long-life coolant and clean soft water in KUBOTA engines.

1. Long-life coolant (hereafter LLC) comes in several types. Use ethylene glycol (EG) type for this engine.
2. Before employing LLC-mixed cooling water, fill the radiator with fresh water and empty it again.  
Repeat this procedure 2 or 3 times to clean up the inside.
3. Mixing the LLC  
Premix 50 % LLC with 50 % clean soft water. When mixing, stir it up well, and then fill into the radiator.
4. The procedure for the mixing of water and anti-freeze differs according to the make of the anti-freeze and the ambient temperature. Refer to SAE J1034 standard, more specifically also to SAE J814c.

## ■ IMPORTANT

When mixing the anti-freeze with water, the anti-freeze mixing ratio is 50 %.

Vol % Anti-freeze	Freezing Point		Boiling Point*	
	°C	°F	°C	°F
50	-37	-34	108	226

\*At  $1.013 \times 10^5$  Pa (760 mmHg) pressure (atmospheric).

A higher boiling point is obtained by using a radiator pressure cap which permits the development of pressure within the cooling system.

(To be continued)

**(Continued)**

5. Adding the LLC
  - (1) Add only water if the coolant level reduces in the cooling system by evaporation.
  - (2) If there is a mixture leak, add the LLC of the same manufacturer and type in the mixing ratio 50 %.

\* Never add any long-life coolant of different manufacturer. (Different brands may have different additive components, and the engine may fail to perform as specified.)
6. When the LLC is mixed, do not employ any radiator cleaning agent. The LLC contains anti-corrosive agent. If mixed with the cleaning agent, sludge may build up, adversely affecting the engine parts.
7. Kubota's genuine long-life coolant has a service life of 2 years. Be sure to change the coolant every 2 years.

**■ NOTE**

- The above data represent industry standards that necessitate a minimum glycol content in the concentrated anti-freeze.

9Y1210996GEG0064US0

**[13] CHECK POINTS OF EVERY 4 YEARS****Replacing Fuel Line**

1. See page G-37.

9Y1210996GEG0055US0

**Replacing Radiator Hose, Replace the Hoses and Clamps (Water Pipes)**

1. See page G-46.

9Y1210996GEG0065US0

**Replacing Hydraulic Oil Line**

1. See page G-47.

9Y1210996GEG0066US0

**Replacing Intake Air Line**

1. See page G-48.

9Y1210996GEG0067US0

**Replacing Engine Breather Hose**

1. See page G-48.

9Y1210996GEG0060US0

**Replacing Brake Hose and Pipe**

1. See page G-49.

9Y1210996GEG0099US0

**Replacing Brake Master Cylinder (Inner Parts)**

1. See page 4-S15.

9Y1210996GEG0068US0

**Replacing Rear Brake Cylinder Seal**

1. See page 4-S17.

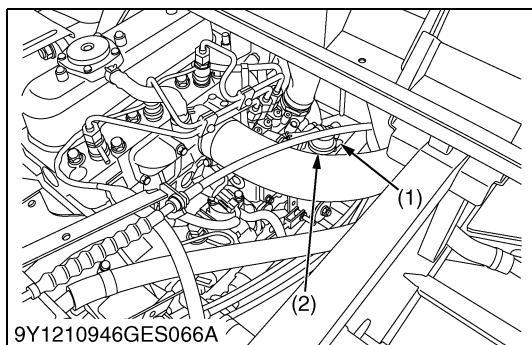
9Y1210996GEG0069US0

**Replacing Front Brake Seal**

1. See page 4-S13.

9Y1210996GEG0070US0

## [14] OTHERS



9Y1210946GES066A

### **Bleeding Fuel System**

Air must be removed:

1. When the fuel filter or lines are removed.
2. When tank is completely empty.
3. After the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time.

#### ■ **Bleeding procedure is as follows:**

1. Fill the fuel tank with fuel.
2. Pump the fuel pump lever. The fuel pump lever will pump easily at first and with added resistance as air is purged from the system.
3. Start the engine and run for about 30 seconds, and then stop the engine.

(1) Fuel Pump Lever

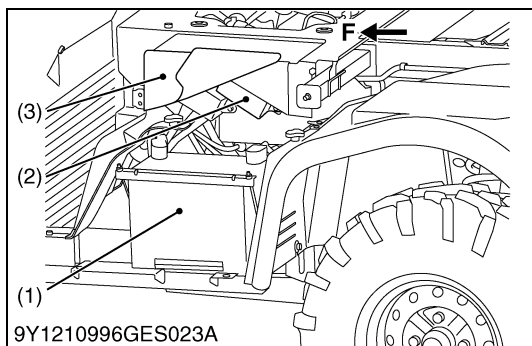
(2) Fuel Pump

9Y1210996GEG0071US0

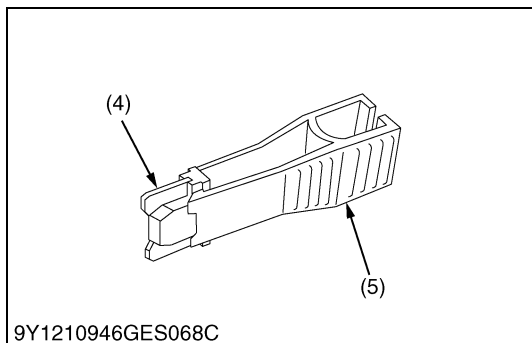
### **Cleaning around Engine**

1. See page G-18.

9Y1210996GEG0072US0



9Y1210996GES023A



9Y1210946GES068C

### **Replacing Fuse**

The vehicle electrical system is protected from potential damage by fuses.

A blown fuse indicates that there is an overload or short somewhere in the electrical system.

If any of the fuses should blow, replace with a new one of the same capacity.

#### ■ **IMPORTANT**

- **Before replacing a blown fuse, determine why the fuse blew and make any necessary repairs. Failure to follow this procedure may result in serious damage to the vehicle electrical system.**

#### ■ **Replacement procedure**

1. Disconnect the negative cable of the battery.
2. Turn over the maintenance cover under the left side of the rear seat.
3. Remove the fuse box cover.
4. Pull out the blown fuse using FUSE PULLER in the fuse box.
5. Insert a new fuse into the fuse box.
6. Install the fuse box cover and the maintenance cover.
7. Connect the negative battery cable.

(1) Battery

(2) Fuse Box

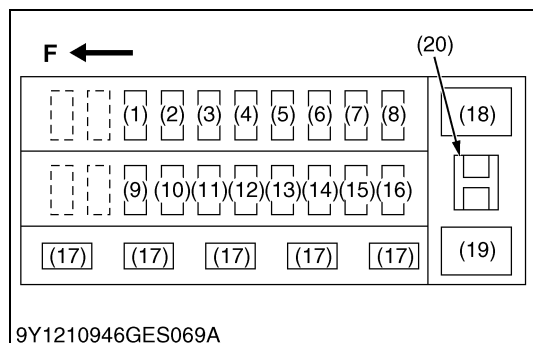
(3) Maintenance Cover

(4) Fuse

(5) Fuse Puller

**F: Front**

9Y1210996GEG0073US0



### Protected Circuit

Fuse No.	Capacity (A)	Protected circuit
(1)	5	Glow lamp
(2)	5	Starter relay
(3)	10	Radiator fan relay
(4)	10	AUX / B, Buzzer relay (Option, Lamp)
(5)	5	Solenoid
(6)	5	Meter (IGN)
(7)	—	—
(8)	15	Head light blinker (Front)
(9)	15	Blinker (Rear) brake lamp
(10)	30	Radiator fan
(11)	20	—
(12)	10	DC output
(13)	10	Horn
(14)	—	—
(15)	30	Solenoid
(16)	5	Meter (BAT)
(17)	30, 20, 15, 10, 5	Spare
(18)	Slow-blow fuse (60)	Key switch
(19)	Slow-blow fuse (60)	Alternator
(20)	—	Fuse puller

**F: Front**

9Y1210996GEG0074US0

### Replacing Slow-Blow Fuses

The slow-blow fuses are intended to protect the electrical cabling. If any of them have blown out, be sure to pinpoint the cause. Never use any substitute, use only a KUBOTA genuine part.

#### ■ Replacement procedure

1. Disconnect the negative cable of the battery.
2. Open the seats and remove the utility box and maintenance cover.
3. Remove the fuse box cover.
4. Pull out the slow-blow fuse.
5. Insert a new slow-blow fuse into the slow-blow fuse box.
6. Install the slow-blow fuse box cover and the maintenance cover.
7. Connect the negative battery cable.

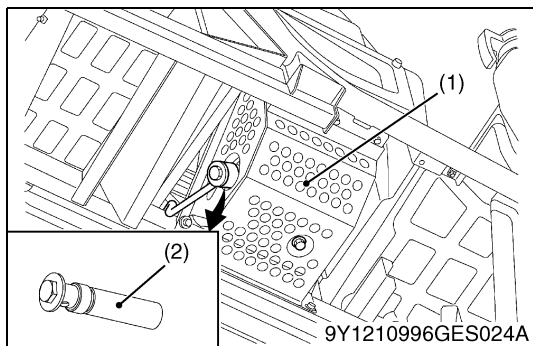
9Y1210996GEG0075US0

### Replacing Light Bulb

1. Head light and turn signal light (front)  
Take the bulb out of the light body and replace it with a new one.
2. Other lights  
Detach the lens and replace the bulb.

Light	Capacity
Head light (Clear type)	37.5 W
Tail light	5 W
Brake light	21 W
Turn signal light (front)	21 W (if equipped)
Turn signal light (rear)	21 W (if equipped)
Work light (front)	35 W (if equipped)
Work light (rear)	27 W (if equipped)

9Y1210996GEG0076US0

**Checking Hydraulic Tank Suction Strainer**

1. Make sure that the hydraulic tank is not damaged and the oil does not leak out of the hydraulic tank.
2. Make sure that the water is not mixed with the oil.
3. When the suction strainer is dirty, wash it with the light oil.

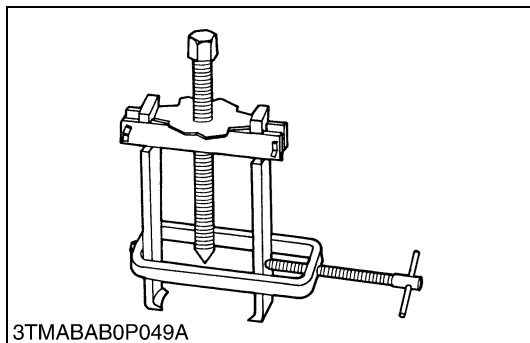
(1) Hydraulic Tank

(2) Suction Strainer

9Y1210996GEG0077US0

## 8. SPECIAL TOOLS

### [1] SPECIAL TOOLS FOR ENGINE



#### Special Use Puller Set

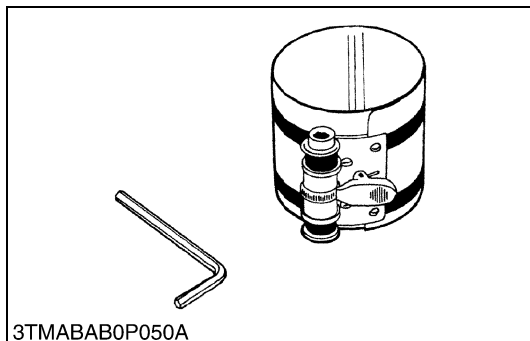
##### Code No.

- 07916-09032

##### Application

- Use exclusively to pull out bearing, gears and other parts with ease.

WSM000001GEG0011US0



#### Piston Ring Compressor

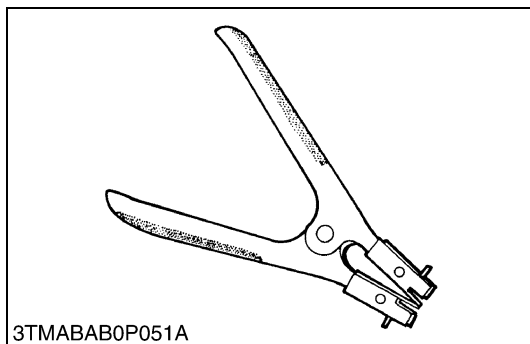
##### Code No.

- 07909-32111

##### Application

- Use exclusively to push in the piston with piston rings into the cylinder.

WSM000001GEG0012US0



#### Piston Ring Tool

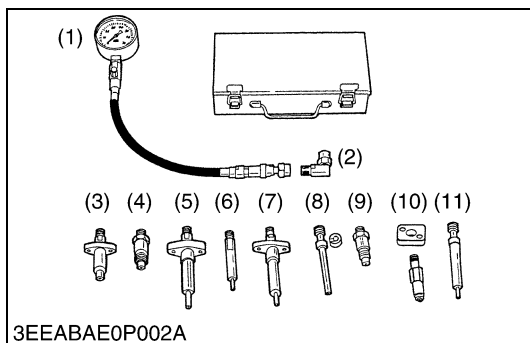
##### Code No.

- 07909-32121

##### Application

- Use exclusively to remove or install the piston ring with ease.

WSM000001GEG0013US0



#### Diesel Engine Compression Tester (for Injection Nozzle)

##### Code No.

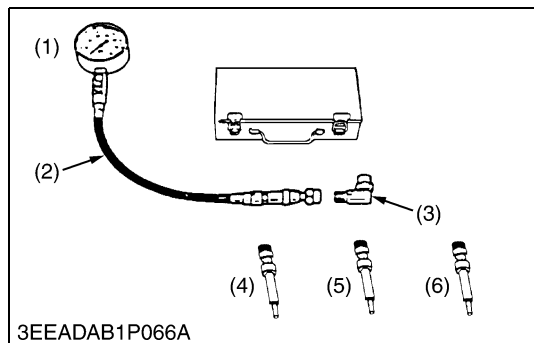
- 07909-30208 (Assembly)
- 07909-30934 (A to F)
- 07909-31211 (E and F)
- 07909-31231 (H)
- 07909-31251 (G)
- 07909-31271 (I)
- 07909-31281 (J)

##### Application

- Use to measure diesel engine compression and diagnostics of need for major overhaul.

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| (1) Gauge     | (7) Adaptor F  |
| (2) L Joint   | (8) Adaptor G  |
| (3) Adaptor A | (9) Adaptor H  |
| (4) Adaptor B | (10) Adaptor I |
| (5) Adaptor C | (11) Adaptor J |
| (6) Adaptor E |                |

WSM000001GEG0014US0



### **Diesel Engine Compression Tester (for Glow Plug)**

#### **Code No.**

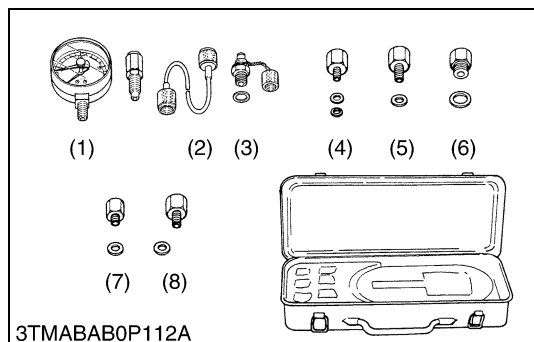
- 07909-39081 (Assembly)
- 07909-31291 (**K**)
- 07909-31301 (**L**)
- 07909-31311 (**M**)

#### **Application**

- Use to measure diesel engine compression and diagnosis of need for major overhaul.

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Gauge          | (4) Adaptor <b>K</b> |
| (2) Hose Assembly  | (5) Adaptor <b>L</b> |
| (3) <b>L</b> Joint | (6) Adaptor <b>M</b> |

WSM000001GEG0096US0



### **Oil Pressure Tester**

#### **Code No.**

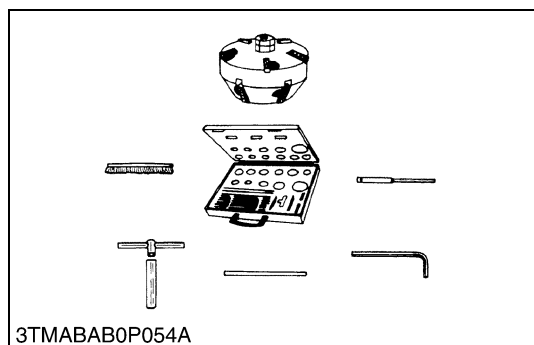
- 07916-32032

#### **Application**

- Use to measure lubricating oil pressure.

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Gauge            | (5) Adaptor <b>2</b> |
| (2) Cable            | (6) Adaptor <b>3</b> |
| (3) Threaded Joint   | (7) Adaptor <b>4</b> |
| (4) Adaptor <b>1</b> | (8) Adaptor <b>5</b> |

WSM000001GEG0015US0



### **Valve Seat Cutter**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-33102

#### **Application**

- Use to reseal valves.

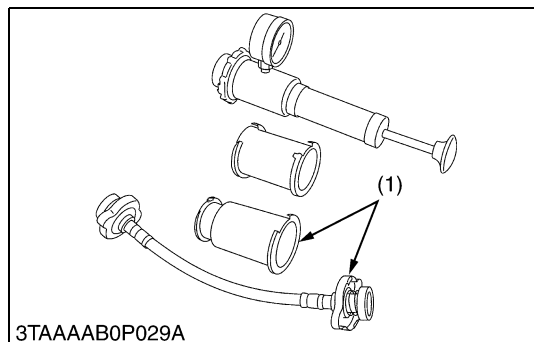
#### **Angle**

- 0.79 rad (45 °)
- 0.26 rad (15 °)

#### **Diameter**

- 28.6 mm (1.13 in.)
- 31.6 mm (1.24 in.)
- 35.0 mm (1.38 in.)
- 38.0 mm (1.50 in.)
- 41.3 mm (1.63 in.)
- 50.8 mm (2.00 in.)

WSM000001GEG0016US0



### **Radiator Tester**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-31551

#### **Application**

- Use to check of radiator cap pressure, and leaks from cooling system.

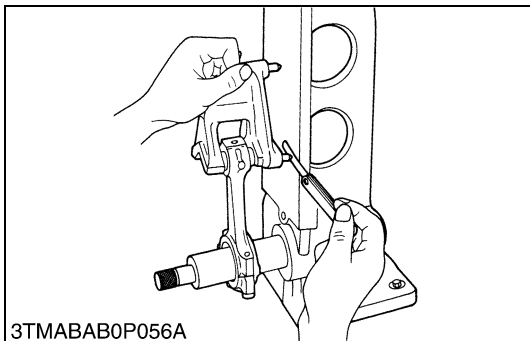
#### **Remarks**

- Adaptor (1) BANZAI Code No. RCT-2A-30S.

- (1) Adaptor

WSM000001GEG0017US0





### **Connecting Rod Alignment Tool**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-31661

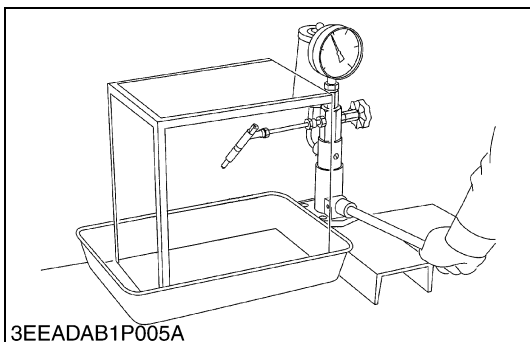
#### **Application**

- Use to check the connecting rod alignment.

#### **Applicable range**

- Connecting rod big end I.D.  
30 to 75 mm dia. (1.2 to 2.9 in. dia.)
- Connecting rod length  
65.0 to 300 mm (2.56 to 11.8 in.)

WSM000001GEG0020US0



### **Nozzle Tester**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-31361

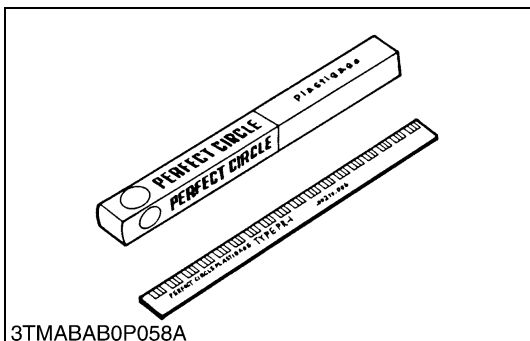
#### **Application**

- Use to check the fuel injection pressure and spray pattern of nozzle.

#### **Measuring range**

- 0 to 50 MPa (0 to 500 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 0 to 7200 psi)

WSM000001GEG0021US0



### **Plastigauge**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-30241

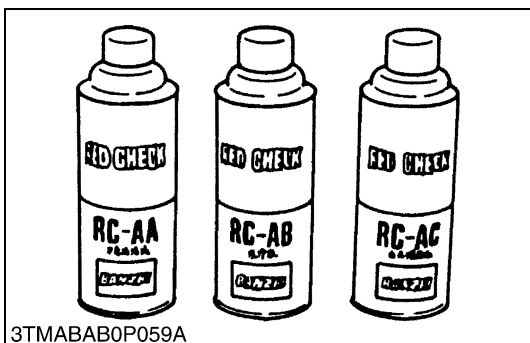
#### **Application**

- Use to check the oil clearance between crankshaft and bearing, etc..

#### **Measuring range**

- Green: 0.03 to 0.07 mm (0.001 to 0.003 in.)
- Red: 0.05 to 0.1 mm (0.002 to 0.006 in.)
- Blue: 0.1 to 0.2 mm (0.004 to 0.009 in.)

WSM000001GEG0022US0



### **Red Check**

#### **Code No.**

- 07909-31371

#### **Application**

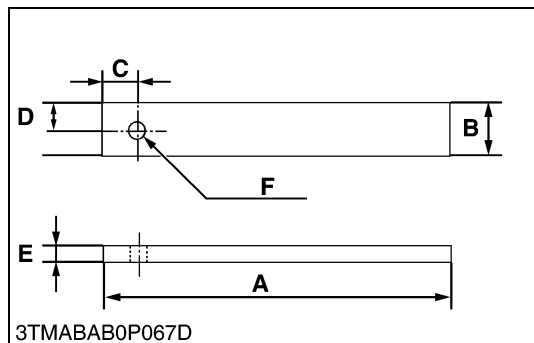
- Use to check cracks on cylinder head, cylinder block, etc..

WSM000001GEG0023US0

# ■ NOTE

- The following special tools are not provided, so make them referring to the figure.

9Y1210996GEG0078US0



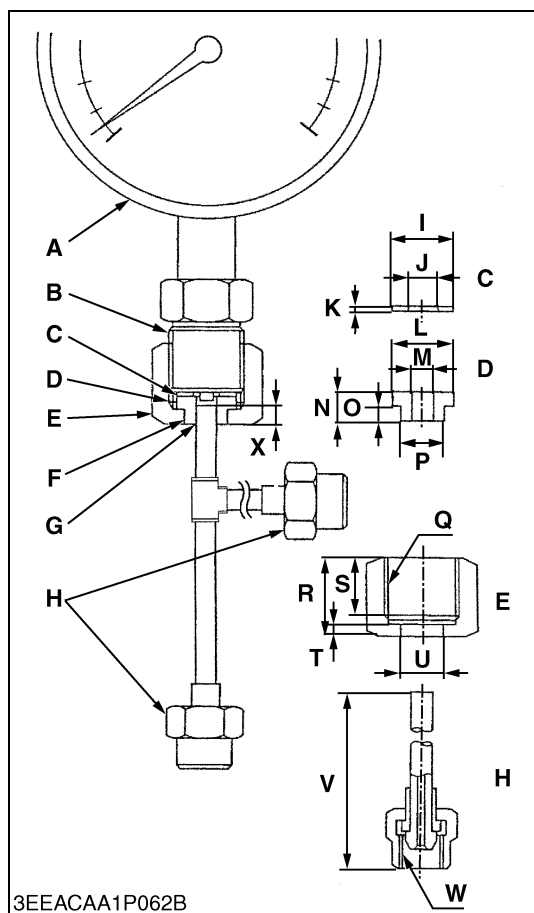
## **Flywheel Stopper**

### **Application**

- Use to loosen and tighten the flywheel screw.

A	200 mm (7.87 in.)
B	30 mm (1.18 in.)
C	20 mm (0.79 in.)
D	15 mm (0.59 in.)
E	8 mm (0.31 in.)
F	10 mm dia. (0.39 in. dia.)

9Y1210996GEG0079US0



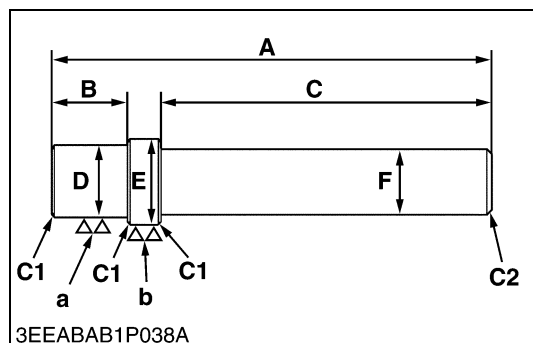
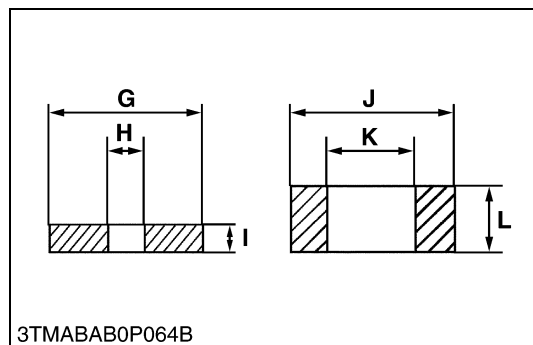
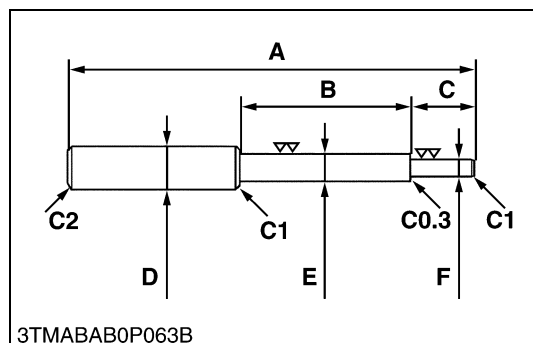
## **Injection Pump Pressure Tester**

### **Application**

- Use to check fuel tightness of injection pumps.

A	Pressure gauge full scale: More than 29.4 MPa (300 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4270 psi)
B	PF 1/2
C	Copper gasket
D	Flange (Material Steel)
E	Hex. nut 27 mm (1.1 in.) across the plat
F	Adhesive application
G	Fillet welding on the enter circumference
H	Retaining nut
I	17 mm dia. (0.67 in. dia.)
J	8.0 mm dia. (0.31 in. dia.)
K	1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
L	17 mm dia. (0.67 in. dia.)
M	6.10 to 6.20 mm dia. (0.241 to 0.244 in. dia.)
N	8.0 mm (0.31 in.)
O	4.0 mm (0.16 in.)
P	11.97 to 11.99 mm dia. (0.4713 to 0.4720 in. dia.)
Q	PF 1/2
R	23 mm (0.91 in.)
S	17 mm (0.67 in.)
T	4.0 mm (0.16 in.)
U	12.00 to 12.02 mm dia. (0.4725 to 0.4732 in. dia.)
V	100 mm (3.94 in.)
W	M12 × P1.5
X	5.0 mm (0.20 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0080US0



### Valve Guide Replacing Tool

#### Application

- Use to press out and press fit the valve guide.

<b>A</b>	225 mm (8.86 in.)
<b>B</b>	70 mm (2.8 in.)
<b>C</b>	45 mm (1.8 in.)
<b>D</b>	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
<b>E</b>	11.7 to 11.9 mm dia. (0.461 to 0.468 in. dia.)
<b>F</b>	6.50 to 6.60 mm dia. (0.256 to 0.259 in. dia.)
<b>G</b>	25 mm dia. (0.98 in. dia.)
<b>H</b>	6.70 to 7.00 mm dia. (0.264 to 0.275 in. dia.)
<b>I</b>	5.0 mm (0.20 in.)
<b>J</b>	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
<b>K</b>	12.5 to 12.8 mm dia. (0.493 to 0.503 in. dia.)
<b>L</b>	8.90 to 9.10 mm (0.351 to 0.358 in.)
<b>C1</b>	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>C2</b>	Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
<b>C0.3</b>	Chamfer 0.30 mm (0.012 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0081US0

### Bushing Replacing Tool

#### Application

- Use to press out and press fit the bushing.

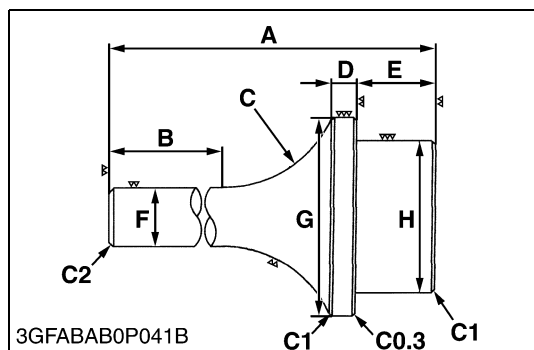
#### [For small end bushing]

<b>A</b>	157 mm (6.18 in.)
<b>B</b>	24 mm (0.94 in.)
<b>C</b>	120 mm (4.72 in.)
<b>D</b>	21.8 to 21.9 mm dia. (0.859 to 0.862 in. dia.)
<b>E</b>	24.8 to 24.9 mm dia. (0.977 to 0.980 in. dia.)
<b>F</b>	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
<b>a</b>	6.3 $\mu$ m (250 $\mu$ in.)
<b>b</b>	6.3 $\mu$ m (250 $\mu$ in.)
<b>C1</b>	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>C2</b>	Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)

#### [For idle gear bushing]

<b>A</b>	196 mm (7.72 in.)
<b>B</b>	26 mm (1.0 in.)
<b>C</b>	150 mm (5.91 in.)
<b>D</b>	25.80 to 25.90 mm dia. (1.016 to 1.019 in. dia.)
<b>E</b>	28.80 to 28.90 mm dia. (1.134 to 1.137 in. dia.)
<b>F</b>	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
<b>a</b>	6.3 $\mu$ m (250 $\mu$ in.)
<b>b</b>	6.3 $\mu$ m (250 $\mu$ in.)
<b>C1</b>	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>C2</b>	Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0082US0



### Crankshaft Bearing 1 Replacing Tool

#### Application

- Use to press out and press fit the crankshaft bearing 1.

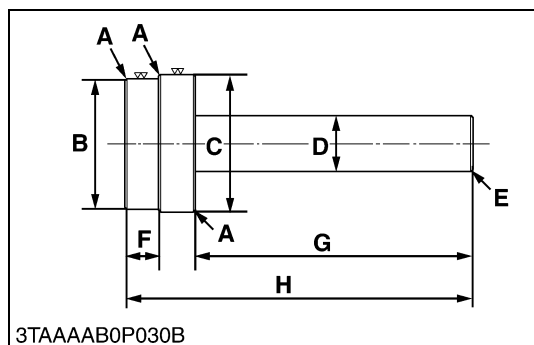
#### [Press Out]

A	135 mm (5.31 in.)
B	72 mm (2.8 in.)
C	40 mm radius (1.6 in. radius)
D	10 mm (0.39 in.)
E	24 mm (0.94 in.)
F	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
G	51.20 to 51.40 mm dia. (2.016 to 2.023 in. dia.)
H	47.30 to 47.50 mm dia. (1.863 to 1.870 in. dia.)
C1	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
C2	Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
C0.3	Chamfer 0.30 mm (0.012 in.)

#### [Press Fit]

A	135 mm (5.31 in.)
B	72 mm (2.8 in.)
C	40 mm radius (1.6 in. radius)
D	10 mm (0.39 in.)
E	24 mm (0.94 in.)
F	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
G	68 mm dia. (2.7 in. dia.)
H	47.30 to 47.50 mm dia. (1.863 to 1.870 in. dia.)
C1	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
C2	Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
C0.3	Chamfer 0.30 mm (0.012 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0083US0



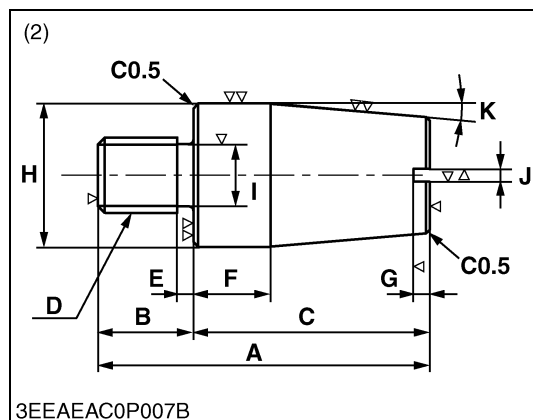
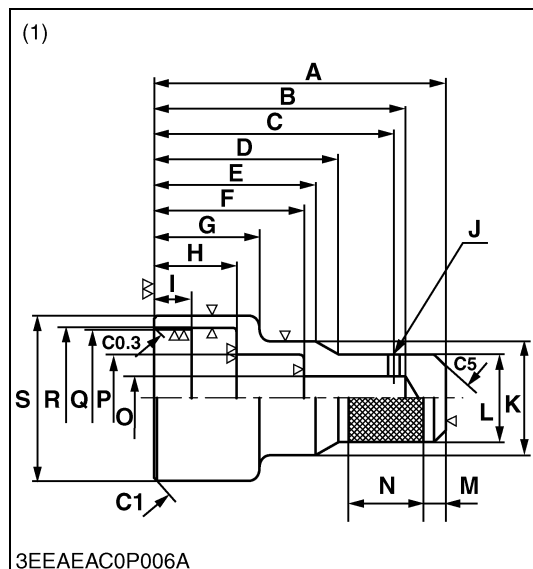
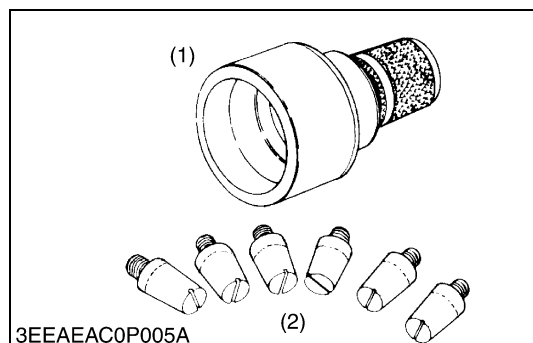
### Governor Gear Holder Bushing Replacing Tool

#### Application

- Use to press out and to press fit the governor gear holder bushing.

A	C1: Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
B	73.90 to 74.00 mm dia. (2.910 to 2.913 in. dia.)
C	69.80 to 69.90 mm dia. (2.748 to 2.751 in. dia.)
D	30 mm dia. (1.2 in. dia.)
E	C2: Chamfer 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
F	18 mm (0.71 in.)
G	150 mm (5.91 in.)
H	188 mm (7.40 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0084US0



## Crank Sleeve Setter

### Application

- Use to fix the crankshaft sleeve.

### (1) Auxiliary Socket for Pushing

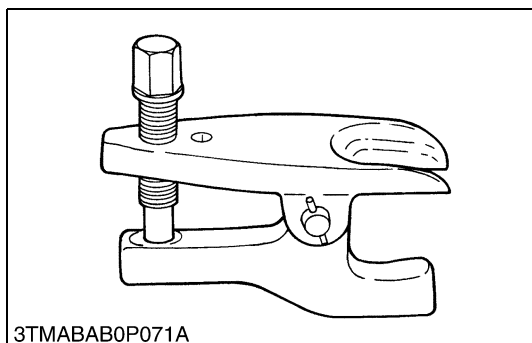
A	130 mm (5.12 in.)
B	112 mm (4.41 in.)
C	107 mm (4.21 in.)
D	82 mm (3.2 in.)
E	72 mm (2.8 in.)
F	67 mm (2.6 in.)
G	47 mm (1.8 in.)
H	36.00 to 36.20 mm (1.418 to 1.425 in.)
I	17 mm (0.67 in.)
J	5.0 mm dia. (0.20 in. dia.)
K	52 mm dia. (2.0 in. dia.)
L	40 mm dia. (1.6 in. dia.)
M	10 mm (0.39 in.)
N	33 mm (1.3 in.)
O	20 mm dia. (0.79 in. dia.)
P	40 mm dia. (1.6 in. dia.)
Q	72.10 to 72.15 mm dia. (2.839 to 2.840 in. dia.)
R	73 mm dia. (2.9 in. dia.)
S	83 mm dia. (3.3 in. dia.)
C0.3	Chamfer 0.30 mm (0.012 in.)
C1	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
C5	Chamfer 5.0 mm (0.20 in.)

### (2) Sleeve Guide

A	42 mm (1.7 in.)
B	12 mm (0.47 in.)
C	30 mm (1.2 in.)
D	M10 × Pitch 1.25
E	2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
F	10 mm (0.39 in.)
G	2.0 mm (0.079 in.)
H	17.90 to 17.95 mm dia. (0.7048 to 0.7066 in. dia.)
I	8.0 mm dia. (0.31 in. dia.)
J	1.8 mm (0.071 in.)
K	0.09 rad (5 °)
C0.5	Chamfer 0.5 mm (0.02 in.)

9Y1210996GEG0085US0

## [2] SPECIAL TOOLS FOR MACHINE



3TMABAB0P071A

### Tie-rod End Lifter

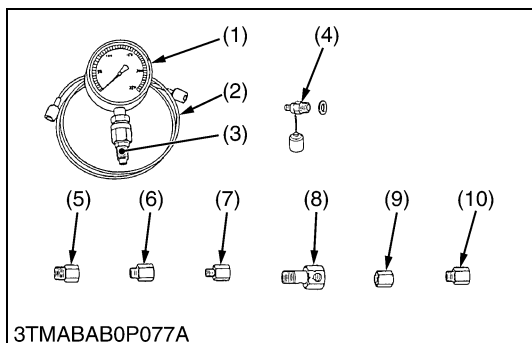
#### Code No.

- 07909-39051

#### Application

- Use to remove the tie-rod end with ease.

WSM000001GEG0029US0



3TMABAB0P077A

### Relief Valve Pressure Tester

#### Code No.

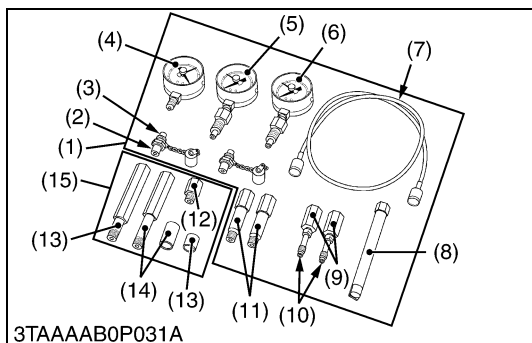
- 07916-50045

#### Application

- This allows easy measurement of relief set pressure.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) Gauge (07916-50322)                         | (6) Adaptor <b>C</b> (PS3/8) (07916-50371)   |
| (2) Cable (07916-50331)                         | (7) Adaptor <b>D</b> (PT1/8) (07916-50381)   |
| (3) Threaded Joint (07916-50401)                | (8) Adaptor <b>E</b> (PS3/8) (07916-50392)   |
| (4) Threaded Joint (07916-50341)                | (9) Adaptor <b>F</b> (PF1/2) (07916-62601)   |
| (5) Adaptor <b>B</b> (M18 × P1.5) (07916-50361) | (10) Adaptor <b>58</b> (PT1/4) (07916-52391) |

WSM000001GEG0027US0



3TAAAB0P031A

### Hydrostatic Transmission Tester and HST Adaptor Set

#### Code No.

- 07916-52040 (Hydrostatic Transmission Tester)
- 07916-53072 (HST Adaptor Set)

#### Application

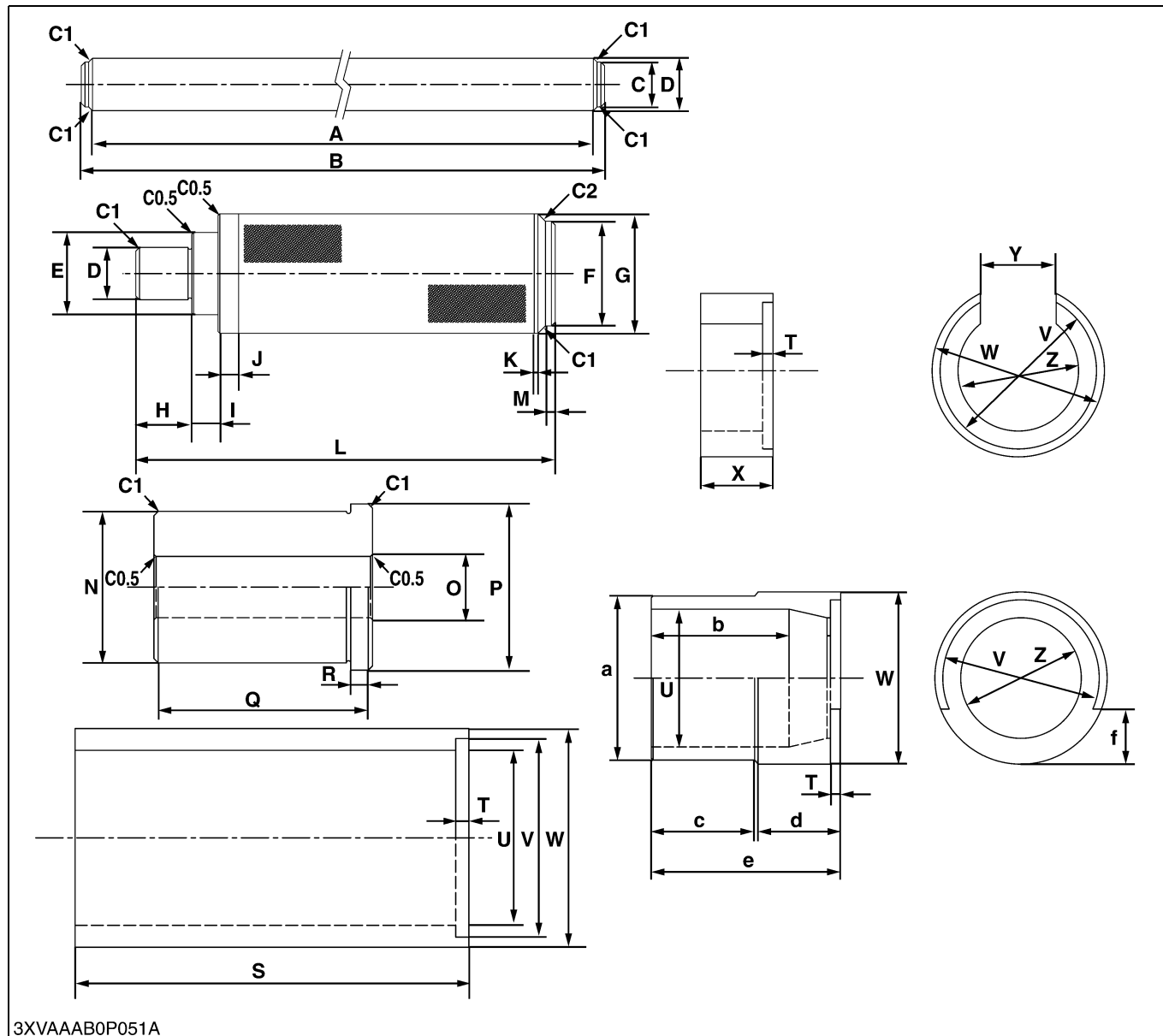
- This allows easy measurement of hydrostatic transmission pressure.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Hydrostatic Transmission Tester (07916-52040)                                      | (8) Valve Seat Driver (07916-60841)             |
| (2) Gasket (04714-00200)   | (9) Connector <b>1</b> (07916-60811)            |
| (3) Connector <b>3</b> (07916-51331)   | (10) Connector <b>2</b> (07916-60821)           |
| (4) Vacuum Gauge (07916-51331)   | (11) Long Connector (07916-60831)               |
| (5) Pressure Gauge (Low Pressure) (07916-51301)  | (12) Adaptor <b>1</b> (07916-52621)             |
| (6) Pressure Gauge (High Pressure) (in Relief Valve Set Pressure Tester) (07916-50321) | (13) Adaptor <b>2</b> with Collar (07916-52632) |
| (7) HN Tube (in Relief Valve Set Pressure Tester) (07916-50331)                        | (14) Adaptor <b>3</b> with Collar (07916-52642) |
|  | (15) HST Adaptor Set (07916-53072)              |

WSM000001GEG0104US0

**Lower Arm Bush Tool****Application**

- Use for removing and installing lower arm rubber bush.



3XVAAAB0P051A

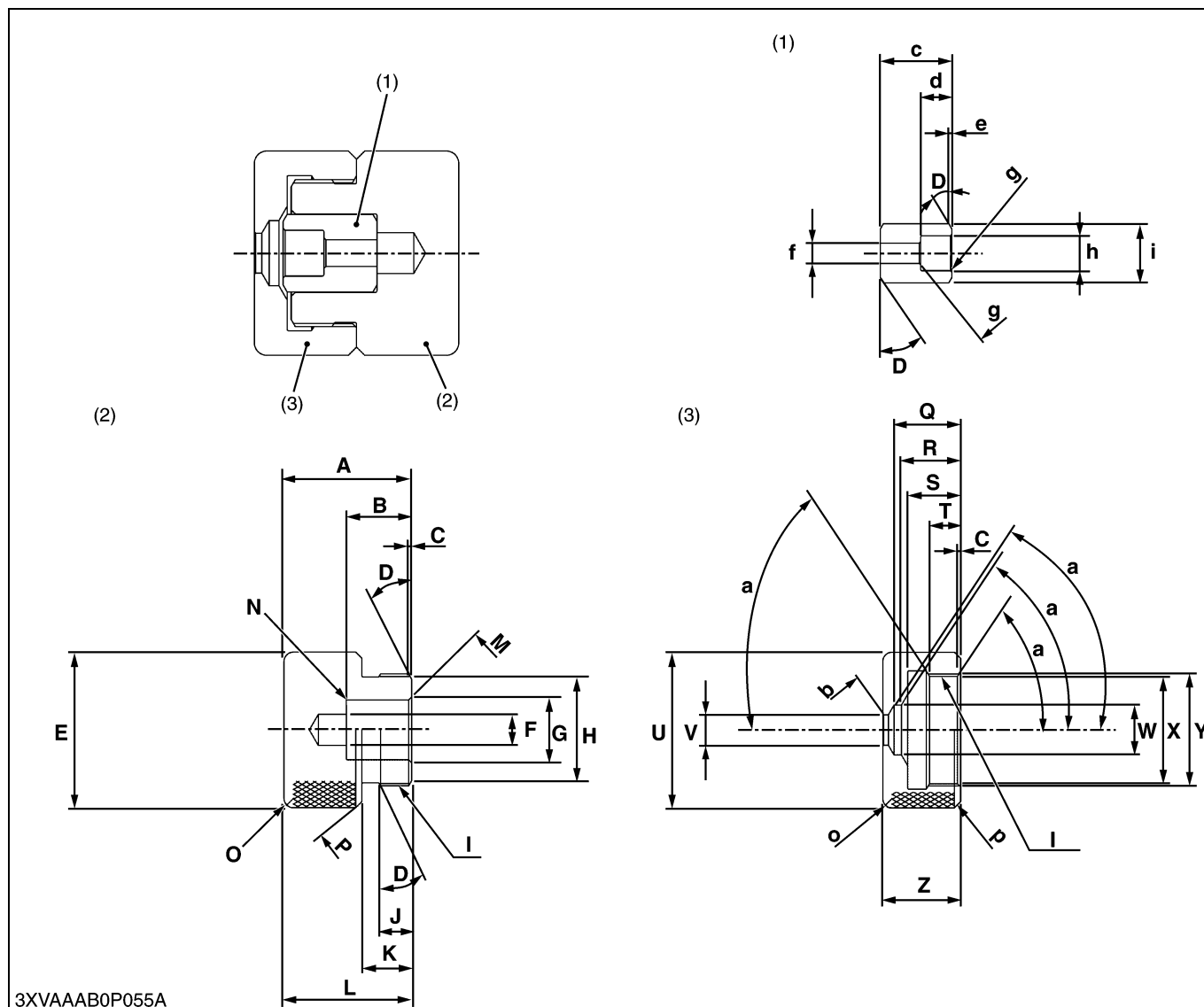
<b>A</b>	256.5 mm (10.10 in.)	<b>M</b>	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	<b>Y</b>	22 mm (0.866 in.)
<b>B</b>	262.5 mm (10.33 in.)	<b>N</b>	34.65 mm dia. (1.364 in. dia.)	<b>Z</b>	35 mm dia. (1.378 in. dia.)
<b>C</b>	12 mm dia. (0.472 in. dia.)	<b>O</b>	14.1 mm dia. (0.555 in. dia.)	<b>a</b>	47.6 mm dia. (1.874 in. dia.)
<b>D</b>	14 mm dia. (0.551 in. dia.)	<b>P</b>	38 mm dia. (1.496 in. dia.)	<b>b</b>	40 mm (1.575 in.)
<b>E</b>	22 mm dia. (0.866 in. dia.)	<b>Q</b>	50 mm (1.969 in.)	<b>c</b>	30 mm (1.181 in.)
<b>F</b>	28 mm dia. (1.102 in. dia.)	<b>R</b>	5 mm (0.197 in.)	<b>d</b>	24 mm (0.945 in.)
<b>G</b>	32 mm dia. (1.260 in. dia.)	<b>S</b>	90 mm (3.543 in.)	<b>e</b>	55 mm (2.165 in.)
<b>H</b>	15 mm (0.591 in.)	<b>T</b>	3 mm (0.118 in.)	<b>f</b>	16 mm (0.630 in.)
<b>I</b>	7 mm (0.276 in.)	<b>U</b>	40 mm dia. (1.575 in. dia.)	<b>C0.5</b>	Chamfer 0.5 mm (0.020 in.)
<b>J</b>	5.5 mm (0.217 in.)	<b>V</b>	45.4 mm dia. (1.787 in. dia.)	<b>C1</b>	Chamfer 1 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>K</b>	1 mm (0.0394 in.)	<b>W</b>	50 mm dia. (1.969 in. dia.)	<b>C2</b>	Chamfer 2 mm (0.079 in.)
<b>L</b>	112.6 mm (4.433 in.)	<b>X</b>	21 mm (0.827 in.)		

9Y1210996GEG0086US0

## Check and High Pressure Relief Valve Assembly Tool

### Application

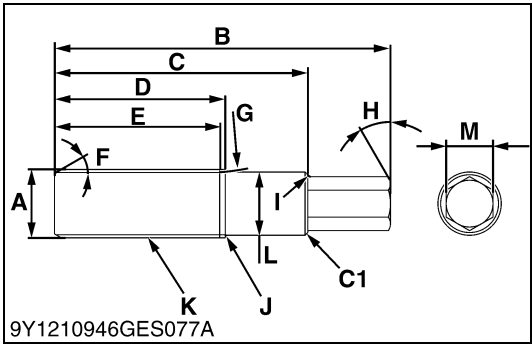
- Use for Readjusting relief valve pressure.



<b>A</b>	30 mm (1.181 in.)	<b>N</b>	Chamfer 0.4 mm (0.157 in.)	<b>a</b>	1.05 rad (10 °)
<b>B</b>	21 mm (0.827 in.)	<b>O</b>	Chamfer 3 mm (0.118 in.)	<b>b</b>	Chamfer 0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
<b>C</b>	1 mm (0.039 in.)	<b>P</b>	Chamfer 2 mm (0.079 in.)	<b>c</b>	23 mm (0.906 in.)
<b>D</b>	0.52 rad (30 °)	<b>Q</b>	21.4 mm (0.843 in.)	<b>d</b>	10 mm (0.394 in.)
<b>E</b>	50 mm dia. (1.969 in. dia.)	<b>R</b>	19 mm (0.748 in.)	<b>e</b>	1 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>F</b>	10 mm dia. (0.394 in. dia.)	<b>S</b>	17 mm (0.669 in.)	<b>f</b>	6.5 mm (0.256 in.)
<b>G</b>	9.1 to 9.3 mm dia. (0.359 to 0.366 in.)	<b>T</b>	10 mm (0.393 in.)	<b>g</b>	Chamfer 0.5 mm (0.020 in.)
<b>H</b>	34 mm dia. (1.336 in. dia.)	<b>U</b>	50 mm dia. (1.969 in. dia.)	<b>h</b>	11.1 to 11.3 mm (0.437 to 0.445 in.)
<b>I</b>	M36 × 1.5 mm Pitch	<b>V</b>	9.8 mm dia. (0.386 in. dia.)	<b>i</b>	18.8 to 19.0 mm (0.740 to 0.748 in.)
<b>J</b>	10 mm (0.394 in.)	<b>W</b>	16 mm dia. (0.629 in. dia.)		
<b>K</b>	16 mm (0.630 in.)	<b>X</b>	34.5 mm dia. (1.358 in. dia.)	<b>(1)</b>	Spacer
<b>L</b>	41 mm (1.614 in.)	<b>Y</b>	38 mm dia. (1.496 in. dia.)	<b>(2)</b>	Block
<b>M</b>	Chamfer 1 mm (0.039 in.)	<b>Z</b>	25 mm (0.984 in.)	<b>(3)</b>	Cap

9Y1210996GEG0087US0





Differential Jig

Application

- Use for checking backlash and gear and spiral bevel pinion shaft.

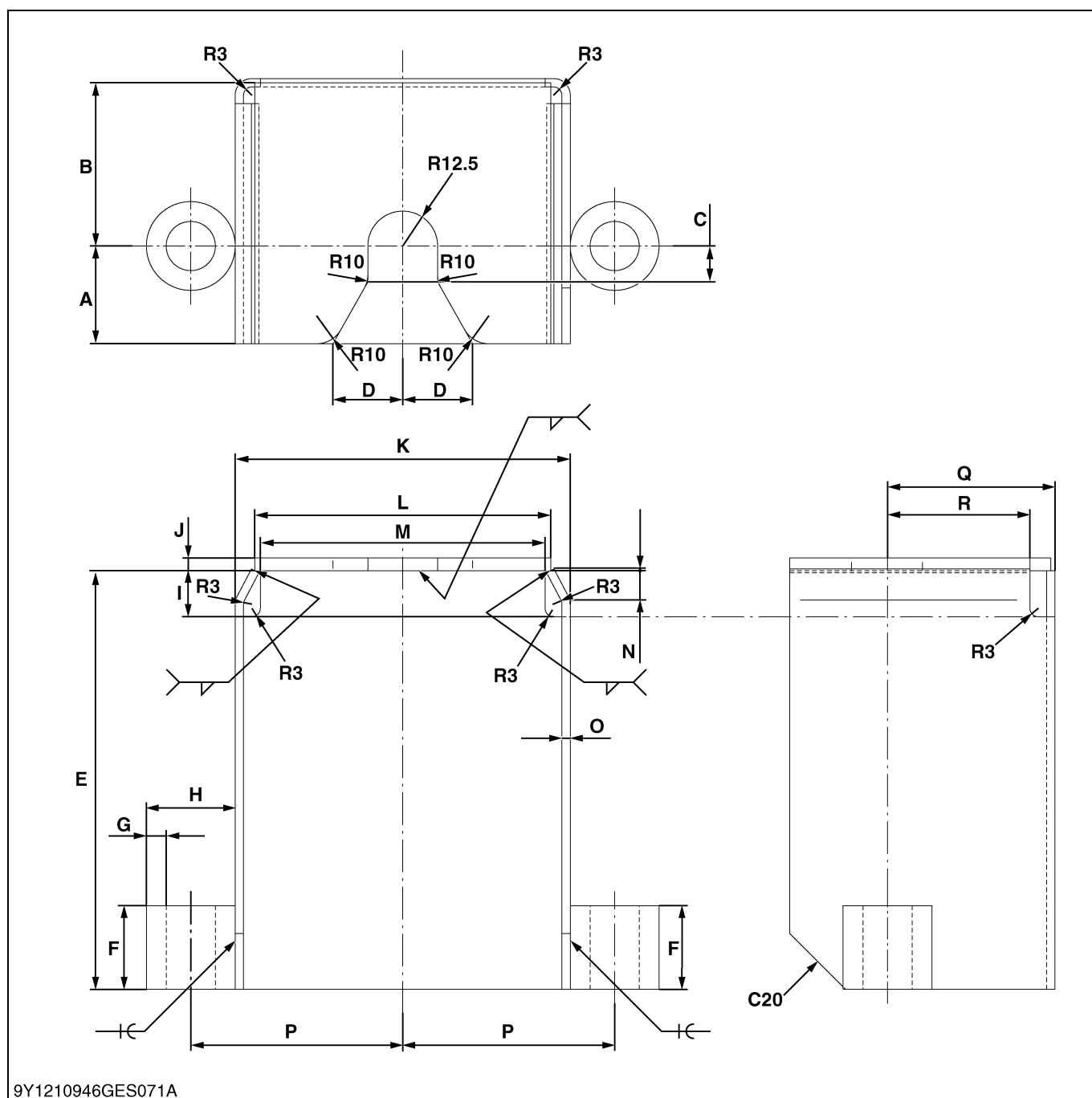
A	24.65 to 24.80 mm dia. (0.970 to 0.976 in. dia.)
B	122 mm (4.80 in.)
C	92.0 mm (3.62 in.)
D	62.0 mm (2.44 in.)
E	60.0 mm (2.36 in.) full spline
F	0.52 rad (30 °)
G	60.0 mm dia. (2.36 in. dia)
H	0.52 rad (30 °)
I	0.4 mm (0.016 in.)
J	080 mm (0.031 in.)
K	Involute spline (refer to below)
L	23.0 mm dia. (0.906 in. dia.)
M	16.75 to 17.00 mm Hex. (0.6595 to 0.6692 in. Hex.)
C1	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)

(Involute Spline)

- EXTERNAL 25 × 24Z × 1.0 m × 30

Coefficient of profile shifting		0.000
Tool	Tooth form	Stub tooth
	Module	1.00
	Pressure angle	0.52 rad (30 °)
Number of teeth		24
Diameter of basic pitch circle		24 mm
Tooth thickness	Grade	Class a
	Over pitch diameter	26.454 to 26.541 mm (1.0415 to 1.0449 in.) (Pin diameter = 1.8 mm (0.071 in.))

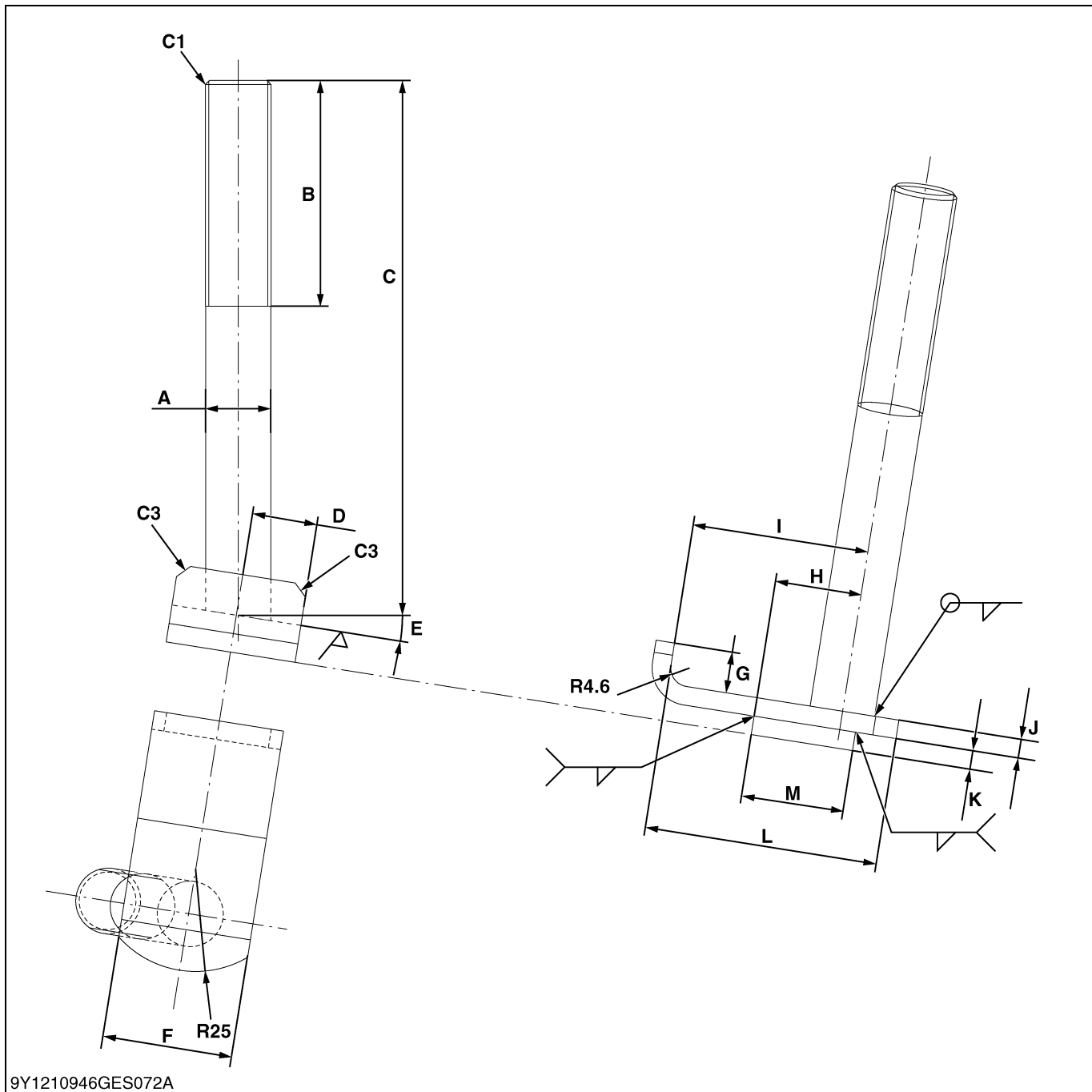
9Y1210996GEG0088US0

**Rear Shock Absorber Spring Compressor 1**

9Y1210946GES071A

<b>A</b>	35 mm (1.4 in.)	<b>I</b>	16.5 mm (0.65 in.)	<b>Q</b>	60 mm (2.4 in.)
<b>B</b>	58.5 mm (2.3 in.)	<b>J</b>	4.6 mm (0.18 in.)	<b>R</b>	51 mm (2.0 in.)
<b>C</b>	13 mm (0.51 in.)	<b>K</b>	120 mm (4.72 in.)	<b>R3</b>	Radius 3.0 mm (0.12 in.)
<b>D</b>	25 mm (0.98 in.)	<b>L</b>	106 mm (4.17 in.)	<b>R10</b>	Radius 10 mm (0.39 in.)
<b>E</b>	150 mm (5.91 in.)	<b>M</b>	102 mm (4.02 in.)	<b>R12.5</b>	Radius 12.5 mm (0.492 in.)
<b>F</b>	30 mm (1.2 in.)	<b>N</b>	10.5 mm (0.413 in.)	<b>C20</b>	Chamfer 20 mm (0.79 in.)
<b>G</b>	7.1 mm (0.28 in.)	<b>O</b>	3.0 mm (0.12 in.)		
<b>H</b>	31.8 mm dia. (1.25 in. dia.)	<b>P</b>	76 mm (3.0 in.)		

9Y1210996GEG0089US0

**Rear Shock Absorber Spring Compressor 2**

<b>A</b>	15.9 mm dia. (0.626 in. dia.)	<b>G</b>	10 mm (0.39 in.)	<b>M</b>	25 mm (0.98 in.)
<b>B</b>	70 mm (2.8 in.)	<b>H</b>	21 mm (0.83 in.)	<b>C1</b>	Chamfer 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
<b>C</b>	130.4 mm (5.134 in.)	<b>I</b>	43 mm (1.7 in.)	<b>C3</b>	Chamfer 3.0 mm (0.12 in.)
<b>D</b>	15.9 mm (0.626 in.)	<b>J</b>	4.6 mm (0.18 in.)	<b>R4.6</b>	Radius 4.6 mm (0.18 in.)
<b>E</b>	0.2 rad. (9 °)	<b>K</b>	4.6 mm (0.18 in.)	<b>R25</b>	Radius 25 mm (0.98 in.)
<b>F</b>	31.8 mm (1.25 in.)	<b>L</b>	57 mm (2.2 in.)		

9Y1210996GEG0090US0

## 9. TIRES



### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

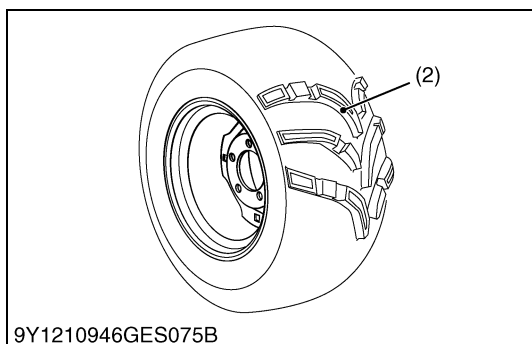
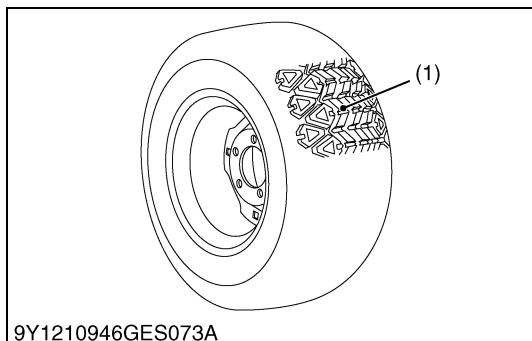
- Do not attempt to mount a tire on a rim. This should be done by a qualified person with the proper equipment.
- Always maintain the correct tire pressure.

### IMPORTANT

- Do not use tires other than those approved by KUBOTA.

9Y1210996GEG0091US0

## [1] TYPE OF TIRES



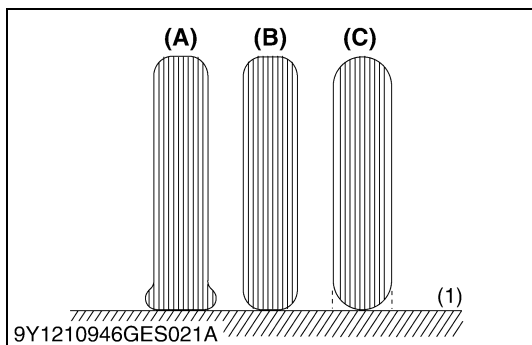
### Tire Type and Use

(1) Heavy Duty Work Site Tire

(2) All Terrain Vehicle Tire

9Y1210996GEG0092US0

## [2] TIRE PRESSURE



### Checking Tire Inflation Pressure

Though the tire pressure is factory-set to the prescribed level, it naturally drops slowly in the course of time. Thus, check it everyday and inflate as necessary.

Tire sizes	Inflation Pressure	
	0 to 249 kg (0 to 550 lbs)	249 to 500 kg (550 to 1000 lbs)
25 × 10 – 12 HDWS, Front and Rear	Front: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi) Rear: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi)	Front: 0.14 MPa (1.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 20 psi) Rear: 0.17 MPa (1.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 24psi)
25 × 10 – 12 ATV, Front and Rear		

(1) Ground

(A) INSUFFICIENT

(B) NORMAL

(C) EXCESSIVE

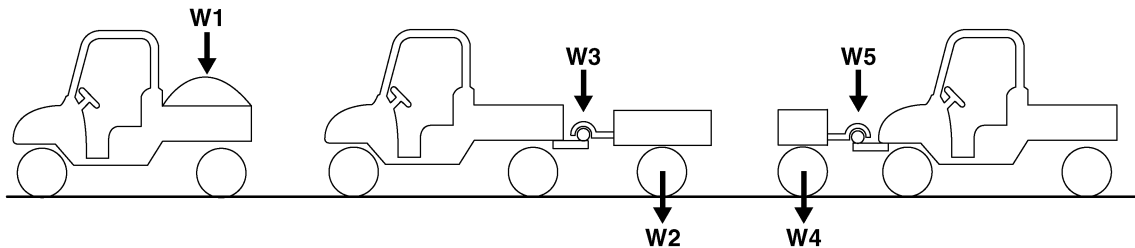
9Y1210996GEG0023US0

### [3] VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

The KUBOTA Vehicle has been thoroughly tested for proper performance with implements sold or approved by KUBOTA. Use with implements which are not sold or approved by KUBOTA and which exceed the maximum specifications listed below, or which are otherwise unfit for use with the KUBOTA Vehicle may result in malfunctions or failures of the vehicle, damage to other property and injury to the operator or others. [Any malfunctions or failures of the vehicle resulting from use with improper implements are not covered by the warranty.]

9Y1210996GEG0093US0

Cargo bed	Rear trailer hitch		Front trailer hitch	
Max. Cargo loading weight <b>W1</b> should not exceed "CBC" and "PCL". PCL (Permissible Cargo load) is determined by the following calculus equation.  PCL = PC - (operator + passenger + option + accessory + cabin) weight  CBC (Cargo bed capacity): [1 Row Seating Mode] 500 kg (1102 lbs) [2 Row Seating Mode] 300 kg (661 lbs) PC: Payload Capacity option: option accessory: accessory cabin: 250 kg (551 lbs)	Max. rolling weight <b>W2</b>	Max. tongue weight <b>W3</b>	Max. rolling weight <b>W4</b>	Max. tongue weight <b>W5</b>
	590 kg (1300 lbs)	50 kg (110 lbs)	295 kg (650 lbs)	50 kg (110 lbs)



9Y1210946GES076A

9Y1210996GEG0094US0

#### [Payload Capacity (PC)]

Model	RTV-X1140
	Worksite model
Payload capacity	739 kg (1629 lbs)
Rolling weight	Trailer weight + Trailer load

#### ■ NOTE

- Above mentioned specifications are based on level ground condition.

9Y1210996GEG0095US0

## [4] CARGO BED

### General Caution



#### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Never carry passengers in the cargo bed. They can be tossed about or even thrown off causing serious injury or death.
- Never raise the cargo bed when it is loaded. (There is an exception. Only the vehicle equipped with hydraulic dump may do this operation at operator's seat after appropriate confirmation of safety.)
- Driving with the cargo bed tilted may be hazardous.  
Always lower the bed and lock the hydraulic lift cylinder lever (if hydraulic dump is equipped) or latch the bed (if hydraulic dump is not equipped) before driving.
- Be careful not to put any part of your body, such as hands or arms, between the bed and vehicle.
- Drive slowly when it is loaded.

9Y1210996GEG0096US0

### Max. Cargo Load

Never carry loads exceeding cargo bed capacity and the Permissible Cargo Load (PCL).

PCL = PC - (operator + passenger + option + accessory + cabin) weight

CBC (Cargo bed capacity):

[1 Row Seating Mode] 500 kg (1102 lbs)

[2 Row Seating Mode] 300 kg (661 lbs)

PC: Payload Capacity

OP: Operator

PA: Passenger

option: option

accessory: accessory

cabin: 250 kg (551 lbs)

### [Payload Capacity (PC)]

Model	RTV-X1140
	Worksite model
Payload capacity	739 kg (1629 lbs)

	Operator *1	Passenger *1	Implement	Cargo Bed Capacity
1 row seating mode	95 kg (209 lbs)	–	W: Weight Blade Winch	500 kg (1100 lbs) - <b>W</b>
	95 kg (209 lbs)	95 kg (209 lbs)		500 kg (1100 lbs) - <b>W</b>
2 row seating mode	95 kg (209 lbs)	–		300 kg (661 lbs) - <b>W</b>
	95 kg (209 lbs)	95 kg (209 lbs)		300 kg (661 lbs) - <b>W</b>
	95 kg (209 lbs)	95 kg (209 lbs) + 95 kg (209 lbs)		300 kg (661 lbs) - <b>W</b>
	95 kg (209 lbs)	95 kg (209 lbs) + 95 kg (209 lbs) + 95 kg (209 lbs)		300 kg (661 lbs) - <b>W</b>

\*1: The calculation was made provided that the operator and the passenger weigh 95 kg (209 lbs) each.

### ■ IMPORTANT

- Cargo load should not exceed Cargo bed capacity and Permissible cargo load.

9Y1210996GEG0097US0

## [5] SHOCK ABSORBERS

### Shock Absorber Spring Adjustment



#### **WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- For shock absorber spring adjustment. (See page 3-S3, 5-S5.)

The front and rear shock absorber springs can be adjusted for different riding and loading condition.

Position	Spring	Load
1	Stronger	Heavy
2	↑	↑
3 (default)	I	I
4	↓	↓
5	Weaker	Light

9Y1210996GEG0098US0

# 1 ENGINE



# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. ENGINE BODY .....	1-M1
[1] CLOSED BREATHER .....	1-M1
[2] GOVERNOR.....	1-M2
2. LUBRICATING SYSTEM.....	1-M4
3. COOLING SYSTEM .....	1-M5
4. FUEL SYSTEM.....	1-M6

# 1. ENGINE BODY

## [1] CLOSED BREATHER

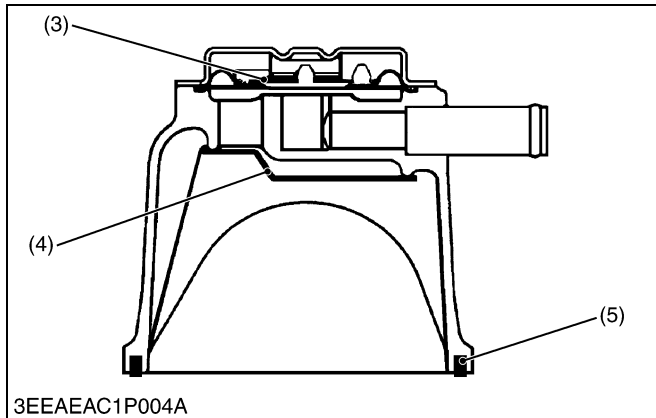


Closed breather system has been adopted to prevent the release of blow-by gas into the atmosphere.

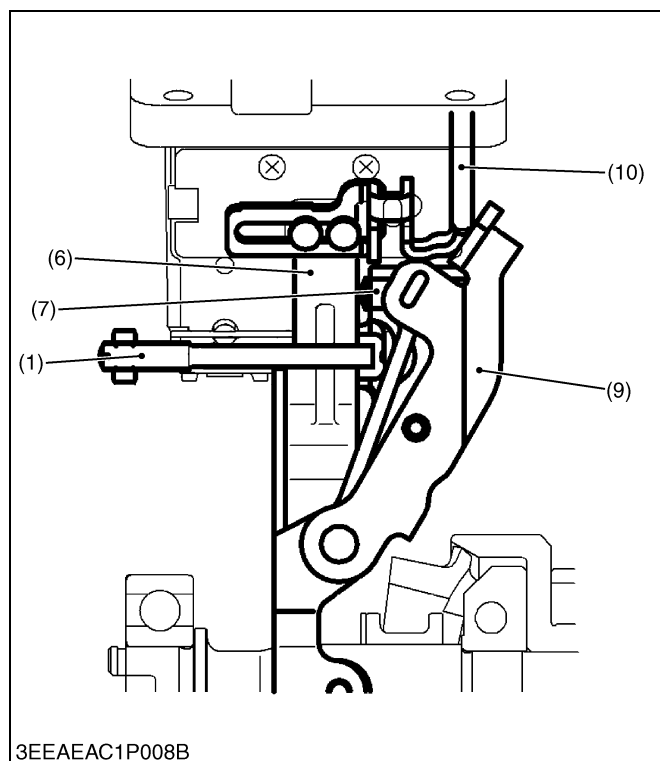
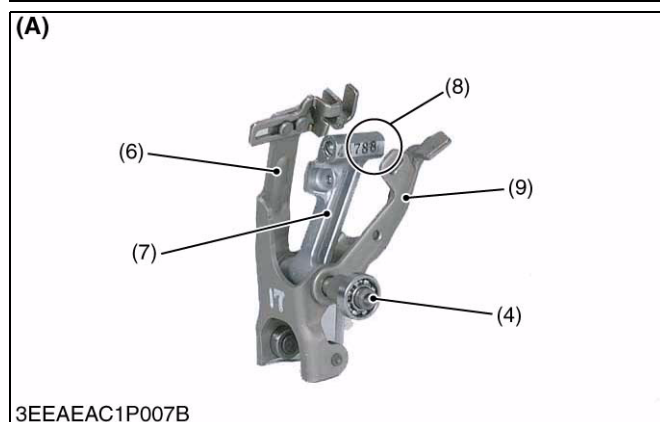
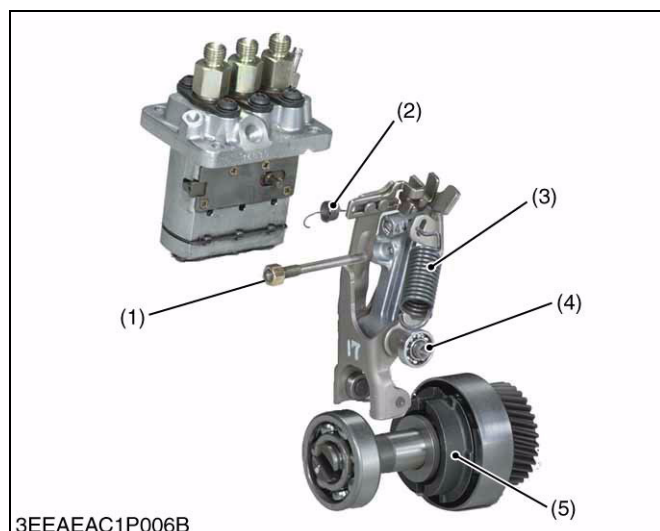
After its oil content is filtered by oil shield (4), the blow by gas is fed back to the intake manifold through breather valve (3) to be used for re-combustion.

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Breather Tube       | (4) Oil Shield     |
| (2) Cylinder Head Cover | (5) Rubber Packing |
| (3) Breather Valve      |                    |

9Y1210996ENM0001US0



## [2] GOVERNOR



### Three Lever Type Fork Lever (for standard type)

The governor system is a mechanical governor that used the flyweight (5).

The flyweight (5) is mounted on the governor shaft that rotates at the same speed as the crankshaft.

Because the feature of this mechanism removes the engine speed directly as a centrifugal force of weight, the speed control that the change in the engine rotational speed is sensitively transmitted to fork lever assembly (A) and accuracy is high is enabled.

The fork lever assembly of this engine consists of fork lever 1 (6), for lever 2 (9), and the floating lever (7). A slide plate is installed in fork lever 1. The governor spring (3) is hooked to fork lever 2 (9).

The floating lever (7) installs the torque pin (8) of the output drop prevention at the overload. The start spring (2) is hooked to a slide plate, and holds the control rack in the direction of the full fuel position.

Fork lever 2 (9) and the floating lever are installed in fork lever 1 (6) with the fork lever shaft (4). The max torque limitation (1) device limits the amount of the fuel injection at the overload with the torque pin.

- |                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Max Torque Limiter | (7) Floating Lever |
| (2) Start Spring       | (8) Torque Pin     |
| (3) Governor Spring    | (9) Fork Lever 2   |
| (4) Fork Lever Shaft   |                    |
| (5) Flyweight          |                    |
| (6) Fork Lever 1       |                    |

#### (A) Fork Lever Assembly

9Y1210996ENM0002US0

### (At Rated Operation)

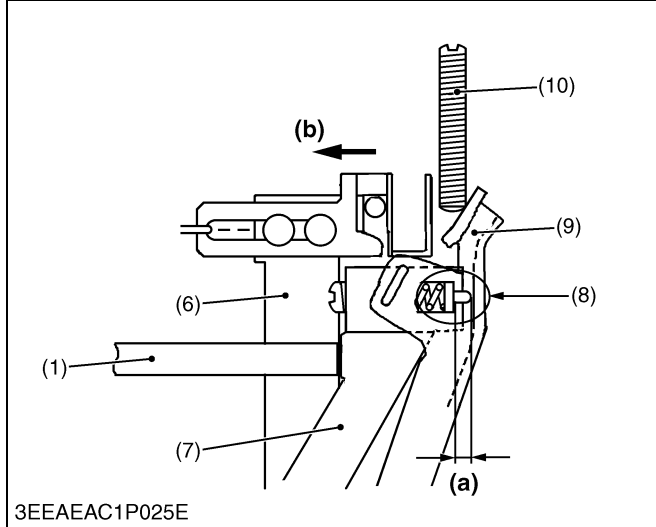
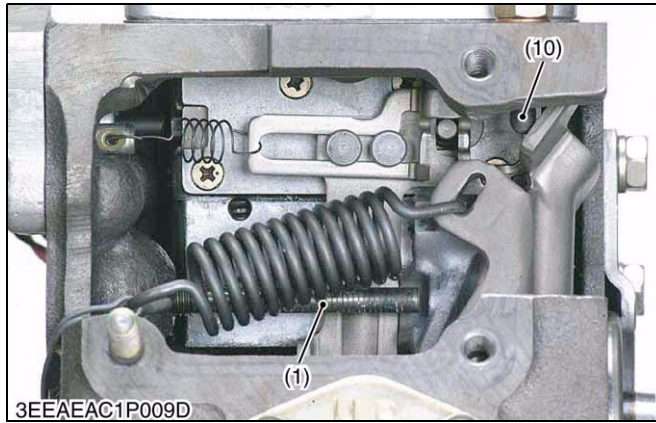
When the engine is running, the fork lever 2 (9) and the floating lever (7) are moving with the fork lever 1 (6) due to the tension of the governor spring (3).

During the time, the torque pin (8) is pressed into the floating lever by centrifugal force of the governor weight (5).

The fork lever 2 (9) comes in contact with the fuel limitation bolt (10), and the fuel injection pump supplies a fuel necessary for rated operation.

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| (1) Max Torque Limiter | (9) Fork Lever 2          |
| (6) Fork Lever 1       | (10) Fuel Limitation Bolt |
| (7) Floating Lever     |                           |

9Y1210996ENM0003US0



### (Overloaded Operation)

The amount of the movement of the fork lever assembly is limited with the fuel limitation bolt (10) and can not be moved in the direction of the fuel increase.

As overload reduces the centrifugal force of the governor weight, which is pressing the torque pin (8) into the floating lever (7), the floating lever pushes the fork lever 1 (6) in the way to increase the fuel supply with the help of the torque spring tension.

The fuel supply increases **(b)** in relation to the degree of the torque pin motion, thus preventing the engine speed from dropping.

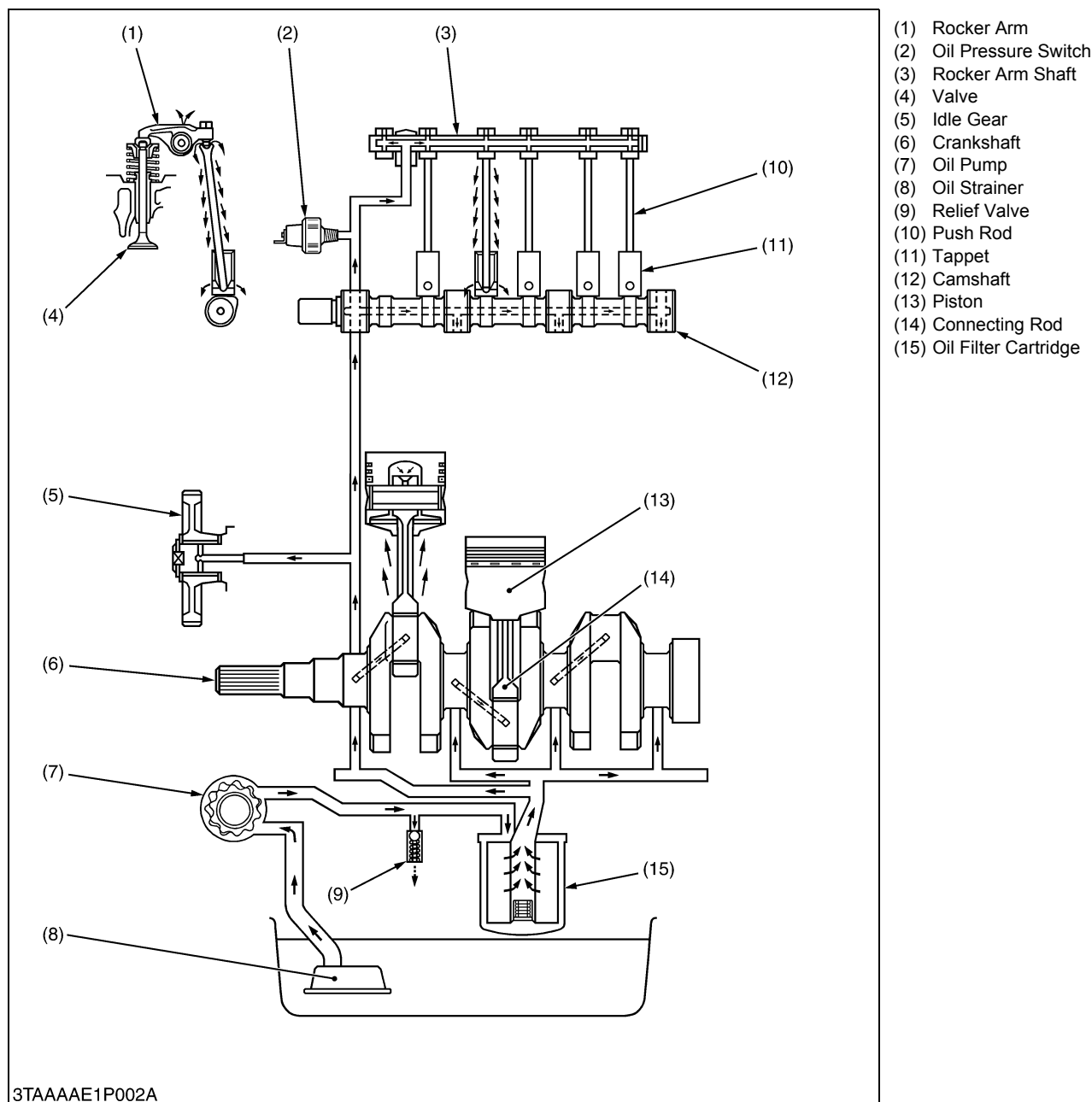
At the time, the maximum torque limiter (1) prevents superfluous fuel supply and suppresses the generation of black smoke.

- (1) Max Torque Limiter
- (6) Fork Lever 1
- (7) Floating Lever
- (8) Torque Pin
- (9) Fork Lever 2
- (10) Fuel Limitation Bolt

- (a) Distance to which torque pin (8) pushes fork lever 1 (6) out
- (b) Increase of fuel

9Y1210996ENM0004US0

## 2. LUBRICATING SYSTEM



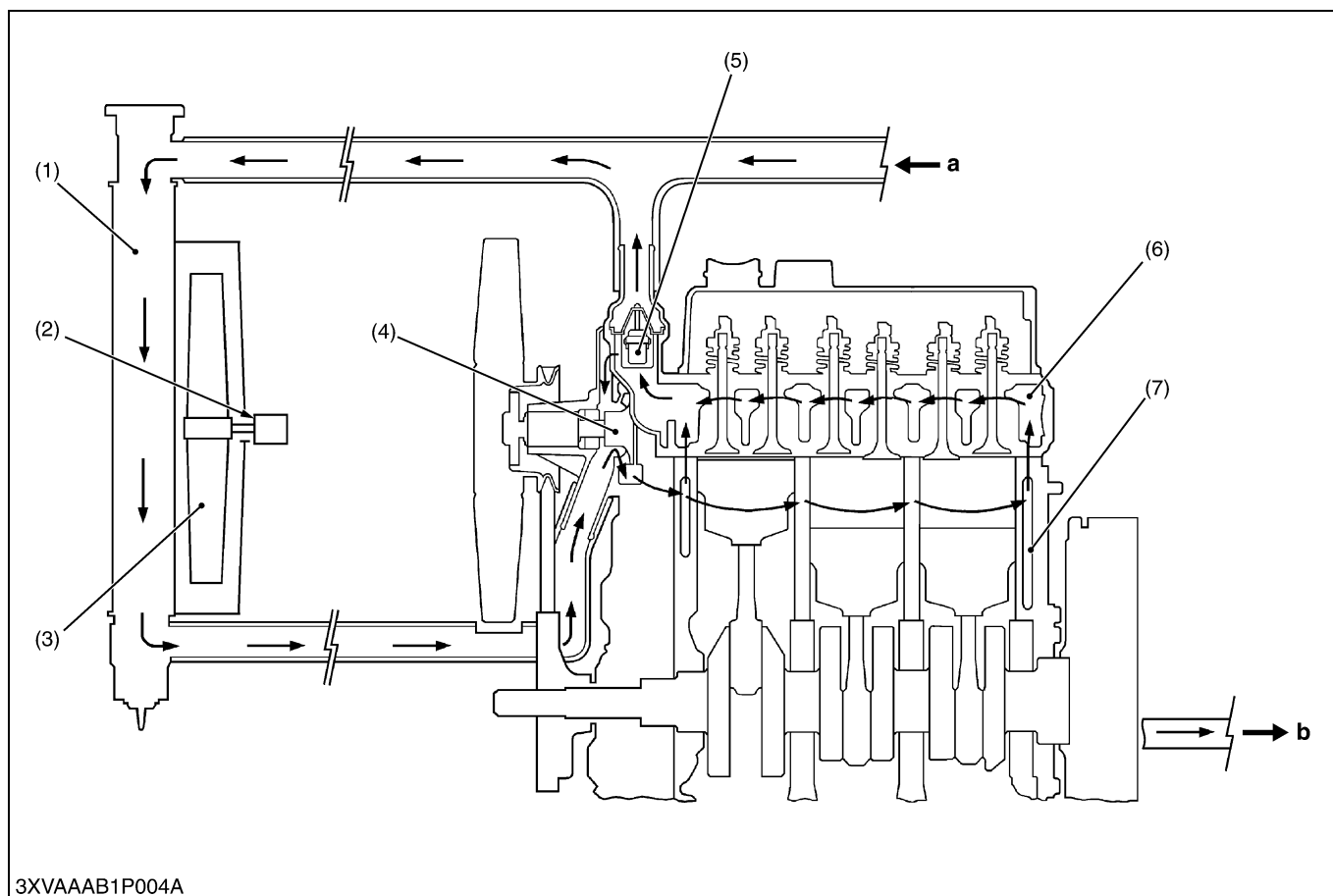
This engine's lubricating system consists of oil strainer (8), oil pump (7), relief valve (9), oil filter cartridge (15) and oil pressure switch (2).

The oil pump sucks lubricating oil from the oil pan through the oil strainer and the oil flows down to the filter cartridge, where it is further filtered. Then the oil is forced to crankshaft (6), connecting rods (14), idle gear (5), camshaft (12) and rocker arm shaft (3) to lubricate each part.

Some part of oil, splashed by the crankshaft or leaking and dropping from gaps of each part, lubricates these parts: piston (13), cylinders, small ends or connecting rods, tappets (11), push rods (10), inlet and exhaust valves (4) and timing gears.

9Y1210996ENM0005US0

### 3. COOLING SYSTEM



- (1) Radiator
- (2) Fan Drive Motor
- (3) Radiator Fan

- (4) Water Pump
- (5) Thermostat

- (6) Cylinder Head
- (7) Cylinder Block

**a: From Transmission Oil Cooler**

**b: To Transmission Oil Cooler**

The cooling system consists of a radiator (1), a radiator fan (3), a centrifugal water pump (4) and a thermostat (5). The coolant is cooled through the radiator core.

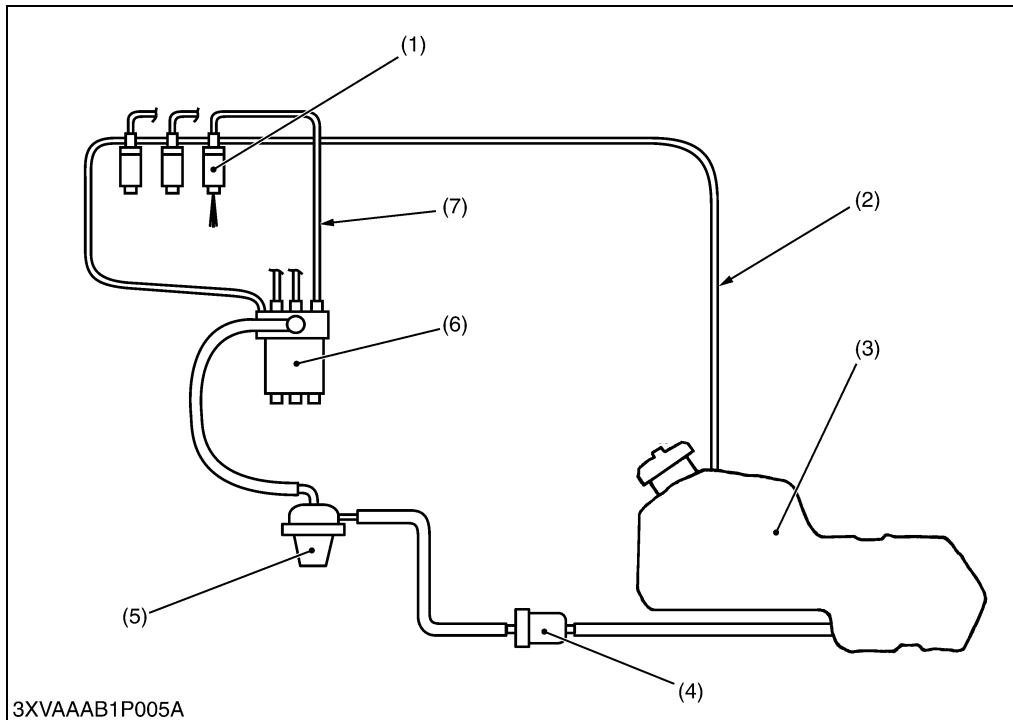
The radiator fan (3) is driven by the fan drive motor (2). The motor (2) moves or stops according to the coolant temperature. When the coolant temperature is high, the motor moves to pull cooling air to the radiator core. When the coolant temperature is low, the motor stops.

The water pump (4) receives coolant from the radiator or from the cylinder head, and forces it into the cylinder block (7). And the coolant flows to the transmission oil cooler through cylinder block (7).

The thermostat (5) opens or closes according to the coolant temperature. When the coolant temperature is high, the thermostat opens to allow the water to flow from the cylinder head to the radiator. When the coolant temperature is low, the thermostat closes to flow the coolant only to the water pump.

9Y1210996ENM0007US0

## 4. FUEL SYSTEM



- (1) Injection Nozzle
- (2) Fuel Overflow Pipe
- (3) Fuel Tank
- (4) Fuel Filter
- (5) Fuel Feed Pump
- (6) Injection Pump
- (7) Injection Pipe

Fuel from the fuel tank (3) passes through the fuel filter (4), and then enters the injection pump (6) after impurities such as dirt, water, etc. are removed.

The fuel pressurized by the injection pump to the opening pressure (13.73 to 14.71 MPa, 140 to 150 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1990 to 2133 psi), of the injection nozzle (1) is injected into the combustion chamber.

Part of the fuel fed to the injection nozzle (1) lubricates the moving parts of the needle valve inside the nozzle, then returns to the fuel tank through the fuel overflow pipe (2) from the upper part of the nozzle holder.

9Y1210996ENM0008US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	1-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	1-S4
[1] ENGINE BODY .....	1-S4
[2] LUBRICATING SYSTEM.....	1-S7
[3] COOLING SYSTEM .....	1-S8
[4] FUEL SYSTEM.....	1-S8
3. TIGHTNING TORQUES .....	1-S9
4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING .....	1-S10
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING .....	1-S10
(1) Engine Body .....	1-S10
(2) Lubricating System .....	1-S13
(3) Cooling System .....	1-S16
(4) Fuel System.....	1-S18
[2] PREPARATION .....	1-S20
(1) Dismounting Transmission and Engine .....	1-S20
(2) Separating Transmission and Engine.....	1-S35
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	1-S37
(1) Cylinder Head and Valve.....	1-S37
(2) Gear Case and Timing Gears .....	1-S40
(3) Piston and Connecting Rod.....	1-S44
(4) Flywheel and Crankshaft.....	1-S46
[4] SERVICING.....	1-S48
(1) Cylinder Head and Valves .....	1-S48
(2) Timing Gears, Camshaft and Governor Gear.....	1-S54
(3) Piston and Connecting Rod.....	1-S57
(4) Crankshaft .....	1-S59
(5) Cylinder .....	1-S64
(6) Oil Pump.....	1-S65



# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Engine Does Not Start</b>	1. No fuel	Fill fuel	G-8
	2. Air in the fuel system	Bleed	G-53
	3. Water in the fuel system	Change fuel and repair or replace fuel system	G-37
	4. Fuel pipe clogged	Clean	G-37
	5. Fuel filter clogged	Change	G-37
	6. Excessively high viscosity of fuel or engine oil at low temperature	Use specified fuel or engine oil	G-8, G-10, G-11
	7. Fuel with low cetane number	Use specified fuel	G-8, G-10, G-11
	8. Fuel leak due to loose injection pipe retaining nut	Tighten retaining nut	1-S37
	9. Incorrect injection timing	Adjust	1-S18
	10. Fuel camshaft worn	Replace	1-S43
	11. Injection nozzle clogged	Repair or replace	1-S14
	12. Injection pump malfunctioning	Replace	1-S42
	13. Seizure of crankshaft, camshaft, piston, cylinder or bearing	Replace	1-S44, 1-S46
	14. Compression leak from cylinder	Replace head gasket, tighten cylinder head screw, glow plug and nozzle holder	1-S11, 1-S39
	15. Improper valve timing	Correct or replace timing gear	1-S43
	16. Piston ring and cylinder worn	Replace	1-S45, 1-S64
	17. Excessive valve clearance	Adjust	1-S12
	18. Engine stop solenoid malfunctioning	Replace	8-S13
<b>Starter Does Not Run</b>	1. Battery discharged	Charge	8-S8
	2. Starter malfunctioning	Repair or replace	8-S11
	3. Key switch malfunctioning	Repair or replace	8-S9
	4. Safety switch malfunctioning	Adjust or replace	8-S12
	5. Wiring disconnected	Connect	8-M1, 8-M3

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Engine Revolution Is Not Smooth</b>	1. Fuel filter clogged or dirty	Replace	G-37
	2. Air cleaner clogged	Clean or replace	G-38
	3. Fuel leak due to loose injection pipe retaining nut	Tighten retaining nut	1-S37
	4. Injection pump malfunctioning	Replace	1-S19, 1-S42
	5. Incorrect nozzle injection pressure	Adjust	1-S14
	6. Injection nozzle stuck or clogged	Repair or replace	1-S14
	7. Governor malfunctioning	Repair	1-S42
<b>Either White or Blue Exhaust Gas Is Observed</b>	1. Excessive engine oil	Reduce to specified level	G-19, G-25
	2. Piston ring and cylinder worn or stuck	Repair or replace	1-S44, 1-S45, 1-S58, 1-S59, 1-S64
	3. Incorrect injection timing	Adjust	1-S18
<b>Either Black or Dark Gray Exhaust Gas Is Observed</b>	1. Overload	Reduce the load	–
	2. Low grade fuel used	Use specified fuel	G-8, G-10, G-11
	3. Fuel filter clogged	Replace	G-37
	4. Air cleaner clogged	Clean or replace	G-38
	5. Deficient nozzle injection	Repair or replace nozzle	1-S14
<b>Deficient Output</b>	1. Incorrect injection timing	Adjust	1-S18
	2. Engine's moving parts seem to be seizing	Repair or replace	–
	3. Injection pump malfunctioning	Replace injection pump	1-S19, 1-S42
	4. Deficient nozzle injection	Repair or replace nozzle	1-S14
	5. Compression leak	Replace head gasket, tighten cylinder head screw, glow plug and nozzle holder	1-S11, 1-S37, 1-S39
	6. Air cleaner dirty or clogged	Clean or replace	G-38
<b>Excessive Lubricant Oil Consumption</b>	1. Piston ring's gap facing the same direction	Shift ring gap direction	1-S44
	2. Oil ring worn or stuck	Replace	1-S45
	3. Piston ring groove worn	Replace piston	1-S59
	4. Valve stem and valve guide worn	Replace	1-S40, 1-S50, 1-S50
	5. Crankshaft bearing and crank pin bearing worn	replace	1-S47
	6. Oil leaking due to damaged seals or packing	Replace	1-S39, 1-S40

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Fuel Mixed into Lubricant Oil</b>	1. Injection pump's plunger worn	Replace injection pump	1-S19, 1-S42
	2. Deficient nozzle injection	Repair or replace nozzle	1-S14
	3. Injection pump broken	Replace	1-S42
<b>Water Mixed into Lubricant Oil</b>	1. Head gasket damaged	Replace	1-S39
	2. Cylinder block or cylinder head flawed	Replace	1-S39, 1-S48, 1-S49
<b>Low Oil Pressure</b>	1. Engine oil insufficient	Fill	G-19, G-25
	2. Oil strainer clogged	Clean	1-S40
	3. Oil filter clogged	Replace	G-26
	4. Relief valve stuck with dirt	Clean	–
	5. Relief valve spring weaken or broken	Replace	–
	6. Excessive oil clearance of crankshaft bearing	Replace	1-S61, 1-S62
	7. Excessive oil clearance of crankpin bearing	Replace	1-S60
	8. Excessive oil clearance of rocker arm	Replace	1-S38, 1-S52
	9. Oil passage clogged	Clean	–
	10. Different type of oil	Use specified type of oil	G-8, G-10, G-11
	11. Oil pump damaged	Replace	–
<b>High Oil Pressure</b>	1. Different type of oil	Use specified type of oil	G-8, G-10, G-11
	2. Relief valve damaged	Replace	–
<b>Engine Overheated</b>	1. Engine oil insufficient	Fill	G-19, G-25
	2. Fan belt broken or tensioned improperly	Replace or adjust	1-S16
	3. Coolant insufficient	Fill	G-20, G-50
	4. Radiator net and radiator fin clogged with dust	Clean	G-20
	5. Inside of radiator corroded	Clean or replace	G-50
	6. Coolant flow route corroded	Clean or replace	G-46
	7. Radiator cap damaged	Replace	1-S17
	8. Radiator hose damaged	Replace	G-46
	9. Electric parts of the cooling system broken	Replace	8-S20, 8-S21, 8-S22
	10. Overload running	Reduce the load	–
	11. Head gasket damaged	Replace	1-S39
	12. Incorrect injection timing	Adjust	1-S18
	13. Unsuitable fuel used	Use specified fuel	G-10, G-11

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

### [1] ENGINE BODY

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Compression Pressure		3.73 to 4.11 MPa 38.0 to 42.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 541 to 597 psi	2.26 MPa 23.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 327 psi
• Difference among Cylinders		—	10 % or less
Valve Clearance (Cold)		0.145 to 0.185 mm 0.00571 to 0.00728 in.	—
Top Clearance		0.55 to 0.75 mm 0.022 to 0.029 in.	—
Cylinder Head Surface	Flatness	—	0.05 mm 0.002 in.
Valve Recessing	Intake and Exhaust	−0.050 to 0.25 mm −0.0020 to 0.0098 in.	0.40 mm 0.016 in.
Valve Stem to Valve Guide	Clearance	0.035 to 0.065 mm 0.0014 to 0.0025 in.	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.
• Valve Stem	O.D.	6.960 to 6.975 mm 0.2741 to 0.2746 in.	—
• Valve Guide	I.D.	7.010 to 7.025 mm 0.2760 to 0.2765 in.	—
Valve Seat	Angle (Intake)	1.0 rad 60 °	—
	Angle (Exhaust)	0.79 rad 45 °	—
	Width	2.12 mm 0.0835 in.	—
Valve Face	Angle (Intake)	1.0 rad 60 °	—
	Angle (Exhaust)	0.79 rad 45 °	—
Valve Spring	Tilt	—	1.0 mm 0.039 in.
	Free Length	37.0 to 37.5 mm 1.46 to 1.47 in.	36.5 mm 1.44 in.
	Setting Load	117.4 N / 31.0 mm 11.97 kgf / 31.0 mm 26.39 lbf / 1.22 in.	100.0 N / 31.0 mm 10.20 kgf / 31.0 mm 22.48 lbf / 1.22 in.

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Rocker Arm Shaft to Rocker Arm	Clearance	0.016 to 0.045 mm 0.00063 to 0.0017 in.	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.
	• Rocker Arm Shaft	O.D. 11.973 to 11.984 mm 0.47138 to 0.47181 in.	—
	• Rocker Arm	I.D. 12.000 to 12.018 mm 0.47244 to 0.47314 in.	—
Push Rod	Alignment	—	0.25 mm 0.0098 in.
Tappet to Tappet Guide	Clearance	0.020 to 0.062 mm 0.00079 to 0.0024 in.	0.07 mm 0.003 in.
	• Tappet	O.D. 19.959 to 19.980 mm 0.78579 to 0.78661 in.	—
	• Tappet Guide	I.D. 20.000 to 20.021 mm 0.78740 to 0.78822 in.	—
Timing Gear	• Crank Gear to Idle Gear 1	Backlash 0.0320 to 0.115 mm 0.00126 to 0.00452 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
	• Idle Gear 1 to Cam Gear	Backlash 0.0360 to 0.114 mm 0.00142 to 0.00448 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
	• Idle Gear 1 to Injection Pump Gear	Backlash 0.0340 to 0.116 mm 0.00134 to 0.00456 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
Governor Gear	• Governor Gear to Injection Pump Gear	Backlash 0.0300 to 0.117 mm 0.00119 to 0.00460 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
Idle Gear	• Idle Gear 1	Side Clearance 0.20 to 0.51 mm 0.0079 to 0.020 in.	0.80 mm 0.031 in.
Camshaft	Side Clearance	0.070 to 0.22 mm 0.0028 to 0.0086 in.	0.30 mm 0.012 in.
	Alignment	—	0.01 mm 0.0004 in.
Cam Height	Intake	28.80 mm 1.134 in.	28.75 mm 1.132 in.
	Exhaust	29.00 mm 1.142 in.	28.95 mm 1.140 in.
Camshaft Journal to Cylinder Block Bore	Oil Clearance	0.050 to 0.091 mm 0.0020 to 0.0035 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
	• Camshaft Journal	O.D. 35.934 to 35.950 mm 1.4147 to 1.4154 in.	—
	• Cylinder Block Bore	I.D. 36.000 to 36.025 mm 1.4173 to 1.4183 in.	—

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Idle Gear Shaft to Gear Bushing • Idle Gear 1  • Idle Gear Shaft 1  • Idle Gear Bushing	Clearance	0.020 to 0.054 mm 0.00079 to 0.0021 in.	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.
	O.D.	25.967 to 25.980 mm 1.0224 to 1.0228 in.	—
	I.D.	26.000 to 26.021 mm 1.0237 to 1.0244 in.	—
Piston Pin Bore	I.D.	22.000 to 22.013 mm 0.86615 to 0.86665 in.	22.03 mm 0.8673 in.
Piston Pin to Small End Bushing  • Piston Pin  • Small End Bushing	Clearance	0.014 to 0.038 mm 0.00056 to 0.0014 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
	O.D.	22.002 to 22.011 mm 0.86622 to 0.86657 in.	—
	I.D.	22.025 to 22.040 mm 0.86713 to 0.86771 in.	—
Connecting Rod	Alignment	—	0.05 mm 0.002 in.
Piston Ring Gap	Top Ring	0.15 to 0.25 mm 0.0059 to 0.0098 in.	1.20 mm 0.0472 in.
	Second Ring	0.40 to 0.55 mm 0.016 to 0.021 in.	1.20 mm 0.0472 in.
	Oil Ring	0.25 to 0.45 mm 0.0099 to 0.017 in.	1.25 mm 0.0492 in.
Piston Ring to Piston Ring Groove • Second Ring  • Oil Ring	Clearance	0.0850 to 0.122 mm 0.00335 to 0.00480 in.	0.2 mm 0.008 in.
	Clearance	0.02 to 0.06 mm 0.0008 to 0.002 in.	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.
Crankshaft	Side Clearance	0.15 to 0.31 mm 0.0059 to 0.012 in.	0.50 mm 0.020 in.
	Alignment	—	0.02 mm 0.0008 in.
Crankpin to Crankpin Bearing  • Crankpin  • Crankpin Bearing	Oil Clearance	0.029 to 0.091 mm 0.0012 to 0.0035 in.	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.
	O.D.	39.959 to 39.975 mm 1.5732 to 1.5738 in.	—
	I.D.	40.040 to 40.050 mm 1.5764 to 1.5767 in.	—

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Crankshaft to Crankshaft Bearing 1	Oil Clearance	0.0340 to 0.114 mm 0.00134 to 0.00448 in.	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.
• Crankshaft	O.D.	47.934 to 47.950 mm 1.8872 to 1.8877 in.	—
• Crankshaft Bearing 1	I.D.	47.984 to 48.048 mm 1.8892 to 1.8916 in.	—
Crankshaft to Crankshaft Bearing 2	Oil Clearance	0.034 to 0.095 mm 0.0014 to 0.0037 in.	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.
• Crankshaft Journal	O.D.	47.934 to 47.950 mm 1.8872 to 1.8877 in.	—
• Crankshaft Bearing 2	I.D.	47.984 to 48.029 mm 1.8892 to 1.8908 in.	—
Crankshaft to Crankshaft Bearing 3	Oil Clearance	0.0340 to 0.103 mm 0.00134 to 0.00405 in.	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.
• Crankshaft Journal	O.D.	51.921 to 51.940 mm 2.0442 to 2.0448 in.	—
• Crankshaft Bearing 3	I.D.	51.974 to 52.024 mm 2.0463 to 2.0481 in.	—
Cylinder Liner	I.D.	78.000 to 78.019 mm 3.0709 to 3.0716 in.	78.15 mm 3.077 in.
Cylinder (Oversized)	I.D.	78.500 to 78.519 mm 3.0906 to 3.0912 in.	78.65 mm 3.096 in.

9Y1210996ENS0002US0

## [2] LUBRICATING SYSTEM

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Engine Oil Pressure	At Idle Speed	More than 49 kPa 0.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 7.1 psi	—
	At Rated Speed	197 to 441 kPa 2.00 to 4.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 28.5 to 64.0 psi	147 kPa 1.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 21.3 psi
Inner Rotor to Outer Rotor	Clearance	0.060 to 0.18 mm 0.0024 to 0.0071 in.	—
Outer Rotor to Pump Body	Clearance	0.100 to 0.180 mm 0.00394 to 0.00708 in.	—
Inner Rotor to Cover	Clearance	0.025 to 0.075 mm 0.00099 to 0.0029 in.	—

9Y1210996ENS0003US0

### [3] COOLING SYSTEM

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Fan Belt	Tension	7.0 to 9.0 mm / 98 N 0.28 to 0.35 in. / 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf)	—
Radiator Cap	Pressure Falling Time	10 seconds or more 88 → 59 kPa 0.90 → 0.60 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 13 → 8.6 psi	—
Radiator	Water Leakage Test Pressure	157 kPa 1.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 23 psi	—
Thermostat	Valve Opening Temperature (At Beginning)	80.0 to 84.0 °C 176 to 183 °F	—
	Valve Opening Temperature (Opened Completely)	95 °C 203 °F	—

9Y1210996ENS0004US0

### [4] FUEL SYSTEM

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Injection Nozzle	Injection Pressure	13.73 to 14.70 MPa 140.0 to 150.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1992 to 2133 psi	—
Injection Nozzle Valve Seat	Valve Seat Tightness	When the pressure is 12.75 MPa (130.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 1849 psi), the valve seat must be fuel tightness.	—
Injection Pump	Injection Timing (3000 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm))	0.3011 to 0.3272 rad (17.25 to 18.75 °) before T.D.C.	—
Pump Element	Fuel Tightness	—	13.73 MPa 140.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 psi
Delivery Valve	Fuel Tightness	10 seconds 13.73 → 12.75 MPa 140.0 → 130.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 → 1849 psi	5 seconds 13.73 → 12.75 MPa 140.0 → 130.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 → 1849 psi

9Y1210996ENS0005US0



### 3. TIGHTNING TORQUES

Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to page "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2	7.91 to 9.19	57.2 to 66.5
Oil pressure switch	15 to 19	1.5 to 2.0	11 to 14
Nozzle holder	35 to 39	3.5 to 4.0	26 to 28
Overflow pipe retaining nut	35 to 39	3.5 to 4.0	26 to 28
Nozzle holder assembly	49 to 68	5.0 to 7.0	37 to 50
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Brake pipe retaining nut	13 to 17	1.4 to 1.7	9.6 to 12
Mission frame flange bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Engine support flange bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Mission frame reamer bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Upper mission support reamer bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Engine support bolt	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2
Upper mission support flange bolt	23.5 to 27.5	2.40 to 2.80	17.4 to 20.2
Mission support flange bolt	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2

#### ■ NOTE

- For "\*" marked screws, bolts and nuts on the table, apply engine oil to their threads and seats before tightening.
- The letter "M" in Size × Pitch means that the screw, bolt or nut dimension stands for metric. The size is the nominal outside diameter in mm of the threads. The pitch is the nominal in mm between two threads.

Item	Dimension × Pitch	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Overflow pipe retaining nut	M12 × 1.5	35 to 39	3.5 to 4.0	26 to 28
Cylinder head cover screw	M7 × 1.0	7 to 8	0.7 to 0.9	5 to 6
Injection pipe retaining nut	M12 × 1.5	25 to 34	2.5 to 3.5	18 to 25
Glow plug	M8 × 1.0	7.9 to 14	0.80 to 1.5	5.8 to 10
*Rocker arm bracket nut	M7 × 1.0	22 to 26	2.2 to 2.7	16 to 19
Cylinder head screw	M10 × 1.25	64 to 68	6.5 to 7.0	47 to 50
*Fan drive pulley screw	M14 × 1.5	236 to 245	24.0 to 25.0	174 to 180
*Connecting rod screw	M8 × 1.0	42 to 46	4.2 to 4.7	31 to 33
*Flywheel screw	M10 × 1.25	54 to 58	5.5 to 6.0	40 to 43
Bearing case cover mounting screw	M6 × 1.0	10.8 to 12.2	1.10 to 1.25	7.96 to 9.04
*Main bearing case screw 2	M9 × 1.25	49 to 53	5.0 to 5.5	37 to 39
*Main bearing case screw 1	M8 × 1.25	30 to 34	3.0 to 3.5	22 to 25

9Y1210996ENS0007US0

## 4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING

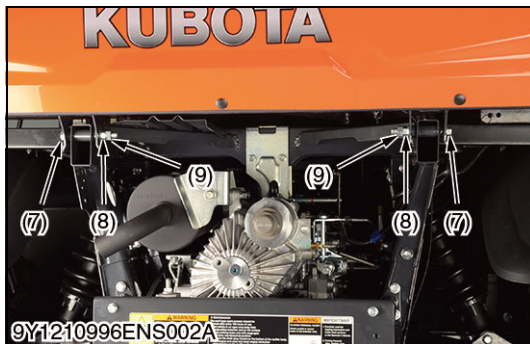
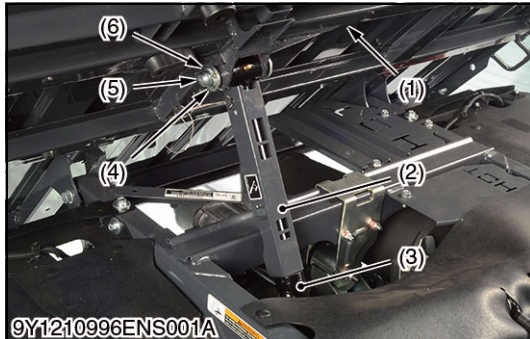
### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING

#### CAUTION

- Be sure to check that the main shift lever is in the neutral position before performing checks.
- When checking, park the machine on flat ground and apply the parking brake.

9Y1210996ENS0008US0

### (1) Engine Body



#### Cargo Bed

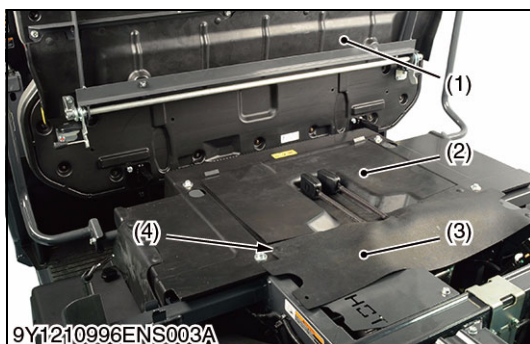
#### CAUTION

- Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.
1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
  2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
  3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
  4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
  5. Remove the cargo bed (1).
- (When reassembling)**
- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
  - Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0

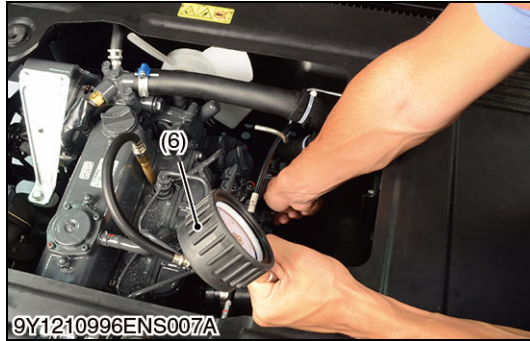
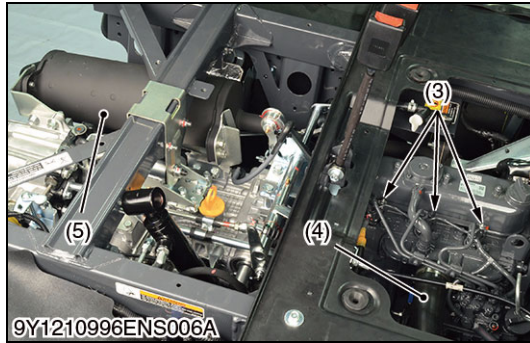
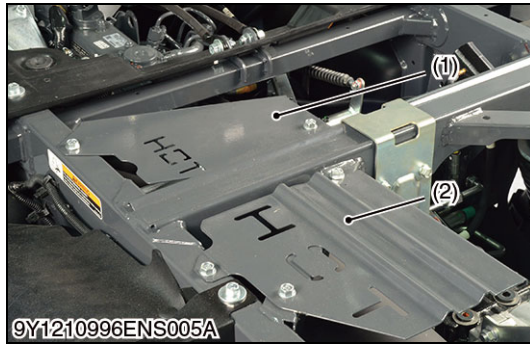


#### Rear Upper Cover and L.H. Side Cover

1. Lift the rear seat assembly (1) and secure in the raised position, if the seat is in the lowered position.
  2. Remove the rear upper cover (2) and upper engine rubber cover (3).
  3. Remove the L.H. side cover (5) and fuse box rubber cover (6).
- (When reassembling)**
- Replace damaged push rivets (4).

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (1) Rear Seat Assembly        | (4) Push Rivet            |
| (2) Rear Upper Cover          | (5) L.H. Side Cover       |
| (3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover | (6) Fuse Box Rubber Cover |

9Y1210996ENS0010US0



## Compression Pressure

### ⚠ CAUTION

- **Work by two people when you measure pressure.**
1. Run the engine until it is warmed up.
  2. Stop the engine.
  3. Remove the muffler cover (2) and rear exhaust cover (1).
  4. Remove the air cleaner hose (4), the muffler (5) and all glow plugs (3).
  5. Disconnect the accelerator wire.
  6. Engage the parking brake.
  7. Set a compression tester (6) (Code No. 07909-30208) with the adaptor (Adaptor L, code No. 07909-31301) to the glow plug hole.
  8. After making sure that the stop lever is set at the stop position (non-injection), run the engine with the starter and measure the compression pressure.
  9. Repeat steps 6 and 7 for each cylinder.
  10. If the measurement is below the allowable limit, apply a small amount of oil to the cylinder wall through the glow plug hole and measure the compression pressure again.
  11. If the compression pressure is still less than the allowable limit, check the top clearance, valve clearance and cylinder head.
  12. If the compression pressure increases after applying oil, check the cylinder wall and piston rings.

### ■ NOTE

- **Check the compression pressure with the specified valve clearance.**
- **Always use a fully charged battery for performing this test.**
- **Variances in cylinder compression values should be under 10 %.**

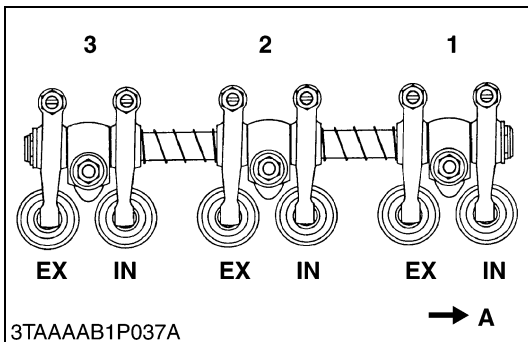
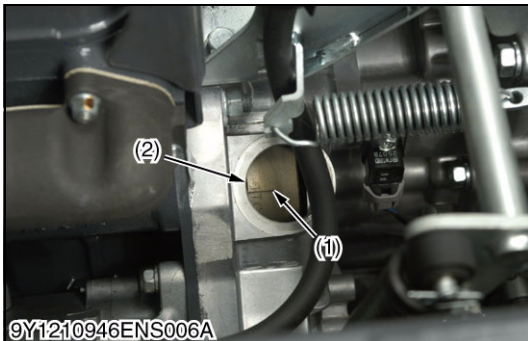
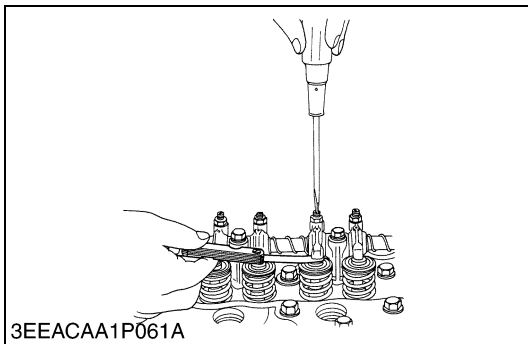
Compression pressure	Factory specification	3.73 to 4.11 MPa 38.0 to 42.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 541 to 597 psi
	Allowable limit	2.26 MPa 23.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 327 psi

### (Condition)

- Coolant temperature:  
80 to 90 °C (176 to 194 °F)

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Rear Exhaust Cover | (4) Air Cleaner Hose   |
| (2) Muffler Cover      | (5) Muffler            |
| (3) Glow Plug          | (6) Compression Tester |

9Y1210996ENS0011US0



## Valve Clearance

### ■ IMPORTANT

- Valve clearance must be checked and adjusted when engine is cold.
- Remove the cylinder head cover, glow plugs, and timing window cover.
  - Align the "1TC" mark (1) on the flywheel and timing window (2) on the transmission case so that the No. 1 piston comes to the compression top dead center.
  - Check the following valve clearance marked with "★" using a feeler gauge.
  - If the clearance is not within the factory specifications, adjust with the adjusting screw.
  - Then turn the flywheel 6.28 rad (360 °), and align the "1TC" mark (1) on the flywheel and timing window (2) on the rear end plate so that the No. 1 piston comes to the overlap position.
  - Check the following valve clearance marked with "☆" using a feeler gauge.
  - If the clearance is not within the factory specifications, adjust with the adjusting screw.

Adjustable cylinder location of piston	Number of cylinders Valve arrangement	
	Intake valve	Exhaust valve
No.1	★	★
No.2	☆	★
No.3	★	☆

★: When No. 1 piston is at the compression top dead center position.

☆: When No. 1 piston is at the overlap position.

Intake and exhaust valve clearance (cold)	Factory specification	0.145 to 0.185 mm 0.00571 to 0.00728 in.
---	-----------------------	---

### ■ NOTE

- The sequence of cylinder numbers is given as No. 1, No. 2 and No. 3 starting from the gear case side.
- After adjusting the valve clearance, secure the adjusting screw with the lock nut.

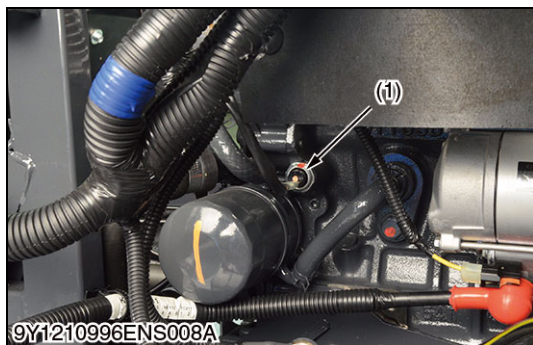
- (1) "1TC" Mark  
(2) Timing Window

A: Gear Case Side

9Y1210996ENS0012US0



## (2) Lubricating System



### Engine Oil Pressure

1. Remove the engine oil pressure switch (1), and set an oil pressure tester (2). (Code No.: 07916-32032)
2. Start the engine. After warming up, measure the oil pressure of both idling and rated speeds.
3. If the oil pressure is less than the allowable limit, check the following.
  - Engine oil insufficient
  - Oil pump damaged
  - Oil strainer clogged
  - Oil filter cartridge clogged
  - Oil gallery clogged
  - Excessive oil clearance
  - Foreign matter in the relief valve
  - Relief valve struck or dirt

Engine oil pressure	At idle speed	Factory specification	More than 49 kPa 0.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 7.1 psi
	At rated speed	Factory specification	197 to 441 kPa 2.00 to 4.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 28.5 to 64.0 psi
		Allowable limit	147 kPa 1.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 21.3 psi

### (When reassembling)

- After checking the engine oil pressure, tighten the engine oil pressure switch to the specified torque.

Tightening torque	Oil pressure switch	15 to 19 N·m 1.5 to 2.0 kgf·m 11 to 14 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------	---

(1) Oil Pressure Switch

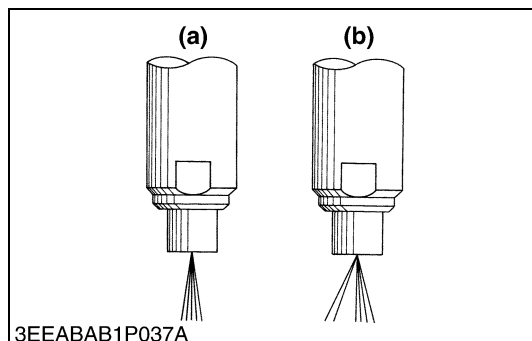
(2) Oil Pressure Tester

9Y1210996ENS0013US0

# **CAUTION**

- Check the injection pressure and condition after you make sure that there is nobody standing in the direction the fume goes.
- If the fume from the nozzle directly contacts the human body, cells may be destroyed and blood poisoning may be caused.

9Y1210996ENS0014US0



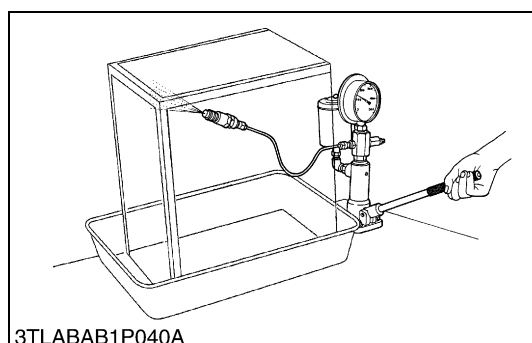
## **Nozzle Spraying Condition**

1. Set the injection nozzle to a nozzle tester, and check the nozzle spraying condition.
2. If the spraying condition is damaged, replace the nozzle piece.

(a) Good

(b) Bad

9Y1210996ENS0015US0



## **Fuel Injection Pressure**

1. Set the injection nozzle to a nozzle tester.
2. Slowly move the tester handle to measure the pressure at which fuel begins jetting out from the nozzle.
3. If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, replace the adjusting washer (1) in the nozzle holder to adjust it.

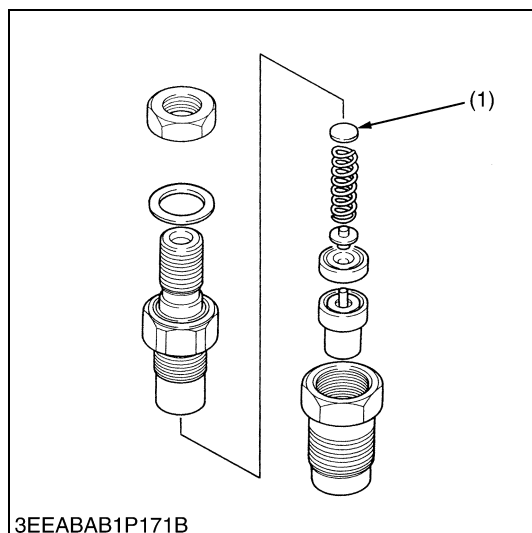
### **(Reference)**

- Pressure variation with 0.025 mm (0.00098 in.) difference of adjusting washer thickness.  
Approx. 590 kPa (6.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 85 psi)

Fuel injection pressure	Factory specification	13.73 to 14.70 MPa 140.0 to 150.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1992 to 2133 psi
-------------------------	-----------------------	--

(1) Adjusting Washer

9Y1210996ENS0016US0

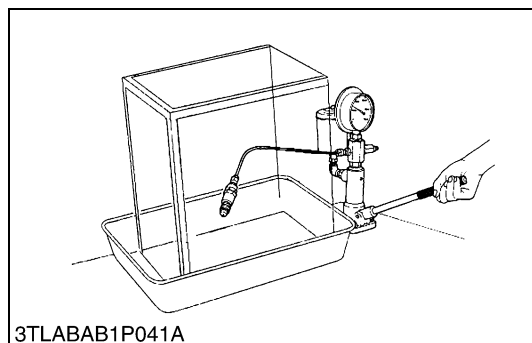


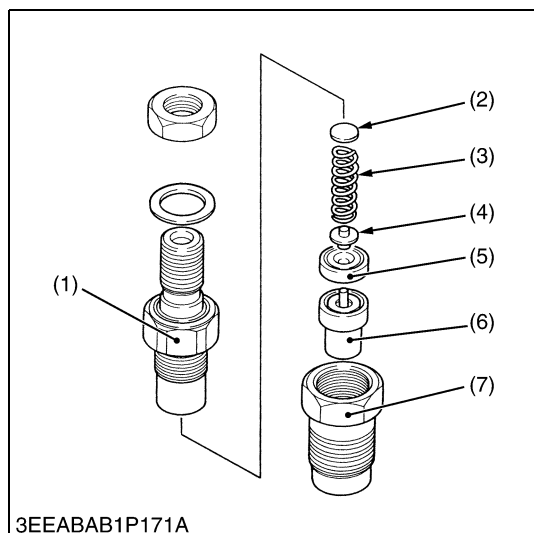
## **Nozzle Valve Seat Tightness**

1. Set the injection nozzle to a nozzle tester.
2. Raise the fuel pressure, and keep at 12.75 MPa (130.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1849 psi) for 10 seconds.
3. If any fuel leak is found, replace the nozzle piece.

Valve seat tightness	Factory specification	No fuel leak at 12.75 MPa 130.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1849 psi
----------------------	-----------------------	---

9Y1210996ENS0017US0





### Nozzle Holder

1. Secure the nozzle retaining nut (7) with a vise.
2. Remove the nozzle holder (1), and remove parts inside.

#### (When reassembling)

- Assemble the nozzle in clean fuel oil.
- Install the push rod (4), noting its direction.
- After assembling the nozzle, be sure to adjust the fuel injection pressure.

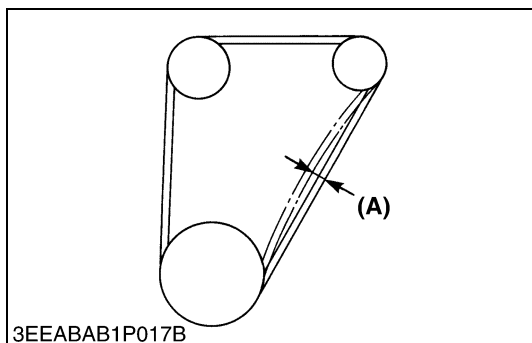
Tightening torque	Nozzle holder	35 to 39 N·m 3.5 to 4.0 kgf·m 26 to 28 lbf·ft
	Overflow pipe retaining nut	35 to 39 N·m 3.5 to 4.0 kgf·m 26 to 28 lbf·ft
	Nozzle holder assembly	49 to 68 N·m 5.0 to 7.0 kgf·m 37 to 50 lbf·ft

- (1) Nozzle Holder  
(2) Adjusting Washer  
(3) Nozzle Spring  
(4) Push Rod

- (5) Distance Piece  
(6) Nozzle Piece  
(7) Nozzle Retaining Nut

9Y1210996ENS0018US0

### (3) Cooling System



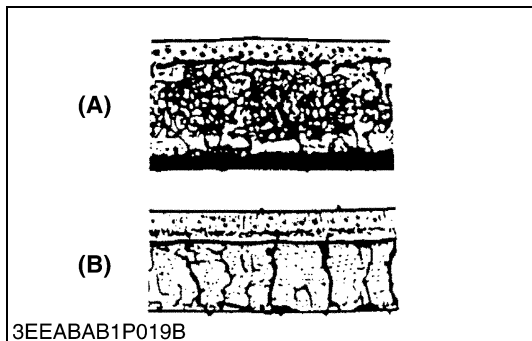
#### Fan Belt Tension

1. Measure the deflection **(A)**, depressing the belt halfway between the fan drive pulley and alternator pulley at specified force 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf).
2. If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, loosen the alternator mounting screws and relocate the alternator to adjust.

Deflection <b>(A)</b>	Factory specification	7.0 to 9.0 mm 0.28 to 0.35 in.
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------------

#### **(A) Deflection**

9Y1210996ENS0019US0



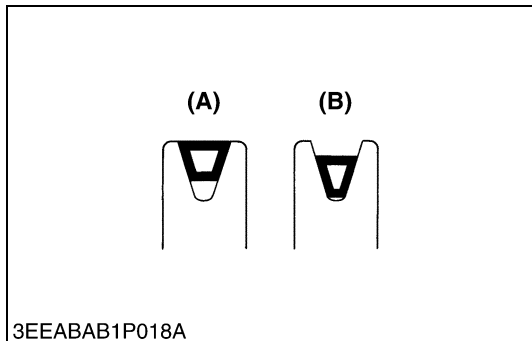
#### Fan Belt Damage and Wear

1. Check the fan belt for damage.
2. If the fan belt is damaged, replace it.
3. Check if the fan belt is worn and sunk in the pulley groove.
4. If the fan belt is nearly worn out and deeply sunk in the pulley groove, replace it.

#### **(A) Good**

#### **(B) Bad**

9Y1210996ENS0020US0

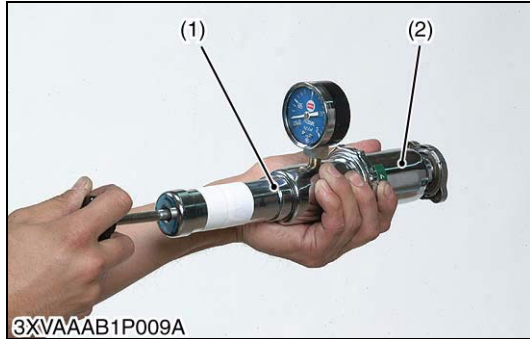




# CAUTION

- When removing the radiator cap, wait at least ten minutes after the engine has stopped and cooled down. Otherwise, hot water may gush out, scalding nearby people.

9Y1210996ENS0021US0



## Radiator Cap Air Leakage

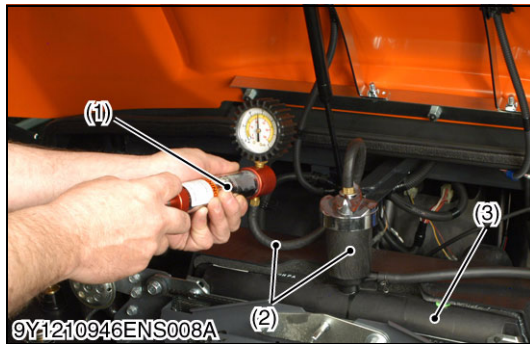
- Set a radiator tester (1) and an adaptor (2) on the radiator cap.
- Apply the specified pressure (88 kPa, 0.9 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 13 psi), and measure the time for the pressure to fall to 59 kPa (0.6 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 9 psi).
- If the measurement is less than the factory specification, replace the radiator cap.

Pressure falling time	Factory specification	More than 10 seconds for pressure fall from 88 to 59 kPa (from 0.90 to 0.60 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , from 13 to 8.6 psi)
-----------------------	-----------------------	---

(1) Radiator Tester

(2) Adaptor

9Y1210996ENS0022US0



## Radiator Water Leakage

- Pour a specified amount of water into the radiator.
- Set a radiator tester (1) and an adapter (2) and raise the water pressure to the specified pressure.
- Check the radiator for water leaks.
- For water leak from the pinhole, repair with the radiator cement. When water leak is excessive, replace the radiator.

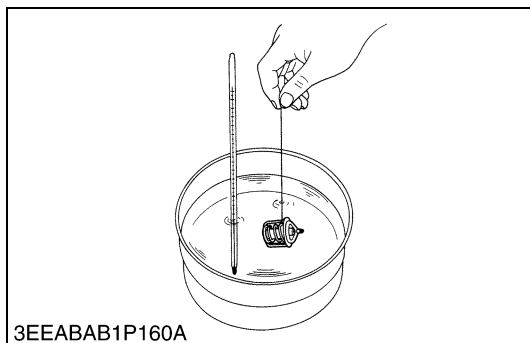
Radiator water leakage test pressure	Factory specification	157 kPa 1.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 23 psi
--------------------------------------	-----------------------	--

(1) Radiator Tester

(3) Radiator

(2) Adaptor

9Y1210996ENS0023US0



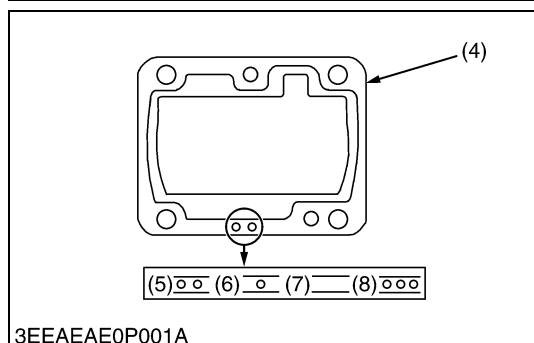
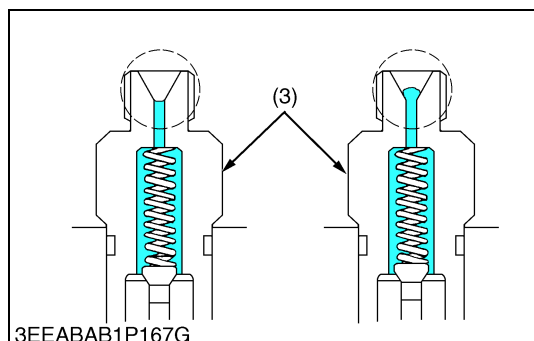
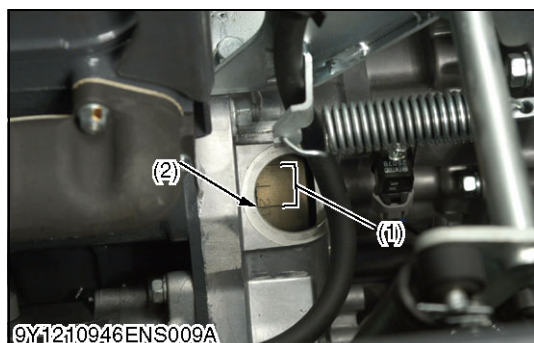
## Thermostat Valve Opening Temperature

- Suspend the thermostat in the water by a string with its end inserted between the valve and seat.
- Heating the water gradually, read the temperature when the valve opens and leaves the string.
- Continue heating and read the temperature when the valve opens approx. 8.0 mm (0.31 in.).
- If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, replace the thermostat.

Thermostat's valve opening temperature	Factory specification	80.0 to 84.0 °C 176 to 183 °F
Temperature at which thermostat completely opens	Factory specification	95 °C 203 °F

9Y1210996ENS0024US0

## (4) Fuel System



### Injection Timing

1. Remove the injection pipes.
2. Remove the engine stop solenoid and the timing window cover.
3. Turn the flywheel counterclockwise (viewed from flywheel side) until the fuel fills up to the hole of the delivery valve holder (3) for No. 1 cylinder.
4. After the fuel fills up to the hole of the delivery valve holder for No. 1 cylinder, turn back (clockwise) the flywheel around 1.6 rad (90 °).
5. Turn the flywheel counterclockwise to set at around 0.44 rad (25 °) before T.D.C..
6. Slowly turn the flywheel counterclockwise and stop turning when the fuel begins to come up, to get the present injection timing.
7. Check to if the timing angle lines on the flywheel is aligned with the center of timing window (2).  
The flywheel has mark "1TC", "10" and "20" for the crank angle before the top dead center of No. 1 cylinder.
8. If injection timing is out of adjustment, readjust the timing with shims.

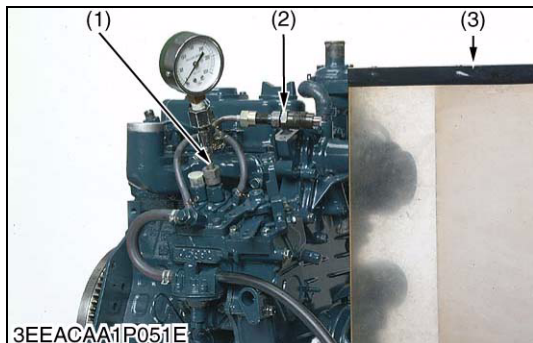
Injection timing	Factory specification	0.3011 to 0.3272 rad (17.25 to 18.75 °) before T.D.C.
------------------	-----------------------	---

#### ■ NOTE

- The liquid gasket is not required for assembling.
- Shims are available in thickness of 0.20 mm (0.0079 in.), 0.25 mm (0.0098 in.), 0.30 mm (0.012 in.), 0.35 mm (0.014 in.) and 0.175 mm (0.00689 in.). Combine these shims for adjustments.
- Addition or reduction of shim (0.025 mm, 0.00098 in.) delays or advances the injection timing by approx. 0.0044 rad (0.25 °).
- In disassembling and replacing the injection pump, be sure to use the same number of new shims with the same thickness.
- The 0.175 mm (0.00689 in.) thick shim is coated only on the lower face. Therefore, do not use the 0.175 mm (0.00689 in.) thick shim as the top shim of the combination (injection pump side), because this can cause oil leakage.
- Refer to figure of the shim to check the thickness of the shims.
- The injection timing might be changed by the application.

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Timing Line                   | (5) Two-holes: 0.20 mm (0.0079 in.)   |
| (2) Timing Window                 | Two-holes: 0.175 mm (0.00689 in.)     |
| (3) Delivery Valve Holder         | (6) One-hole: 0.25 mm (0.0098 in.)    |
| (4) Shim (Soft Metal Gasket Shim) | (7) Without hole: 0.30 mm (0.012 in.) |
|                                   | (8) Three-holes: 0.35 mm (0.014 in.)  |

9Y1210996ENS0025US0



### Fuel Tightness of Pump Element

1. Remove the engine stop solenoid.
2. Remove the injection pipes and glow plugs.
3. Install the injection pump pressure tester to the injection pump.
4. Install the injection nozzle (2) jetted with the proper injection pressure to the injection pump pressure tester (1). (Refer to the photo.)
5. Set the speed control lever to the maximum speed position.
6. Run the starter to increase the pressure.
7. If the pressure can not reach the allowable limit, replace the pump with new one or repair with a KUBOTA-authorized pump service shop.

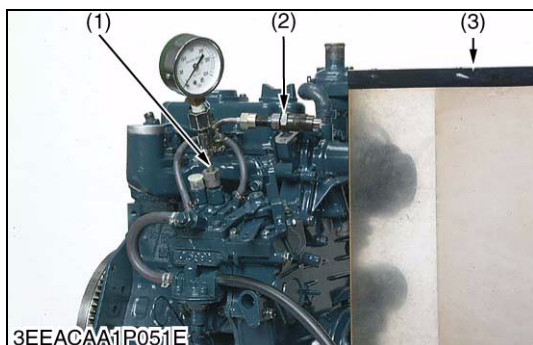
Fuel tightness of pump element	Allowable limit	13.73 MPa 140.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 psi
--------------------------------	-----------------	--

### NOTE

- **Never try to disassemble the injection pump assembly. For repairs, you are strongly requested to contact a KUBOTA-authorized pump service shop.**

- (1) Injection Pump Pressure Tester      (3) Protection Cover for Jetted Fuel  
(2) Injection Nozzle

9Y1210996ENS0026US0



### Fuel Tightness of Delivery Valve

1. Remove the engine stop solenoid.
2. Remove the injection pipes and glow plugs.
3. Set a pressure tester to the fuel injection pump.
4. Install the injection nozzle (2) jetted with the proper injection pressure to the injection pump pressure tester (1).
5. Run the starter to increase the pressure.
6. Stop the starter when the fuel jets from the injection nozzle. After that, turn the flywheel by hands and raise the pressure to approx. 13.73 MPa (140.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1991 psi).
7. Now turn the flywheel back about half a turn (to keep the plunger free). Keep the flywheel at this position and clock the time taken for the pressure to drop from 13.73 to 12.75 MPa (from 140.0 to 130.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, from 1991 to 1849 psi).
8. Measure the time needed to decrease the pressure from 13.73 to 12.75 MPa (from 140.0 to 130.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, from 1991 to 1849 psi).
9. If the measurement is less than allowable limit, replace the pump with new one or repair with a KUBOTA-authorized pump service shop.

Fuel tightness of delivery valve	Factory specification	10 seconds 13.73 → 12.75 MPa 140.0 → 130.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 → 1849 psi
	Allowable limit	5 seconds 13.73 → 12.75 MPa 140.0 → 130.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1991 → 1849 psi

### NOTE

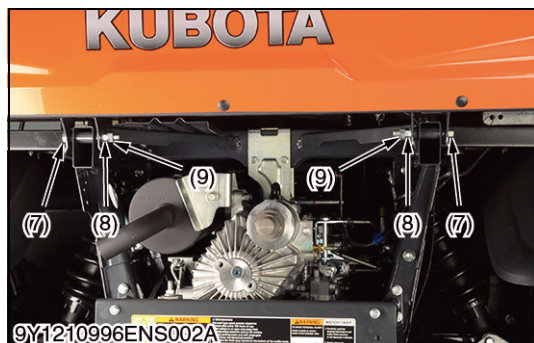
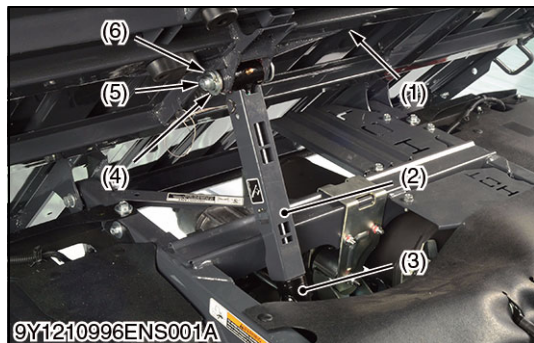
- **Never try to disassemble the injection pump assembly. For repairs, you are strongly requested to contact a KUBOTA-authorized pump service shop.**

- (1) Injection Pump Pressure Tester      (3) Protection Cover for Jetted Fuel  
(2) Injection Nozzle

9Y1210996ENS0027US0

## [2] PREPARATION

### (1) Dismounting Transmission and Engine



#### Cargo Bed



#### CAUTION

- **Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.**

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

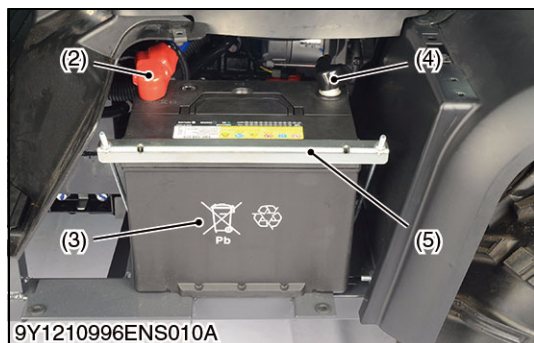
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0



#### Battery



#### CAUTION

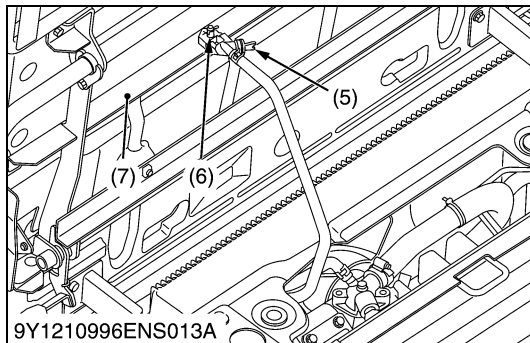
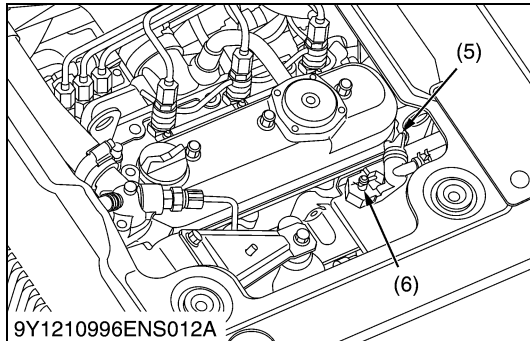
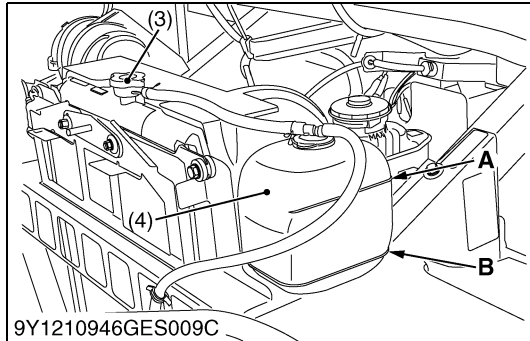
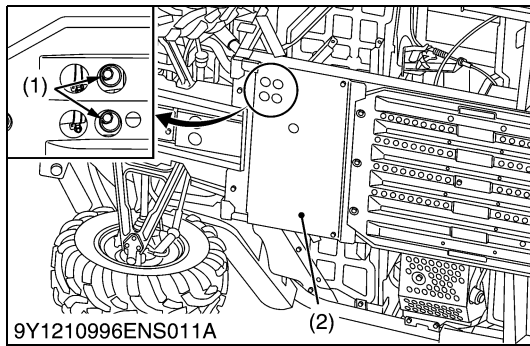
- **When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.**

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.
4. Remove the battery stay (5).
5. Remove the battery (3).

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (1) L.H. Side Cover | (4) Negative Cable |
| (2) Positive Cable  | (5) Battery Stay   |
| (3) Battery         |                    |

9Y1210996ENS0029US0





## Draining Coolant



### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not remove the radiator cap while coolant is hot. When cool, slowly rotate cap to the first stop and allow sufficient time for excess pressure to escape before removing the cap completely.
- When the coolant has cooled down, remove the coolant breather together with the pin at the rear seat back.

### IMPORTANT

- Do not start engine without coolant.
- Do not remove the cap on the radiator.
- Use clean, fresh distilled water and anti-freeze to fill the radiator and recovery tank.
- When the anti-freeze is mixed with distilled water, the antifreeze mixing ratio is 50 %.
- Securely tighten radiator cap. If the cap is loose or improperly fitted, water may leak out and the engine could overheat.
- Make sure that the engine coolant breather is closed, after filling the coolant.

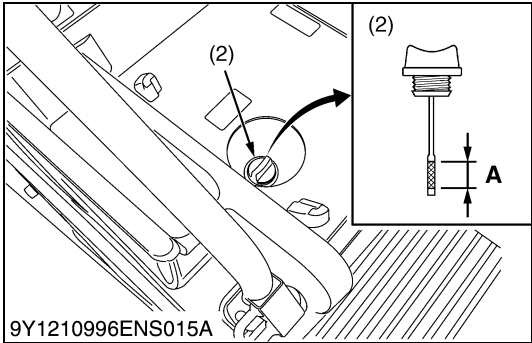
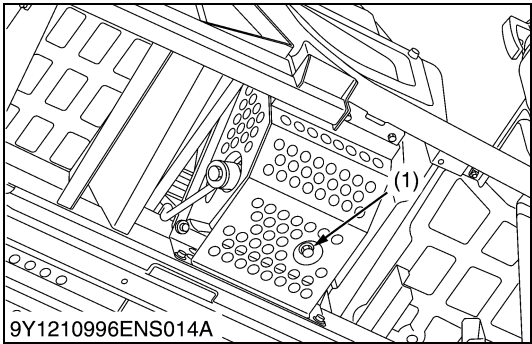
1. Stop the engine and let cool down.
2. Open the plastic cover located below the rear seat. Draw out the coolant breather hose and secure it to the pin (6) of the rear seat back (7).
3. Open the hood.
4. To drain the coolant, remove the radiator cap (3), open the engine coolant breather (5), and remove the radiator drain plugs (1). The radiator cap must be removed to completely drain the coolant.
5. After all coolant is drained, close the drain plug.

Radiator with recovery tank (Coolant)	Capacity	6.1 L 6.4 U.S.qts 5.4 Imp.qts
---------------------------------------	----------	-------------------------------------

- (1) Drain Plug
- (2) Front Skid Plate
- (3) Radiator Cap
- (4) Recovery Tank
- (5) Engine Coolant Breather
- (6) Pin
- (7) Rear Seat

A: FULL  
B: LOW

9Y1210996ENS0030US0



**Draining Hydraulic Tank Oil**

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil
  - Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
  2. Open the seat and remove the utility box.
  3. Remove the rubber cap.
  4. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug (1) and filling plug (2) plug and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
  5. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

**(When reassembling)**

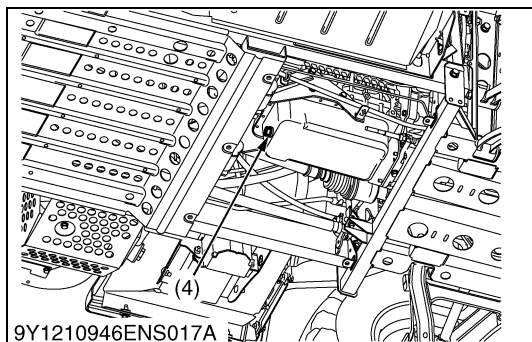
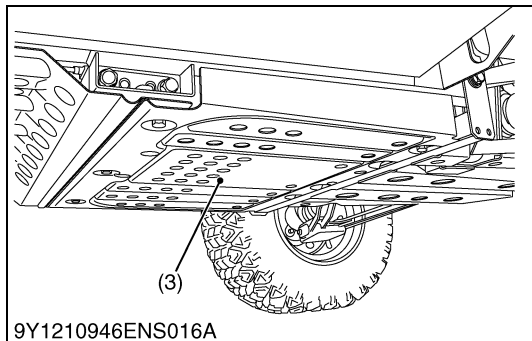
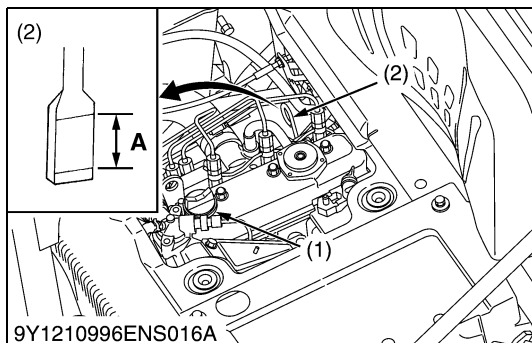
- Fill with new KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid up to the upper notch on the dipstick.  
How to check:  
Wipe dipstick clean a rag and screw it into filling hole. Remove dipstick again to see if the oil level is between the upper and lower line.
- After filling, reinstall the filling plug.

Hydraulic tank oil	Capacity	18.0 L 19.0 U.S.qts 15.8 Imp.qts
--------------------	----------	--

- (1) Drain Plug  
(2) Filling Plug with Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996ENS0031US0



## Draining Engine Oil



### WARNING

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. In 1 row seating mode, raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
3. Stop the engine.
4. Remove the rear skid plate (3).
5. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug (4) at the bottom of the engine and completely drain the oil into an oil pan. All the used oil can be drained out easily when the engine is still warm.
6. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

**(When reassembling)**

- Fill the new oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.

Engine oil	Capacity	[Filter exchanged] 4.1 L 4.3 U.S.qts 3.6 Imp.qts
		[Filter non-exchanged] 3.8 L 4.0 U.S.qts 3.3 Imp.qts

- (1) Oil Inlet  
(2) Dipstick  
(3) Rear Skid Plate  
(4) Drain Plug

**C: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996ENS0032US0

## Rear Wheel

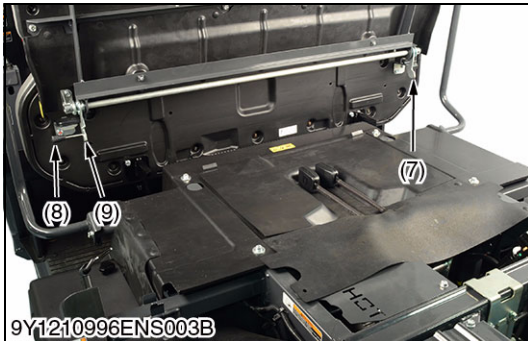
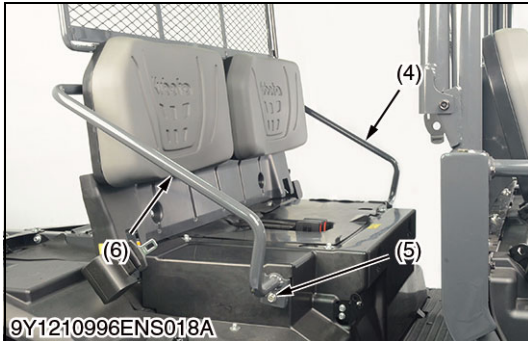
1. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block under the bottom plate of the transmission frame.
2. Remove the rear wheels (1).

**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Rear Wheel

9Y1210996ENS0033US0



## Rear Seat

### ⚠ CAUTION

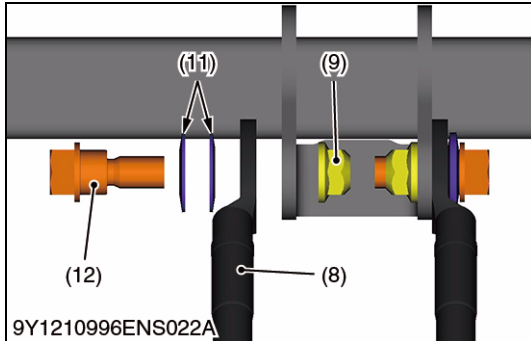
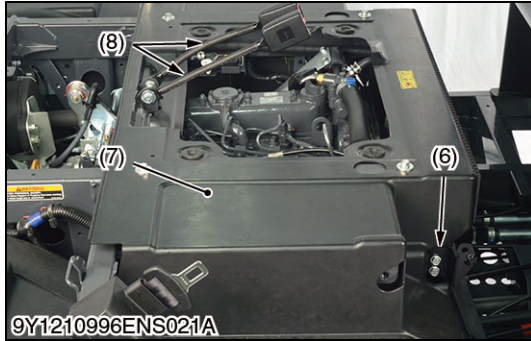
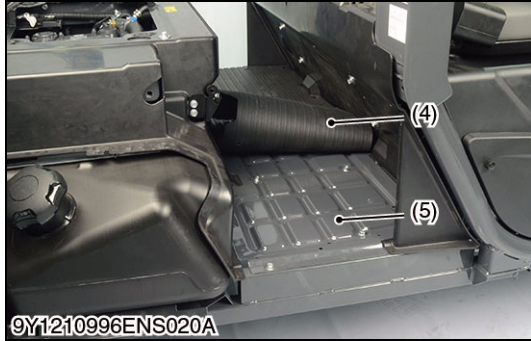
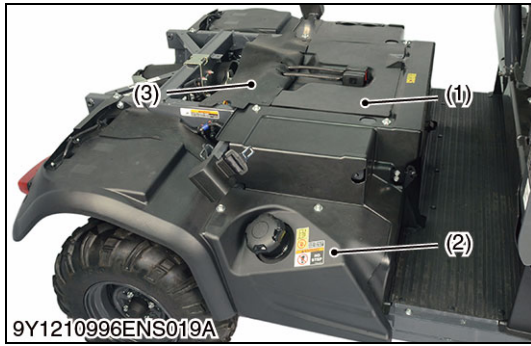
- **Work with two people or a hoist when removing the rear seat back.**

1. Set the rear seat back assembly (1) and rear seat assembly (2) into the 2 row seating mode.
2. Remove the snap pins (3) and remove the rear seat assembly.
3. Support the rear seat back assembly so that it will not move forward or back during removal.
4. Remove the flange bolts (5) from the rear L.H. and R.H. handrails (4), (6).
5. Use the lever grip (8) to release the L.H. and R.H. backrest lock hooks (9), (7) and remove the rear seat back assembly.

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Rear Seat Back Assembly | (6) Rear R.H. Handrail      |
| (2) Rear Seat Assembly      | (7) R.H. Backrest Lock Hook |
| (3) Snap Pin                | (8) Lever Grip              |
| (4) Rear L.H. Handrail      | (9) L.H. Backrest Lock Hook |
| (5) Flange Bolt             |                             |

9Y1210996ENS0034US0





### Rear Cover and Rear Step

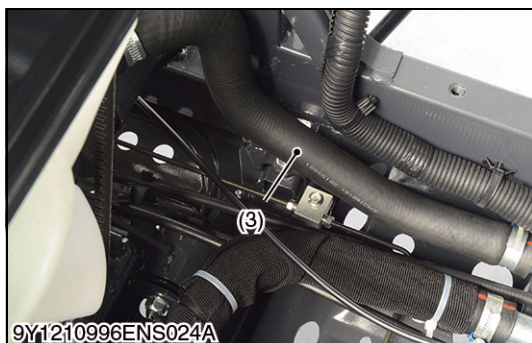
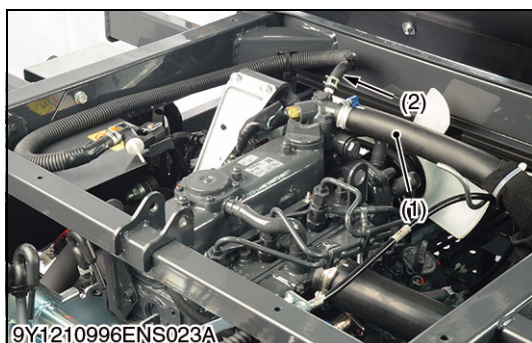
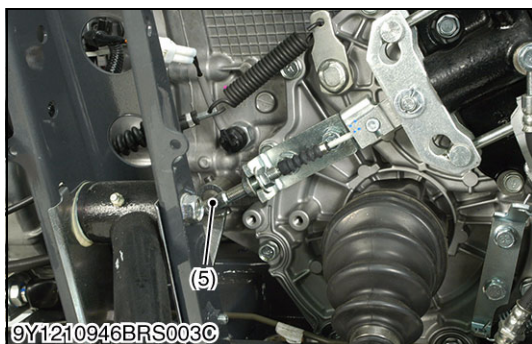
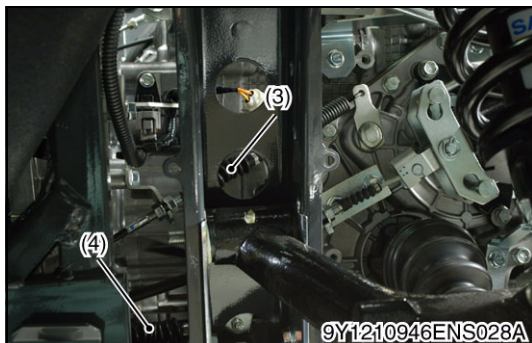
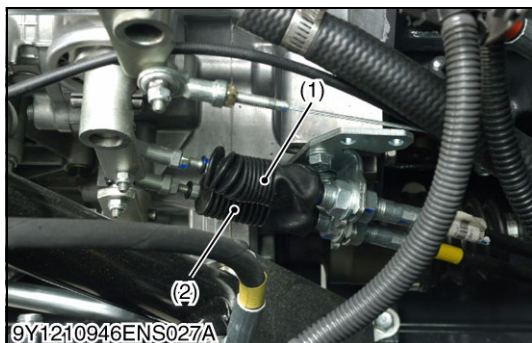
1. Remove the rear upper cover (1) and upper engine rubber cover (3).
2. Remove the R.H. side cover (2).
3. Remove the rear step mat (4) and rear step (5).
4. Remove the seat belts (8).
5. Remove the R.H. seat bottom stay (6) and L.H. seat bottom stay.
6. Remove the rear cover (7).

#### (When reassembling)

- Be sure to assemble the seat belt assembly as shown in the figure.

- |                               |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Rear Upper Cover          | (7) Rear Cover      |
| (2) R.H. Side Cover           | (8) Seat Belt       |
| (3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover | (9) Locking Nut     |
| (4) Rear Step Mat             | (10) Spring Plate   |
| (5) Rear Step                 | (11) Seat Belt Bolt |
| (6) R.H. Seat Bottom Stay     |                     |

9Y1210996ENS0035US0



### Cables

1. Disconnect the hydraulic lift cable (1).
2. Disconnect the 4WD shift cable (2).
3. Disconnect the differential lock cable (3).
4. Disconnect the range gear shift cable (4).
5. Disconnect the parking brake cable (5).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the length of hydraulic lift cable. (See page 7-S6.)
- Adjust the length of 4WD shift cable. (See page 2-S14.)
- Adjust the length of differential lock cable. (See page 2-S15.)
- Adjust the length of range gear shift cable. (See page 2-S13.)
- Adjust the length of parking brake cable. (See page 4-S7.)

- (1) Hydraulic Lift Cable  
(2) 4WD Shift Cable  
(3) Differential Lock Cable

- (4) Range Gear Shift Cable  
(5) Parking Brake Cable

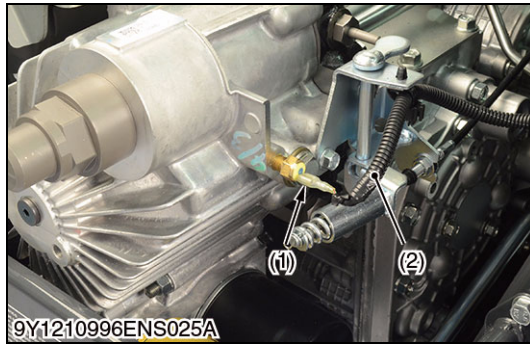
9Y1210996ENS0036US0

### Radiator Hose

1. Disconnect the upper engine radiator hose (1).
2. Disconnect the air breather hose (2).
3. Disconnect the lower engine radiator hose (3).

- (1) Upper Engine Radiator Hose      (3) Lower Engine Radiator Hose  
(2) Air Breather Hose

9Y1210996ENS0037US0



### Unload Cable Linkage

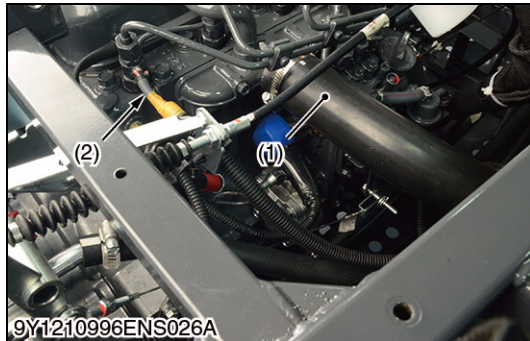
1. Disconnect the oil temperature switch connector (1).
2. Remove the unload cable linkage (2) with unload cable.

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the unload cable. (See page 2-S16.)

(1) Oil Temperature Switch Connector (2) Unload Cable Linkage

9Y1210996ENS0038US0



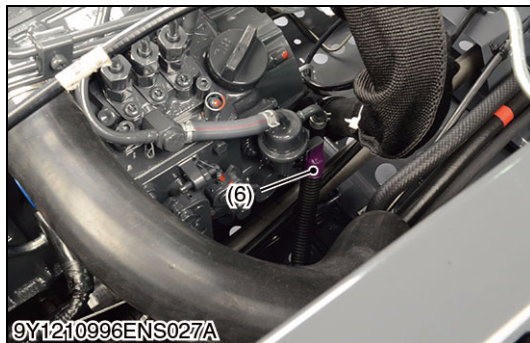
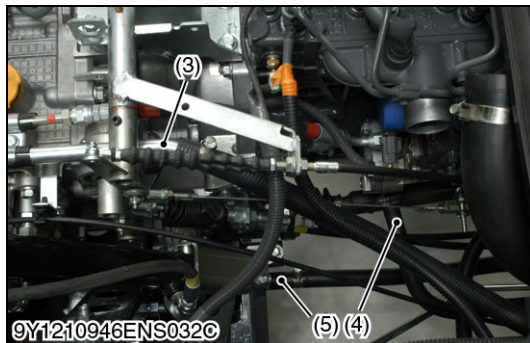
### Intake, Fuel, and Hydraulic Hoses

1. Disconnect the intake hose (1).
2. Disconnect the HST drain hose (3) and HST suction hose (5).
3. Disconnect the hydraulic suction hose (4).
4. Disconnect the fuel suction hose (6) and fuel return hose (2).

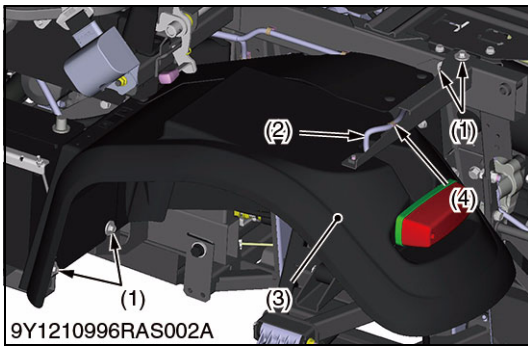
(1) Intake Hose  
(2) Fuel Return Hose  
(3) HST Drain Hose

(4) Hydraulic Suction Hose  
(5) HST Suction Hose  
(6) Fuel Suction Hose

9Y1210996ENS0039US0





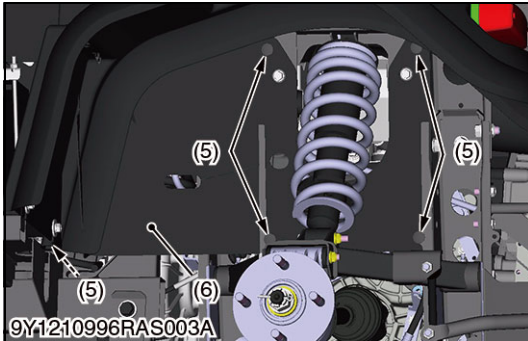


### Fender

1. Disconnect the rear lamp connectors (2).
2. Remove the rear lamp harness from the clamps (4).
3. Remove the inner mud guard rivets (5).
4. Remove the bolts (1) and remove the rear fender (3) with the inner mud guard (6).

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Bolt                 | (4) Clamp           |
| (2) Rear Lamp Connectors | (5) Rivet           |
| (3) Rear Fender          | (6) Inner Mud Guard |

9Y1210996RAS0008US0

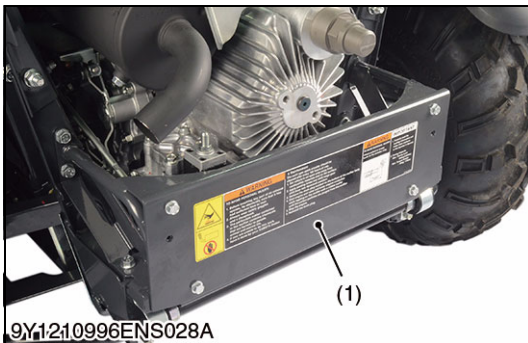


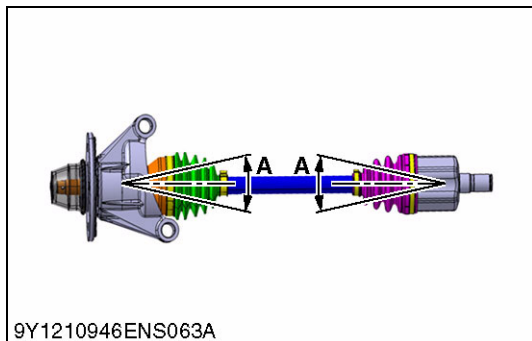
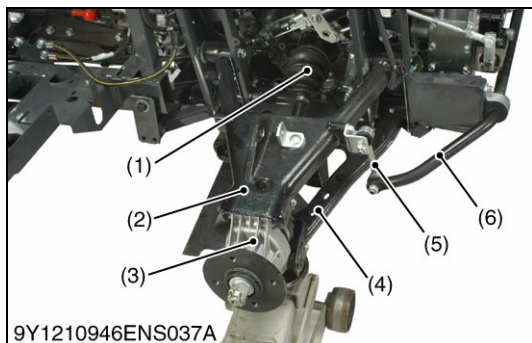
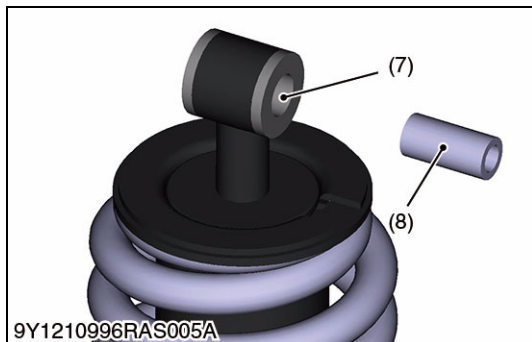
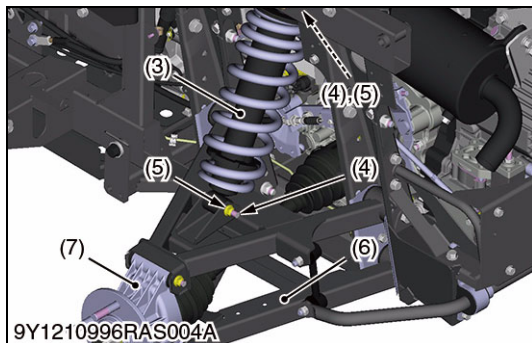
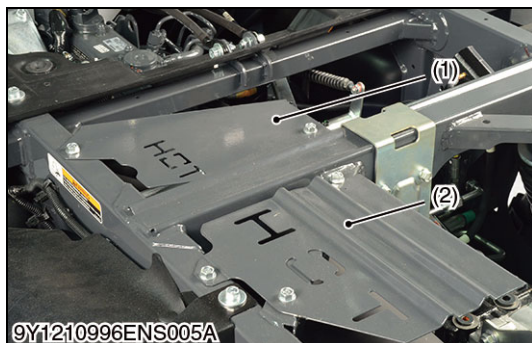
### Transmission Rear Cover

1. Remove the transmission rear cover (1).

- (1) Transmission Rear Cover

9Y1210996ENS0041US0





### Rear Shock Absorber

1. Remove the rear exhaust cover (1) and muffler cover (2).
2. Set a jack under the lower rear arm (6). Raise the jack until it touches the lower rear arm under the rear knuckle case (7).
3. Remove the flange bolts (4) and lock nuts (5).
4. Remove the rear shock absorber (3).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply grease (Shell Godus S5 T100 or equivalent) to the rear shock absorber bushing (7) before inserting collar (8).

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) Rear Exhaust Cover  | (5) Lock Nut          |
| (2) Muffler Cover       | (6) Lower Rear Arm    |
| (3) Rear Shock Absorber | (7) Rear Knuckle Case |
| (4) Bushing             | (8) Collar            |

9Y1210996RAS0009US0

### Rear Drive Shaft

#### ■ NOTE

- **Do not exceed the range  $\pm 25^\circ$  while handling.**

1. Remove the rear stabilizer (6) and stabilizer linkage (5).
2. Remove the rear arm mounting bolts and nuts.
3. Remove the rear upper arm (2).
4. Remove the rear drive shaft (1) with rear knuckle case (3).
5. Remove the rear lower arm (4).

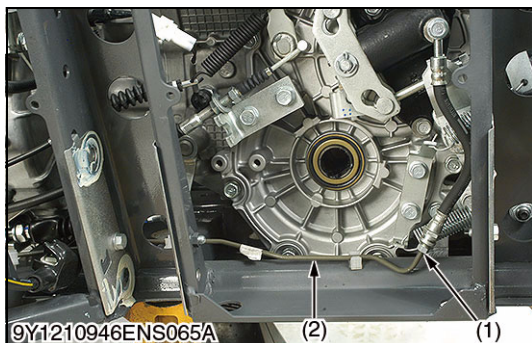
#### (When reassembling)

- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to splines of rear drive shaft.

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Drive Shaft  | (5) Stabilizer Linkage |
| (2) Upper Arm    | (6) Rear Stabilizer    |
| (3) Knuckle Case |                        |
| (4) Lower Arm    |                        |

**A:  $\pm 25^\circ$** 

9Y1210996ENS0043US0



### **Brake Pipe**

1. Remove the brake pipe retaining nuts (1).
2. Remove the brake pipe (2).

#### **(When reassembling)**

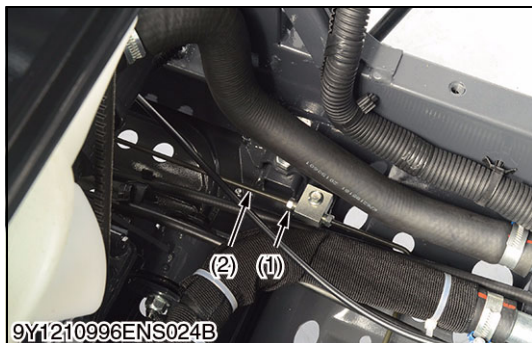
- After reassembling the brake pipe, bleed the air from the brake line immediately.

Tightening torque	Brake pipe retaining nut	13 to 17 N·m 1.4 to 1.7 kgf·m 9.6 to 12 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------------	--

(1) Brake Pipe Retaining Nut

(2) Brake Pipe

9Y1210996ENS0044US0

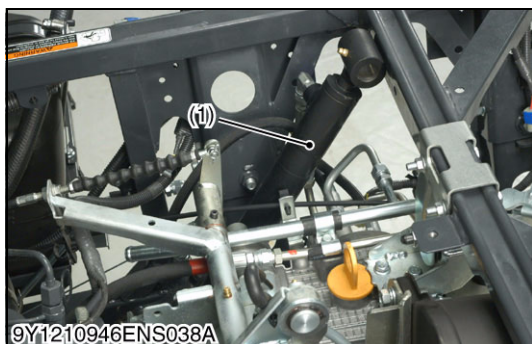


### **Hydraulic Lift Cylinder**

1. Disconnect the hydraulic hoses.
2. Remove the hydraulic lift cylinder (1) and cylinder bracket.

(1) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder

9Y1210996ENS0045US0



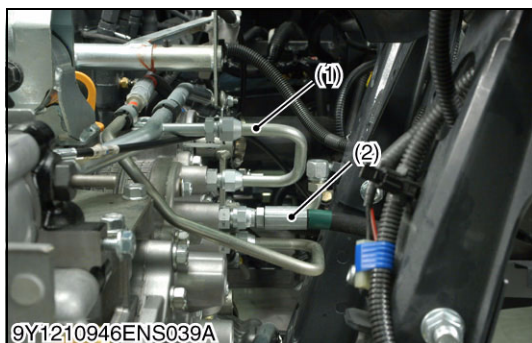
### **Power Steering Hose and Return Pipe**

1. Disconnect the power steering hose (2).
2. Remove the return pipe (1).

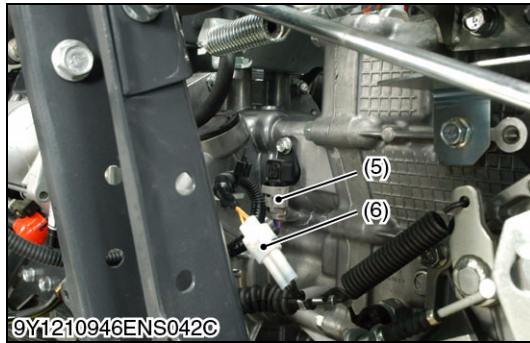
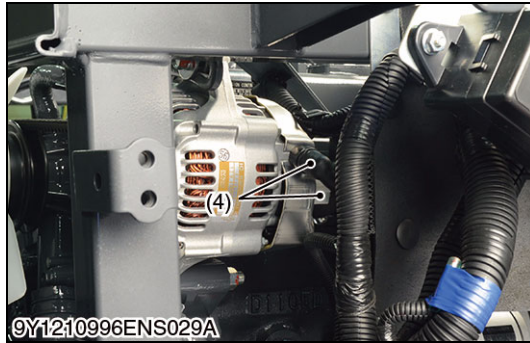
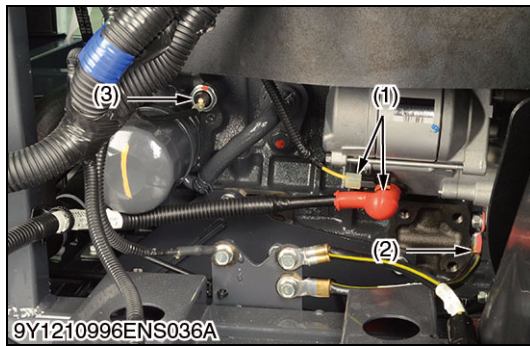
(1) Return Pipe

(2) Power Steering Hose

9Y1210996ENS0046US0





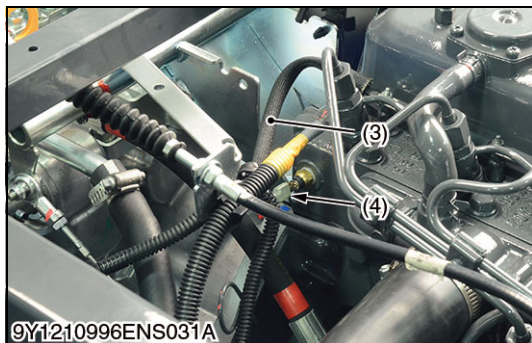
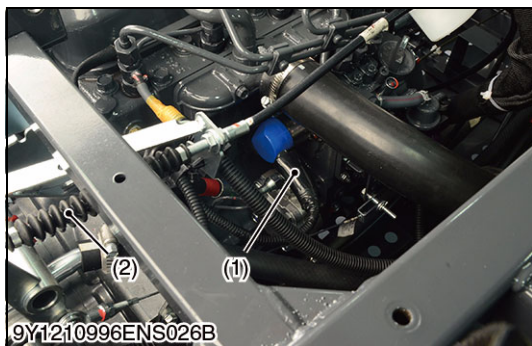


### Wiring Harness L.H.

1. Disconnect the starter connectors (1).
2. Disconnect the engine oil pressure switch connector (3).
3. Disconnect the ground cables (2).
4. Disconnect the alternator connectors (4).
5. Disconnect the thermometer switch connector (7).
6. Disconnect the speed sensor connector (5).
7. Disconnect the safety switch connector (6).

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (1) Starter Connector                    | (4) Alternator Connector         |
| (2) Ground Cable                         | (5) Speed Sensor Connector       |
| (3) Engine Oil Pressure Switch Connector | (6) Safety Switch Connector      |
|  | (7) Thermometer Switch Connector |

9Y1210996ENS0047US0



### **Wiring Harness R.H. and Speed Control Panel Cable**

1. Disconnect the glow connector (3).
2. Disconnect the thermo sensor connector (4).
3. Disconnect the engine stop solenoid connector (1).
4. Disconnect the speed control pedal cable (2).

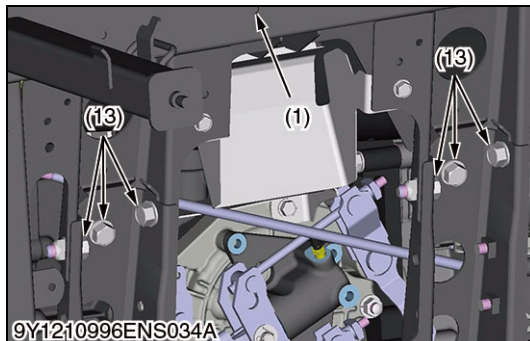
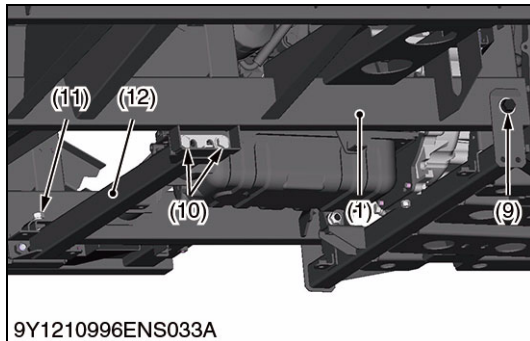
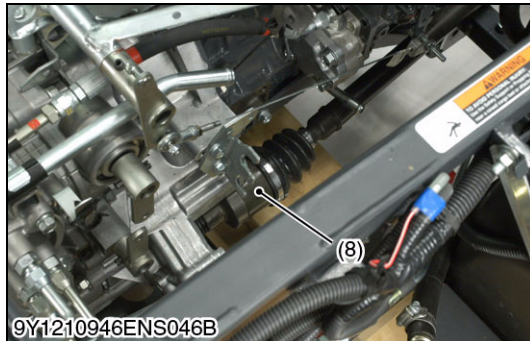
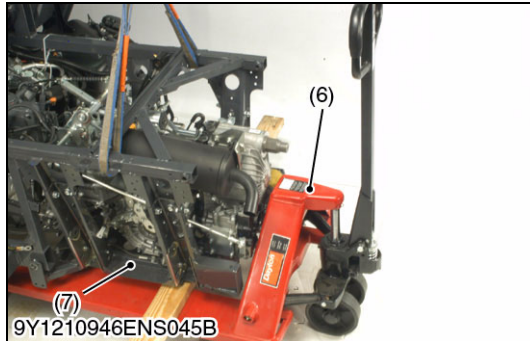
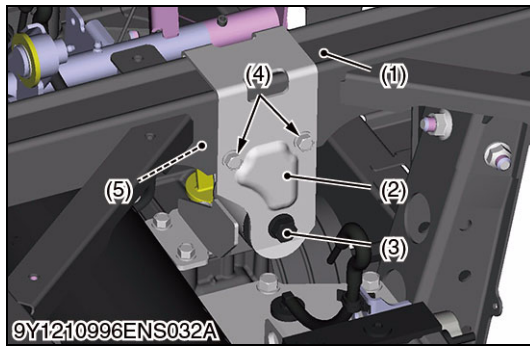
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the length of speed control pedal cable. (See page 2-S12.)

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Engine Stop Solenoid Connector | (3) Glow Plug Connector     |
| (2) Speed Control Pedal Cable      | (4) Thermo Sensor Connector |

9Y1210996ENS0048US0





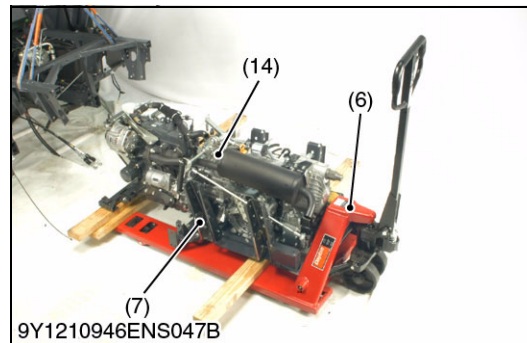
### Dismounting Transmission and Engine One Piece Assembly

1. Remove the upper mission support (2) with collars (5).
2. Set the hand pallet trucks or equivalent (6) under the mission frame (7) and engine support (12) as shown in figure.
3. Secure the mainframe (1) with straps and lift using a hoist as shown in figure.
4. Remove the engine support bolts (11) and engine support flange bolts (10).
5. Remove the mission frame reamer bolts (9) and mission frame flange bolts (13) with nuts.
6. Disconnect the 4WD propeller shaft (8) from the transmission.
7. Lift the main frame and remove the transmission and engine assembly (14).

### (When reassembling)

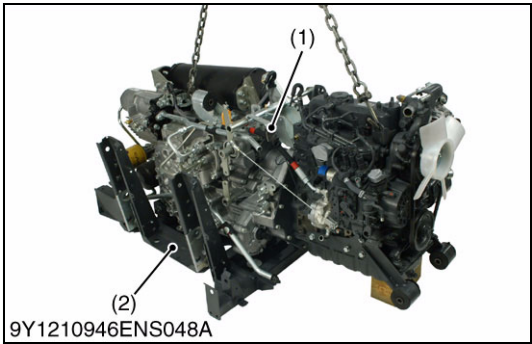
- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to 4WD propeller shaft (14) before installing onto transmission.
- When connecting the engine support (12) to the main frame (1), tighten the engine support bolts (11) first, then tighten the engine support flange bolts (10).

Tightening torque	Mission frame flange bolt (X12)	
	Engine support flange bolt (X4)	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.90 to 9.20 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
	Mission frame reamer bolt (X2)	
	Upper mission support reamer bolt	
	Engine support bolt (X2)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
	Upper mission support flange bolt (X2)	23.5 to 27.5 N·m 2.40 to 2.80 kgf·m 17.4 to 20.2 lbf·ft



- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Main Frame                        | (8) 4WD Propeller Shaft               |
| (2) Upper Mission Support             | (9) Mission Frame Reamer Bolt         |
| (3) Upper Mission Support Reamer Bolt | (10) Engine Support Flange Bolt       |
| (4) Upper Mission Support Flange Bolt | (11) Engine Support Bolt              |
| (5) Collar                            | (12) Engine Support                   |
| (6) Hand Pallet Truck                 | (13) Mission Frame Flange Bolt        |
| (7) Mission Frame                     | (14) Transmission and Engine Assembly |

9Y1210996ENS0049US0



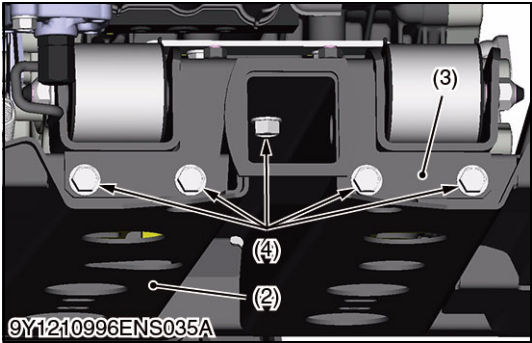
**Mission Frame**

1. With a hoist, lift the transmission and engine assembly (1) with mission frame (2).
2. Remove the mission support flange bolts (4) and mission frame (2).

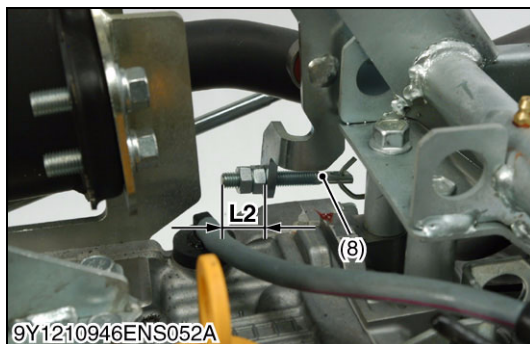
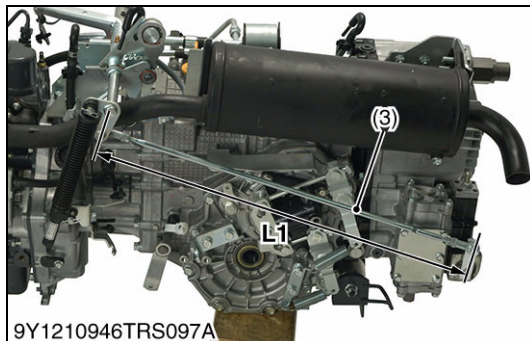
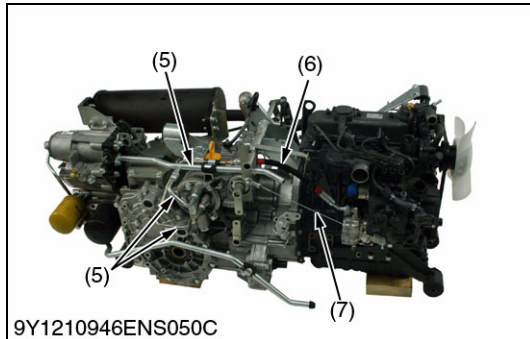
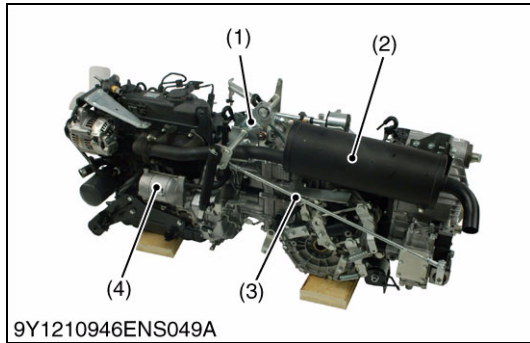
**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	Mission support flange bolts (X5)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

- (1) Transmission and Engine Assembly (3) Mission Support  
(2) Mission Frame (4) Mission Support Flange Bolt
- 9Y1210996ENS0050US0



## (2) Separating Transmission and Engine



### Linkage, Muffler, Starter and Hydraulic Pipe

1. Remove the HST rod (3).
2. Remove the engine cable (7).
3. Remove the HST linkage (1).
4. Remove the muffler (2).
5. Remove the starter (4).
6. Remove the hydraulic hose (6) and hydraulic pipes (5).

### (When reassembling)

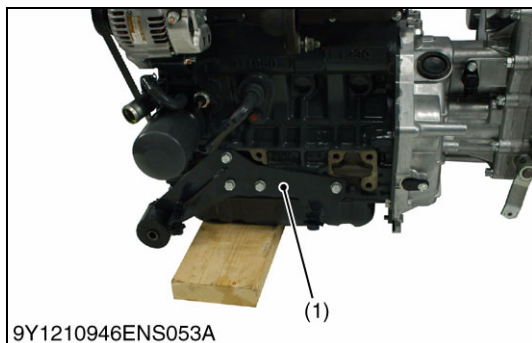
- Adjust the length the HST rod (3).
- Replace the muffler gasket with new one.

- (1) HST Linkage
- (2) Muffler
- (3) HST Rod
- (4) Starter
- (5) Hydraulic Pipe
- (6) Hydraulic Hose
- (7) Engine Cable
- (8) Tension Bolt

### (Reference)

**L1: 620 mm (24.4 in.)**  
**L2: 20 mm (0.79 in.)**

9Y1210996ENS0051US0



### **Separate the Transmission and Engine Assembly**

1. Remove the engine support (1).
2. Remove the engine mounting screws to separate the engine from the transmission.
3. Install the engine stand.

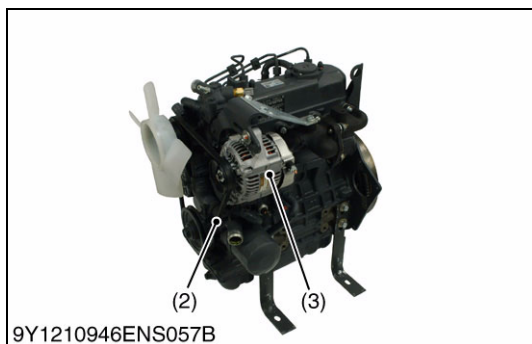
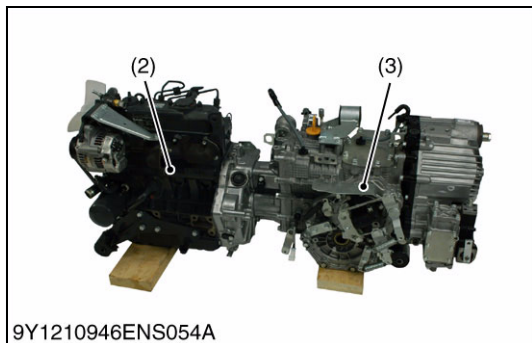
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to spline hole of input flange.
- Apply liquid gasket (LOCKTITE-5699 or equivalent) to joint face of engine rear and plate and the transmission case.

- (1) Engine Support  
(2) Engine

- (3) Transmission

9Y1210996ENS0052US0



### **Outer Parts**

1. Remove the input flange (1).
2. Remove the alternator (3) and fan belt (2).
3. Remove the dipstick (6).
4. Remove the engine stop solenoid (4).
5. Remove the hydraulic pump (5).

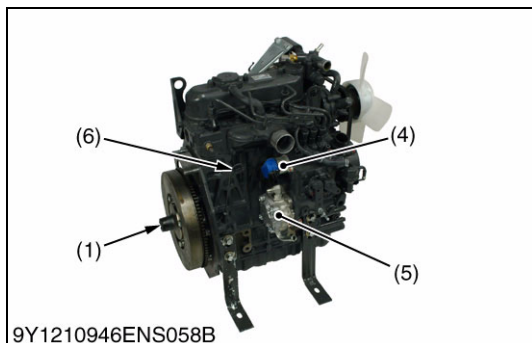
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the alternator belt tension. (See page G-35.)

- (1) Input Flange  
(2) Fan Belt  
(3) Alternator

- (4) Engine Stop Solenoid  
(5) Hydraulic Pump  
(6) Dipstick

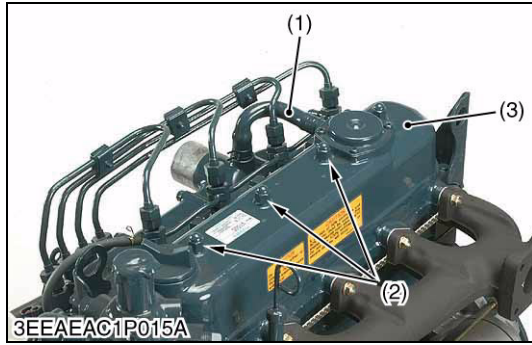
9Y1210996ENS0053US0





## [3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

### (1) Cylinder Head and Valve



#### Cylinder Head Cover

1. Disconnect the breather hose (1).
2. Remove the cylinder head cover screw (2).
3. Remove the cylinder head cover (3).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Check to see if the cylinder head cover gasket is not damaged.

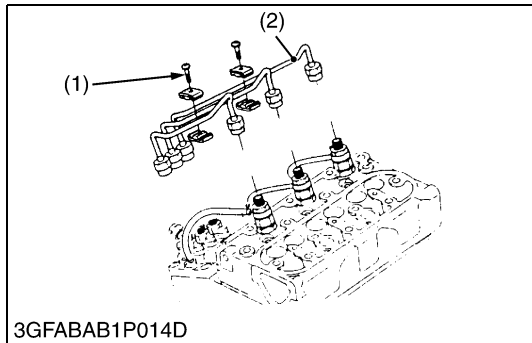
Tightening torque	Cylinder head cover screw	7 to 8 N·m 0.7 to 0.9 kgf·m 5 to 6 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------	---

(1) Breather Hose

(3) Cylinder Head Cover

(2) Cylinder Head Cover Screw

9Y1210996ENS0054US0



#### Injection Pipes

1. Loosen the screws to the pipe clamp (1).
2. Remove the injection pipes (2).

#### **(When reassembling)**

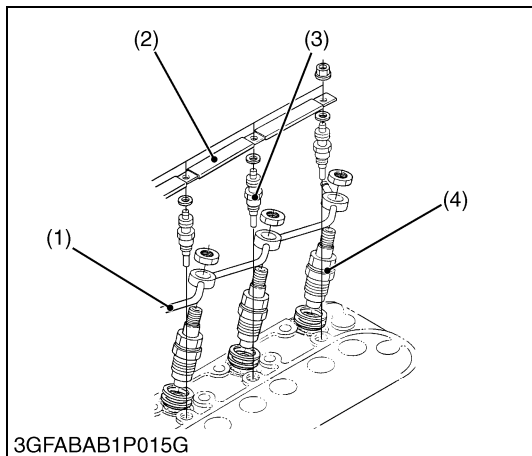
- Send compressed air into the pipes to blow out dust. Then, reassemble the pipes in the reverse order.

Tightening torque	Injection pipe retaining nut	25 to 34 N·m 2.5 to 3.5 kgf·m 18 to 25 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------------------	---

(1) Pipe Clamp

(2) Injection Pipe

9Y1210996ENS0055US0



#### Nozzle Holder Assembly and Glow Plug

1. Remove the overflow pipe (1).
2. Remove the nozzle holder assemblies (4).
3. Remove the copper gasket (5) and heat seal (6).
4. Remove the lead (2) from the glow plugs (3).
5. Remove the glow plugs (3).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Replace the copper gasket and heat seal with new one.

Tightening torque	Overflow pipe retaining nut	35 to 39 N·m 3.5 to 4.0 kgf·m 26 to 28 lbf·ft
	Nozzle holder assembly	49 to 68 N·m 5.0 to 7.0 kgf·m 37 to 50 lbf·ft
	Glow plug	7.9 to 14 N·m 0.80 to 1.5 kgf·m 5.8 to 10 lbf·ft

(1) Overflow Pipe

(4) Nozzle Holder Assembly

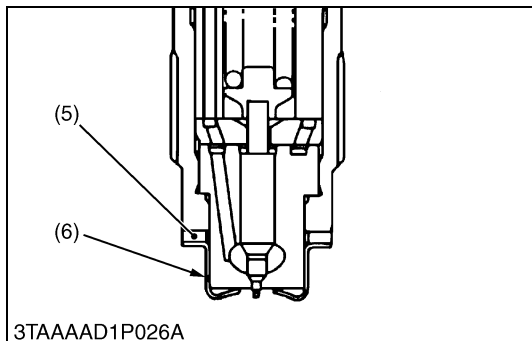
(2) Lead

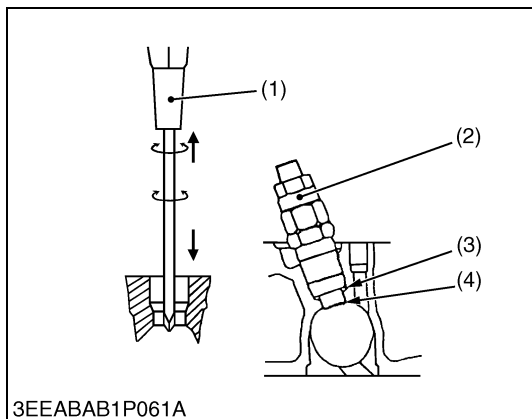
(5) Copper Gasket

(3) Glow Plug

(6) Heat Seal

9Y1210996ENS0056US0





### Nozzle Heat Seal Service Removal Procedure

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Use a plus (Phillips head) screw driver (1) that has a diameter which is bigger than the heat seal hole (Approx. 6.0 mm (0.24 in.)).

1. Drive screw driver (1) lightly into the heat seal hole.
2. Turn screw driver three or four times each way.
3. While turning the screw driver, slowly pull the heat seal (4) out together with the injection nozzle gasket (3).
4. If the heat seal drops, repeat the above procedure.

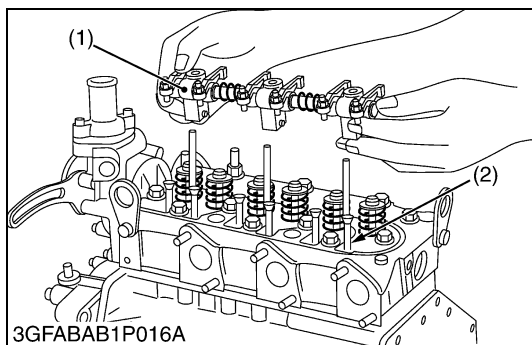
#### (When reassembling)

- Heat seal and injection nozzle gasket must be changed when the injection nozzle is removed for cleaning or for service.

- (1) Plus Screw Driver  
(2) Injection Nozzle

- (3) Injection Nozzle Gasket  
(4) Heat Seal

9Y1210996ENS0057US0



### Rocker Arm and Push Rod

1. Remove the rocker arm bracket screws / nuts.
2. Remove the rocker arm assembly (1).
3. Remove the push rods (2).

#### (When reassembling)

- When putting the push rods (2) onto the tappets (3), check to see if their ends are properly engaged with the dimples.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

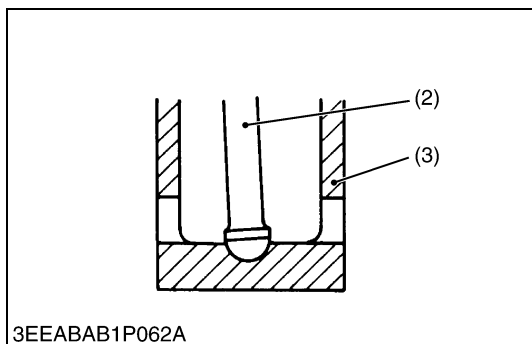
- After installing the rocker arm, be sure to adjust the valve clearance.

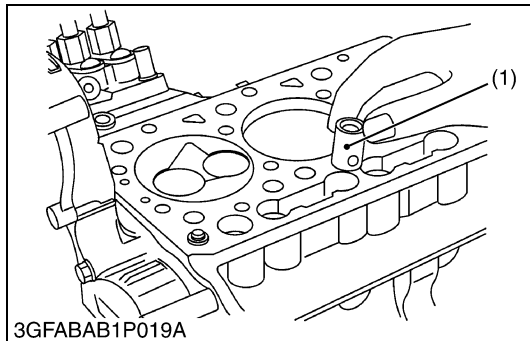
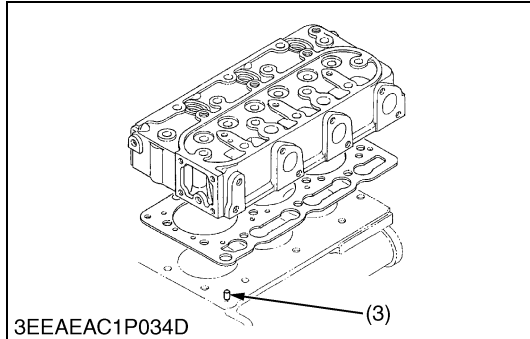
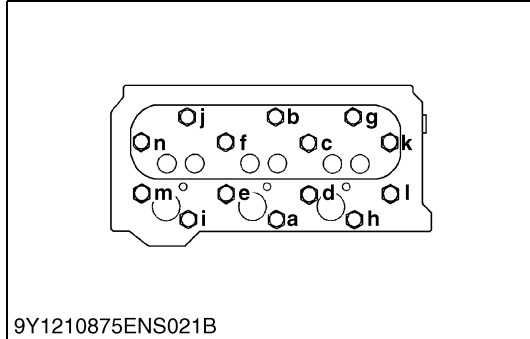
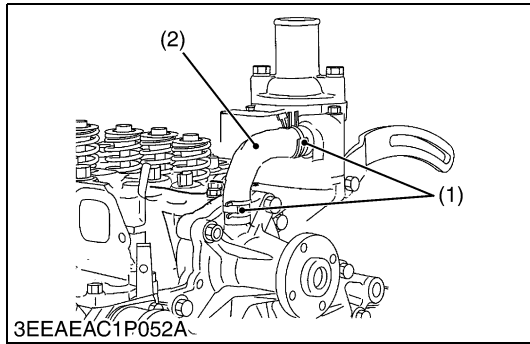
Tightening torque	Rocker arm bracket nut	22 to 26 N·m 2.2 to 2.7 kgf·m 16 to 19 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------------	---

- (1) Rocker Arm Assembly  
(2) Push Rod

- (3) Tappet

9Y1210996ENS0058US0





### Cylinder Head and Cylinder Head Gasket

1. Loosen the pipe clamps (1), and remove the water return pipe (2).
2. Remove the cylinder head screw in the order of "n" or "r" to "a" and remove the cylinder head.
3. Remove the cylinder head gasket.

#### (When reassembling)

- Replace the cylinder head gasket with new one.
- When mounting the gasket, set it to the pin pipe holes. Be careful not to mount it reversely.
- The cylinder head should be free of scratches and dust.
- Install the cylinder head, using care not to damage the gasket.
- After applying engine oil to the thread of screws, tighten them in several steps and specified sequence "a" to "n" or "r".

#### ■ NOTE

- Do not use O-ring on the pin pipe.
- It is not necessary to retighten the cylinder head screw and to readjust valve clearance after engine warmed up.

Tightening torque	Cylinder head screw	64 to 68 N·m 6.5 to 7.0 kgf·m 47 to 50 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------	---

- (1) Clamp
- (2) Return Pipe
- (3) Pin Pipe

"n" or "r" to "a": To Loosen  
"a" to "n" or "r": To Tighten

9Y1210996ENS0059US0

### Tappets

1. Remove the tappets (1) from the crankcase.

#### (When reassembling)

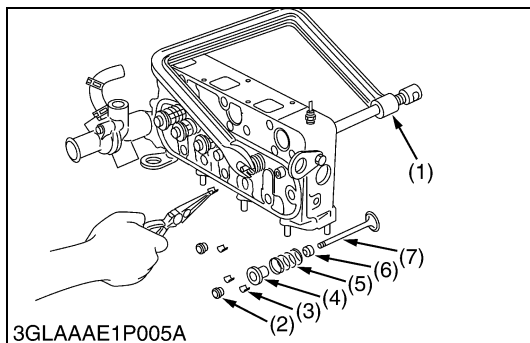
- Visually check the contact between tappets and cams for proper rotation. If problem is found, replace tappets.
- Before installing the tappets, apply engine oil thinly around them.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not change the combination of tappet and tappet guide.

- (1) Tappet

9Y1210996ENS0060US0



### Valves

1. Remove the valve caps (2).
2. Remove the valve spring collet (3), pushing the valve spring retainer (4) by valve spring replacer (1).
3. Remove the valve spring retainer (4), valve spring (5) and valve stem seal (6).
4. Remove the valve (7).

#### (When reassembling)

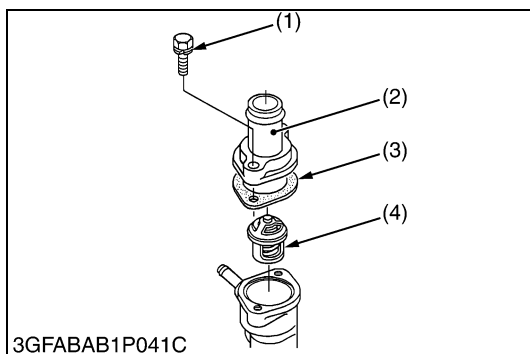
- Wash the valve stem and valve guide hole, and apply engine oil sufficiently.
- After installing the valve spring collets, lightly tap the stem to assure proper fit with a plastic hammer.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- **Don't change the combination of valve and valve guide.**

- |                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Valve Spring Replacer | (5) Valve Spring    |
| (2) Valve Cap             | (6) Valve Stem Seal |
| (3) Valve Spring Collet   | (7) Valve           |
| (4) Valve Spring Retainer |                     |

9Y1210996ENS0061US0



### Thermostat Assembly

1. Remove the thermostat cover mounting screws (1), and remove the thermostat cover (2).
2. Remove the thermostat assembly (4).

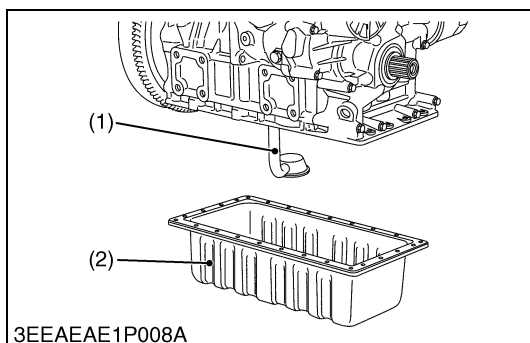
#### (When reassembling)

- Replace the gasket (3) with a new one.

- |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Thermostat Cover Mounting Screw | (3) Thermostat Cover Gasket |
| (2) Thermostat Cover                | (4) Thermostat Assembly     |

9Y1210996ENS0062US0

## (2) Gear Case and Timing Gears



### Oil Pan and Oil Strainer

1. Remove the oil pan mounting screws.
2. Remove the oil pan (2).
3. Remove the oil strainer (1).

#### (When reassembling)

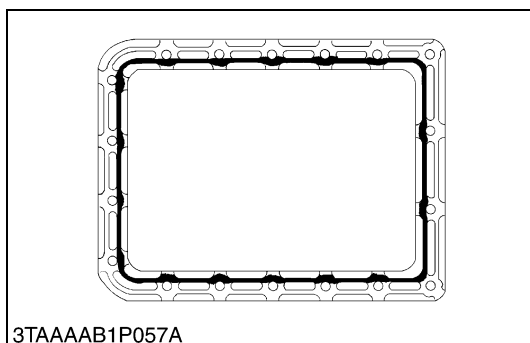
- After cleaning the oil strainer, check to see that the filter mesh is clean, and install it.
- Visually check the O-ring, apply engine oil, and install it.
- Securely fit the O-ring to the oil strainer.
- To avoid uneven tightening, tighten oil pan mounting screws in diagonal order from the center.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

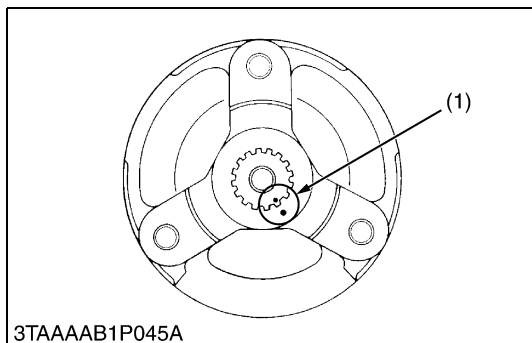
- **Scrape off the old adhesive completely. Wipe the sealing surface clean using waste cloth soaked with gasoline.**
- **Apply "liquid gasket" (Three Bond 1207D or equivalent) about 3.0 to 5.0 mm (0.12 to 0.19 in.) thick. Within 20 minutes after the application of liquid gasket, reassemble the components.**

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| (1) Oil Strainer | (2) Oil Pan |
|------------------|-------------|

9Y1210996ENS0063US0







### Fan Drive Pulley

1. Secure the flywheel to keep it from turning.
2. Remove the fan drive pulley screw.
3. Draw out the fan drive pulley with a puller.

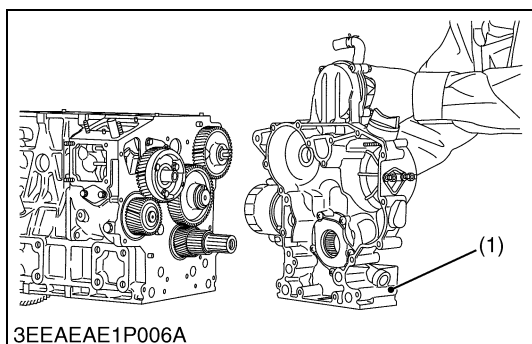
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the pulley to crankshaft, aligning the mark (1) on them (3-cylinder engine).
- Apply engine oil to the fan drive pulley retaining screw. And tighten it.

Tightening torque	Fan drive pulley screw	236 to 245 N·m 24.0 to 25.0 kgf·m 174 to 180 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------------	---

(1) Aligning Mark

9Y1210996ENS0064US0



### Gear Case

1. Remove the fuel feed pump.
2. Remove the gear case.

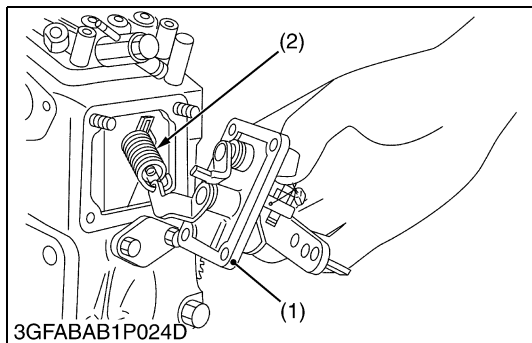
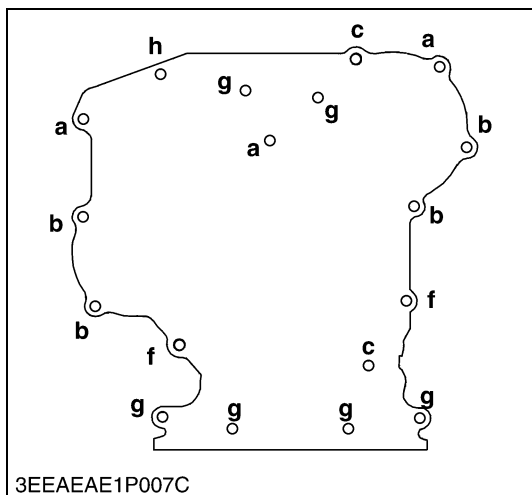
#### (When reassembling)

- Grease thinly to the oil seal, and install it, ensuring the lip does not come off.

(1) Gear Case

- a: Bolt Length = 45 mm (1.8 in.)  
 b: Bolt Length = 50 mm (2.0 in.)  
 c: Bolt Length = 55 mm (2.2 in.)  
 f: Bolt Length = 70 mm (2.8 in.)  
 g: Bolt Length = 85 mm (3.3 in.)  
 h: Nut

9Y1210996ENS0065US0



### Speed Control Plate

1. Remove the engine stop solenoid.
2. Remove the speed control plate (1).

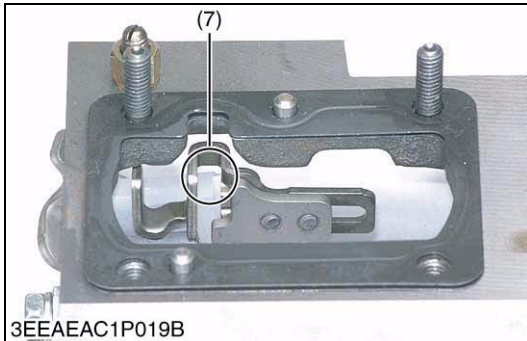
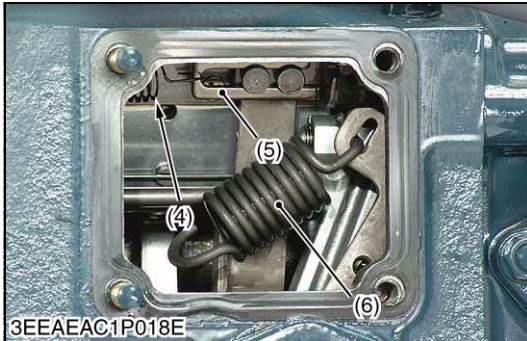
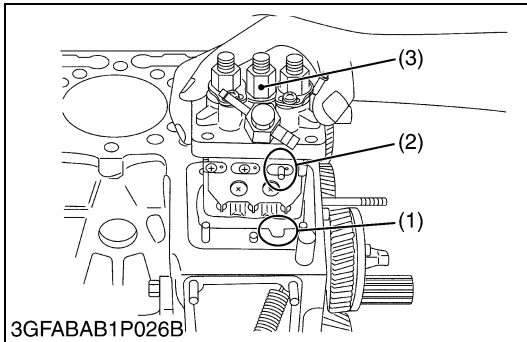
#### (When reassembling)

- Apply a liquid gasket (Three Bond 1215 or equivalent) to both sides of the solenoid cover gasket and control plate gasket.
- Be careful not to drop the governor spring (2) into the crankcase.

(1) Plate

(2) Governor Spring

9Y1210996ENS0066US0



### Injection Pump

1. Disconnect the start spring (4) on the thrust lever side (5).
2. Align the control rack pin (2) with the notch (1) on the crankcase, and remove the injection pump (3).
3. Remove the injection pump shims.
4. In principle, the injection pump should not be disassembled.

#### (When reassembling)

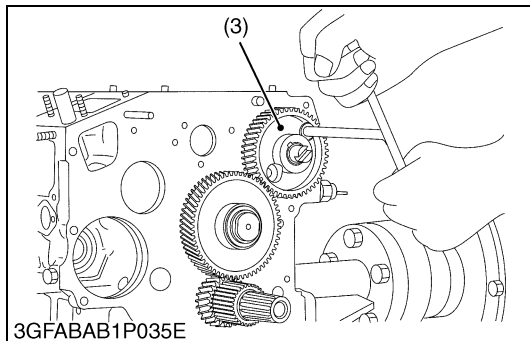
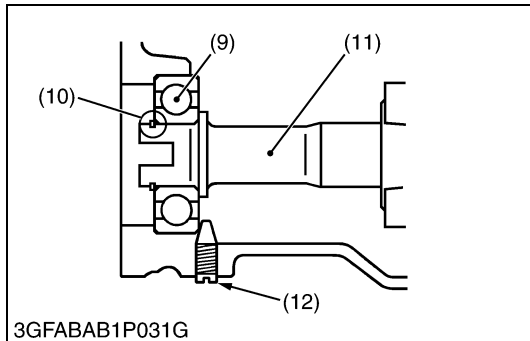
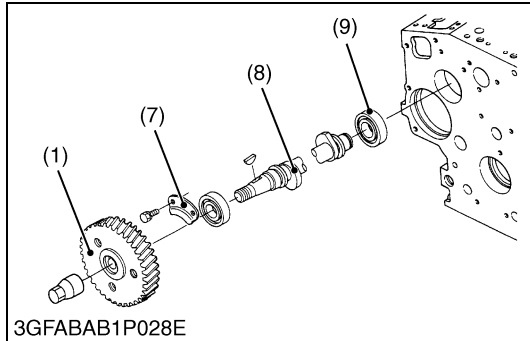
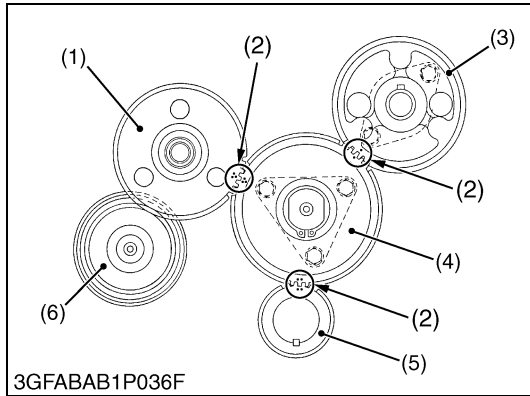
- When installing the injection pump, insert the control rack pin (2) firmly into the groove (7) of the thrust lever of fork lever.

#### ■ NOTE

- Addition or reduction of shim (0.05 mm, 0.0020 in.) delays or advances the injection timing by approx. 0.0087 rad (0.5 °).
- In disassembling and replacing, be sure to use the same number or new gasket shims with the same thickness.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Notch            | (5) Thrust Lever    |
| (2) Control Rack Pin | (6) Governor Spring |
| (3) Injection Pump   | (7) Groove          |
| (4) Start Spring     |                     |

9Y1210996ENS0067US0



### Cam Gear, Idle Gear 1, 2 and Governor Gear

1. Remove the idle gear 1 (4).
2. Remove the fuel camshaft stopper (7).
3. Draw out the fuel cam gear (1) with fuel camshaft (8).
4. Remove the camshaft stopper bolt.
5. Remove the cam gear (3) with camshaft.
6. Remove the external snap ring (10) from the governor shaft (11).
7. Remove the governor gear (6) with governor shaft (11).

#### NOTE

- **Three-lever type fork lever**

To remove the governor shaft, follow the procedures in 5, 6 above and never remove fork lever and the max torque limiter.

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply engine oil thinly to the fuel camshaft before installation.
- Make sure to assemble the external snap ring of the governor shaft.
- Check the governor shaft for smooth rotation.

#### IMPORTANT

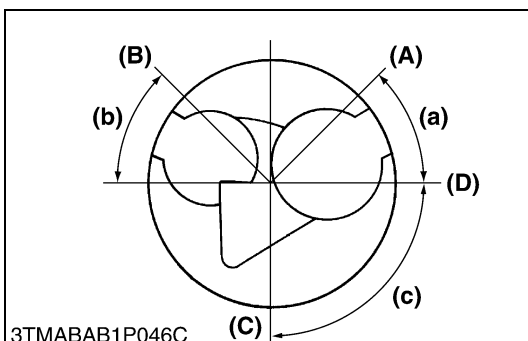
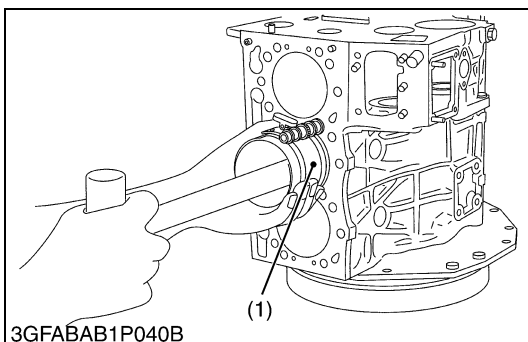
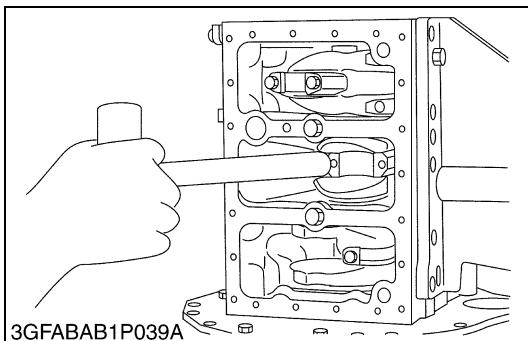
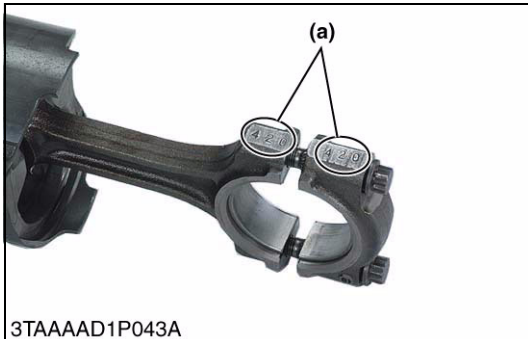
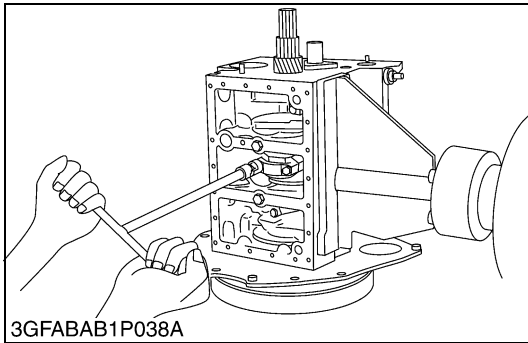
- When replacing the ball bearing of governor shaft, securely fit the ball bearing (9) to the crankcase, apply an adhesive (Three Bond 1324B or equivalent) to the set screw (12), and fasten the screw until its tapered part contacts the circumferential end of the ball bearing.
- When installing the idle gear, be sure to align the alignment marks on each gears.

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| (1) Fuel Cam Gear  | (7) Fuel Camshaft Stopper |
| (2) Alignment Mark | (8) Fuel Camshaft         |
| (3) Cam Gear       | (9) Ball Bearing          |
| (4) Idle Gear 1    | (10) External Snap Ring   |
| (5) Crank Gear     | (11) Governor Shaft       |
| (6) Governor Gear  | (12) Set Screw            |



9Y1210996ENS0068US0

### (3) Piston and Connecting Rod



#### Connecting Rod

1. Remove the connecting rod cap.

#### (When reassembling)

- Align the marks (a) with each other. (Face the marks toward the injection pump.)
- Apply engine oil to the connecting rod screws and lightly screw it in by hand, then tighten it to the specified torque.  
If the connecting rod screw won't be screwed in smoothly, clean the threads.  
If the connecting rod screw is still hard to screw in, replace it.

Tightening torque	Connecting rod screw	42 to 46 N·m 4.2 to 4.7 kgf·m 31 to 33 lbf·ft
-------------------	----------------------	---

#### (a) Mark

9Y1210996ENS0069US0

#### Pistons

1. Turn the flywheel and bring the piston to top dead center.
2. Draw out the piston upward by lightly tapping it from the bottom of the crankcase with the grip of a hammer.
3. Draw out the other piston in the same method as above.

#### (When reassembling)

- Before inserting the piston into the cylinder, apply enough engine oil to the piston.
- When inserting the piston into the cylinder, face the mark on the connecting rod to the injection pump.

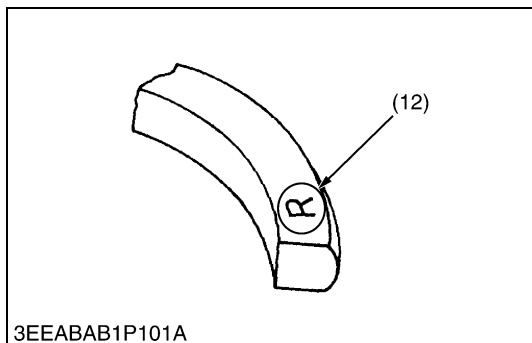
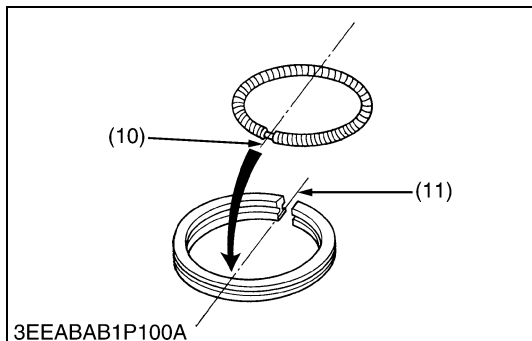
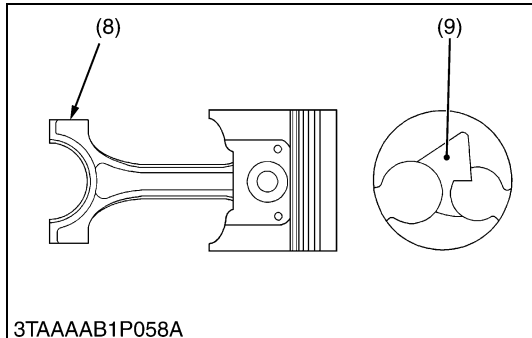
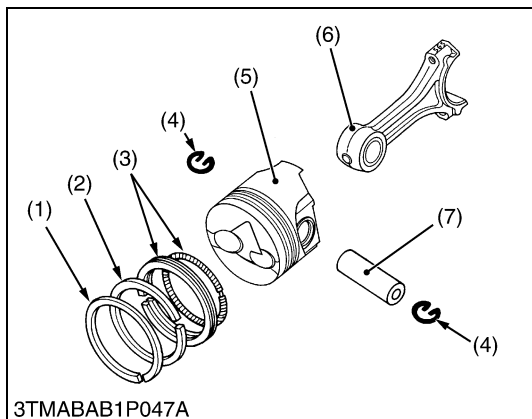
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not change the combination of cylinder and piston. Make sure of the position of each piston by marking. For example, mark "1" on the No.1 piston.
- When installing the piston into the cylinder, place the gaps of all the piston rings as shown in the figure.
- Carefully insert the pistons using a piston ring compressor (1). Otherwise, their chrome-plated section may be scratched, causing trouble inside the cylinder.

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Piston Ring Compressor | (a) 0.79 rad (45 °) |
|                            | (b) 0.79 rad (45 °) |
|                            | (c) 1.6 rad (90 °)  |

- |                     |
|---------------------|
| (A) Top Ring Gap    |
| (B) Second Ring Gap |
| (C) Oil Ring Gap    |
| (D) Piston Pin Hole |

9Y1210996ENS0070US0



### Piston Ring and Connecting Rod

1. Remove the piston rings using a piston ring tool.
2. Remove the piston pin (7), and separate the connecting rod (6) from the piston (5).

#### (When reassembling)

- When installing the ring, assemble the rings so that the manufacturer's mark (12) near the gap faces the top of the piston.
- When installing the oil ring onto the piston, place the expander joint (10) on the opposite side of the oil ring gap (11).
- Apply engine oil to the piston pin.
- When installing the connecting rod to the piston, immerse the piston in 80 °C (176 °F) oil for 10 to 15 minutes and insert the piston pin to the piston.
- When installing the connecting rod to the piston, align the mark (8) on the connecting rod to the fan-shaped concave (9).

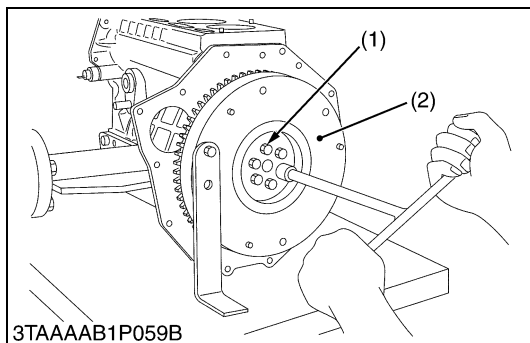
#### ■ NOTE

- **Mark the same number on the connecting rod and the piston so as not to change the combination.**

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) Top Ring             | (7) Piston Pin           |
| (2) Second Ring          | (8) Mark                 |
| (3) Oil Ring             | (9) Fan-shaped Concave   |
| (4) Piston Pin Snap Ring | (10) Expander Joint      |
| (5) Piston               | (11) Oil Ring Gap        |
| (6) Connecting Rod       | (12) Manufacturer's Mark |

9Y1210996ENS0071US0

## (4) Flywheel and Crankshaft



### Flywheel

1. Secure the flywheel to keep it from turning, using a flywheel stopper.
2. Remove all flywheel screws (1) and then remove the flywheel (2).

#### (When reassembling)

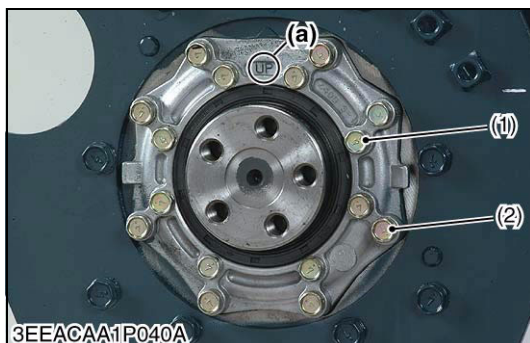
- Apply engine oil to the threads and the undercut surface of the flywheel screw and fit the screw.

Tightening torque	Flywheel screw	54 to 58 N·m 5.5 to 6.0 kgf·m 40 to 43 lbf·ft
-------------------	----------------	---

(1) Flywheel Screw

(2) Flywheel

9Y1210996ENS0072US0



### Bearing Case Cover

1. Remove the bearing case cover mounting screws.
2. Remove the bearing case cover (6).

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- The length of inside screws (1) and outside screws (2) are different. Do not take a mistake using inside screws and outside screws.

#### (When reassembling)

- Fit the bearing case gasket (3) and the bearing case cover gasket (4) with correct directions.
- Install the bearing case cover (6) to position the casting mark "UP" on it upward.
- Apply engine oil to the oil seal (5) lip and be careful that it is not rolled when installing.
- Tighten the bearing case cover mounting screws with even force on the diagonal line.

Tightening torque	Bearing case cover mounting screw	10.8 to 12.2 N·m 1.10 to 1.25 kgf·m 7.96 to 9.04 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

(1) Bearing Case Cover Mounting Screw (Inside) (Long)

(5) Oil Seal

(2) Bearing Case Cover Mounting Screw (Outside) (Short)

(6) Bearing Case Cover

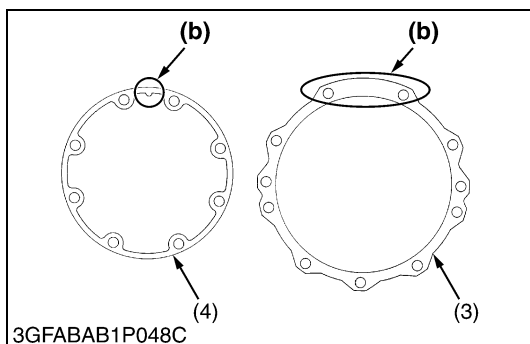
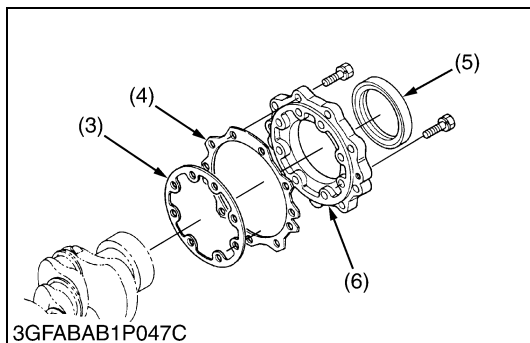
(3) Bearing Case Gasket

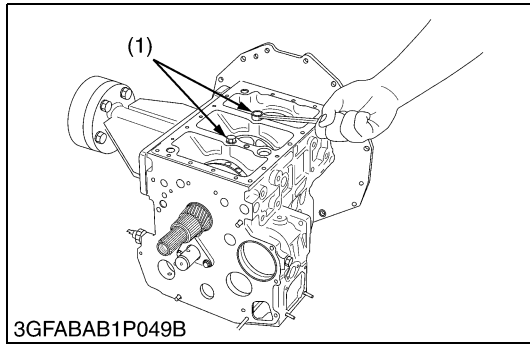
(a) Top Mark "UP"

(4) Bearing Case Cover Gasket

(b) Upside

9Y1210996ENS0073US0





### Crankshaft Assembly

1. Remove the main bearing case screw 2 (1).
2. Pull out the crankshaft assembly.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Be careful to protect crankshaft bearing 1 from scratches, caused by the crank gear, etc.. (Wrap the gear in vinyl tape, etc.)

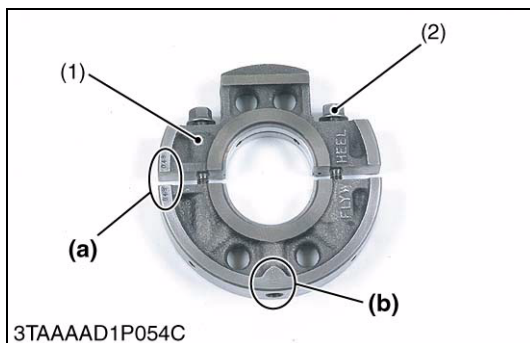
#### (When reassembling)

- Clean the oil passage of the crankshaft with compressed air.
- Apply oil to the main bearing case screw 2 (1).
- Install the crankshaft assembly, aligning the screw hole of main bearing case with the screw hole of crankcase.

Tightening torque	Main bearing case screw 2	49 to 53 N·m 5.0 to 5.5 kgf·m 37 to 39 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------	---

(1) Main Bearing Case Screw 2

9Y1210996ENS0074US0

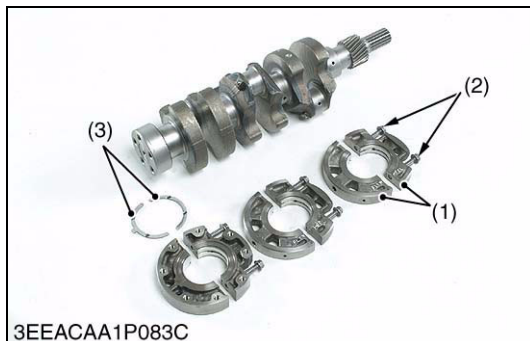


### Main Bearing Case Assembly

1. Remove the two main bearing case screws 1 (2) of each main bearing cases.
2. Remove the main bearing case from crankshaft.

#### (When reassembling)

- Clean the oil passage in the main bearing cases.
- Apply clean engine oil on the bearings.
- Install the main bearing case assemblies in the original positions. Since diameters of main bearing cases vary, install them in order of markings (b) (A, B, C) from the gear case side.
- Match the alignment numbers (a) on the main bearing case assembly 1.
- When installing the main bearing case 1 and 2, face the mark "FLYWHEEL" to the flywheel.
- Install the thrust bearing (3) with its oil groove facing outward.
- Make Sure that the main bearing case moves smoothly after tightening the main bearing case screw 1 to the specified torque.



Tightening torque	Main bearing case screw 1	30 to 34 N·m 3.0 to 3.5 kgf·m 22 to 25 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------	---

(1) Main Bearing Case Assembly 1

(2) Main Bearing Case Screw 1

(3) Thrust Bearing

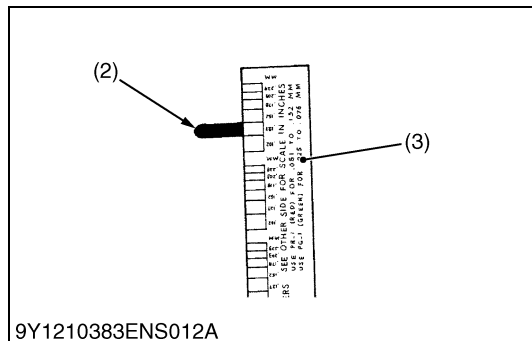
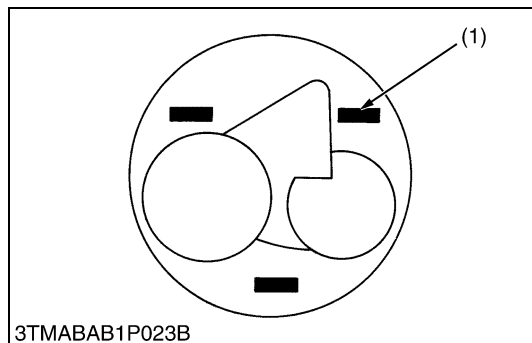
(a) Alignment Number

(b) Marking (A, B, C)

9Y1210996ENS0075US0

## [4] SERVICING

### (1) Cylinder Head and Valves



#### Top Clearance

1. Remove the cylinder head.
2. With the piston at TDC, use grease to affix three or four plastigauges (1) of a diameter 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) × 5.0 to 7.0 mm (0.20 to 0.27 in.) long to the crown of the piston; keep the gauges away from the intake valve and combustion chamber fittings.
3. Take the piston to an intermediate position, install the cylinder head and tighten the head bolts to the specified torque.
4. Turn the crankshaft so the piston goes through TDC.
5. Remove the cylinder head and compare the width of the crushed plastigauges (2) with the scale.
6. If they are out of spec, check the oil clearance of the crank pin, journals and piston pins.

#### ■ NOTE

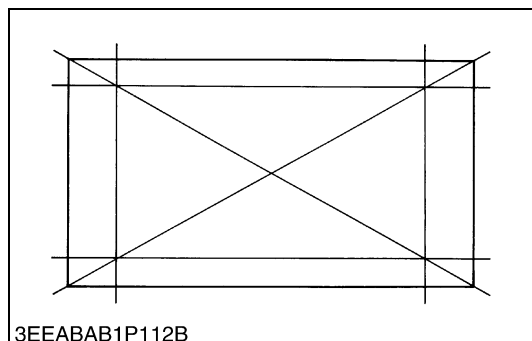
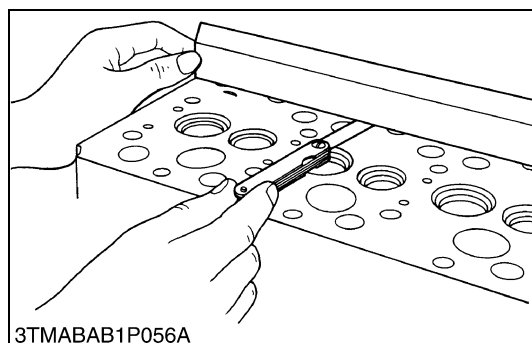
- Top clearance = Width of the crushed plastigauge (2).

Top clearance	Factory specification	0.55 to 0.75 mm 0.022 to 0.029 in.
Tightening torque	Cylinder head screw	64 to 68 N·m 6.5 to 7.0 kgf·m 47 to 50 lbf·ft

- (1) Plastigauge  
(2) Crushed Plastigauge

(3) Scale

9Y1210996ENS0076US0



#### Cylinder Head Surface Flatness

1. Clean the cylinder head surface.
2. Place a straightedge on the cylinder head's four sides and two diagonal as shown in the figure.
3. Measure the clearance with a thickness gauge.
4. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, correct it with a surface grinder.

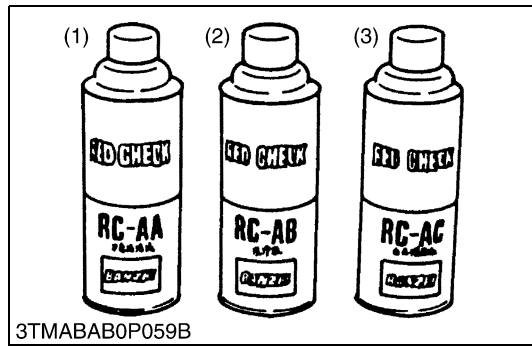
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not place the straightedge on the combustion chamber.
- Be sure to check the valve recessing after correcting.

Cylinder head surface flatness	Allowable limit	0.05 mm 0.002 in.
--------------------------------	-----------------	----------------------

9Y1210996ENS0077US0





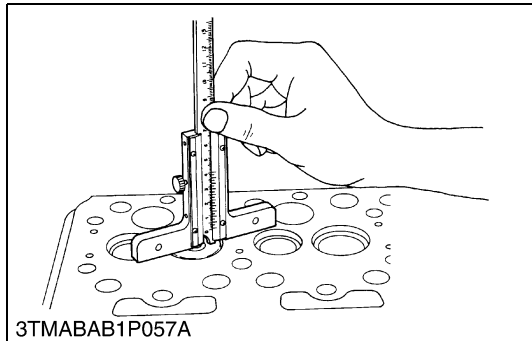
### Cylinder Head Flaw

1. Prepare an air spray red check.
2. Clean the surface of the cylinder head with detergent (2).
3. Spray the cylinder head surface with the red permeative liquid (1). Leave it five to ten minutes after spraying.
4. Wash away the red permeative liquid on the cylinder head surface with the detergent (2).
5. Spray the cylinder head surface with white developer (3).
6. If flawed, it can be identified as red marks.

(1) Red Permeative Liquid  
(2) Detergent

(3) White Developer

9Y1210996ENS0078US0



### Valve Recessing

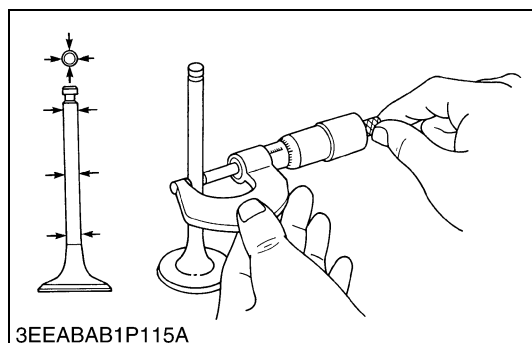
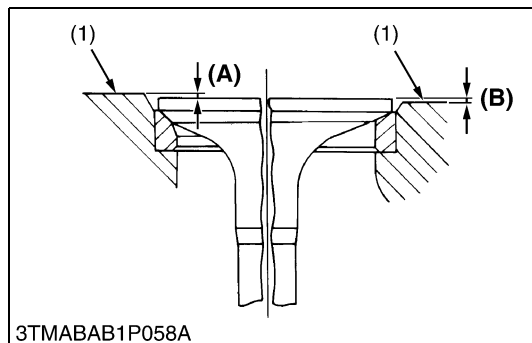
1. Clean the cylinder head surface, valve face and valve seat.
2. Insert the valve into the valve guide.
3. Measure the valve recessing with a depth gauge.
4. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the valve.
5. If it still exceeds the allowable limit after replacing the valve, replace the cylinder head.

Valve recessing	Factory specification	0.050 (protrusion) to 0.25 (recessing) mm 0.0020 (protrusion) to 0.0098 (recessing) in.
	Allowable limit	0.40 (recessing) mm 0.016 (recessing) in.

(1) Cylinder Head Surface

(A) Recessing  
(B) Protrusion

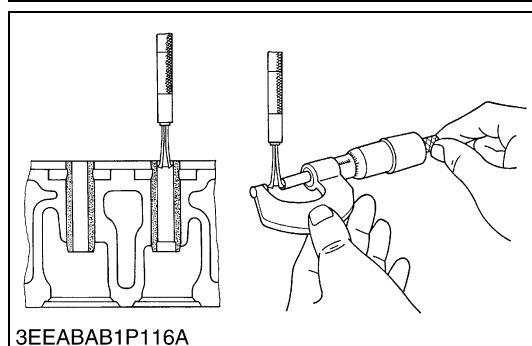
9Y1210996ENS0079US0



### Clearance between Valve Stem and Valve Guide

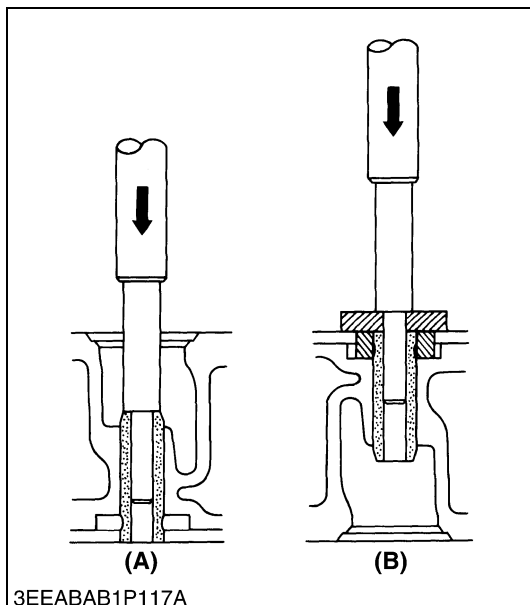
1. Remove carbon from the valve guide section.
2. Measure the valve stem O.D. with an outside micrometer.
3. Measure the valve guide I.D. with a small hole gauge, and calculate the clearance.
4. If the clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the valves.  
If it still exceeds the allowable limit, replace the valve guide.

Clearance between valve stem and valve guide	Factory specification	0.035 to 0.065 mm 0.0014 to 0.0025 in.
	Allowable limit	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.



Valve stem O.D.	Factory specification	6.960 to 6.975 mm 0.2741 to 0.2746 in.
Valve guide I.D.	Factory specification	7.010 to 7.025 mm 0.2760 to 0.2765 in.

9Y1210996ENS0080US0



### Replacing Valve Guide

#### (When removing)

1. Press out the used valve guide using a valve guide replacing tool. (See page G-60.)

#### (When installing)

1. Clean a new valve guide and valve guide bore, and apply engine oil to them.
2. Press fit a new valve guide using a valve guide replacing tool.
3. Ream precisely the I.D. of the valve guide to the specified dimension.

Valve guide I.D. (Intake and exhaust)	Factory specification	7.010 to 7.025 mm 0.2760 to 0.2765 in.
--	-----------------------	---

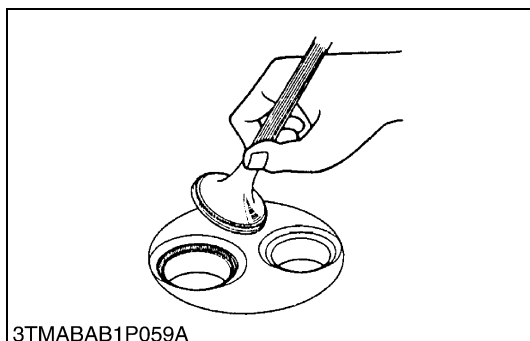
#### ■ NOTE

- Do not hit the valve guide with a hammer during replacement.

(A) When Removing

(B) When Installing

9Y1210996ENS0081US0



### Valve Seating

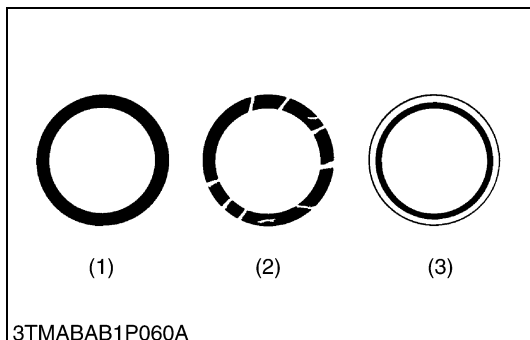
1. Coat the valve face lightly with prussian blue and put the valve on its seat to check the contact.
2. If the valve does not seat all the way around the valve seat or the valve contact is less than 70 %, correct the valve seating as follows.
3. If the valve contact does not comply with the reference value, replace the valve or correct the contact of valve seating.

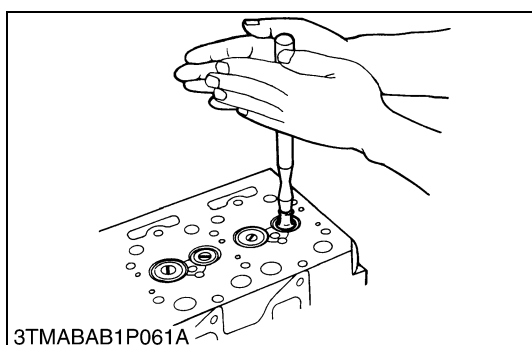
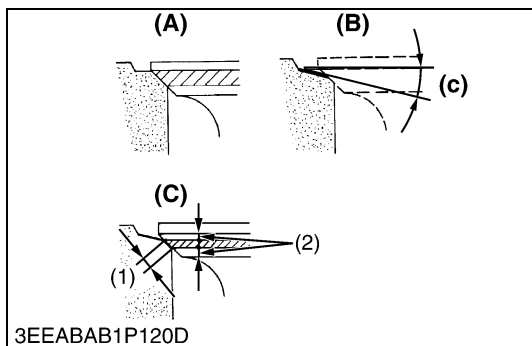
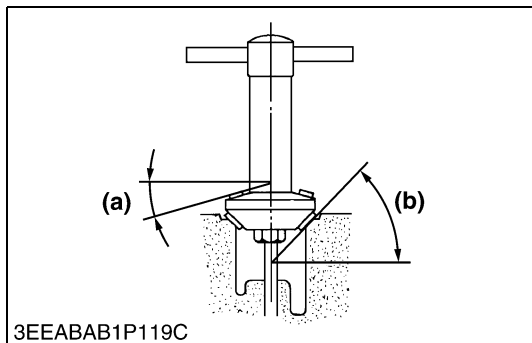
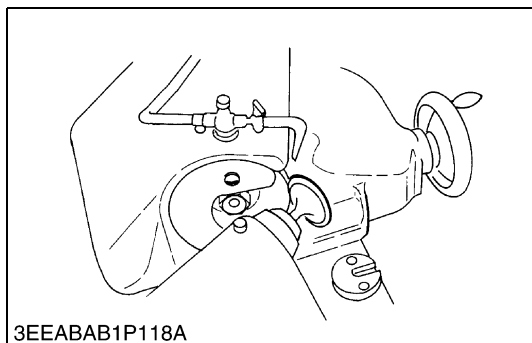
Valve seat width	Factory specification	2.12 mm 0.0835 in.
------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

- (1) Correct  
(2) Incorrect

(3) Incorrect

9Y1210996ENS0082US0





## Correcting Valve and Valve Seat

### NOTE

- Before correcting the valve and seat, check the valve stem and the I.D. of valve guide section, and repair them if necessary.
- After correcting the valve seat, be sure to check the valve recessing.

### (1) Correcting Valve

1. Correct the valve with a valve refacer.

Valve face angle	Factory specification	IN.	1.0 rad 60 °
		EX.	0.79 rad 45 °

### (2) Correcting Valve Seat

1. Slightly correct the seat surface with a 1.0 rad (60 °) (intake valve) or 0.79 rad (45 °) (exhaust valve) valve seat cutter.
2. Resurface the seat surface with a 0.52 rad (30 °) valve seat cutter to intake valve seat and with a 0.26 rad (15 °) valve seat cutter to exhaust valve seat so that the width is close to specified valve seat width (2.12 mm, 0.0835 in.)
3. After resurfacing the seat, inspect for even valve seating, apply a thin film of compound between the valve face and valve seat, and fit them with valve lapping tool.
4. Check the valve seating with prussian blue. The valve seating surface should show good contact all the way around.

Valve seat angle	Factory specification	IN.	1.0 rad 60 °
		EX.	0.79 rad 45 °

- (1) Valve Seat Width
- (2) Identical Dimensions

- (A) Check Contact
- (B) Correct Seat Width
- (C) Check Contact
- (a) 0.26 rad (15 °) or 0.52 rad (30 °)
- (b) 0.79 rad (45 °) or 1.0 rad (60 °)
- (c) 0.52 rad (30 °) or 0.26 rad (15 °)

9Y1210996ENS0083US0

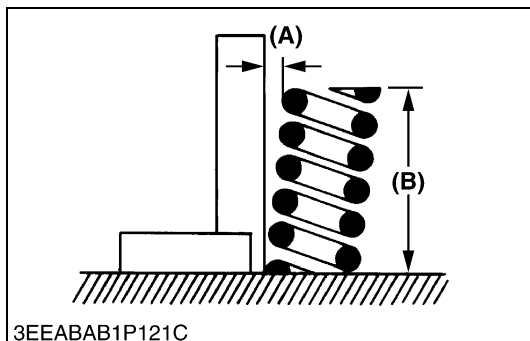
## Valve Lapping

1. Apply compound evenly to the valve lapping surface.
2. Insert the valve into the valve guide. Lap the valve onto its seat with a valve flapper or screwdriver.
3. After lapping the valve, wash the compound away and apply oil, then repeat valve lapping with oil.
4. Apply prussian blue to the contact surface to check the seated rate. If it is less than 70 %, repeat valve lapping again.

### IMPORTANT

- When valve lapping is performed, be sure to check the valve recessing and adjust the valve clearance after assembling the valve.

9Y1210996ENS0084US0



### Free Length and Tilt of Valve Spring

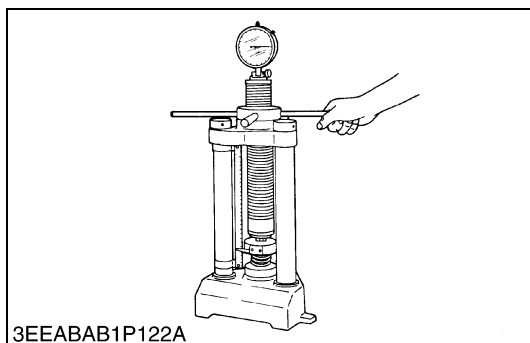
1. Measure the free length **(B)** of valve spring with vernier calipers. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace it.
2. Put the valve spring on a surface plate, place a square on the side of the valve spring.
3. Check to see if the entire side is in contact with the square. Rotate the valve spring and measure the maximum tilt **(A)**. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace it.
4. Check the entire surface of the valve spring for scratches. If there is any problem, replace it.

Tilt <b>(A)</b>	Allowable limit	1.0 mm 0.039 in.
Free length <b>(B)</b>	Factory specification	37.0 to 37.5 mm 1.46 to 1.47 in.
	Allowable limit	36.5 mm 1.44 in.

(A) Tilt

(B) Free Length

9Y1210996ENS0085US0



### Valve Spring Setting Load

1. Place the valve spring on a tester and compress it to the same length it is actually compressed in the engine.
2. Read the compression load on the gauge.
3. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace it.

Setting load / Setting length	Factory specification	117.4 N / 31.0 mm 11.97 kgf / 31.0 mm 26.39 lbf / 1.22 in.
	Allowable limit	100.0 N / 31.0 mm 10.20 kgf / 31.0 mm 22.48 lbf / 1.22 in.

9Y1210996ENS0086US0



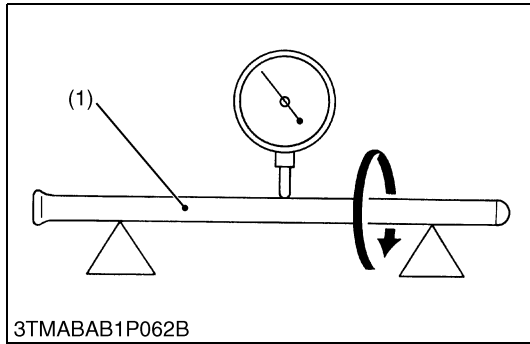
### Oil Clearance between Rocker Arm and Rocker Arm Shaft

1. Measure the rocker arm shaft O.D. with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the rocker arm I.D. with an inside micrometer, and then calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the rocker arm and measure the oil clearance again. If it still exceeds the allowable limit, replace also the rocker arm shaft.

Oil clearance between rocker arm and rocker arm shaft	Factory specification	0.016 to 0.045 mm 0.00063 to 0.0017 in.
	Allowable limit	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.

Rocker arm shaft O.D.	Factory specification	11.973 to 11.984 mm 0.47138 to 0.47181 in.
Rocker arm I.D.	Factory specification	12.000 to 12.018 mm 0.47244 to 0.47314 in.

9Y1210996ENS0087US0



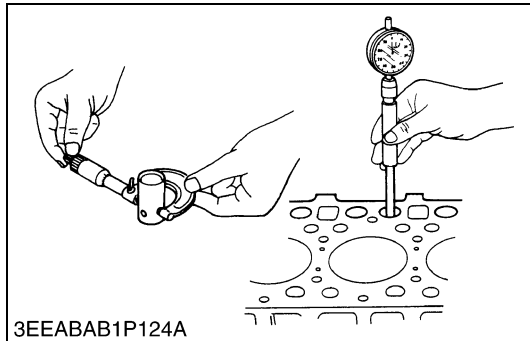
### **Push Rod Alignment**

1. Place the push rod on V blocks.
2. Measure the push rod alignment.
3. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the push rod.

Push rod alignment	Allowable limit	0.25 mm 0.0098 in.
--------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

(1) Push Rod

9Y1210996ENS0088US0



### **Oil Clearance between Tappet and Tappet Guide Bore**

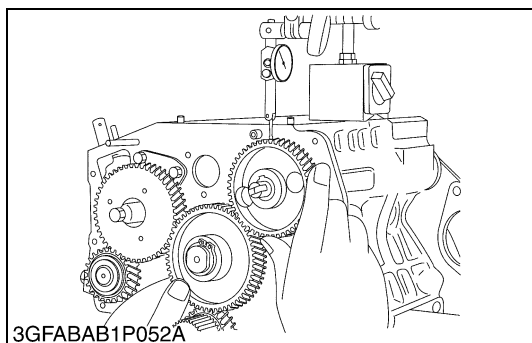
1. Measure the tappet O.D. with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the I.D. of the tappet guide bore with a cylinder gauge, and calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit or the tappet is damaged, replace the tappet.

Oil Clearance between tappet and tappet guide bore	Factory specification	0.020 to 0.062 mm 0.00079 to 0.0024 in.
	Allowable limit	0.07 mm 0.003 in.

Tappet O.D.	Factory specification	19.959 to 19.980 mm 0.78579 to 0.78661 in.
Tappet guide bore I.D.	Factory specification	20.000 to 20.021 mm 0.78740 to 0.78822 in.

9Y1210996ENS0089US0

## (2) Timing Gears, Camshaft and Governor Gear



### Timing Gear Backlash

1. Set a dial indicator (lever type) with its tip on the gear tooth.
2. Move the gear to measure the backlash, holding its mating gear.
3. If the backlash exceeds the allowable limit, check the oil clearance of the shafts and the gear.
4. If the oil clearance is proper, replace the gear.

Backlash between idle gear 1 and crank gear	Factory specification	0.0320 to 0.115 mm 0.00126 to 0.00452 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

Backlash between idle gear 1 and cam gear	Factory specification	0.0360 to 0.114 mm 0.00142 to 0.00448 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

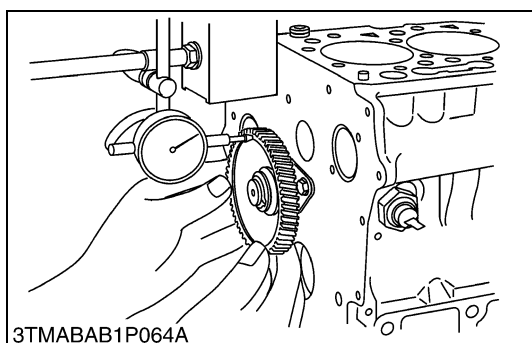
Backlash between idle gear 1 and injection pump gear	Factory specification	0.0340 to 0.116 mm 0.00134 to 0.00456 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

9Y1210996ENS0090US0

### Governor Gear Backlash

Backlash between injection pump gear and governor gear	Factory specification	0.0300 to 0.117 mm 0.00119 to 0.00460 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

9Y1210996ENS0091US0

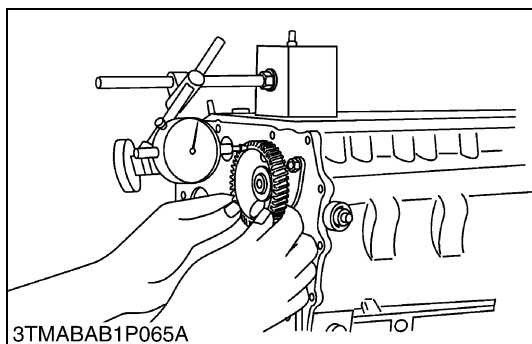


### Idle Gear 1 Side Clearance

1. Set a dial indicator with its tip on the idle gear.
2. Measure the side clearance by moving the idle gear to the front and rear.
3. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the idle gear collar

Idle gear 1 side clearance	Factory specification	0.20 to 0.51 mm 0.0079 to 0.020 in.
	Allowable limit	0.80 mm 0.031 in.

9Y1210996ENS0092US0

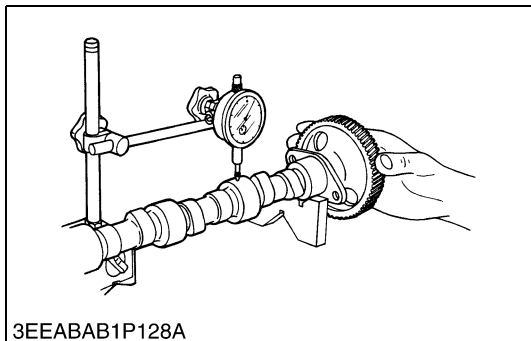


### Camshaft Side Clearance

1. Set a dial indicator with its tip on the camshaft.
2. Measure the side clearance by moving the cam gear to the front to rear.
3. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the camshaft stopper

Camshaft side clearance	Factory specification	0.070 to 0.22 mm 0.0028 to 0.0086 in.
	Allowable limit	0.30 mm 0.012 in.

9Y1210996ENS0093US0

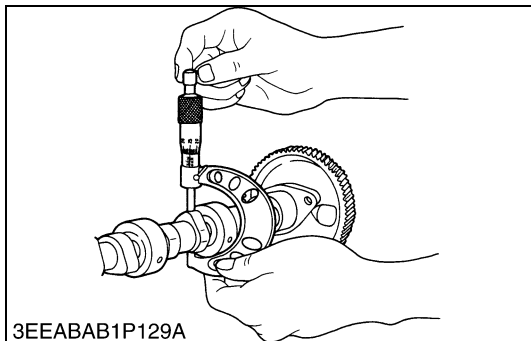


### **Camshaft Alignment**

1. Support the camshaft with V blocks on the surface plate at both end journals.
2. Set a dial indicator with its tip on the intermediate journal.
3. Measure the camshaft alignment.
4. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the camshaft.

Camshaft alignment	Allowable limit	0.01 mm 0.0004 in.
--------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

9Y1210996ENS0094US0



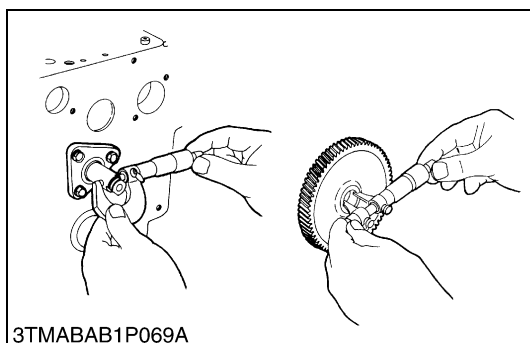
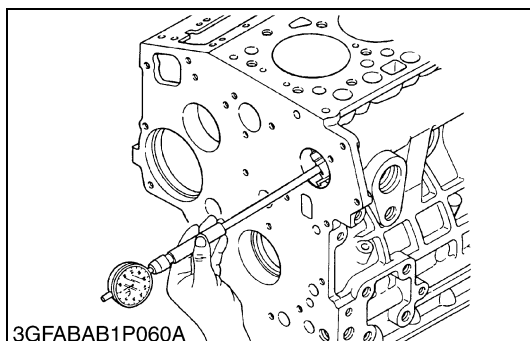
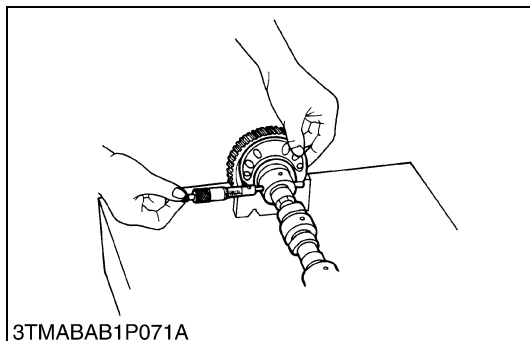
### **Cam Height**

1. Measure the height of the cam at its highest point with an outside micrometer.
2. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace the camshaft.

Cam height of intake	Factory specification	28.80 mm 1.134 in.
	Allowable limit	28.75 mm 1.132 in.

Cam height of exhaust	Factory specification	29.00 mm 1.142 in.
	Allowable limit	28.95 mm 1.140 in.

9Y1210996ENS0095US0



### Oil Clearance of Camshaft Journal

1. Measure the camshaft journal O.D. with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the cylinder block bore I.D. for camshaft with a cylinder gauge, and calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the camshaft.

Oil clearance of camshaft journal	Factory specification	0.050 to 0.091 mm 0.0020 to 0.0035 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

Camshaft journal O.D.	Factory specification	35.934 to 35.950 mm 1.4148 to 1.4154 in.
Camshaft bearing I.D. (Cylinder block bore I.D.)	Factory specification	36.000 to 36.025 mm 1.4174 to 1.4183 in.

9Y1210996ENS0096US0

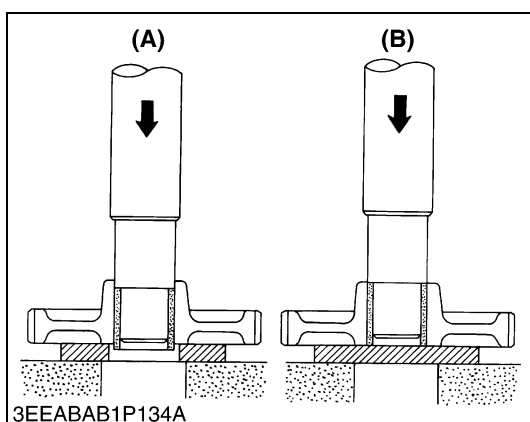
### Oil Clearance between Idle Gear Shaft 1 and Idle Gear Bushing

1. Measure the idle gear shaft O.D. with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the idle gear bushing I.D. with an inside micrometer, and calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the bushing.  
If it still exceeds the allowable limit, replace the idle gear shaft.

Oil clearance between idle gear shaft 1 and idle gear bushing	Factory specification	0.020 to 0.054 mm 0.00079 to 0.0021 in.
	Allowable limit	0.10 mm 0.0039 in.

Idle gear shaft 1 O.D.	Factory specification	25.967 to 25.980 mm 1.0224 to 1.0228 in.
Idle gear bushing 1 I.D.	Factory specification	26.000 to 26.021 mm 1.0237 to 1.0244 in.

9Y1210996ENS0097US0



### Replacing Idle Gear Bushing

#### (When removing)

1. Press out the used idle gear bushing using an idle gear bushing replacing tool. (See page G-60.)

#### (When installing)

1. Clean a new idle gear bushing and idle gear bore, and apply engine oil to them.
2. Press in a new bushing using an idle gear bushing replacing tool, until it is flush with the end of the idle gear.

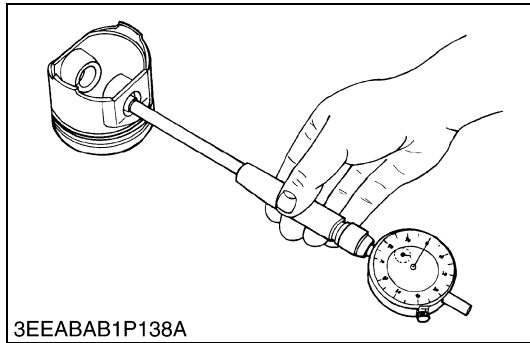
(A) When Removing

(B) When Installing

9Y1210996ENS0098US0



### (3) Piston and Connecting Rod

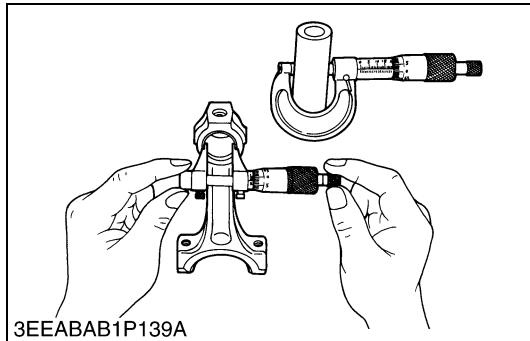


#### Piston Pin Bore I.D.

1. Measure the piston pin bore I.D. in both the horizontal and vertical directions with a cylinder gauge.
2. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the piston.

Piston pin bore I.D.	Factory specification	22.000 to 22.013 mm 0.86615 to 0.86665 in.
	Allowable limit	22.03 mm 0.8673 in.

9Y1210996ENS0099US0



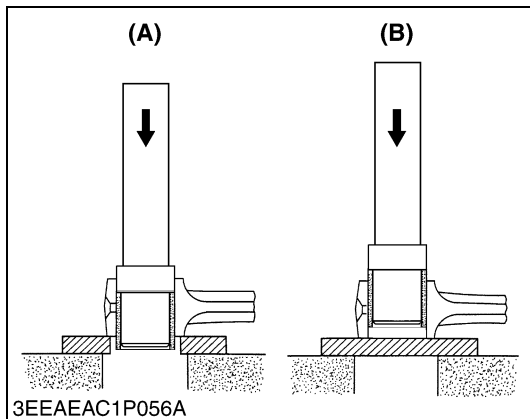
#### Oil Clearance between Piston Pin and Small End Bushing

1. Measure the piston pin O.D. where it contacts the bushing with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the small end bushing I.D. with an inside micrometer, and calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the bushing. If it still exceeds the allowable limit, replace the piston pin.

Oil clearance between piston pin and small end bushing	Factory specification	0.014 to 0.038 mm 0.00056 to 0.0014 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

Piston pin O.D.	Factory specification	22.002 to 22.011 mm 0.86622 to 0.86657 in.
Small end bushing I.D.	Factory specification	22.025 to 22.040 mm 0.86713 to 0.86771 in.

9Y1210996ENS0100US0



#### Replacing Small End Bushing

##### (When removing)

1. Press out the used bushing using a small end bushing replacing tool. (See page G-60.)

##### (When installing)

1. Clean a new small end bushing and bore, and apply engine oil to them.
2. Using a small end bushing replacing tool, press fit a new bushing (service parts) taking due care to see that the connecting rod oil hole matches the bushing hole.

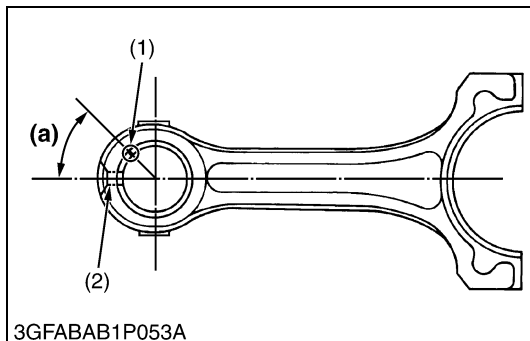
Oil clearance between piston pin and small end bushing (Spare parts)	Factory specification	0.014 to 0.038 mm 0.00056 to 0.0014 in.
	Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

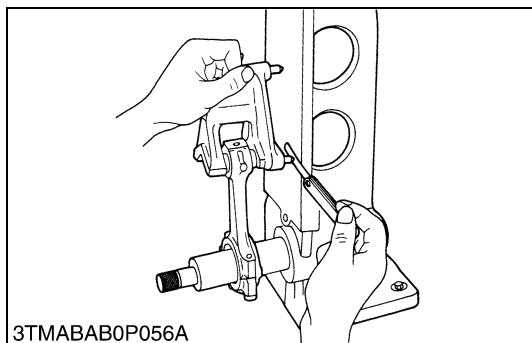
Small end bushing I.D. (Spare parts)	Factory specification	22.025 to 22.040 mm 0.86713 to 0.86771 in.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------	---

- (1) Seam  
(2) Oil Hole

- (A) When Removing  
(B) When Installing  
(a) 0.79 rad (45°)

9Y1210996ENS0101US0





### Connecting Rod Alignment

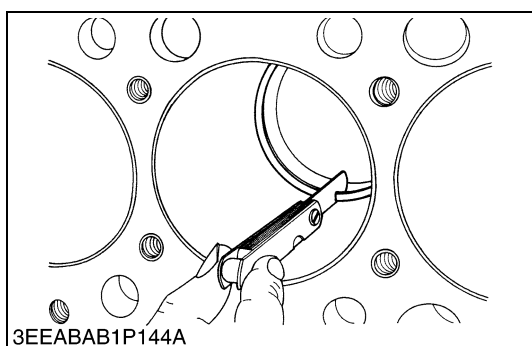
#### ■ NOTE

- Since the I.D. of the connecting rod small end bushing is the basis of this check, check bushing for wear beforehand.

1. Install the piston pin into the connecting rod.
2. Install the connecting rod on the connecting rod alignment tool.
3. Put a gauge over the piston pin, and move it against the face plate.
4. If the gauge does not fit squarely against the face plate, measure the space between the pin of the gauge and the face plate.
5. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the connecting rod.

Connecting rod alignment	Allowable limit	0.05 mm 0.002 in.
--------------------------	-----------------	----------------------

9Y1210996ENS0102US0

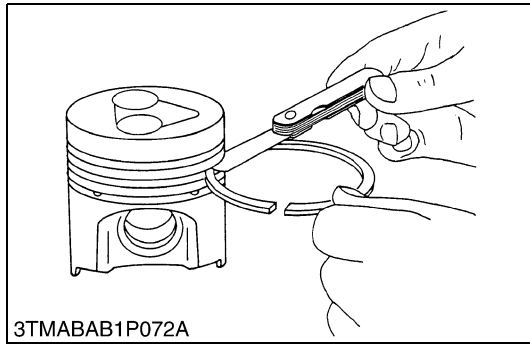


### Piston Ring Gap

1. Insert the piston ring into the lower part of the cylinder (the least worn out part) with a piston.
2. Measure the ring gap with a thickness gauge.
3. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the piston ring.

Piston ring gap	Top ring	Factory specification	0.15 to 0.25 mm 0.0059 to 0.0098 in.
		Allowable limit	1.20 mm 0.0472 in.
	Second ring	Factory specification	0.40 to 0.55 mm 0.016 to 0.021 in.
		Allowable limit	1.20 mm 0.0472 in.
	Oil ring	Factory specification	0.25 to 0.45 mm 0.0099 to 0.017 in.
		Allowable limit	1.25 mm 0.0492 in.

9Y1210996ENS0103US0



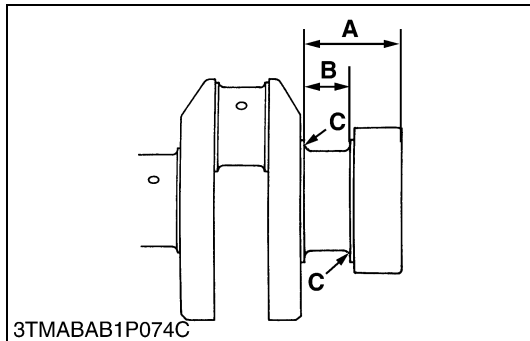
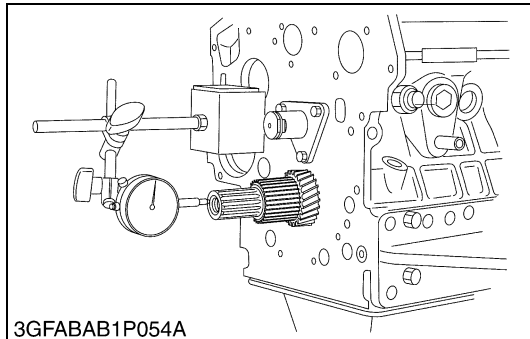
### **Clearance between Piston ring and Piston Ring Groove**

1. Clean the rings and the ring grooves, and install each ring in its groove.
2. Measure the clearance between the ring and the groove with a feeler gauge or depth gauge.
3. If the clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the piston ring.
4. If the clearance still exceeds the allowable limit with new ring, replace the piston.

Clearance between piston ring and piston ring groove	Second ring	Factory specification	0.0850 to 0.122 mm 0.00335 to 0.00480 in.
		Allowable limit	0.2 mm 0.008 in.
	Oil ring	Factory specification	0.02 to 0.06 mm 0.0008 to 0.002 in.
		Allowable limit	0.15 mm 0.0059 in.

9Y1210996ENS0104US0

## **(4) Crankshaft**



### **Crankshaft Side Clearance**

1. Set a dial indicator with its point on the end of the crankshaft.
2. Move the crankshaft to the front and rear to measure the side clearance.
3. If the measurement is more than the allowable limit, replace the thrust bearings.
4. If the same size bearing is useless because of the crankshaft journal wear, replace it with an oversize one referring to the table and figure.

Crankshaft side clearance	Factory specification	0.15 to 0.31 mm 0.0059 to 0.012 in.
	Allowable limit	0.50 mm 0.020 in.

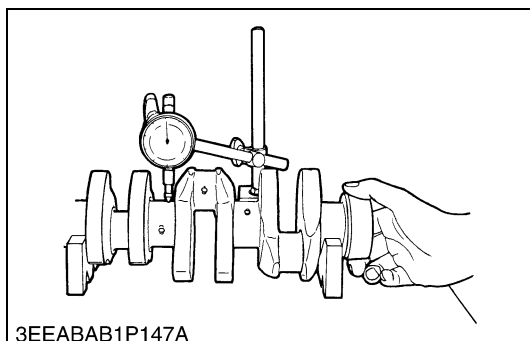
### **(Reference)**

- Oversize dimensions of crankshaft journal

Oversize	0.2 mm 0.0079 in.	0.4 mm 0.016 in.
Dimension A	51.50 to 51.70 mm 2.028 to 2.035 in.	51.60 to 51.80 mm 2.032 to 2.039 in.
Dimension B	28.20 to 28.25 mm 1.111 to 1.112 in.	28.40 to 28.45 mm 1.119 to 1.120 in.
Dimension C	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius

The crankshaft journal must be fine-finished to higher than Rmax = 0.8S

9Y1210996ENS0105US0

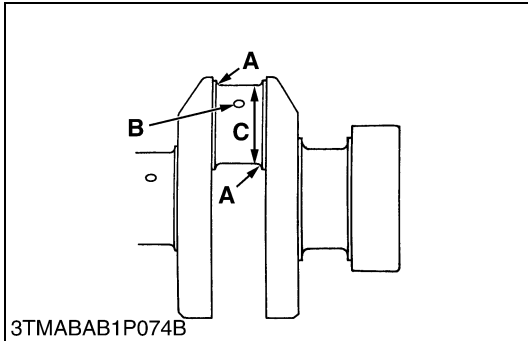
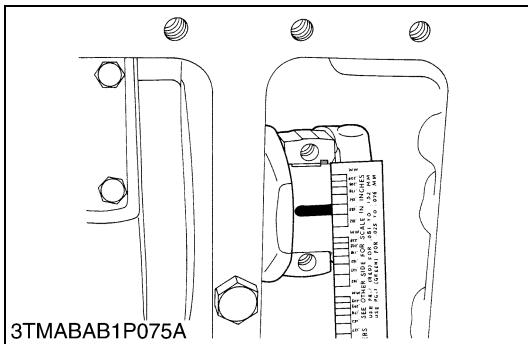


### **Crankshaft Alignment**

1. Support the crankshaft with V blocks on the surface plate at both end journals.
2. Set a dial indicator with its tip on the intermediate journal.
3. Measure the crankshaft alignment.
4. If the measurement exceeds the allowable limit, replace the crankshaft.

Crankshaft alignment	Allowable limit	0.02 mm 0.0008 in.
----------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

9Y1210996ENS0106US0



### Oil Clearance between Crankpin and Crankpin Bearing

1. Clean the crankpin and crankpin bearing.
2. Put a strip of plastigage on the center of the crankpin.
3. Install the connecting rod cap and tighten the connecting rod screws to the specified torque, and remove the cap again.
4. Measure the amount of the flattening with the scale, and get the oil clearance.
5. If the oil clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the crankpin bearing.
6. If the same size bearing is useless because of the crankpin wear, replace it with an undersize one referring to the table and figure.

#### ■ NOTE

- Never insert the plastigage into the crankpin oil hole.
- Be sure not to move the crankshaft while the connecting rod screws are tightened.

Oil clearance between crankpin and crankpin bearing	Factory specification	0.029 to 0.091 mm 0.0012 to 0.0035 in.
	Allowable limit	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.

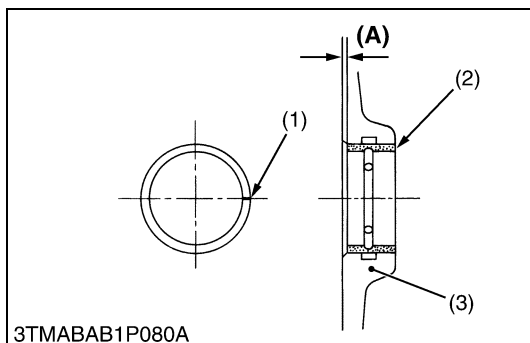
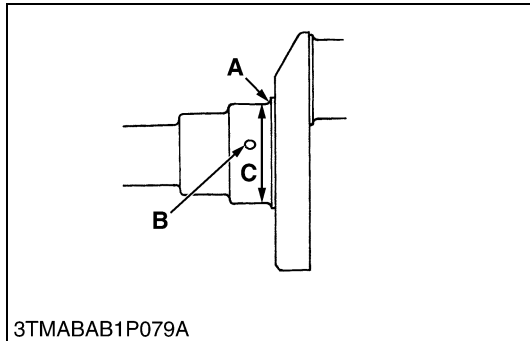
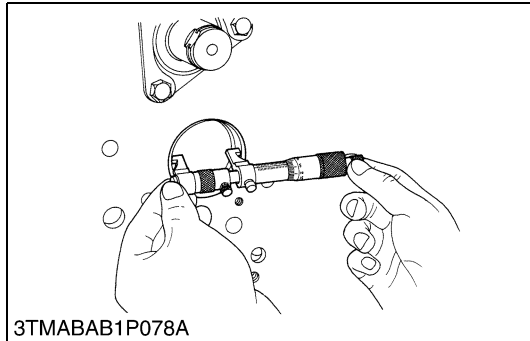
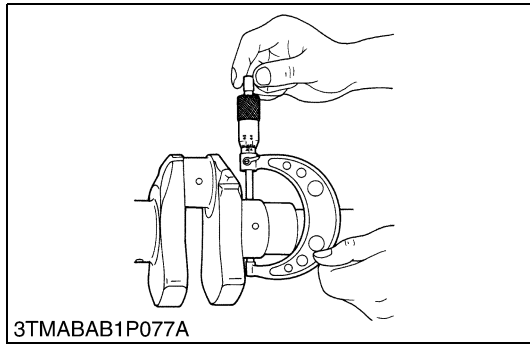
Crank pin O.D.	Factory specification	39.959 to 39.975 mm 1.5732 to 1.5738 in.
Crank pin bearing I.D.	Factory specification	40.040 to 40.050 mm 1.5764 to 1.5767 in.

#### (Reference)

- Undersize dimensions of crank pin

Undersize	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.	0.40 mm 0.016 in.
Dimension A	2.8 to 3.2 mm radius 0.11 to 0.12 in. radius	2.8 to 3.2 mm radius 0.11 to 0.12 in. radius
*Dimension B	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief
Dimension C	39.759 to 39.775 mm dia. 1.5654 to 1.5659 in. dia.	39.559 to 39.575 mm dia. 1.5575 to 1.5580 in. dia.
The crank pin must be fine-finished to higher than Rmax = 0.8S *Holes to be de-burred and edges rounded with 1.0 to 1.5 mm (0.040 to 0.059 in.) relief.		

9Y1210996ENS0107US0



### Oil Clearance between Crankshaft Journal and Crankshaft Bearing 1

1. Measure the O.D. of the crankshaft front journal with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the I.D. of the crankshaft bearing 1 with an inside micrometer, and calculate the oil clearance.
3. If the clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the crankshaft bearing 1.
4. If the same size bearing is useless because of the crankshaft journal wear, replace it with an undersize one referring to the table and figure.

Oil clearance between crankshaft journal and crankshaft bearing 1	Factory specification	0.0340 to 0.114 mm 0.00134 to 0.00448 in.
	Allowable limit	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.

Crankshaft journal O.D.	Factory specification	47.934 to 47.950 mm 1.8872 to 1.8877 in.
Crankshaft bearing 1 I.D.	Factory specification	47.984 to 48.048 mm 1.8892 to 1.8916 in.

### (Reference)

- Undersize dimensions of crankshaft journal

Undersize	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.	0.40 mm 0.016 in.
Dimension A	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius
*Dimension B	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief
Dimension C	47.734 to 47.750 mm dia. 1.8793 to 1.8799 in. dia.	47.534 to 47.550 mm dia. 1.8715 to 1.8720 in. dia.
The crankshaft journal must be fine-finished to higher than Rmax = 0.8S *Holes to be de-burred and edges rounded with 1.0 to 1.5 mm (0.040 to 0.059 in.) relief.		

9Y1210996ENS0108US0

### Replacing Crankshaft Bearing 1

#### (When removing)

1. Press out the used crankshaft bearing 1 using a crankshaft bearing 1 replacing tool. (See page G-61.)

#### (When installing)

1. Clean a new crankshaft bearing 1 and crankshaft journal bore, and apply engine oil to them.
2. Using a crankshaft bearing 1 replacing tool, press fit a new bearing 1 (2) so that its seam (1) directs toward the exhaust manifold side. (See figure.)

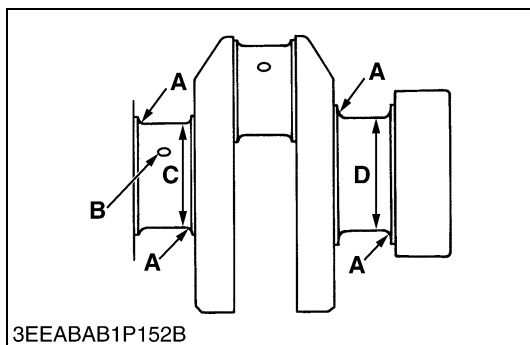
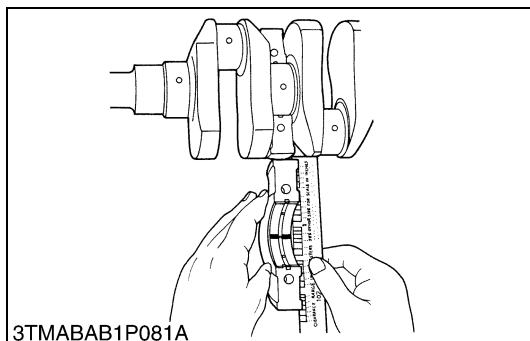
### (Reference)

Dimension (A)	Factory specification	0 to 0.3 mm 0 to 0.01 in.
---------------	-----------------------	------------------------------

- (1) Seam
- (2) Crankshaft Bearing 1
- (3) Cylinder Block

#### (A) Dimension

9Y1210996ENS0109US0



### Oil Clearance between Crankshaft Journal and Crankshaft Bearing 2 (Crankshaft Bearing 3)

1. Put a strip of plastigage on the center of the journal.
2. Install the bearing case and tighten the bearing case screws 1 to the specified torque, and remove the bearing case again.
3. Measure the amount of the flattening with the scale and get the oil clearance.
4. If the clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace the crankshaft bearing 2 (1) and crankshaft bearing (3).
5. If the same size bearing is useless because of the crankshaft journal wear, replace it with an undersize one referring to the table and figure.

#### NOTE

- Be sure not to move the crankshaft while the bearing case screws are tightened.

Oil clearance between crankshaft journal and crankshaft bearing 2	Factory specification	0.034 to 0.095 mm 0.0014 to 0.0037 in.
	Allowable limit	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.

Crankshaft journal O.D. (Intermediate)	Factory specification	47.934 to 47.950 mm 1.8872 to 1.8877 in.
Crankshaft bearing 2 I.D.	Factory specification	47.984 to 48.029 mm 1.8892 to 1.8908 in.

Oil clearance between crankshaft journal and crankshaft bearing 3	Factory specification	0.0340 to 0.103 mm 0.00134 to 0.00405 in.
	Allowable limit	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.

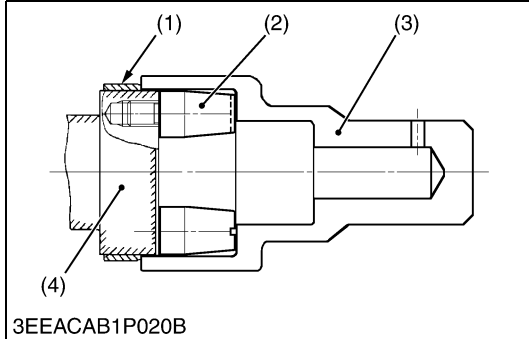
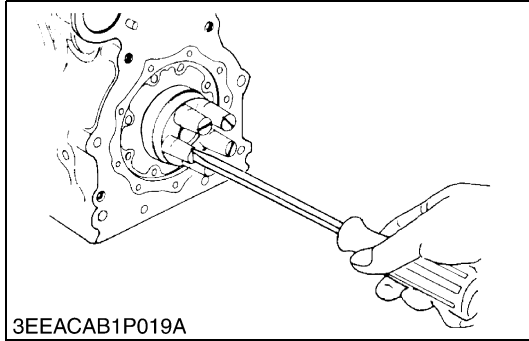
Crankshaft journal O.D. (Flywheel side)	Factory specification	51.921 to 51.940 mm 2.0442 to 2.0448 in.
Crankshaft bearing 3 I.D.	Factory specification	51.974 to 52.024 mm 2.0463 to 2.0481 in.

#### (Reference)

- Undersize dimensions of crankshaft journal

Undersize	0.20 mm 0.0079 in.	0.40 mm 0.016 in.
Dimension A	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius	2.3 to 2.7 mm radius 0.091 to 0.10 in. radius
*Dimension B	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief	1.0 to 1.5 mm relief 0.040 to 0.059 in. relief
Dimension C	47.734 to 47.750 mm dia. 1.8793 to 1.8799 in. dia.	47.534 to 47.550 mm dia. 1.8715 to 1.8720 in. dia.
Dimension D	51.721 to 51.740 mm dia. 2.0362 to 2.0370 in. dia.	51.521 to 51.540 mm dia. 2.0284 to 2.0291 in. dia.
The crank pin must be fine-finished to higher than Rmax = 0.8S *Holes to be de-burred and edges rounded with 1.0 to 1.5 mm (0.040 to 0.059 in.) relief.		

9Y1210996ENS0110US0



### Replacing Crankshaft Sleeve

1. Remove the used crankshaft sleeve.
2. Set the sleeve guide (2) to the crankshaft.
3. Heat a new sleeve to a temperature between 150 and 200 °C (302 and 392 °F), and fix the sleeve to the crankshaft as shown in figure.
4. Press fit the sleeve using the auxiliary socket for pushing (3).

#### ■ NOTE

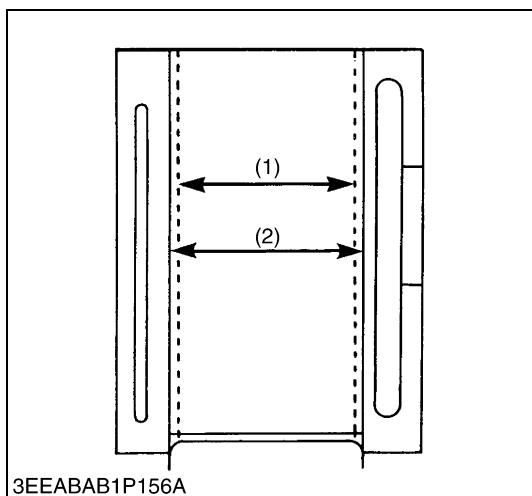
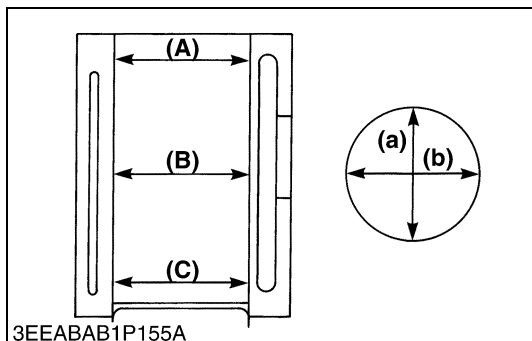
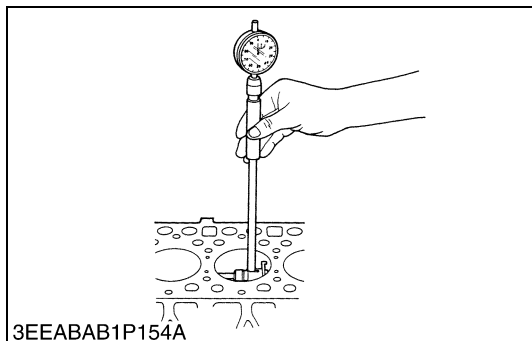
- Mount the sleeve with its largely chamfered surface facing outward.
- Should heating is not enough, a sleeve might stop halfway, so careful.

- (1) Crankshaft Sleeve  
(2) Sleeve Guide

- (3) Auxiliary Socket for Pushing  
(4) Crankshaft

9Y1210996ENS0111US0

## (5) Cylinder



### Cylinder Wear

1. Measure the I.D. of the cylinder at the six positions (see figure) with a cylinder gauge to find the maximum and minimum I.D.'s.
2. Get the difference (Maximum wear) between the maximum and the minimum I.D.'s.
3. If the wear exceeds the allowable limit, bore and hone to the oversize dimension. (Refer to "Correcting Cylinder".)
4. Visually check the cylinder wall for scratches. If deep scratches are found, the cylinder should be bored. (Refer to "Correcting Cylinder".)

Cylinder I.D.	Factory specification	78.000 to 78.019 mm 3.0709 to 3.0716 in.
	Allowable limit	78.15 mm 3.077 in.

- (A) Top  
(B) Middle  
(C) Bottom (Skirt)

- (a) Right-angled to Piston Pin  
(b) Piston Pin Direction

9Y1210996ENS0112US0

### Correcting Cylinder

1. When the cylinder is worn beyond the allowable limit, bore and hone it to the specified dimension.

Oversized cylinder liner I.D.	Factory specification	78.500 to 78.519 mm 3.0906 to 3.0912 in.
	Allowable limit	78.65 mm 3.096 in.
Finishing	Hone to 1.2 to 2.0 $\mu$ m R max. (48 to 78 $\mu$ in. R max.)	

2. Replace the piston and piston rings with oversize one.  
Oversize: 0.5 mm (0.02 in.)

#### NOTE

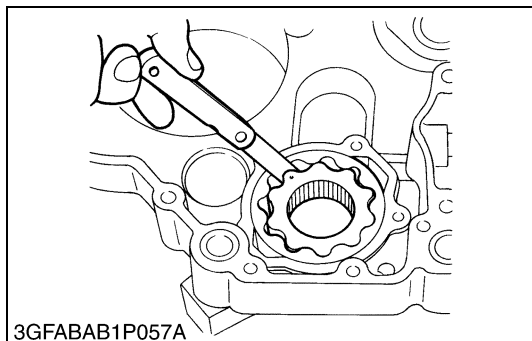
- When the oversize cylinder is worn beyond the allowable limit, replace the cylinder block with a new one.

- (1) Cylinder I.D. (Before Correction)      (2) Cylinder I.D. (Oversize)

9Y1210996ENS0113US0



## (6) Oil Pump



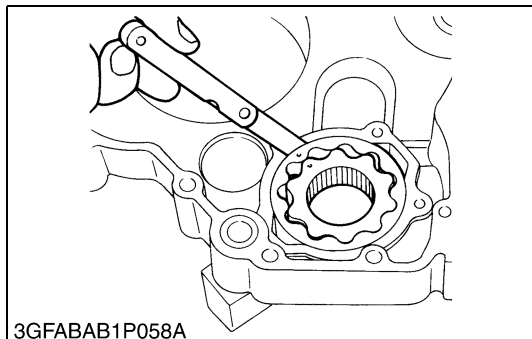
3GFABAB1P057A

### Rotor Lobe Clearance

1. Measure the clearance between lobes of the inner rotor and the outer rotor with a feeler gauge.
2. If the clearance exceeds the factory specifications, replace the oil pump rotor assembly.

Rotor lobe clearance	Factory specification	0.060 to 0.18 mm 0.0024 to 0.0071 in.
----------------------	-----------------------	--

9Y1210996ENS0114US0



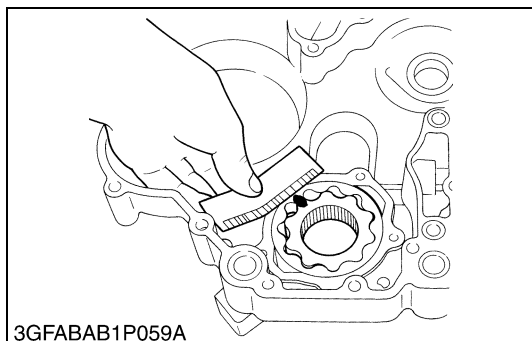
3GFABAB1P058A

### Clearance between Outer Rotor and Pump Body

1. Measure the clearance between the outer rotor and the pump body with a feeler gauge.
2. If the clearance exceeds the factory specifications, replace the oil pump rotor assembly.

Clearance between outer rotor and pump body	Factory specification	0.100 to 0.180 mm 0.00394 to 0.00708 in.
---	-----------------------	---

9Y1210996ENS0115US0



3GFABAB1P059A

### Clearance between Rotor and Cover

1. Put a strip of plastigage onto the rotor face with grease.
2. Install the cover and tighten the screws.
3. Remove the cover carefully, and measure the amount of the flattening with the scale and get the clearance.
4. If the clearance exceeds the factory specifications, replace the oil pump rotor assembly.

Clearance between rotor and cover	Factory specification	0.025 to 0.075 mm 0.00099 to 0.0029 in.
-----------------------------------	-----------------------	--

9Y1210996ENS0116US0

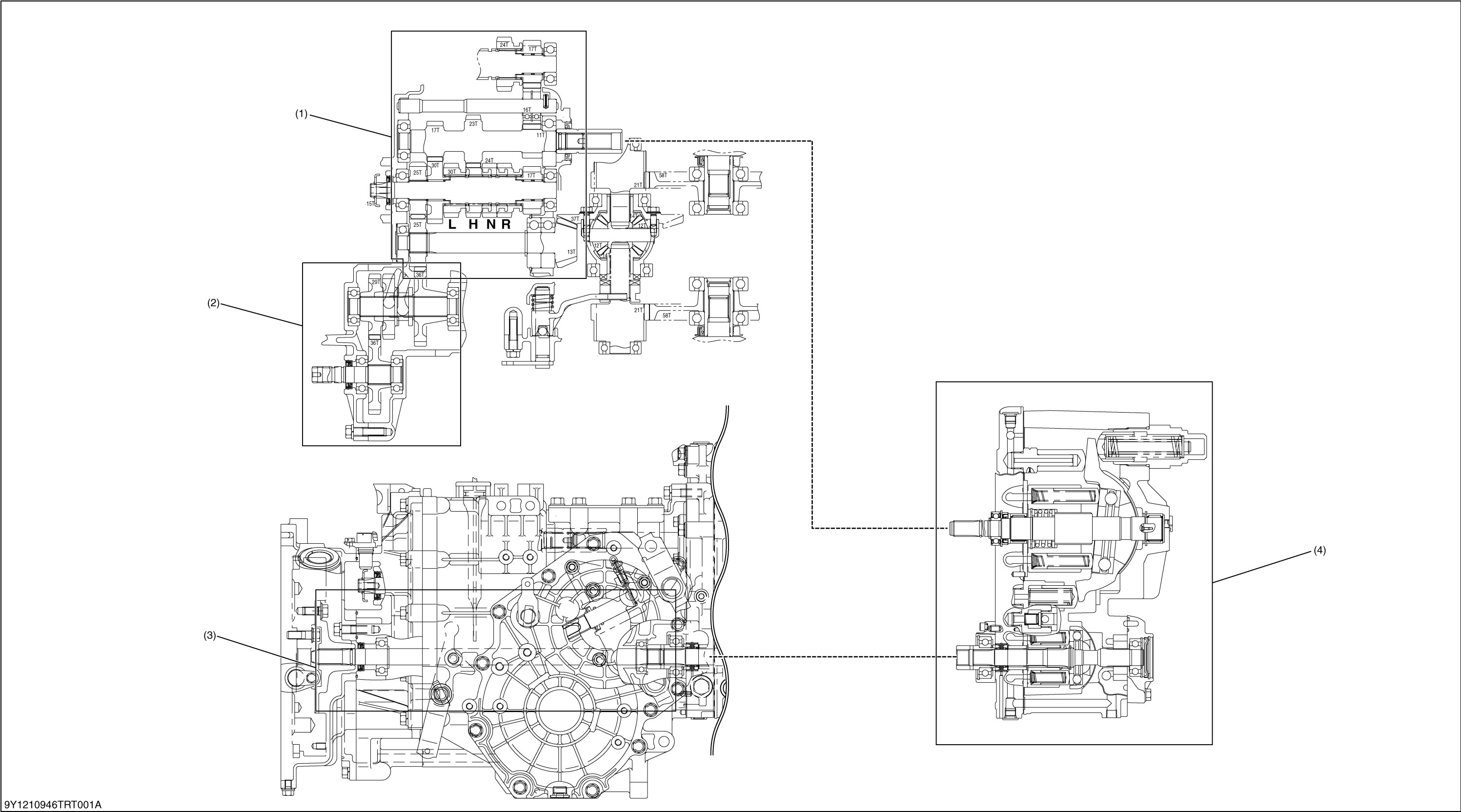
# **2 TRANSMISSION**

# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. STRUCTURE.....	2-M1
2. POWER TRAIN .....	2-M2
[1] HYDROSTATIC TRANSMISSION (HST).....	2-M2
(1) Structure .....	2-M2
(2) Oil Flow.....	2-M4
(3) Function of Components .....	2-M5
(4) HST Oil Flow .....	2-M13
(5) HST Control Linkage .....	2-M19
(6) Cables .....	2-M21
[2] RANGE GEAR SHIFT SECTION AND FRONT WHEEL DRIVE SECTION.....	2-M22

1. STRUCTURE



9Y1210946TRT001A

(1) Range Shift Gear Section

(2) Front Wheel Drive Section

(3) Input Shaft Section

(4) Hydraulic Transmission Section

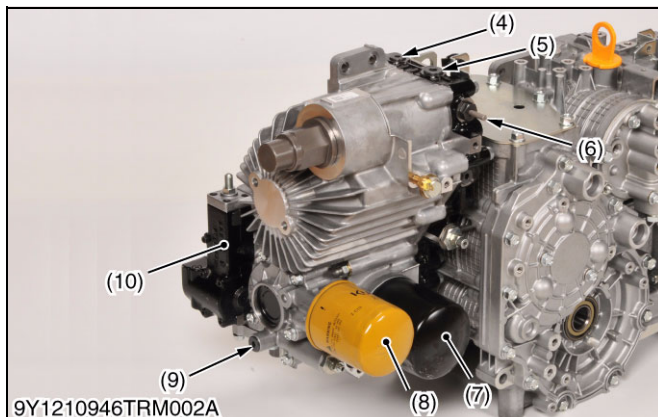
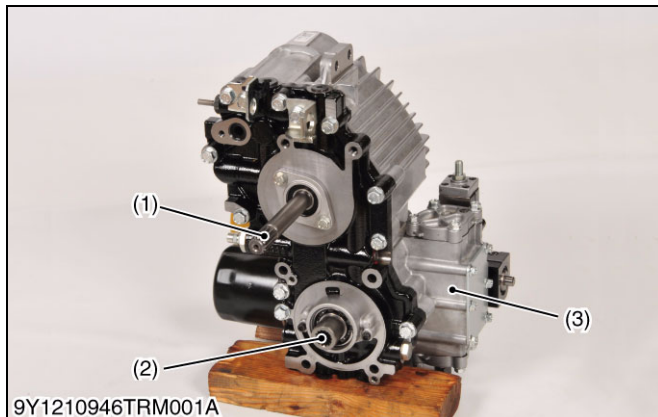
## 2. POWER TRAIN

The transmission of this model consists of a series of gears and shafts as shown in previous page. The traveling system chiefly consists of hydrostatic transmission section, range gear shift section and front wheel drive section.

9Y1210996TRM0002US0

### [1] HYDROSTATIC TRANSMISSION (HST)

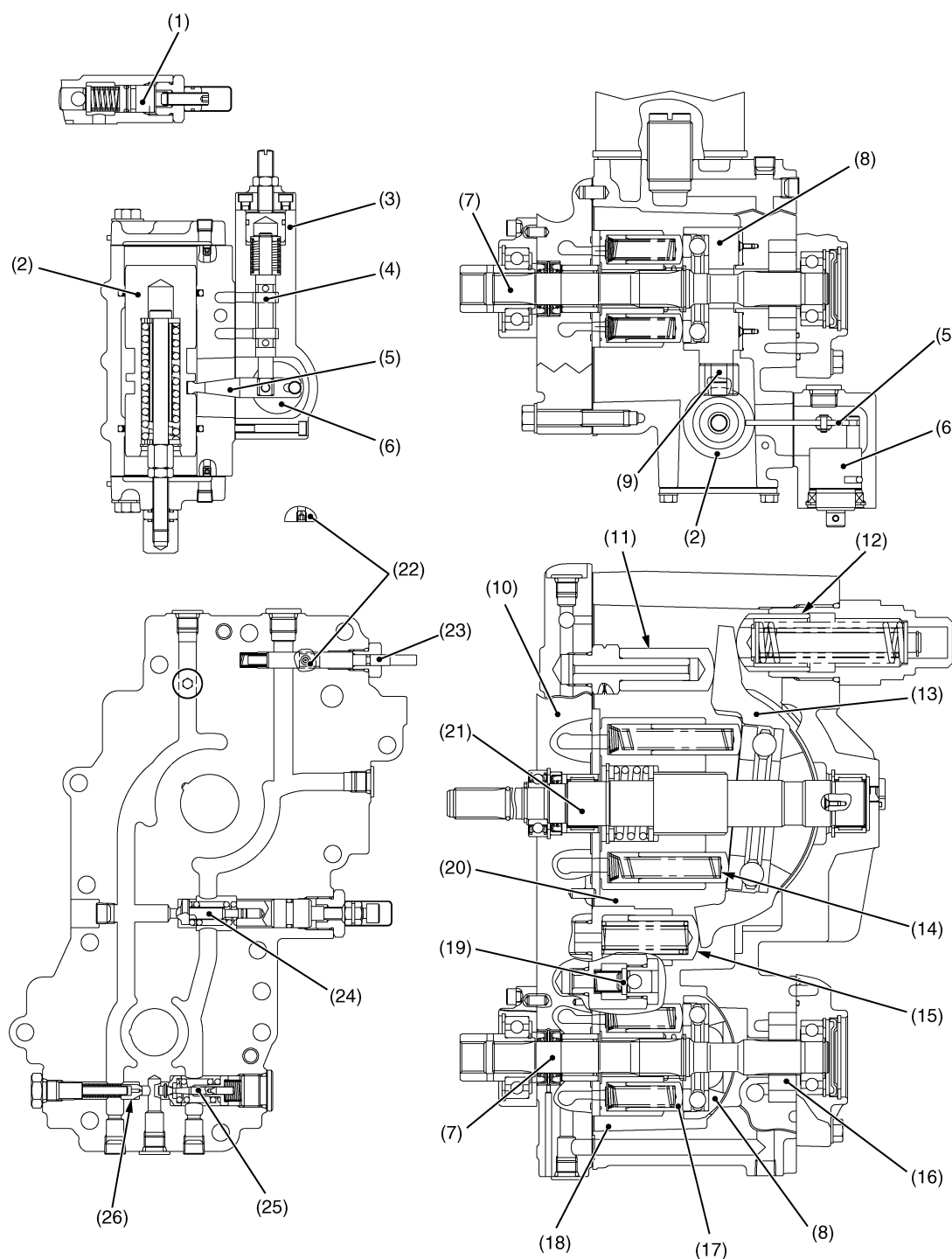
#### (1) Structure



The New RTV-X series has its HST built into the transmission case and incorporates a hydraulically operated servomechanism. The servomechanism controls the pedal operation hydraulically. As a result a smoother pedal operation can be achieved. The components of the RTV-X series HST (transmission case) are variable displacement piston pump, variable displacement piston motor, charge pump, servo-regulator, unload valve and various valves. Refer to the next page for detailed parts in the HST.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (1) Output Shaft (Motor Shaft)        | (6) Unload Valve                                  |
| (2) Input Shaft (Pump Shaft)          | (7) Oil Filter Cartridge (HST) (Black Color)      |
| (3) Servo Piston                      | (8) Oil Filter Cartridge (Suction) (Orange Color) |
| (4) Forward Pressure Check Port       | (9) Charge Pressure Check Port                    |
| (5) Dynamic Brake Pressure Check Port | (10) Servo Regulator                              |

9Y1210996TRM0003US0

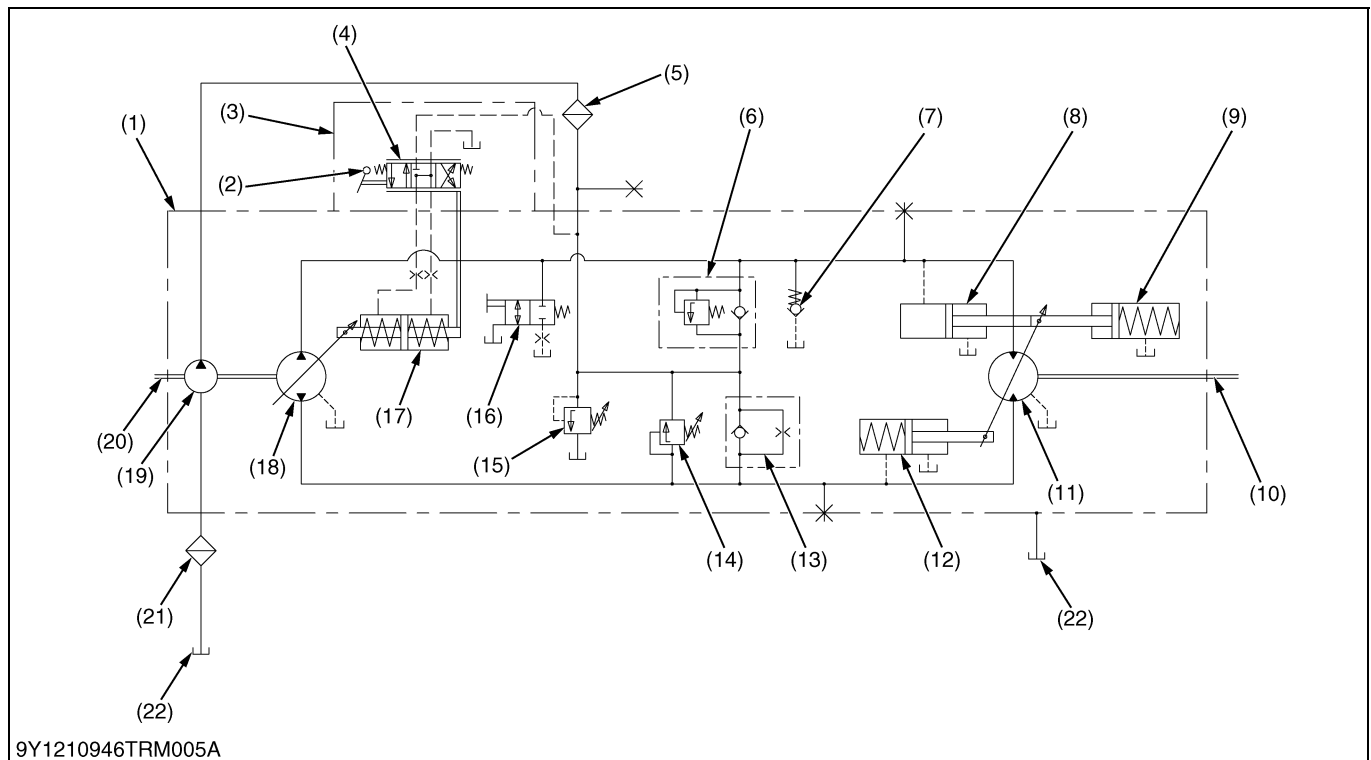


9Y1210946TRM003A

- |                              |                                  |                                 |   |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| (1) Charge Relief Valve      | (8) Variable Swashplate (Pump)   | (15) Control Piston 3           | (22) Orifice  |
| (2) Servo Piston             | (9) Guide                        | (16) Charge Pump                | (23) Unload Spool   |
| (3) Regulator Valve Assembly | (10) Port Block Cover            | (17) Piston (Pump)              | (24) High Pressure Relief Valve (Dynamic Brake)             |
| (4) Regulator Spool          | (11) Control Piston 1            | (18) Cylinder Block (Pump)      | (25) Check and High Pressure Relief Valve (Travelling Side) |
| (5) Feedback Lever           | (12) Control Piston 2            | (19) Anti-cavitation Valve      | (26) Check Valve  |
| (6) Regulator Shaft          | (13) Variable Swashplate (Motor) | (20) Cylinder Block (Motor)     |   |
| (7) Input Shaft (Pump Shaft) | (14) Piston (Motor)              | (21) Output Shaft (Motor Shaft) |   |

9Y1210996TRM0004US0

## (2) Oil Flow



- |  |                                 |                                 |                               |
|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) HST Assembly                         | (7) Anti-cavitation Valve       | (12) Control Piston 3           | (17) Servo Piston             |
| (2) Control Lever (Pedal)                | (8) Control Piston 1            | (13) Check Valve                | (18) Cylinder Block (Pump)    |
| (3) Servo Regulator Assembly             | (9) Control Piston 2            | (14) High Pressure Relief Valve | (19) Charge Pump              |
| (4) Regulator Valve                      | (10) Output Shaft (Motor Shaft) | (15) Charge Relief Valve        | (20) Input Shaft (Pump Shaft) |
| (5) Oil Filter Cartridge                 | (11) Cylinder Block (Motor)     | (16) Unload Valve               | (21) Oil Filter Cartridge     |
| (6) Check and High Pressure Relief Valve |                                 |                                 | (22) Oil Tank                 |

### (Traveling Side)

A charge pump (19) is used to feed oil to the hydrostatic transmission (HST). The oil coming from the charge pump (19) flows through the oil filter cartridge (5) into the HST main circuit and regulator valve (4). At this time, the servo regulator valve (4) and HST main circuit (that is closed with the control lever at neutral position) are kept at the charge relief valve (15) set pressure. Step on the pedal (2), and the regulator valve switches its oil passage to allow the oil into the service port. Being interlocked with the servo piston (17), the swashplate now tilts to activate the variable pump. Pressurized oil is then forced into the variable motor, which then rotates to circulate oil between the pump and motor.

The heavier the load on the output shaft (10), the higher the pressure of the oil coming from the pump. Now the motor is activated to increase the output torque. When the load on the output shaft decreases, the oil pressure in the main circuit also drops returns to its neutral position and just the variable motor keeps torque to the output shaft (10). Now a closed circuit is formed by the pump and variable motor. The unload valve (16) consists of the manual operation spool and the spool that operates in synchronization with the brake.

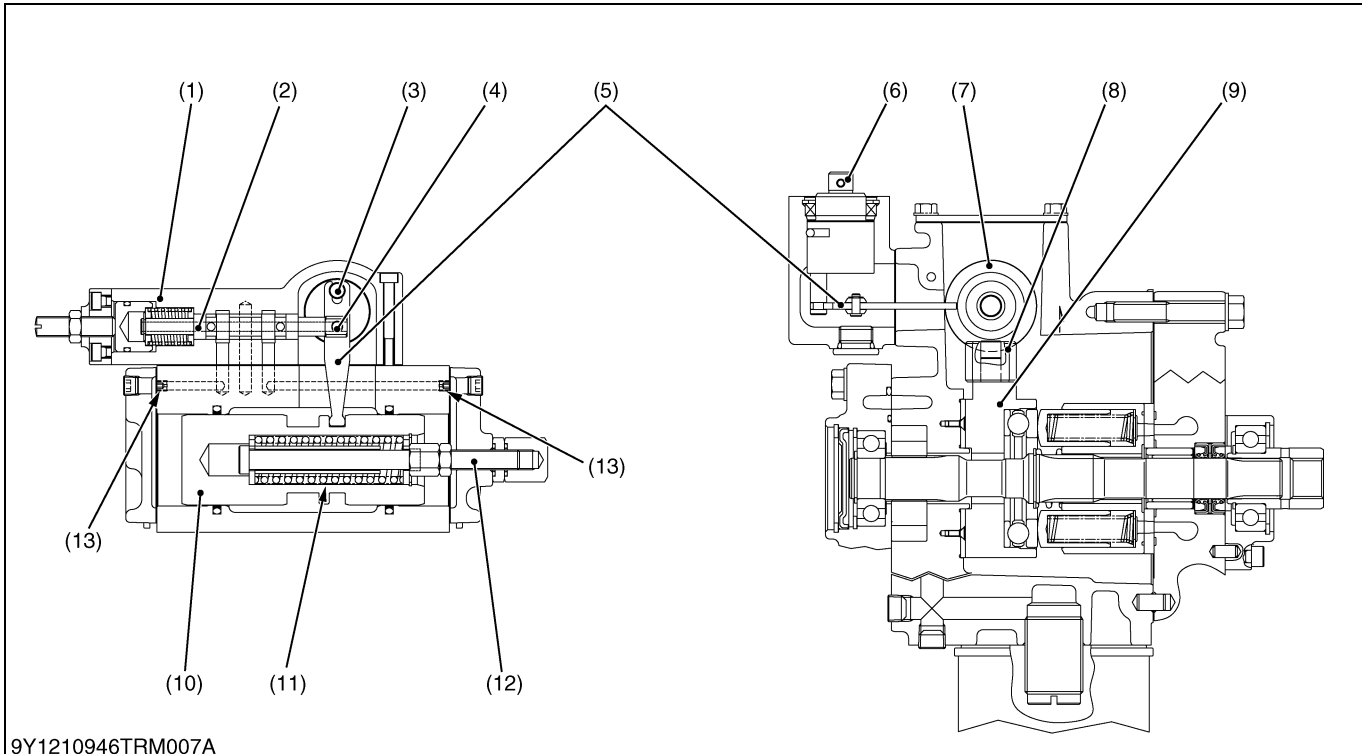
### Specifications

(6)	24.5 to 27.5 MPa (250 to 280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3560 to 3980 psi)	(15)	0.43 to 0.85 MPa (4.4 to 8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 63 to 120 psi) at 1400min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
(14)	15.0 to 17.0 MPa (153 to 173 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 2180 to 2460 psi)		

9Y1210996TRM0005US0

### (3) Function of Components

#### [A] Servomechanism



9Y1210946TRM007A

- |   |                              |                                     |                             |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Regulator Valve Assembly              | (4) Pin B (Fixed with Spool) | (7) Servo Piston                    | (10) Servo Piston           |
| (2) Regulator Spool                       | (5) Feedback Lever           | (8) Guide (for Variable Swashplate) | (11) Servo Spring           |
| (3) Pin A<br>(Fixed with Regulator Shaft) | (6) Regulator Shaft          | (9) Variable Swashplate (Pump)      | (12) Piston Adjusting Screw |
|   |                              |                                     | (13) Orifice                |

The servomechanism consists of the following. The regulator valve assembly (1) is connected to the pedal through cable and linkages, and controls the flow of oil to the servo piston (10) by the pedal operation.

The servo piston moved by hydraulic force, is connected to the pump cylinder variable swashplate (9). Therefore, a tilt angle of swashplate is varied by servo piston movement.

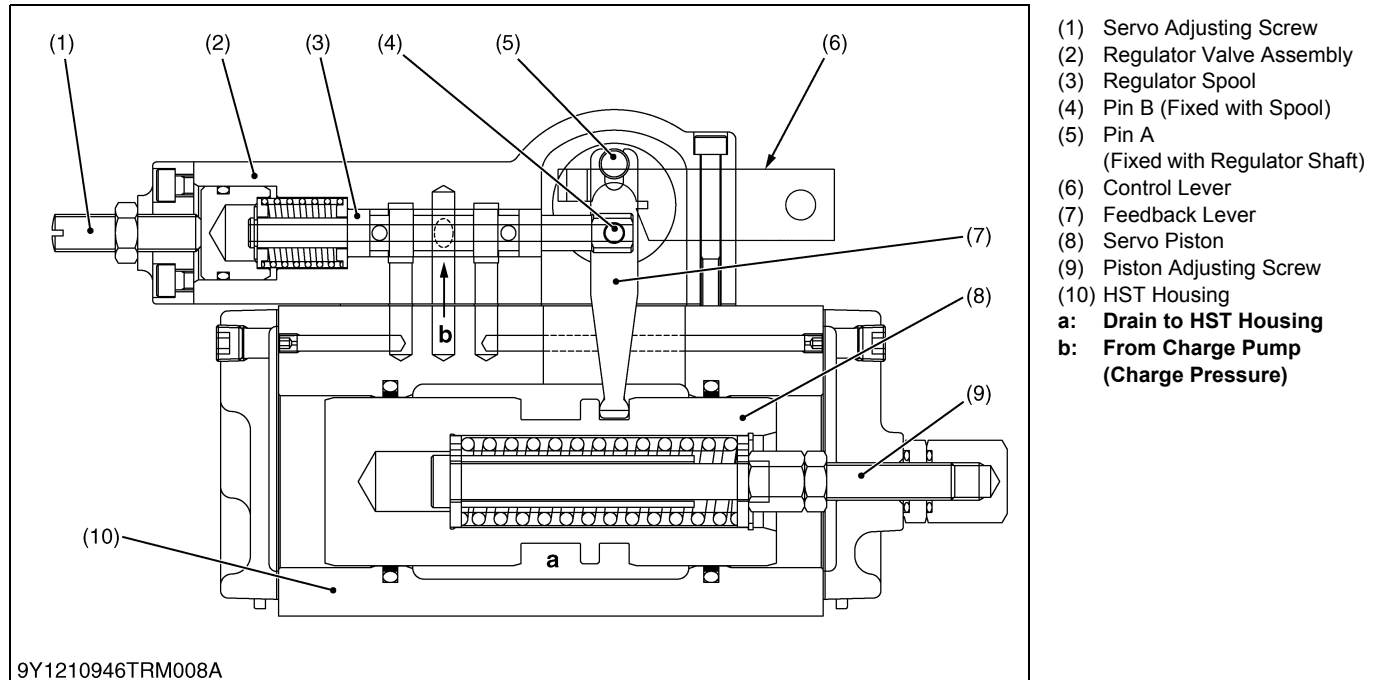
The regulator and the servo piston are connected with feedback lever (5), and the movement of the piston is restricted according to the amount of depressing of the pedal.

9Y1210996TRM0006US0



## [B] Regulator and Servo Piston Operation

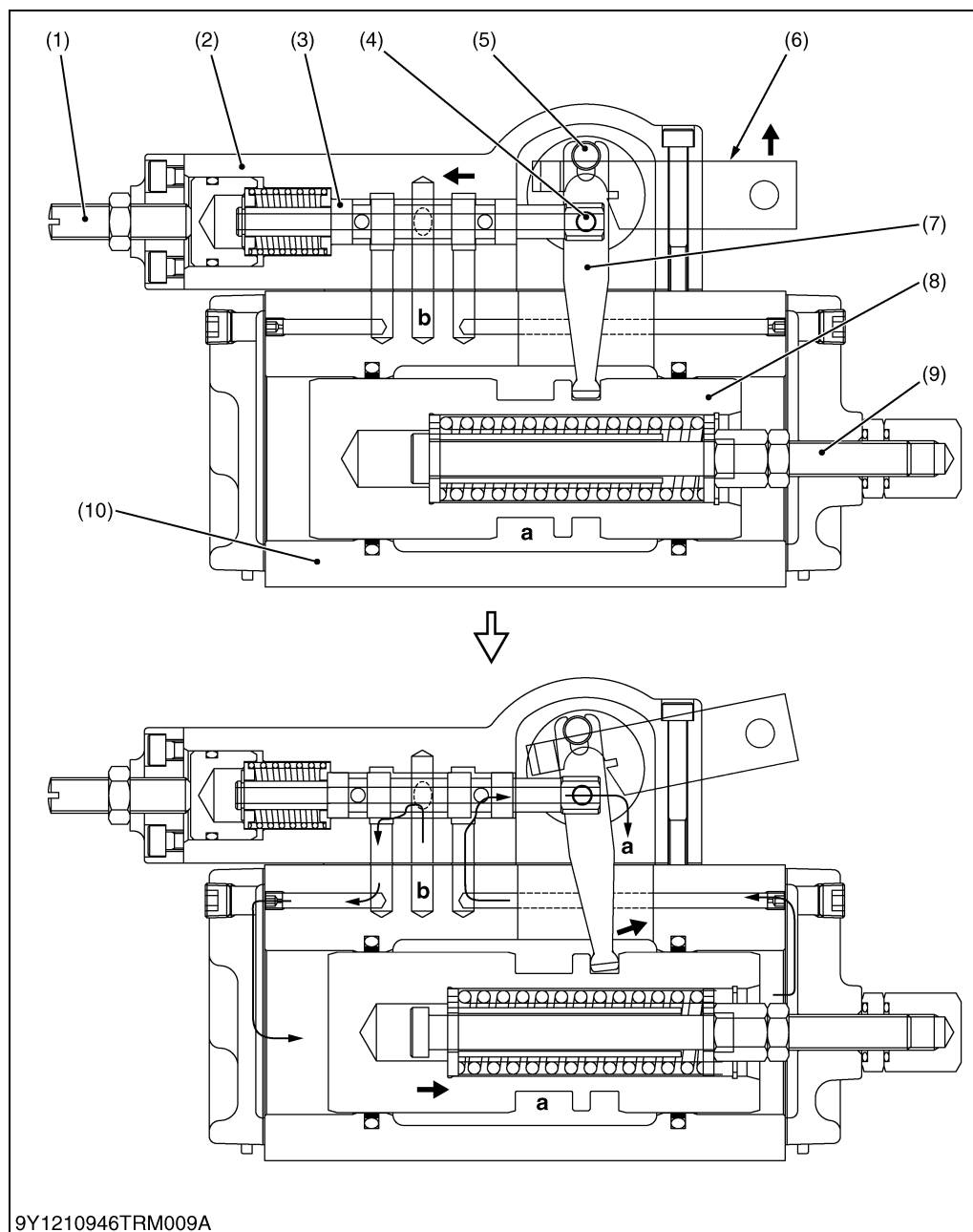
### Control Lever at Neutral



The regulator spool (3) is preset to the neutral position by the servo adjust screw (1). In this state, both ends of the servo piston (8) are opened to the drain port.

With the feedback lever (7) in between the spool senses the servo piston position. When the spool is at the neutral position, the piston adjusting screw (9) serves to position the servo piston so that the pump's variable swashplate gets neutral.

9Y1210996TRM0007US0

**Control Lever Activated (First Step: Moving the Control Lever)**

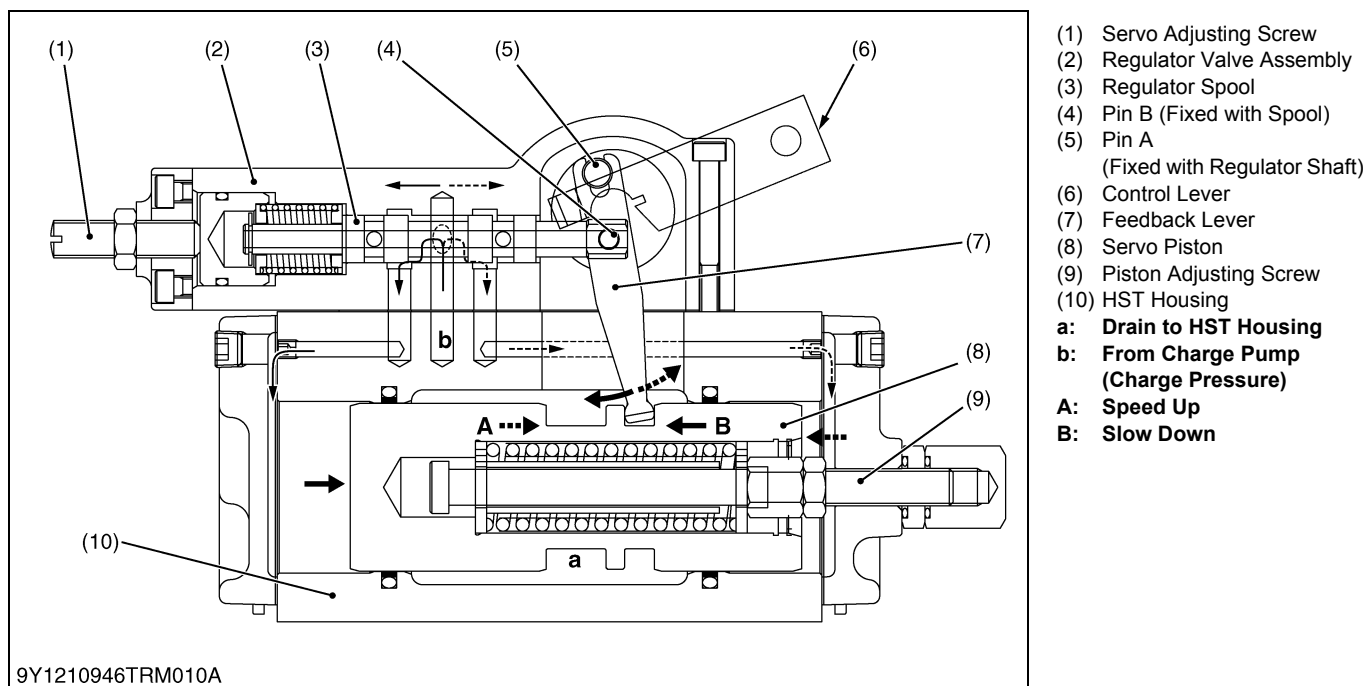
- (1) Servo Adjusting Screw
- (2) Regulator Valve Assembly
- (3) Regulator Spool
- (4) Pin B (Fixed with Spool)
- (5) Pin A  
(Fixed with Regulator Shaft)
- (6) Control Lever
- (7) Feedback Lever
- (8) Servo Piston
- (9) Piston Adjusting Screw
- (10) HST Housing
- a: Drain to HST Housing**
- b: From Charge Pump (Charge Pressure)**

9Y1210946TRM009A

When moving the control lever (step on the pedal), and the feedback lever (7) connected with the regulator spool (3) goes against the servo piston (8). Such resistance pulls the regulator spool from the feedback lever. As a result, the hydraulic circuit is formed as shown here.

The servo piston is affected by the charge pressure and starts moving in the direction of arrow.

9Y1210996TRM008US0

**Control Lever Activated (with Control Lever at Desired Position)**

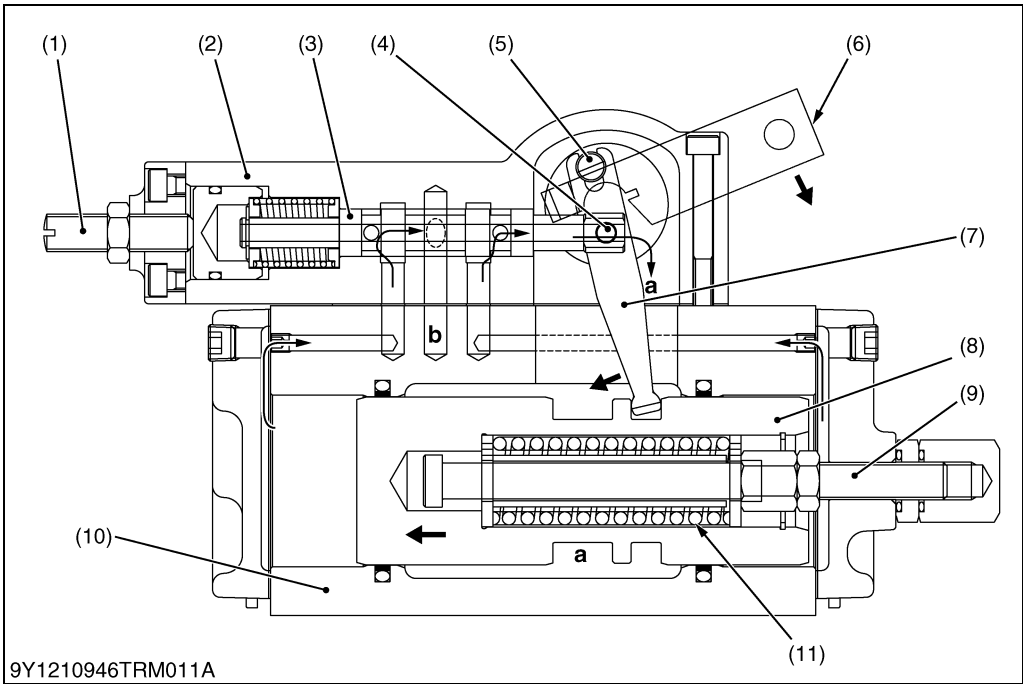
When the control lever has been set to a desired position, the regulator's feedback lever (7) and the servo piston (8) get balanced with each other. Now the regulator spool (3) goes to the neutral position. The pump's variable swashplate interlocked with the servo piston is kept in place to achieve a desired speed.

The load on the HST pump is not constant, however. A heavier load returns the servo piston toward the slow-down side. In so doing, the feedback lever works on the spool to switch the hydraulic circuit to the speed-up side. Then the servo piston is brought back (speed-up) until it gets well balanced with the feedback lever.

A smaller load, on the other hand, moves the servo piston toward the speed-up side. The feedback lever now works on the regulator spool to switch the hydraulic circuit to the slow-down side. The servo piston's charge pressure is let out at the slow-down side and introduced at the speed-up side. Then the servo piston is brought back (slow-down) until it gets well balanced with the feedback lever. This cycle of motions is repeated to keep the desired position.

9Y1210996TRM0009US0

Control Lever Deactivated



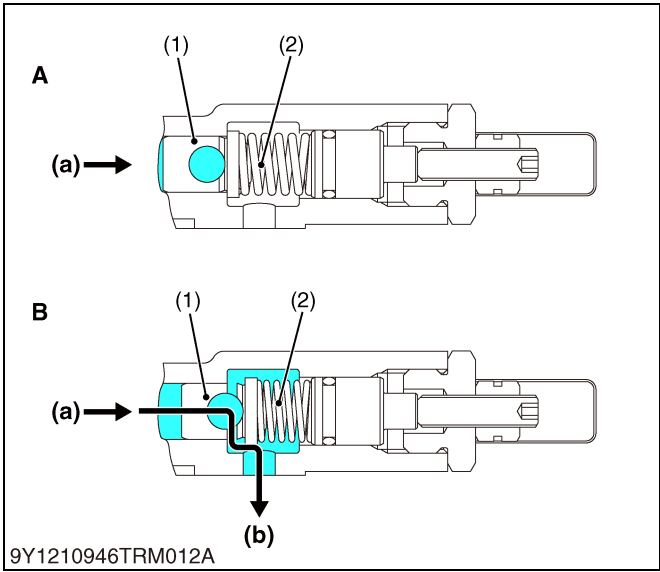
- (1) Servo Adjusting Screw
- (2) Regulator Valve Assembly
- (3) Regulator Spool
- (4) Pin B (Fixed with Spool)
- (5) Pin A (Fixed with Regulator Shaft)
- (6) Control Lever
- (7) Feedback Lever
- (8) Servo Piston
- (9) Piston Adjusting Screw
- (10) HST Housing
- (11) Servo Spring
- a: Drain to HST Housing**
- b: From Charge Pump (Charge Pressure)**

9Y1210946TRM011A

Release the control lever (release the pedal), and the spool comes back to the neutral position. The oil at both ends of the servo piston (8) flows back to the tank. The oil from the charge pump also flows back to the HST housing. With such circuit formed, the servo spring (11) pushes the servo piston back to the neutral position.

9Y1210996TRM0010US0

[C] Charge Relief Valve



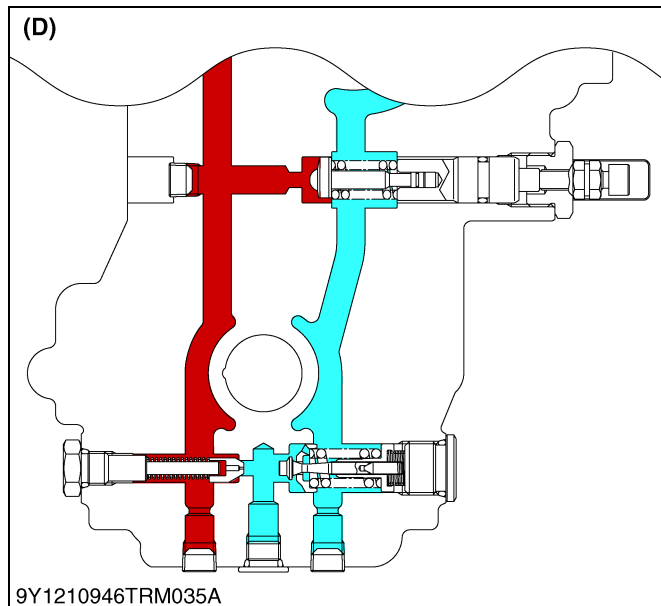
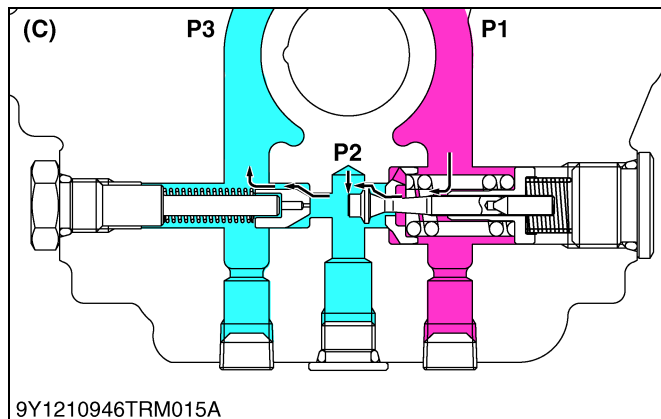
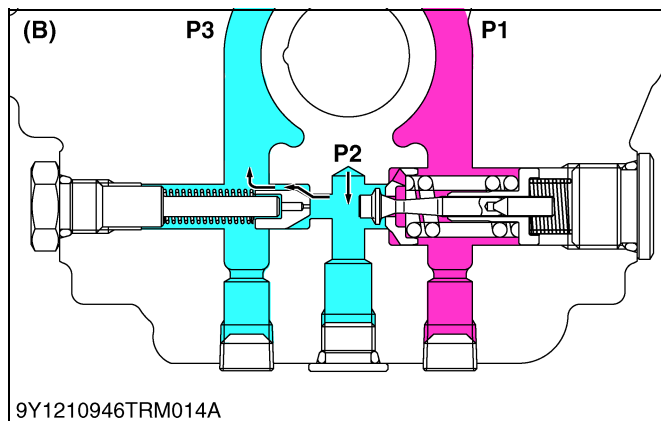
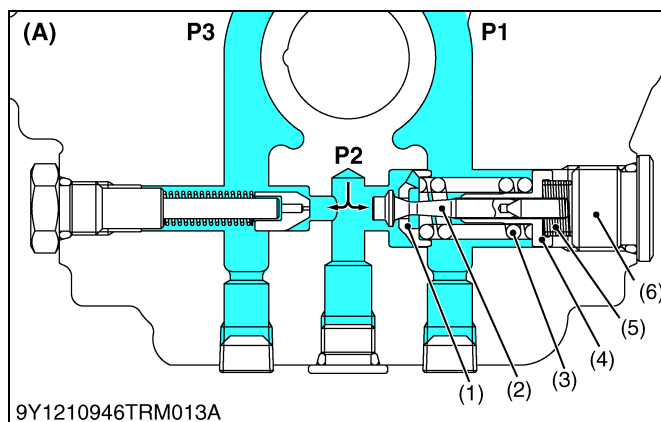
9Y1210946TRM012A

The charge pump feeds oil to the HST main circuit (closed circuit) and the regulator assembly. Oil may leak out of the HST main circuit (in the HST housing) depending on the pressure, oil temperature and other factors. With this in mind, oil must be constantly. Charge relief valve will open when oil pressure exceeds valve operating pressure.

Oil temperature	Valve operating pressure
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)	0.43 to 0.85 MPa 4.4 to 8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 63 to 120 psi at 1400 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)

- (1) Valve Poppet
- (2) Spring
- (a) From Charge Pump**
- (b) To HST Housing**
- A: Close**
- B: Open**

9Y1210996TRM0011US0

**[D] Check and High Pressure Relief Valve**

The cartridge-type check and high-pressure relief valve consists of pressure poppet (2), check valve seat (1), relief valve spring (3), spring guide (4) and check valve spring (5). The spring guide (4) is provided with an anti-rotation, which keeps the threads tight after a pressure has been set.

The valve is used to prevent an overload that would happen at a quick start, sudden stop or even during usual running. This valve doubles as a check valve.

The check and high-pressure relief valves are laid out facing each other as shown in the figure.

When the pressure of both main oil circuit are below the pressure of **P2**, both valves are open and charging oil enters into the main oil circuit through the valves.

At normal operation, the check valve in the high-pressure side is closed and it pushes and opens the another one. An excessive charge flow goes through the charge relief valve into HST housing.

The check and high-pressure relief valve along the high-pressure line serves as a high-pressure relief valve. If the pressure exceeds a high-pressure limit level, the spring (3) force and opens the valve seat that is located between the check valve seat (1) and the pressure poppet (2). Now the flow goes from **P1** to **P2** and **P3**.

If the **P1** pressure drops, the relief valve spring forces the valve seat closed against the pressure. The high-pressure oil at **P1** does not flow to **P2** any longer.

As discussed above, the check and high-pressure relief valve protects engines, pumps, motors, gears and even the machine itself from overload.

- (1) Check Valve Seat
- (2) Pressure Poppet
- (3) Relief Valve Spring
- (4) Spring Guide
- (5) Check Valve Spring
- (6) Valve Plug

- (A) When both Check Valve Activating.
- (B) When Check Valve Activating.
- (C) When High Pressure Relief Valve Activating. (Travelling Side)
- (D) When High Pressure Relief Valve Activating. (Dynamic Brake side)

**(To be continued)**

(Continued)

Condition

- Engine speed:  
Maximum while transmission stalling

Oil temperature	Port	Valve operating pressure
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)	(P1) Traveling side	24.5 to 27.5 MPa 250 to 280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 3560 to 3980 psi
	(P3) Dynamic brake side	20.3 to 22.0 MPa 204 to 224 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 2900 to 3190 psi

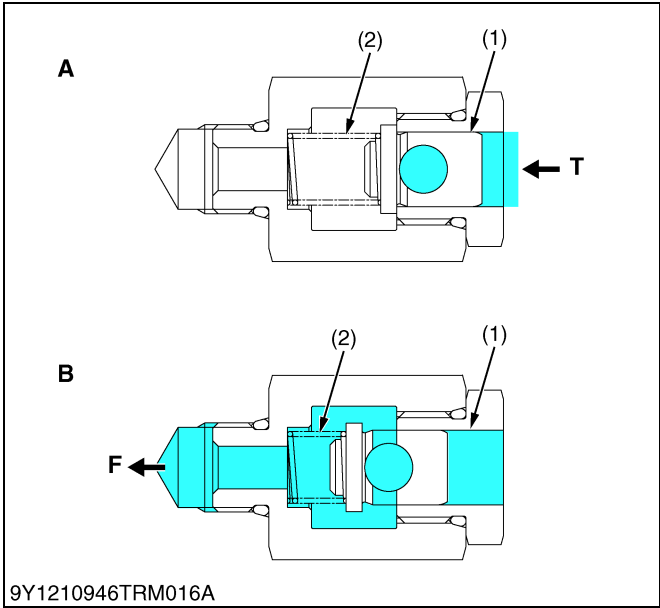
Condition

- Engine speed:  
1400 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)

Oil temperature	Port	Valve operating pressure
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)	(P2) Charge	0.43 to 0.85 MPa 4.4 to 8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 63 to 120 psi

9Y1210996TRM0012US0

[E] Anti-cavitation Valve



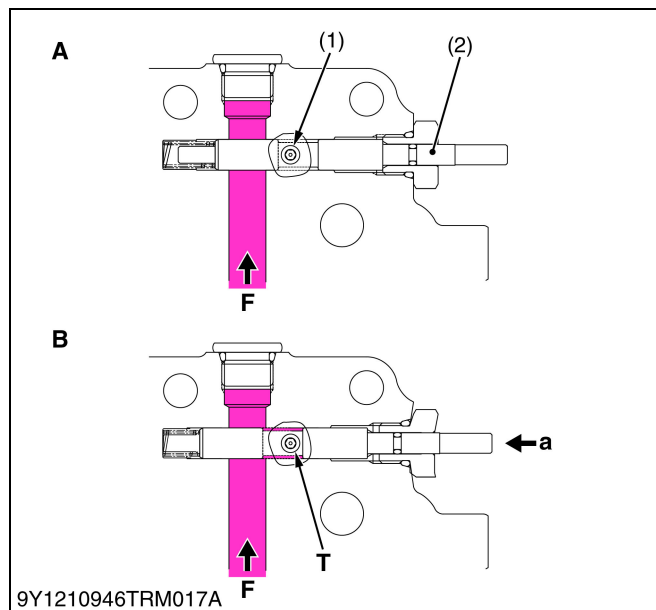
The anti-cavitation valve is normally closed.

When the oil level in the charging circuit becomes low, the anti-cavitation valve opens and the necessary amount of oil is provided to the travel circuit from the HST housing due to the pressure difference between HST housing case and travel circuit.

- (1) Anti-cavitation Valve
- (2) Spring

- A: Anti-cavitation Valve is Closed.
- B: Anti-cavitation Valve is Opened.
- F: To Travel Circuit (Forward Circuit)
- T: From HST Housing Case

9Y1210996TRM0013US0

**[F] Unload Valve**

When starting from a stopped position on a slope (the brake pedal is not depressed), due to residual pressure in the HST circuit, shifting to the neutral position cannot always be fully achieved.

This time, to eliminate this problem, an unload valve is employed in the traveling circuit.

When the brake pedal is depressed, the unload valve opens and the residual pressure in the travel circuit is relieved through the orifice (1).

- (1) Orifice
- (2) Unload Valve

**F: From Travel Circuit  
(Forward Circuit)**

**T: To HST Housing Case**

**a: Brake Pedal is Depressed**

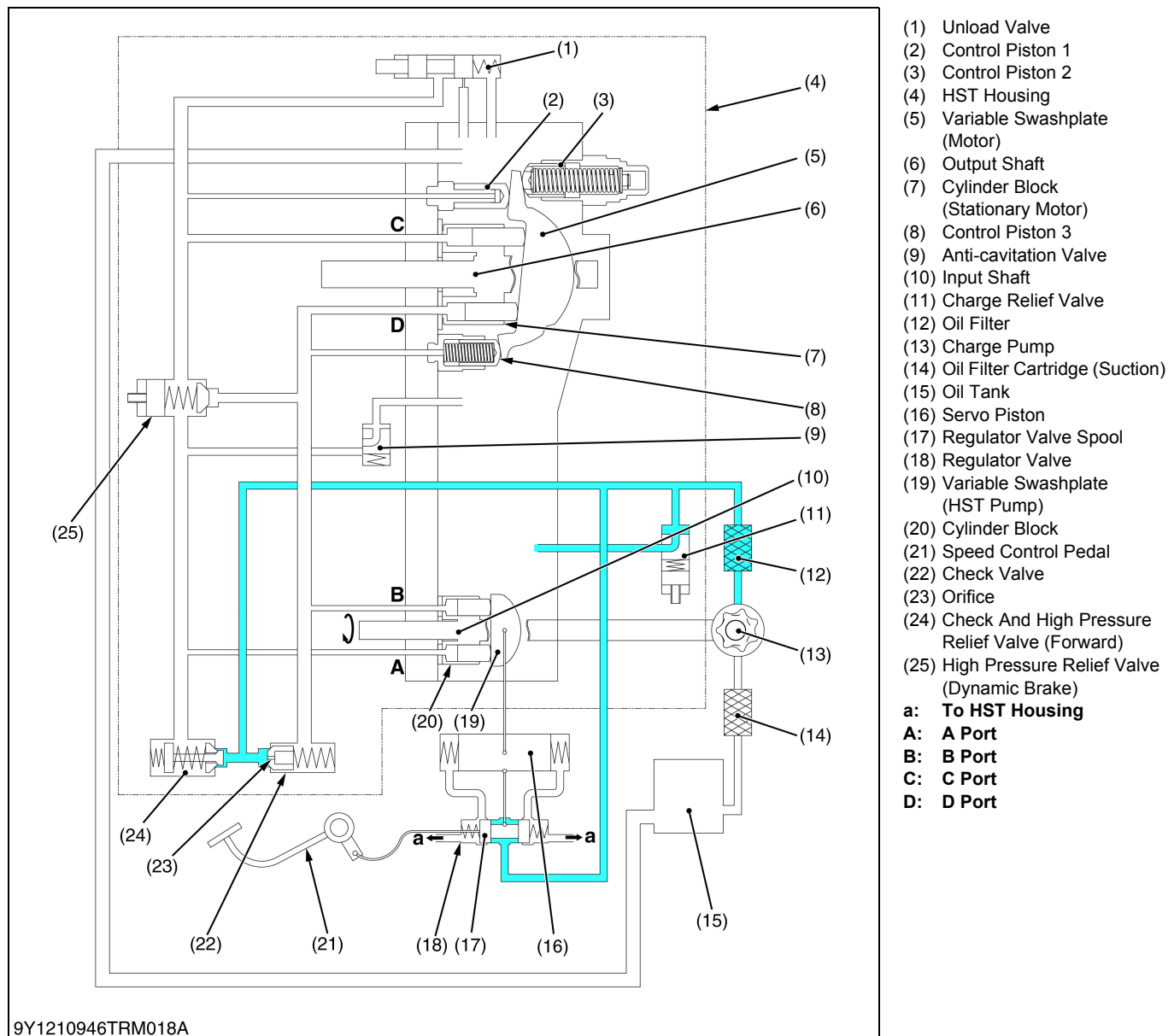
**A: Unload Valve Close**

**B: Unload Valve Open**

9Y1210996TRM0014US0

## (4) HST Oil Flow

### [A] Neutral



The transmission oil is suctioned by a charge pump (13) while the engine is running.

The oil passes through a oil filter cartridge (suction) (14) and oil filter (12) and is then supplied to a HST circuit regulator valve (18).

The oil in the HST circuit is controlled by a charge relief valve (11) and surplus oil is returned from the charge relief valve (11) to the HST housing (4).

When the speed control pedal (21) is released, the regulator Valve Spool (17) for the regulator valve (18) also enters neutral position.

When the regulator valve (18) is in neutral position, oil is not supplied to the servo piston (16) so the servo piston also keeps neutral position.

The servo piston (16) and variable swashplate (19) are connected.

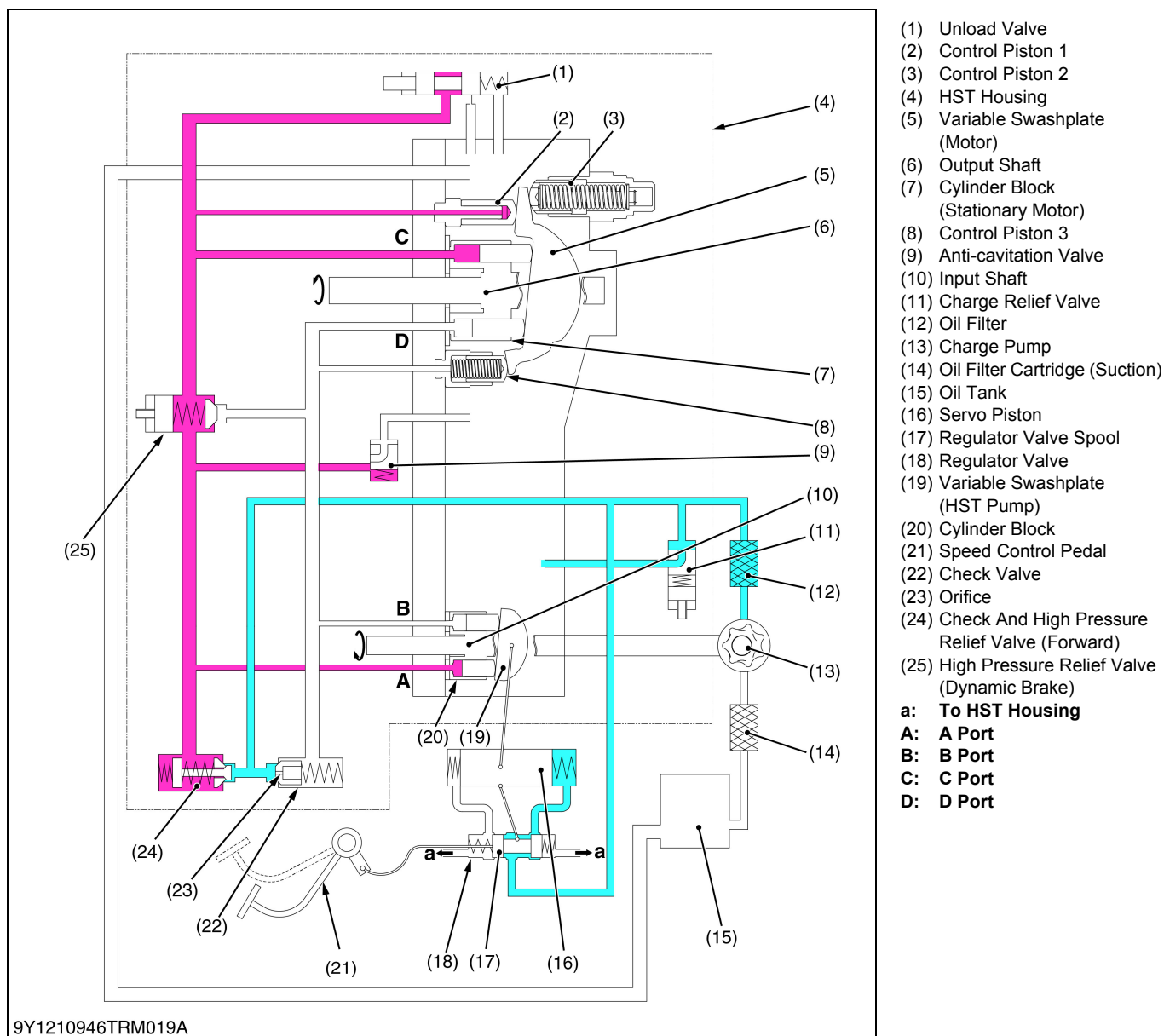
When the variable swashplate (19) is in neutral position, the oil from the pump piston is not supplied to the motor piston.

The cylinder block (7) and output shaft (6) are connected using a spline.

Therefore, as the cylinder block (motor side) does not rotate, the output shaft (6) also does not rotate and power from the engine is not transferred.

9Y1210996TRM0015US0



**[B] Half Stroke Movement of Pedal and Light Load Condition**

When a half stroke of pushing on the speed control pedal (21) is performed, the regulator valve spool (17) moves as shown in the diagram.

Oil from the charge circuit moves the servo piston (16) causing inclination of the variable swashplate (19).

Inclination of the variable swashplate (19) causes the pump piston to move back and forth.

This moving back and forth enables providing high pressure oil from port **A** of the pump.

High pressure oil from pump port **A** flows to port **C** on the motor.

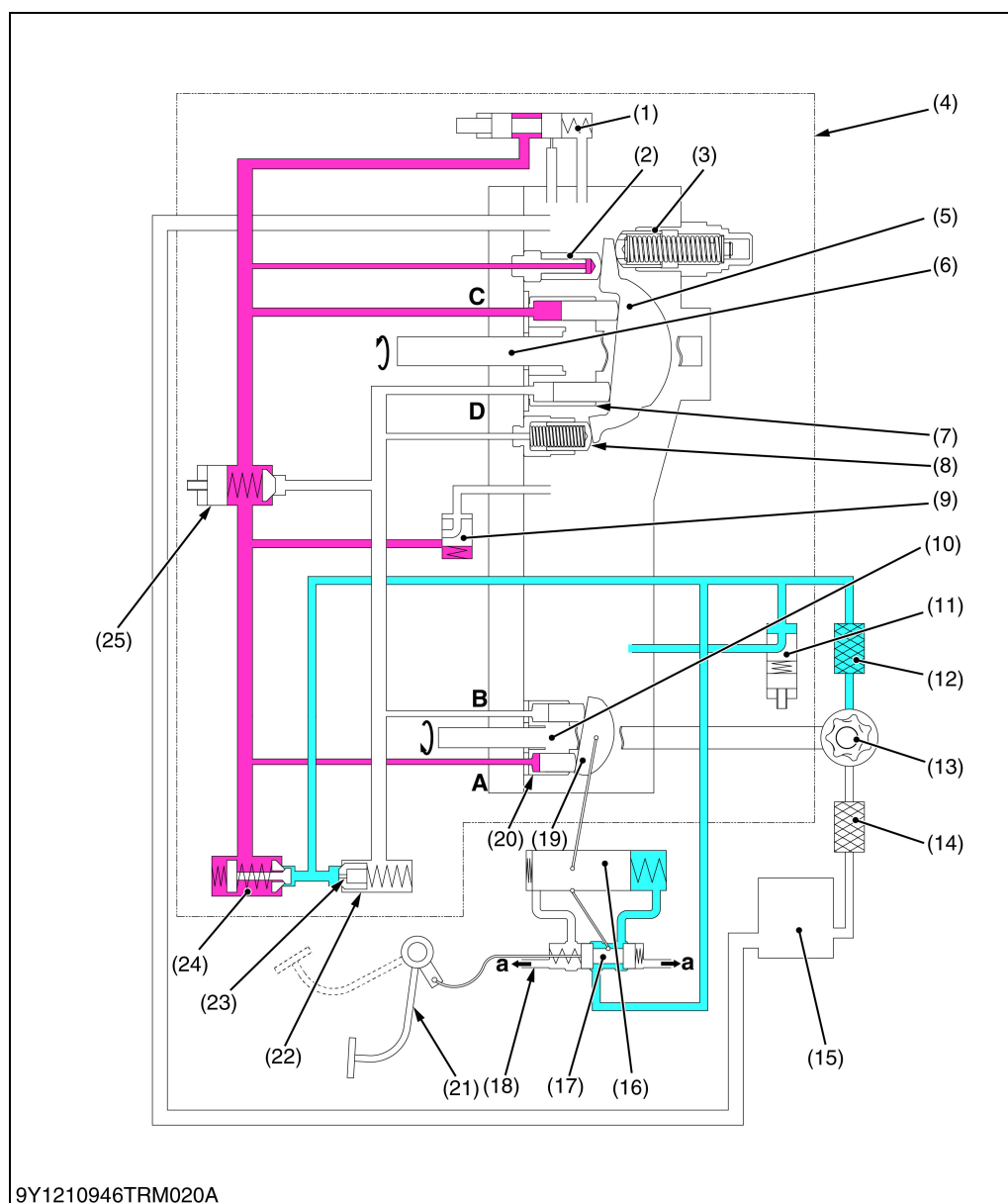
The cylinder block (7) of the motor is driven by the motor piston.

The motor cylinder block (7) is connected to the output shaft (6) so the output shaft (6) starts to rotate.

The output shaft (6) starts to rotate based on rotating speed of the pump.

Low pressure oil from port **D** on the motor returns to port **B** on the pump

9Y1210996TRM0016US0

**[C] Low Load When Speed Control Pedal Is Pressed**

- (1) Unload Valve
  - (2) Control Piston 1
  - (3) Control Piston 2
  - (4) HST Housing
  - (5) Variable Swashplate (Motor)
  - (6) Output Shaft
  - (7) Cylinder Block (Stationary Motor)
  - (8) Control Piston 3
  - (9) Anti-cavitation Valve
  - (10) Input Shaft
  - (11) Charge Relief Valve
  - (12) Oil Filter
  - (13) Charge Pump
  - (14) Oil Filter Cartridge (Suction)
  - (15) Oil Tank
  - (16) Servo Piston
  - (17) Regulator Valve Spool
  - (18) Regulator Valve
  - (19) Variable Swashplate (HST Pump)
  - (20) Cylinder Block
  - (21) Speed Control Pedal
  - (22) Check Valve
  - (23) Orifice
  - (24) Check And High Pressure Relief Valve (Forward)
  - (25) High Pressure Relief Valve (Dynamic Brake)
- a: To HST Housing**  
**A: A Port**  
**B: B Port**  
**C: C Port**  
**D: D Port**

9Y1210946TRM020A

The diagram shows the motion of the regulator valve spool (17) when the speed control pedal (21) is pressed all the way down.

The servo piston (16) tilts the variable swashplate (19) on the pump side to the maximum position.

The pump cylinder block (20) is driven by the input shaft and high pressure oil is discharged from port **A**.

High pressure oil that is discharged from port **A** of the pump flows along the circuit to port **C** on the motor side.

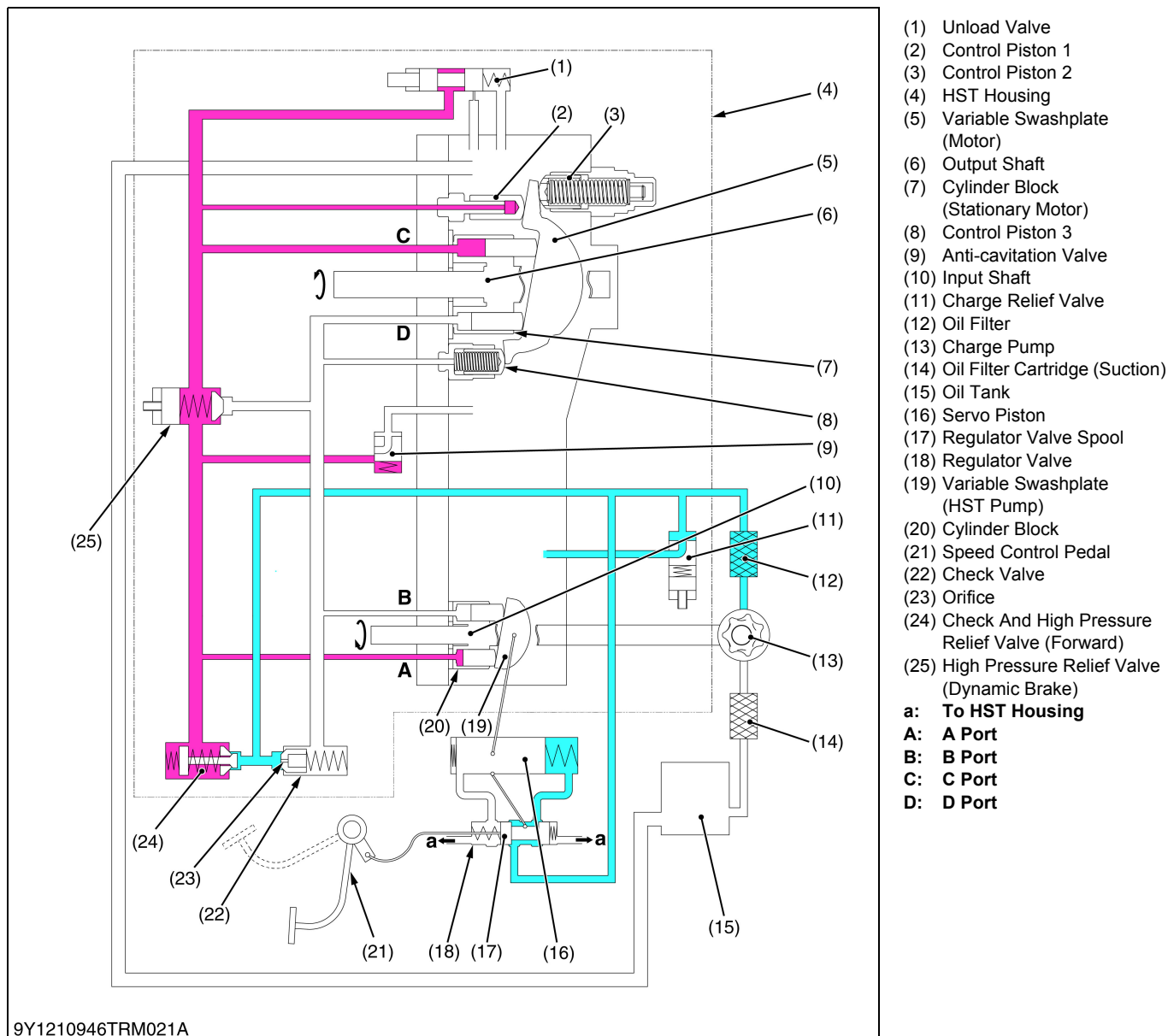
The oil discharged from the pump side does not have sufficient pressure to cause the variable swashplate (5) on the motor side to tilt.

Therefore, the cylinder block (7) on the motor rotates in the position shown on the diagram and transfers power to the output shaft (6).

Thereafter, low pressure oil discharged from the cylinder block (7) on the motor returns from port **C** to port **B**.

9Y1210996TRM0017US0

## [D] Swashplate On The Motor Is Starting To Tilt From Low Load When The Speed Control Pedal Is Pressed



The diagram shows the motion of the regulator valve spool when the speed control pedal (21) is pressed all the way down.

The servo piston tilts the variable swashplate on the pump side to the maximum position.

The pump cylinder block (20) is driven by the input shaft (10) and high pressure oil is discharged from port **A**.

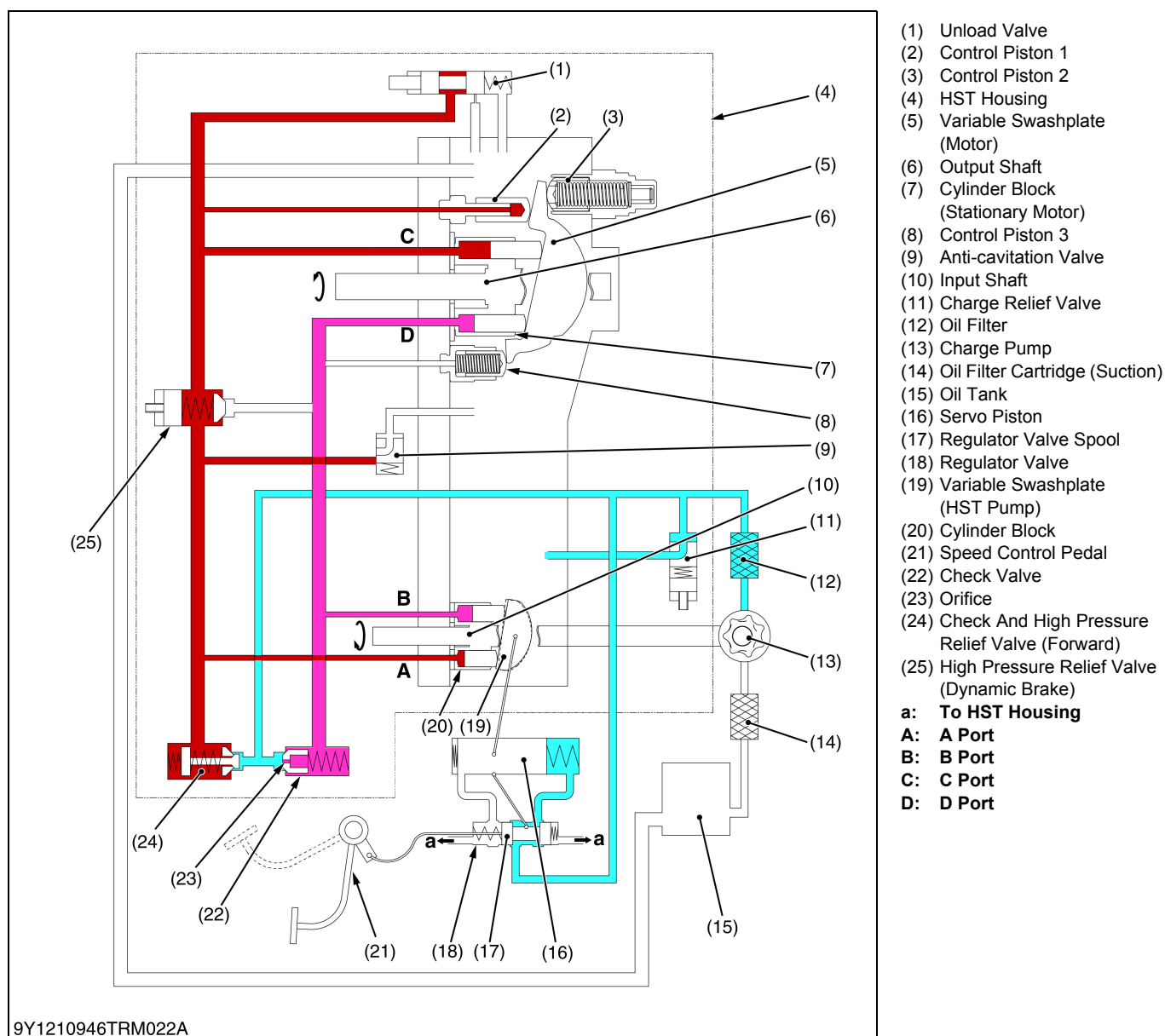
High pressure oil that is discharged from port **A** of the pump flows along the circuit to port **C** on the motor side.

Based on pressure of oil discharged from the pump, the control piston 1 (2) starts to tilt the variable swashplate (5) on the motor.

Rotational speed of the output shaft (6) is lowered due to tilting of the cylinder block (7) on the motor.

Torque is increased through reduction in rotational speed of the output shaft (6).

9Y1210996TRM0018US0

**[E] Horse-power Control When The Speed Control Pedal Is Pressed While Overloaded**

The diagram shows the motion of the regulator valve spool (17) when the speed control pedal (21) is pressed all the way down.

The servo piston (16) tilts the variable swashplate (19) on the pump side to the maximum position.

The pump block is driven by the input shaft (10) and high pressure oil is discharged from port **A**.

High pressure oil that is discharged from port **A** of the pump flows along the circuit to port **C** on the motor side.

Based on pressure of oil discharged from the pump, the control piston 1 (2) tilts the cylinder block variable swashplate (5) on the motor to the maximum position.

Here, the piston volume on the motor is maximized.

When a heavier load is applied, the variable swashplate (19) on the pump side moves to neutral.

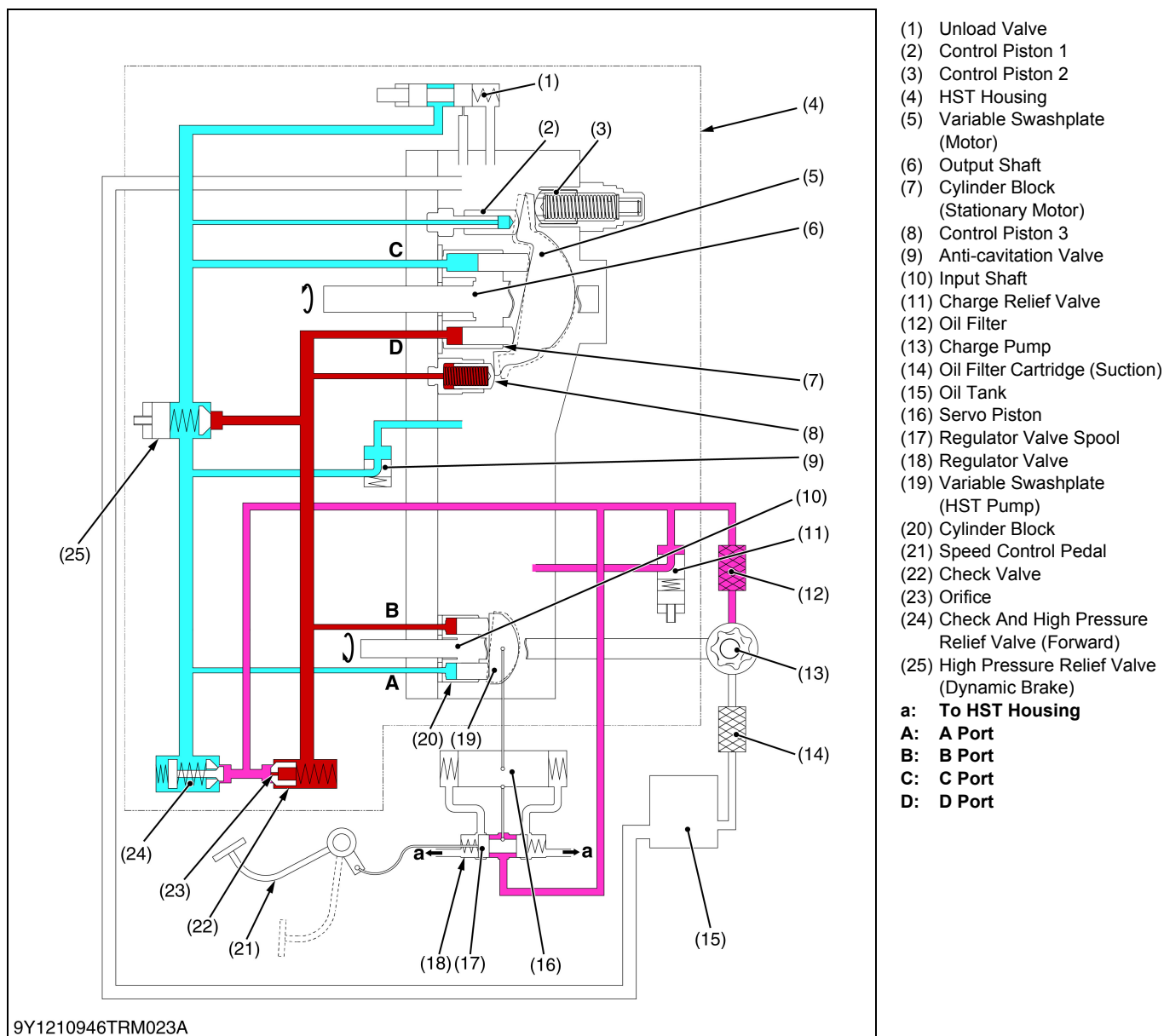
When the swashplate returns to neutral, the load on the engine is lightened.

When the load on the engine is lightened, engine speed rises again.

The discharge flow from the pump is reduced at the same time but engine speed recovers before the set pressure of the high pressure relief valve (24) is reached.

Here, maximum output torque is reached.

9Y1210996TRM0019US0

**[F] When Dynamic Brake Is Engaged**

- (1) Unload Valve
  - (2) Control Piston 1
  - (3) Control Piston 2
  - (4) HST Housing
  - (5) Variable Swashplate (Motor)
  - (6) Output Shaft
  - (7) Cylinder Block (Stationary Motor)
  - (8) Control Piston 3
  - (9) Anti-cavitation Valve
  - (10) Input Shaft
  - (11) Charge Relief Valve
  - (12) Oil Filter
  - (13) Charge Pump
  - (14) Oil Filter Cartridge (Suction)
  - (15) Oil Tank
  - (16) Servo Piston
  - (17) Regulator Valve Spool
  - (18) Regulator Valve
  - (19) Variable Swashplate (HST Pump)
  - (20) Cylinder Block
  - (21) Speed Control Pedal
  - (22) Check Valve
  - (23) Orifice
  - (24) Check And High Pressure Relief Valve (Forward)
  - (25) High Pressure Relief Valve (Dynamic Brake)
- a: To HST Housing**  
**A: A Port**  
**B: B Port**  
**C: C Port**  
**D: D Port**

When the speed control pedal (21) is released, the regulator valve (18) and service port enter neutral position. The variable swashplate (19) of the pump also returns to neutral position.

If the machine continues to travel due to inertia, the variable swashplate (19) on the pump is in neutral so oil does not flow.

The output shaft (6) rotates so it continues to rotate in the same direction as when the speed control pedal (21) was released.

Here, similar to the pump side, oil suctioned from port **C** of the motor side is discharged to port **D**. Oil from port **D** flows to port **B** and transfers power to the input shaft (10).

In this manner, engine rotation and rotation of the output shaft (6) operate as a dynamic brake.

Oil from port **D** opens the high pressure relief valve (25), passes through the check valve (24) and returns to port **C**.

Operation of the dynamic brake is determined by the setting of the high pressure relief valve (25).

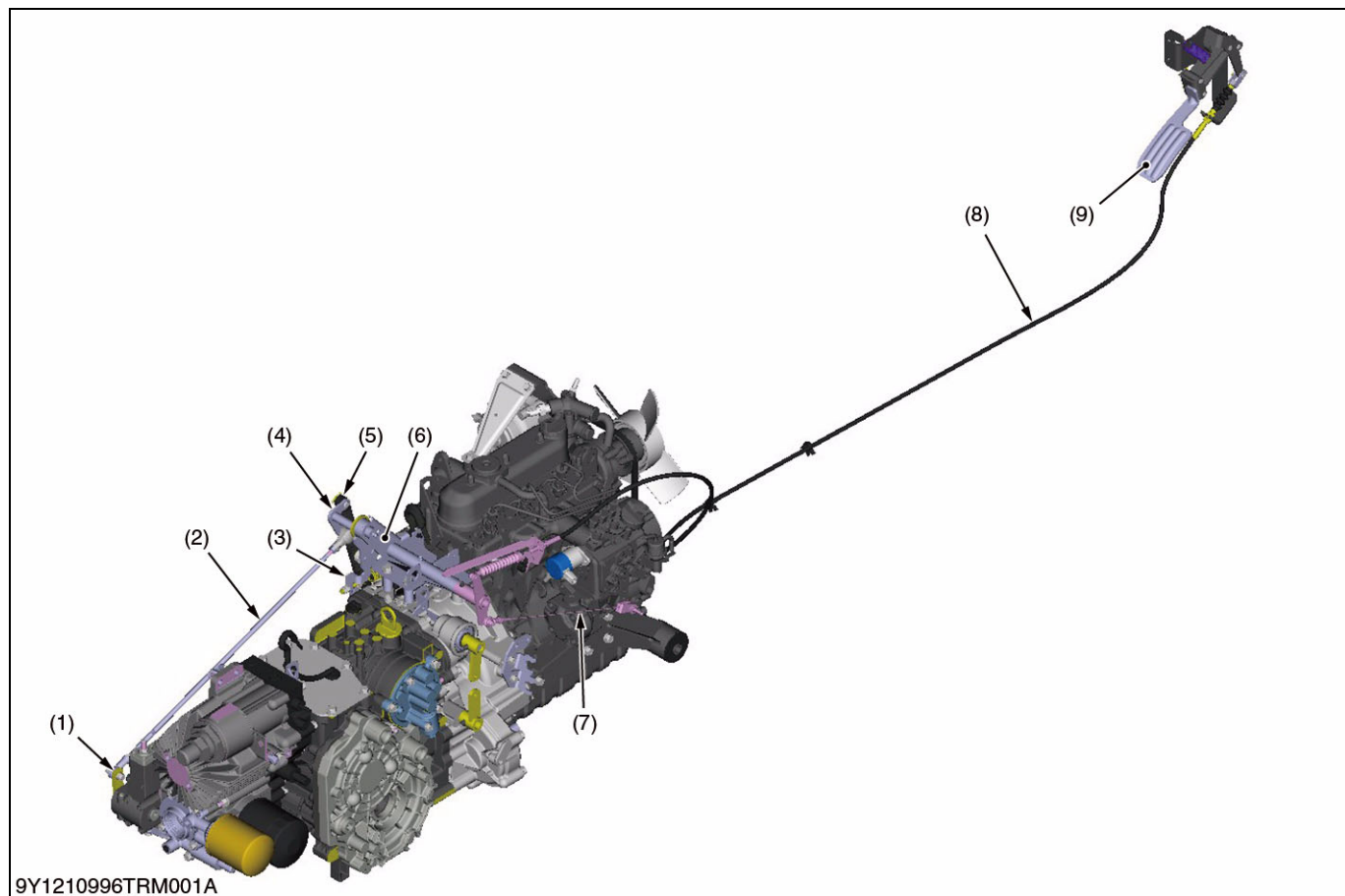
If oil returned from the high pressure relief valve (25) and oil supplied from the charge circuit is insufficient, the anti-cavitation valve (9) is activated through negative pressure.

The anti-cavitation valve (9) plays the role of suctioning oil from the HST housing (4) to the negative pressure travel circuit.

9Y1210996TRM0020US0

## (5) HST Control Linkage

### [A] Speed Control Linkage



9Y1210996TRM001A

- |                       |                 |                               |                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) HST Control Lever | (4) Speed Lever | (6) HST Lever Bracket         | (8) Speed Control Pedal Cable |
| (2) HST Control Rod   | (5) Damper      | (7) Engine Speed Control Wire | (9) Speed Control Pedal       |
| (3) Neutral Lever     |                 |                               |                               |

The speed control pedal (9) and HST lever bracket (6) are connected with speed control pedal cable (8). And the HST control lever (1) and HST lever bracket (6) are linked with HST control rod (2).

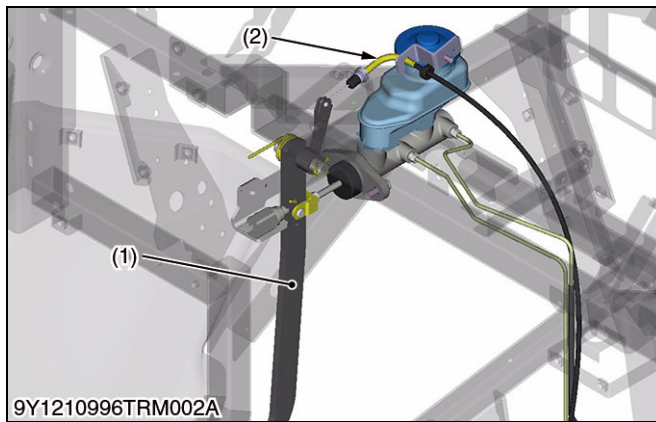
The speed control wire (7) connected with HST lever bracket (6) is able to be pulled by synchronizing with the speed control pedal cable (8).

As the speed control pedal (9) is depressed, the HST control lever (1) is rotated, then the swashplate is tilted by servomechanism and forward travelling speed increases. Then the swashplate is returned to neutral with the HST lever bracket (6), when the speed control pedal (9) is released. The ball bearing on the speed lever (4) pulled with the neutral lever (3) seats the detent of the HST lever bracket (6) so that the neutral holder arm returns to neutral.

The damper (5) is connected the HST lever bracket (6), restricts the movement of the linkage to prevent abrupt operation.

9Y1210996TRM0021US0



**[B] Unload Valve Linkage**

When starting from a stopped position on a slope (the brake pedal (1) is not depressed), due to residual pressure in the HST circuit, shifting to the neutral position cannot always be fully achieved.

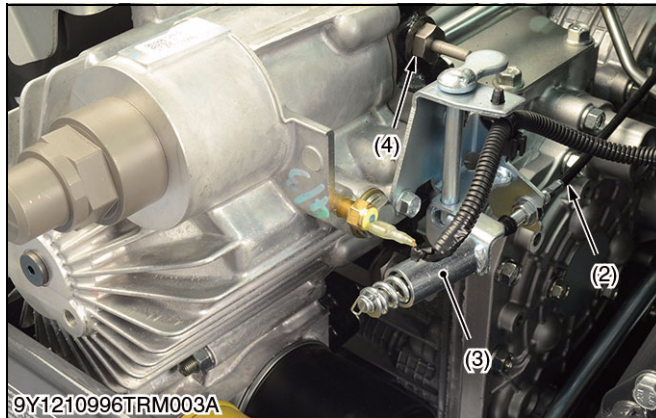
This time, to eliminate this problem, an unload valve is employed in the travel circuit.

When the brake pedal (1) is depressed, the unload valve opens and the residual pressure in the travel circuit is relieved the orifice.

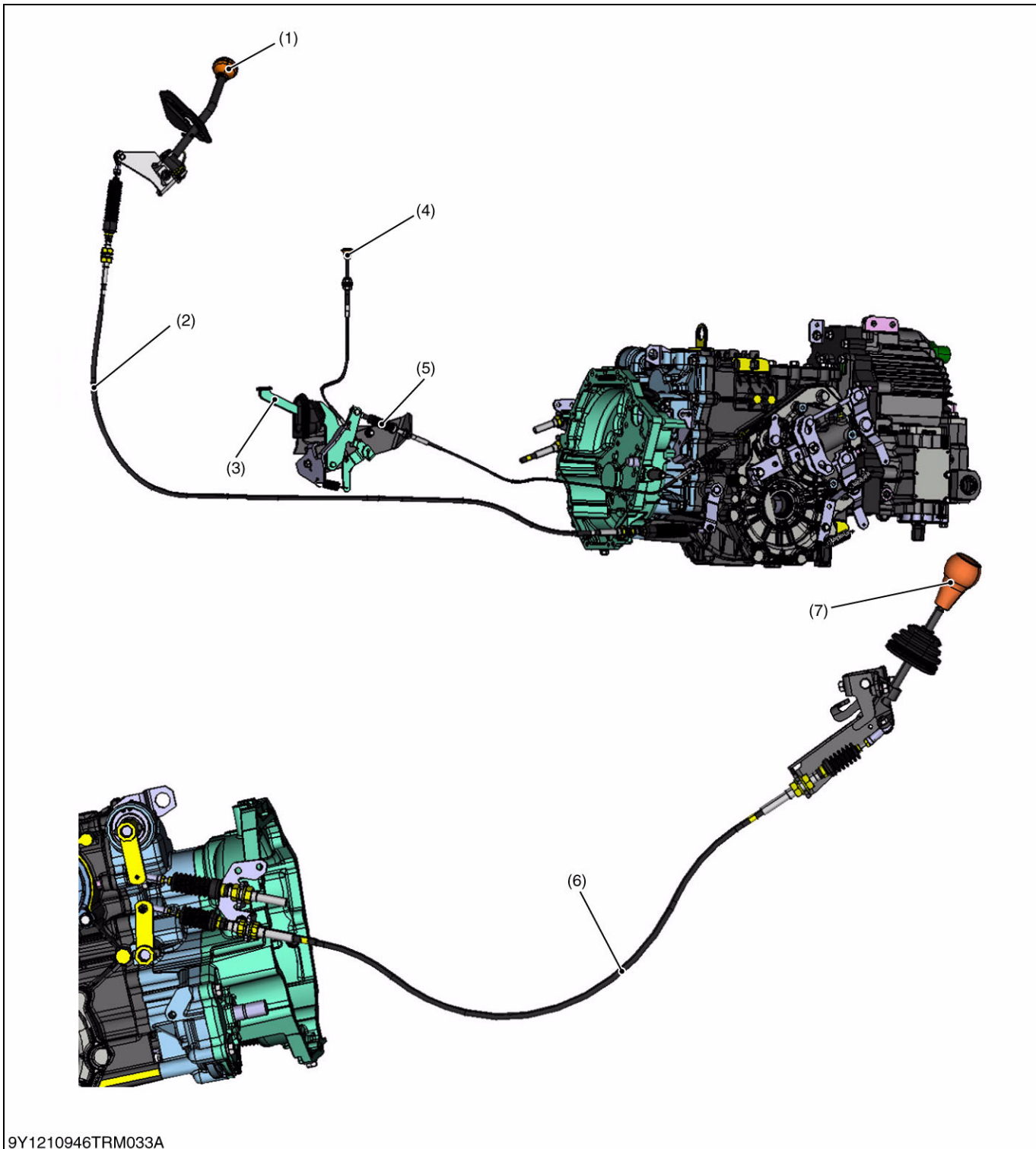
(1) Brake Pedal  
(2) Unload Cable

(3) Unload Link  
(4) Unload Spool

9Y1210996TRM0022US0



## (6) Cables



9Y1210946TRM033A

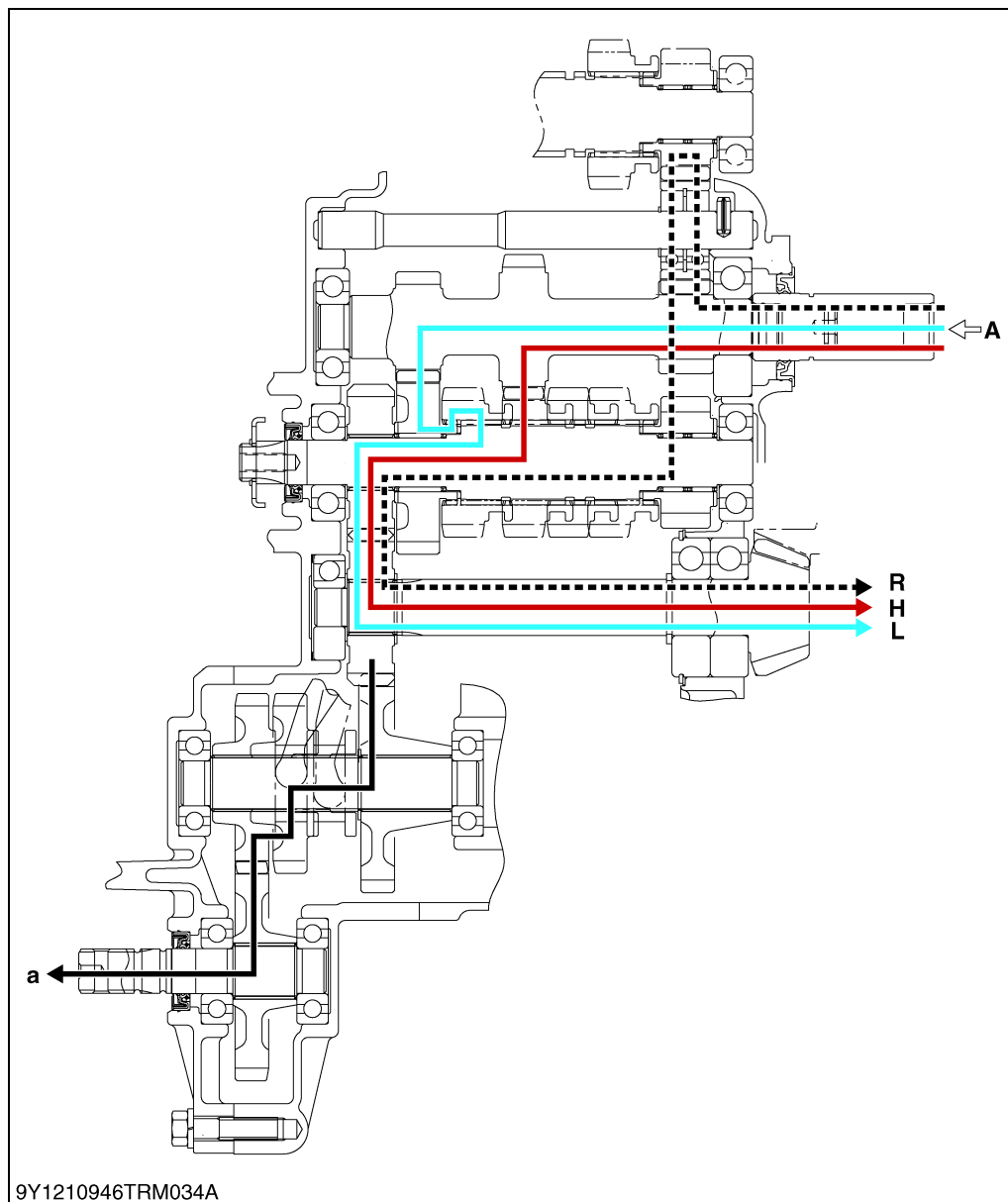
- |                      |                              |                             |               |
|----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| (1) Main Shift Lever | (3) Differential Lock Pedal  | (6) 4WD Shift Cable         | (7) 4WD Lever |
| (2) Shift Cable      | (4) Differential Lock Holder | (5) Differential Lock Cable |               |

Each control cable is the structure of figure.

9Y1210996TRM0023US0



## [2] RANGE GEAR SHIFT SECTION AND FRONT WHEEL DRIVE SECTION



R: Reverse  
 L: Low Speed  
 H: High Speed  
 a: 4 Wheel Drive  
 A: From HST Output Shaft

### ■ Range Gear Shift Section

First, power is transmitted to the HST at the back of the transmission case. The HST power is then removed to the front and transmitted further to the range shift section.

The speed can be changed in 2 steps forward and in single step backward. The shifting is made through the cable linkage of the shift lever at the operator's seat. The speed change system is of constant mesh type.

### ■ Front Wheel Drive Section

This section is located near the range gear shift section. The front wheel drive select lever at the operator's seat is used to switch between the two wheel and four wheel drive. The front wheel drive select lever and the range gear shift lever are cable connected. Sliding gear system is adopted, in which the shifter gears are directly moved.

9Y1210996TRM0024US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	2-S1
[1] HYDROSTATIC TRANSMISSION .....	2-S1
[2] TRAVELLING GEAR SHIFT SECTION.....	2-S2
[3] DIFFERENTIAL GEAR SECTION .....	2-S3
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	2-S4
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES .....	2-S5
4. CHECKING AND ADJUSTING .....	2-S6
5. PREPARATION .....	2-S17
[1] SEPARATING HYDRAULIC TRANSMISSION .....	2-S17
[2] DISMOUNTING TRANSMISSION AND ENGINE .....	2-S21
[3] SEPARATING TRANSMISSION AND ENGINE .....	2-S36
6. DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	2-S38
[1] TRANSMISSION .....	2-S38
(1) Removing HST Assembly.....	2-S38
(2) Disassembling Transmission.....	2-S39
(3) Disassembling HST .....	2-S45
7. SERVICING .....	2-S49
[1] TRANSMISSION .....	2-S49
[2] HST .....	2-S53

# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

## [1] HYDROSTATIC TRANSMISSION

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>System Will Not Operate in Both Direction</b>	1. Oil level is low	Check oil level or fill oil to proper level	G-19
	2. Control linkage or cable damaged (speed control cable)	Repair linkage	2-S33
	3. Charge pressure is too low	Solution order 1. Replace oil filter cartridge	G-26
		2. Check charge pressure	2-S6
		3. Inspect or flush charge relief valve	2-S54
	4. Check and high pressure relief valve does not move smoothly	Inspect or replace check and high pressure relief valve	2-S54
<b>Vibration and Noise</b>	5. HST component parts damaged	Replace hydrostatic transmission assembly	2-S17
	1. Oil level is too low	Check oil level or fill oil to proper level	G-19
	2. Control linkage or cable damaged (speed control cable)	Repair linkage	2-S33
	3. Charge pressure is too low	Solution order 1. Replace oil filter cartridge	G-26
		2. Check charge pressure	2-S6
		3. Inspect or flush charge relief valve	2-S54
<b>Loss of Power</b>	4. Check and high pressure relief valve does not move smoothly	Inspect or replace check and high pressure relief valve	2-S54
	5. HST component part is damaged	Replace hydrostatic transmission assembly	2-S17
	1. Oil level is low	Check oil level or fill oil to proper level	G-19
	2. Control linkage or cable damaged (speed control cable)	Repair linkage	2-S33
	3. Charge pressure is too low	1. Replace oil filter cartridge	G-26
		2. Check charge pressure	2-S6
		3. Inspect or flush charge relief valve	2-S54
	4. Check and high pressure relief valve does not move smoothly	Inspect or replace check and high pressure relief valve	2-S54
	5. Component parts damaged	Replace hydrostatic transmission assembly	2-S17
	6. Unload cable problem	1. Adjust the cable	2-S16
		2. Replace	2-S20

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Transmission Oil Over Heats</b>	1. Low transmission oil level	Fill transmission oil level up to proper level	G-19
	2. Radiator and oil cooler net clogged	Clean radiator net	G-20, G-21
	3. Excessive machine load	Reduce machine load	—
	4. Improper charge pressure	1. Check high relief pressure	2-S7
		2. Replace transmission oil filter cartridge	G-26
		3. Replace check and high pressure relief valve	2-S54
		4. Inspect and replace charge relief valve	2-S54
<b>Machine Will Not Stop in Neutral Position</b>	1. Control linkage is out of adjustment or sticking	Repair or replace linkage	2-S27, 2-S28
		Adjust neutral position	2-S9
<b>System Operates in One Direction Only</b>	1. Control linkage damaged	Repair or replace linkage	2-S33
	2. Check and high pressure relief valve damaged	Replace check and high pressure relief valve	2-S54

9Y1210996TRS0001US0

## [2] TRAVELLING GEAR SHIFT SECTION

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Noise from Transmission</b>	1. Transmission oil insufficient	Refill	2-S18
	2. Gear worn or broken	Replace	2-S40
	3. Bearings worn	Replace	2-S50
<b>Gear Slip Out of Mesh</b>	1. Shift fork spring tension insufficient	Replace	2-S40
	2. Shift fork or shifter worn	Replace	2-S40
	3. Shift fork bent	Replace	2-S40

9Y1210996TRS0002US0

### [3] DIFFERENTIAL GEAR SECTION

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Excessive or Unusual Noise at All Time</b>	1. Improper backlash between spiral bevel pinion and bevel gear	Adjust	2-S52
	2. Improper backlash between differential pinion and differential side gear	Adjust	2-S51
	3. Bearing worn	Replace	2-S44
	4. Insufficient or improper type of transmission fluid used	Fill or change	2-S18
<b>Noise While Turning</b>	1. Differential pinions or differential side gears worn or damaged	Replace	2-S44
	2. Differential lock binding (does not disengage)	Replace	2-S42
	3. Bearings worn	Replace	2-S44
<b>Differential Lock Can Not Be Set</b>	1. Differential lock shift fork damaged	Replace	2-S42
	2. Differential lock shiftier mounting pin damaged	Replace	2-S42
<b>Differential Lock Pedal Does Not Return</b>	1. Differential lock pedal return spring weaken or damaged	Replace	2-S42
	2. Differential lock fork shaft rusted	Repair	2-S42

9Y1210996TRS0003US0

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Charge Relief Valve	Setting Pressure	0.43 to 0.83 MPa 4.4 to 8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 63 to 120 psi	—
Servo Piston Operation Pressure (When Neutral Adjusted)	Difference Pressure	−0.40 to −0.10 MPa −4.0 to −1.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> −58 to −15 psi	—
Differential Pinion to Differential Side Gear	Backlash	0.15 to 0.30 mm 0.0059 to 0.011 in.	—
Differential Case to Differential Side Gear	Clearance	0.050 to 0.151 mm 0.0020 to 0.0059 in.	0.30 mm 0.0118 in.
Differential Case	I.D.	38.000 to 38.062 mm 1.4961 to 1.4985 in.	—
Differential Side Gear	O.D.	37.911 to 37.950 mm 1.4926 to 1.4941 in.	—
Spiral Bevel Gear to Spiral Bevel Pinion Shaft	Backlash	0.20 to 0.30 mm 0.0079 to 0.011 in	—

9Y1210996TRS0004US0

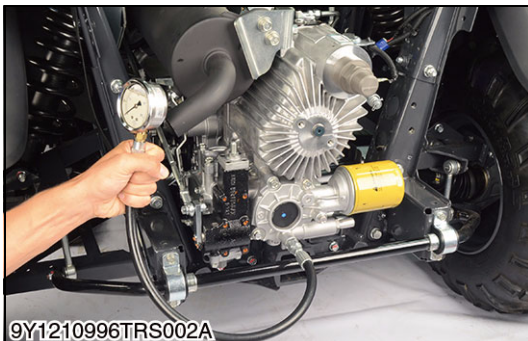
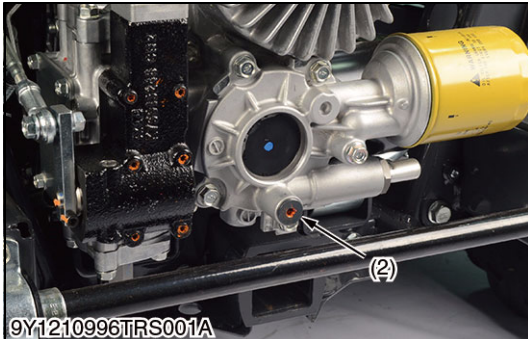
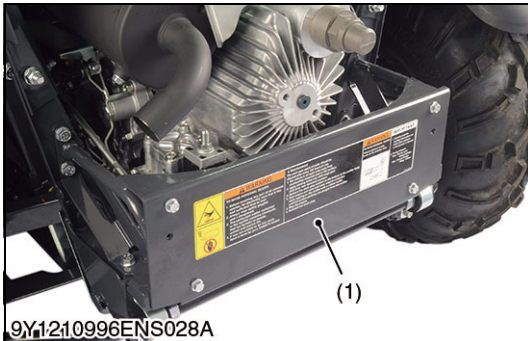
### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2	7.91 to 9.19	57.2 to 66.5
Muffler bracket mounting bolt and nut	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2
HST assembly mounting nut	39 to 44	4.0 to 4.4	29 to 32
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Brake pipe retaining nut	13 to 17	1.4 to 1.7	9.6 to 12
Mission frame flange bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Engine support flange bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Mission frame reamer bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Upper mission support reamer bolt	77.5 to 90.2	7.90 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Engine support bolt	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2
Upper mission support flange bolt	23.5 to 27.5	2.40 to 2.80	17.4 to 20.2
Mission support flange bolt	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2
Piston case	70 to 80	7.2 to 8.1	52 to 59
Port block cover mounting screw	39 to 44	4.0 to 4.4	29 to 32
Charge pump case mounting screw	18 to 21	1.9 to 2.1	14 to 15
Regulator mounting hex. head screw	5.2 to 6.2	0.53 to 0.64	3.9 to 4.6
Servo piston and cover mounting screw	18 to 21	1.9 to 2.1	14 to 15
Hex. socket head screw	2.5 to 3.0	0.26 to 0.30	1.9 to 2.2

9Y1210996TRS0005US0

## 4. CHECKING AND ADJUSTING



### Checking Charge Relief Pressure



#### CAUTION

- If it is necessary to run engine in an enclosed area, use a gas tight exhaust pipe extension to remove the fumes.
- Always try to work in a well-ventilated area.
- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, and apply the parking brake.
- Work by two people when you measure pressure.
- Note that the allen wrench does not come off firmly because the plug is not loose hard. Otherwise, the plug might be damaged, and the plug not be loosened.

#### NOTE

- The hex. socket plug is securely tightened. Therefore, it is very important to use a proper-sized allen wrench and fit it securely onto the plug. Do not give a shock but put your weight on the plug slowly, paying attention not to damage its hex.socket section. If the allen wrench is fitted on the plug at a slant or an improper-sized allen wrench is used to loose the plug, the hex. socket section will be damaged and you won't be able to the plug.

1. Remove the cargo bed.
2. Remove the transmission rear cover.
3. Remove the hex. socket head plug from **P3** port (2).
4. Install the HST adaptor and high pressure gauge to **P3** port (2).
5. Place the range gear shift lever in neutral.
6. Set the 4WD lever to 2WD position.
7. Start the engine.
8. Depress the speed control pedal, and measure the charge pressure. (Engine speed is set by using the tachometer.)
9. If the measurement is not within the factory specification, check the charge relief valve. (See page 2-S54.)

#### (When reassembling)

- Be careful not to damaged O-ring on plug.

Charge pressure	Factory specification	0.43 to 0.83 MPa 4.4 to 8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 63 to 120 psi
-----------------	-----------------------	---

#### NOTE

- Low pressure gauge is 2.94 MPa (30.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 427 psi) full scale.

#### Condition

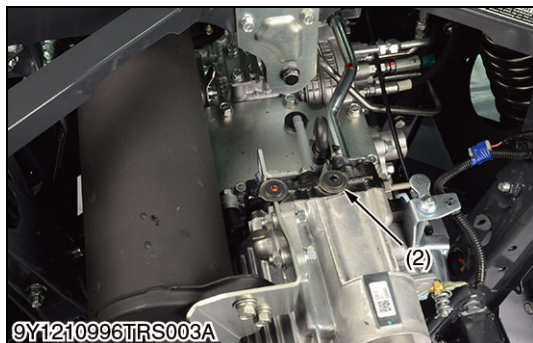
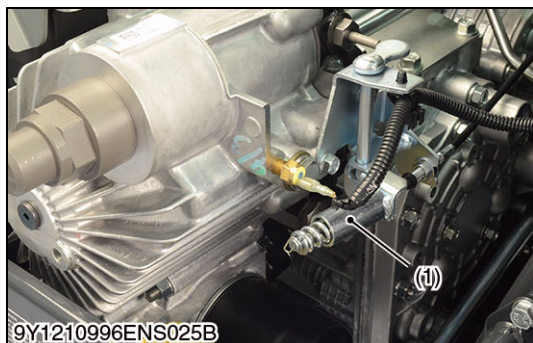
- Engine speed:  
1400 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

(1) Transmission Rear Cover

(2) **P3** Port (Charge) G1/4

9Y1210996TRS0006US0





### Checking High Pressure Relief Valve Pressure (Traveling Side)

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- If it is necessary to run engine in an enclosed area, use a gas tight exhaust pipe extension to remove the fumes.
- Always try to work in a well-ventilated area.
- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, and apply the parking brake.
- Work by two people when you measure pressure.
- Note that the allen wrench does not come off firmly because the plug is not loose hard. Otherwise, the plug might be damaged, and the plug not be loosened.

#### ■ NOTE

- The hex. socket plug is securely tightened. Therefore, it is very important to use a proper-sized allen wrench and fit it securely onto the plug. Do not give a shock but put your weight on the plug slowly, paying attention not to damage its hex. socket section. If the allen wrench is fitted on the plug at a slant or an improper-sized allen wrench is used to loose the plug, the hex. socket section will be damaged and you won't be able to loose the plug.

1. Remove the cargo bed.
2. Remove the hex. socket head plug from **P1** port (2). (**P1** is for traveling side.)
3. Install the HST adaptor and high pressure gauge to **P1** port (2).
4. Check to see that parking brake is applied.
5. Remove the unload linkage (1).
6. Set the 4WD lever to 2WD position.
7. Start the engine.
8. Place the range gear shift lever in **H** position.
9. Depress the speed control pedal, and measure the check and high pressure relief valve pressure. (Engine speed is set by using the tachometer.)
10. If the measurement is not within the operating pressure, replace the check and high pressure relief valve assembly with new one. (See page 2-S54.)

High pressure relief valve	Operating pressure	24.5 to 27.5 MPa 250 to 280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 3560 to 3980 psi
----------------------------	--------------------	--

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Measure quickly so that the relief valve may not be in operation more than 10 seconds.

#### ■ NOTE

- High pressure gauge is 29.4 MPa (300 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4267 psi) full scale.

#### (When reassembling)

- Be careful not to damage O-ring on the plug.

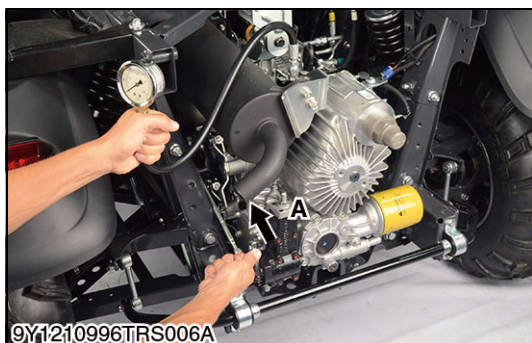
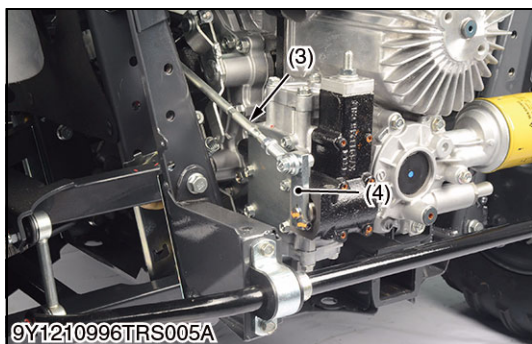
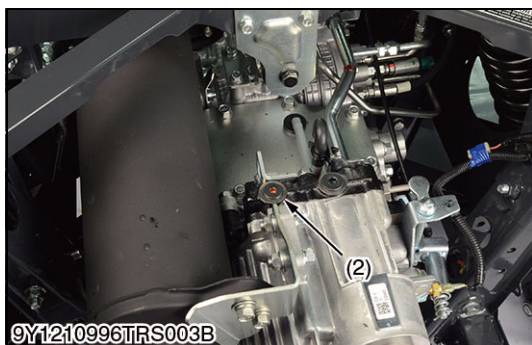
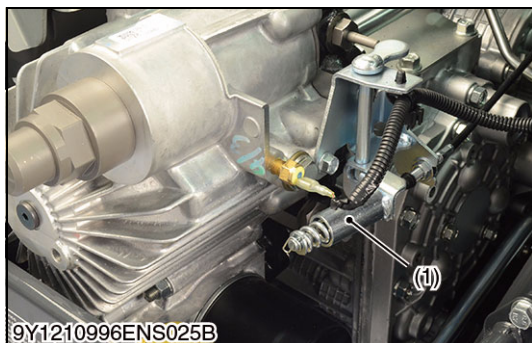
#### Condition

- Engine speed:  
Maximum while transmission stalling
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

(1) Unload Linkage

(2) **P1** Port (for Traveling side) G3/8

9Y1210996TRS0007US0



### Checking High Pressure Relief Valve Pressure (Dynamic Brake)

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- If it is necessary to run engine in an enclosed area, use a gas tight exhaust pipe extension to remove the fumes.
- Always try to work in a well-ventilated area.
- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, and apply the parking brake.
- Work by two people when you measure pressure.
- Note that the allen wrench does not come off firmly because the plug is not loose hard. Otherwise, the plug might be damaged, and the plug not be loosened.

#### ■ NOTE

- The hex. socket plug is securely tightened. Therefore, it is very important to use a proper-sized allen wrench and fit it securely onto the plug. Do not give a shock but put your weight on the plug slowly, paying attention not to damage its hex. socket section. If the allen wrench is fitted on the plug at a slant or an improper-sized allen wrench is used to loose the plug, the hex. socket section will be damaged and you won't be able to loose the plug.

1. Remove the cargo bed.
2. Remove the hex. socket head plug from **P2** port (2). (**P2** is for dynamic brake.)
3. Install the HST adaptor and high pressure gauge to **P2** port (2).
4. Check to see that parking brake is applied.
5. Remove the neutral rod (HST control rod) (3) from the HST control lever (4).
6. Remove the unload linkage (1).
7. Set the 4WD lever to 2WD position.
8. Start the engine.
9. Shift the range gear shift lever in **R** position.
10. Depress the speed control pedal when measure pressure. (Engine speed is set by using the tachometer.)
11. Slowly push reverse "**A**" the HST control lever by hand and measure the check and high pressure relief valve pressure.
12. If the measurement is not within the operating pressure, replace the check and high pressure relief valve assembly with new one. (See page 2-S54.)

High pressure relief valve	Operating pressure	20.0 to 22.0 MPa 204 to 224 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 2900 to 3190 psi
----------------------------	--------------------	--

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Measure quickly so that the relief valve may not be in operation more than 10 seconds.

- (1) Unload Linkage
- (2) **P2** Port (for Dynamic Brake)
- (3) Neutral Rod
- (4) HST Control Lever

**A: Dynamic Brake**

(To be continued)

(Continued)

■ **NOTE**

- High pressure gauge is 29.4 MPa (300 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4267 psi) full scale.

**(When reassembling)**

- Be careful not to damage O-ring on plug.

**Condition**

- Engine speed:  
Maximum while transmission stalling
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

9Y1210996TRS0008US0

**Checking Neutral**



**CAUTION**

- Park the machine on a hard and level surface.
- If it is necessary to run engine in an enclosed area, use a gas tight exhaust pipe extension to remove the fumes.
- Always try to work in a well-ventilated area.
- Lift up and secure with jack stands or blocking the front of machine, do not run the machine while adjusting.
- Work by two people when you checking and adjusting neutral.

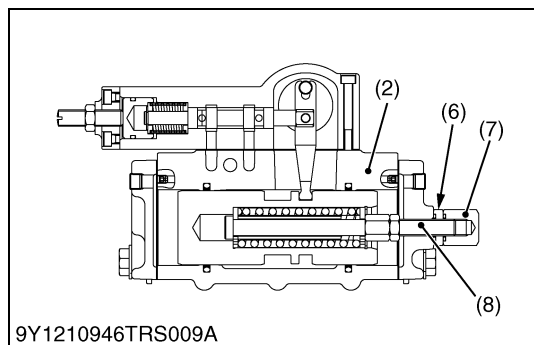
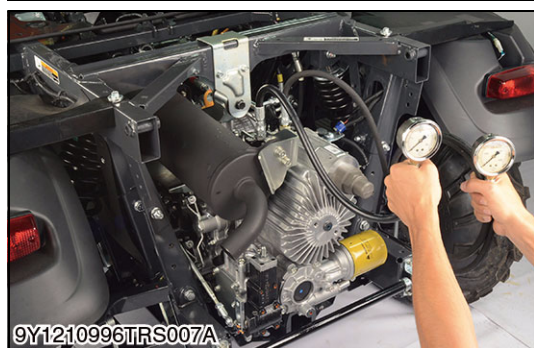
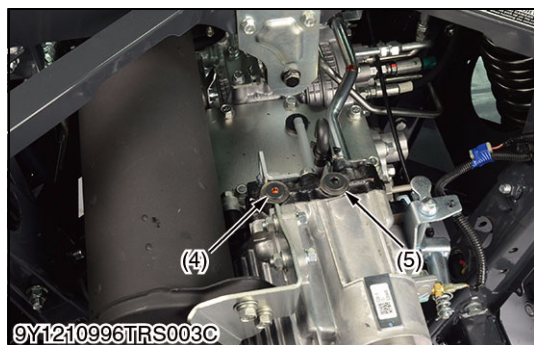
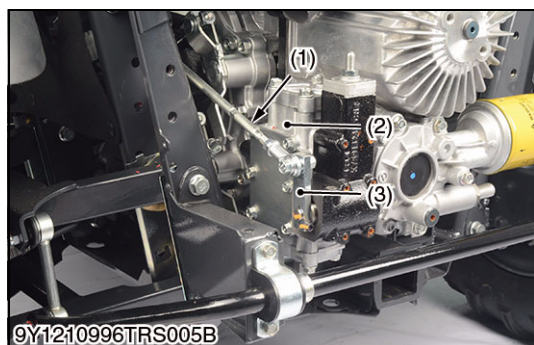
■ **NOTE**

- The hex. socket plug is securely tightened. Therefore, it is very important to use a proper-sized allen wrench and fit it securely onto the plug. Do not give a shock but put your weight on the plug slowly, paying attention not to damage its hex. socket section. If the allen wrench is fitted on the plug at a slant or an improper-sized allen wrench is used to loose the plug, the hex. socket section will be damaged and you won't be able to loose the plug.

(To be continued)



(Continued)



### ■ IMPORTANT

- When the neutral position of the machine is checked, it is advisable to divide the checking procedure as follows: First check the HST unit alone, and then connect the HST unit to the link for checking.

- Remove the cargo bed.
- Remove the hex. socket head plug from **P1** port (5) and **P2** port (4).
- Install the HST adaptor and low pressure gauge in **P1** port and **P2** port.
- Remove the HST control rod (1) from the HST control lever (3) to make situation that HST control lever move freely.
- Set the 4WD lever to 2WD position.
- Start the engine and shift the range gear shift lever in **L** position for 5 seconds to make sure that the HST is in neutral position.
- At this time, check both **P1** port (5) and **P2** port (4) pressure if the wheel rotates.
- If the measurement is not within the factory specification, adjust with hex. socket head screw (8).

### (Adjusting procedure)

- Adjust to loosen the lock nut (6) on a right side of servo piston and for the adjustment hex. socket head screw (8) to make both **P1** port (5) and **P2** port (4) pressure equal while seeing the pressure gauge.
- Retighten the lock nut (6) securely.

### (Reference)

- The pressure of **P2** port (4) (dynamic brake) rises when turning the clockwise.
  - The pressure **P1** port (5) (traveling side) rises when turning the counterclockwise
- Reinstall the HST control rod (1) to HST control lever (3) after you make sure neutrality in the HST unit.
  - Adjust the rod length and much a neutral position if the wheel rotates after is stalling the HST control rod (1).

Difference pressure <b>P1 – P2</b>	Factory specification	–0.40 to –0.10 MPa –4.0 to –1.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> –58 to –15 psi
---------------------------------------	-----------------------	--

### Condition

- Engine speed:  
1400 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) HST Control Rod                    | (5) <b>P1</b> Port (for Traveling G3/8) |
| (2) Servo Piston                       | (6) Lock Nut                            |
| (3) HST Control Lever                  | (7) Cap                                 |
| (4) <b>P2</b> Port (for Dynamic Brake) | (8) Hex. Socket Head Screw              |

9Y1210996TRS0009US0



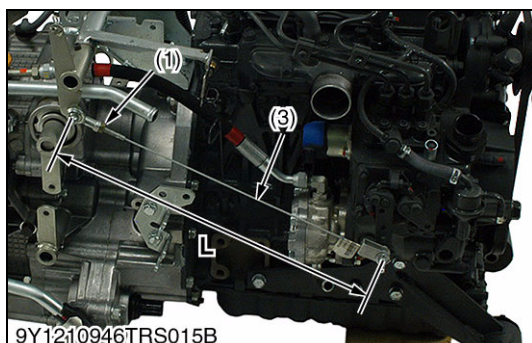
9Y1210946TRS010A



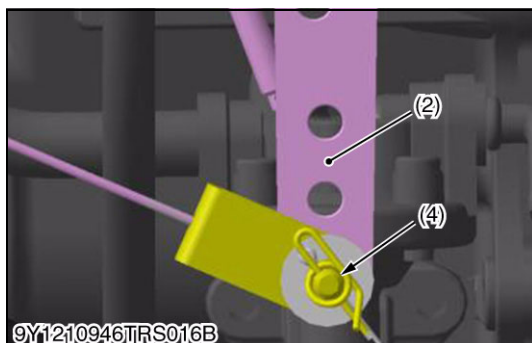
9Y1210946TRS011A



9Y1210946TRS012A



9Y1210946TRS015B



9Y1210946TRS016B

## Checking Travelling Speed

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Park the machine on a hard and level surface.
  - If it is necessary to run engine in an enclosed area, use a gas tight exhaust pipe extension to remove the fumes.
  - Always try to work in a well-ventilated area.
  - Lift up and secure with jack stands or blocking the front of machine, do not run the machine while adjusting.
  - Work by two people when you checking and adjusting travelling speed.
1. Set the 4WD lever to 2WD position.
  2. Start the engine and shift the range shift lever in H position and depress the differential lock pedal.
  3. Depress the speed control pedal (2) fully, and check the travel speed of panel.
  4. If the measurement is not within the factory specification, loosen the lock nut and adjust the length of the speed control pedal stopper bolt (1).

Travel speed	Reference	23.3 to 24.8 mile/h 37.5 to 40.0 km/h
--------------	-----------	--

- (1) Speed Control Pedal Stopper Bolt    (3) Panel  
(2) Speed Control Pedal

9Y1210996TRS0010US0

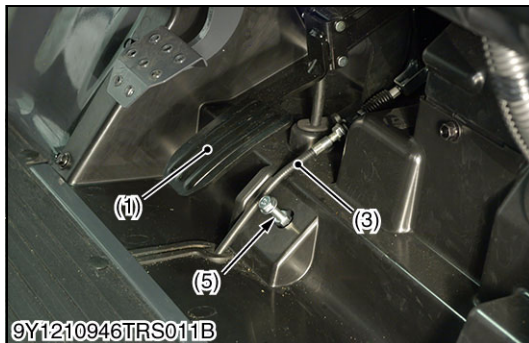
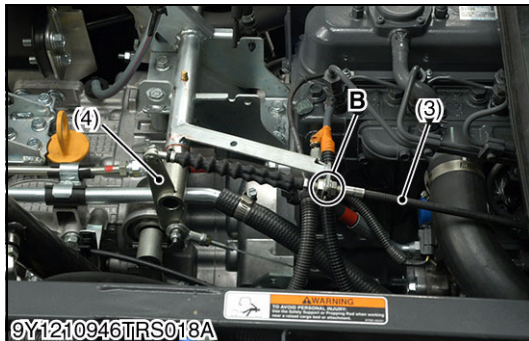
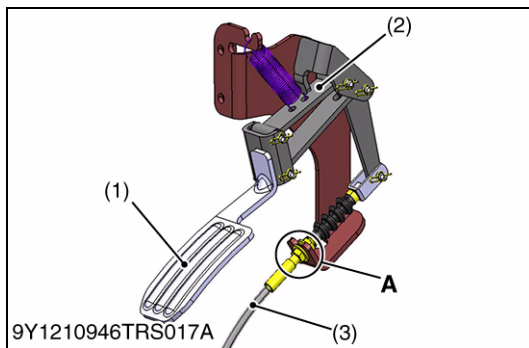
## Checking Engine Cable

1. Make sure the mounting position for the engine cable (3) is the position indicated in the figure.
2. Adjust the adjustment nut (1) until there is no deflection in the engine cable (3).
3. Adjust the nut one rotation in the direction causing deflection of the engine cable (3).
4. Install the engine cable to the throttle lever in the position shown in the figure.

Engine cable length "L"	Reference	383 mm 15.1 in.
-------------------------	-----------	--------------------

- (1) Adjustment Nut    (3) Engine Cable  
(2) Throttle Lever    (4) Fixed Position

9Y1210996TRS0011US0



### Checking Speed Control Pedal Stroke (Adjustment of the Speed Control Pedal Cable)

#### **CAUTION**

- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, apply the parking brake.
- Work by two people when you checking and adjusting speed control pedal stroke.

1. Mount the speed control pedal cable (3) on the bracket (2) and adjust until the speed control pedal (1) is in contact with the bracket (2).
2. Set the stopper bolt to a position where it is in contact with the speed control pedal (1) with the speed control pedal (1) pushed all the way down.
3. Then, loosen the stopper bolt (5) a half turn and fix in place with a lock nut.
4. Start the engine and check engine speed.
5. If the engine speed is outside of factory specifications, adjust the speed using the HST control rod and the engine cable.

#### **NOTE**

- Speed control pedal cable (3) adjustment is performed through adjustment of the HST control rod and engine cable.

#### **Condition**

- Engine speed:  
1400 to 1500 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
- Engine maximum speed:  
3070 to 3170 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)

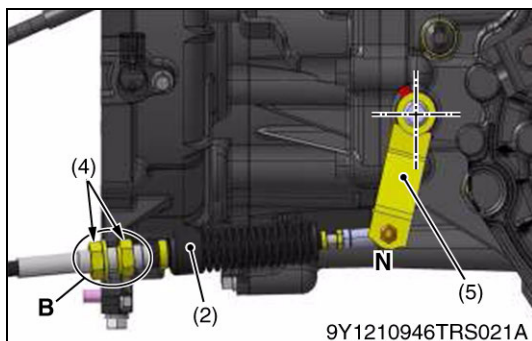
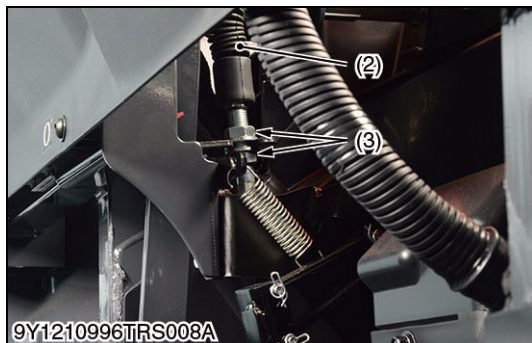
- (1) Speed Control Pedal
- (2) Bracket
- (3) Speed Control Pedal Cable
- (4) HST Linkage
- (5) Stopper Bolt

**A: Center of thread**

**B: Adjust the nuts.**

9Y1210996TRS0012US0





### Checking Range Gear Shift Lever Position (Adjusting of the Shift Cable Length and the Select Cable Length)

#### ⚠ CAUTION

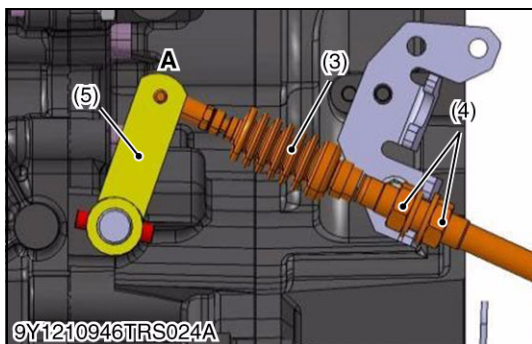
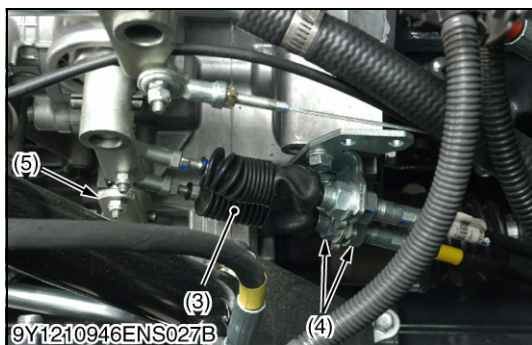
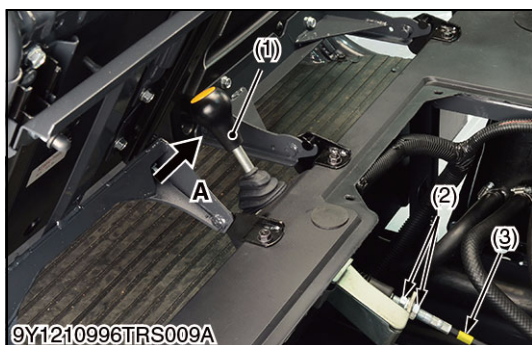
- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, and apply the parking brake.
- Work by 2 people when you checking and adjusting range gear shift lever position.

1. Place the stand under the left side of under frame by jack.
2. Remove the rear skid plate (1).
3. Remove the rear wheel L.H..
4. Remove the range gear shift cable (2) from the range gear shift arm (5).
5. Remove the range gear shift cable (2) from the range gear shift lever (6).
6. Adjust the range gear shift arm (5) to the neutral position, where the range gear shift arm (5) position to the position neutral position.
7. Set the range gear shift lever (6) position to the neutral position.
8. When installing the range gear shift cable (2) to the cable stay (5), set the adjusting screw at the center position.
9. Install the range gear shift cable (2) to the range gear shift arm (5).
10. Make sure that the range gear shift lever (6) is set at the natural position and install the range gear shift cable (2) to the lever support.
11. Move the range gear shift lever (6) from "L" to "H", "N" and "R" and make sure that the range gear shift arm (5) moves smoothly into detent positions.
12. Make sure that the lock nut (3) of the range gear shift cable (2) is surely fastened.
13. Also check that the lock nuts (3) at the cable end and the ball joint are not loose. Check that the ball joint fitting nuts (lever side and arm side) are tightened.

- (1) Rear Skid Plate
- (2) Range Gear Shift Cable
- (3) Lock Nut
- (4) Lock Nut
- (5) Range Gear Shift Arm
- (6) Range Gear Shift Lever

**B: Center of Tread**  
**N: Neutral Position**

9Y1210996TRS0013US0



### Checking Four Wheel Drive Lever Position (Adjustment of the 4WD Shift Cable Length)

#### CAUTION

- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, apply the parking brake.
- Work by two people when you checking and adjusting four wheel drive lever position.

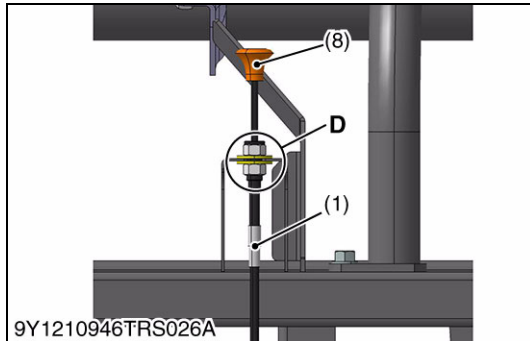
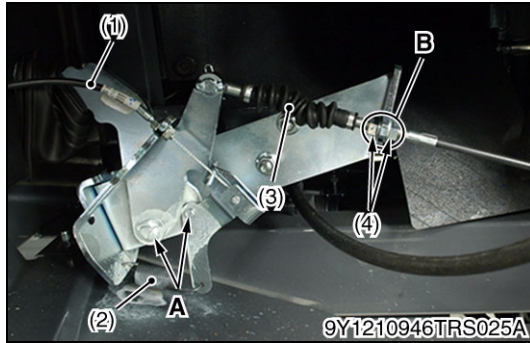
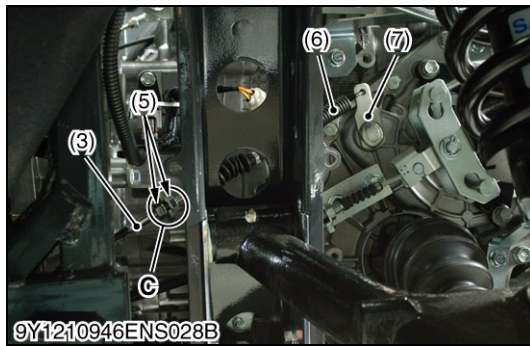
1. Loosen the cable lock nut (2), (4) at the side, and remove the 4WD shift cable (3).
2. Check that the cable is fixed to the stay (4), with the cable outer section screw being set near the center.  
Also check that the lock nuts at the cable end and the ball joint are not loose. Check that the ball joint fitting nuts are tightened.
3. Shift the 4WD shift arm (5) to the 2WD position "A".
4. Fix the 4WD lever (1) in the 2WD position.
5. Remove the slack of cable.
6. Check that the cable moves smoothly.
7. Keeping this condition, put the cable through the cable stay and adjust the length of the cable outer section while being careful not to move the 4WD lever (1).
8. Then tighten the lock nuts (2) firmly. Also check that the lock nuts at the cable end and the ball joint are not loose. Check that the ball joint fitting nuts (lever side and arm side) are tightened.

- (1) 4WD Lever
- (2) Lock Nut
- (3) 4WD Shift Cable
- (4) Lock Nut
- (5) 4WD Shift Arm

**A: 2WD Position**

9Y1210996TRS0014US0





### Checking Differential Lock Cable

#### (Adjustment of the length of the cable for differential lock)

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, apply the parking brake.

1. Check that the cable to the transmission case, with the cable outer section screw being set near the center.
2. Adjust the length of the cable outer section so that the differential lock spring (6) has no play, and tighten the lock nut (4).
3. Hook the end of wire to the hole.
4. Install the wire (1) on the stay, set the adjusting at the center top of thread "C".
5. Hook the spring (2).
6. Adjust the wire (1) on the stay, set the top of thread "D".

- (1) Wire
- (2) Spring
- (3) Differential Lock Cable
- (4) Lock Nut
- (5) Lock Nut
- (6) Differential Lock Spring
- (7) Differential Lock Lever
- (8) Knob

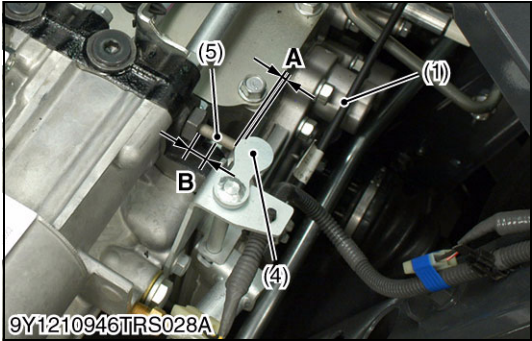
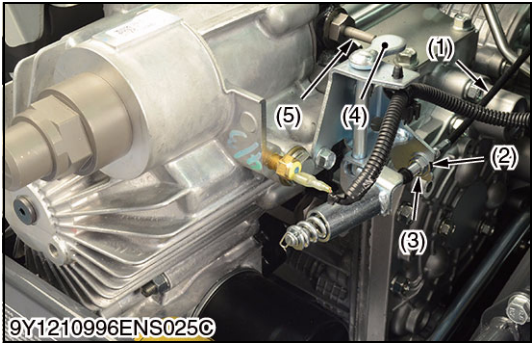
**A:** Apply spray grease to pins.

**B:** Adjust the nuts.

**C:** Center of thread

**D:** Adjust the top of tread

9Y1210996TRS0015US0



**Checking VHT Pressure Release Cable (Unload Cable)**

1. Check the unload cable (1) connect the brake pedal as shown is figure.
2. Move the arm (4) and spool (5) from side to side by hand and check a play.
3. If the play "A" is not from 0 to 1 mm (0 to 0.04 in.), adjust the unload cable (1) with a lock nuts.
4. When you fix the lock nuts, fix the backward lock nut (3) first, and then tighten the front lock nut (2).
5. Then, press the brake pedal, and check if the arm (4) pushes the spool (5).
6. When the arm (4) pushes the spool (5), check what the length is.
7. If the length which the spool (5) was pushed is not enough, adjust the play "A" with a lock nut again.

Play "A"	Reference	0 to 1 mm 0 to 0.04 in.
Length "B"	Reference	17.5 mm 0.689 in.

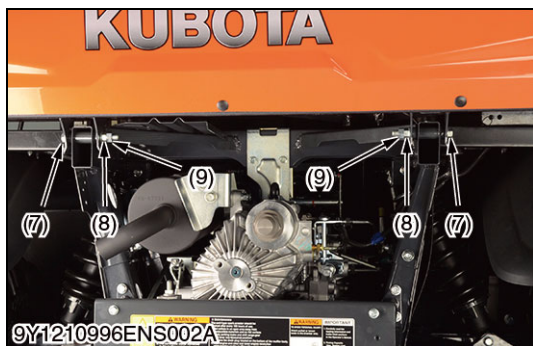
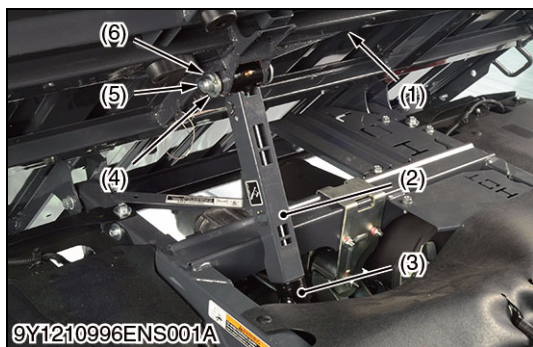
- (1) Unload Cable
- (2) Front Lock Nut
- (3) Backward Lock Nut
- (4) Arm
- (5) Spool

**A: Play**  
**B: When depressed the brake pedal**

9Y1210996TRS0016US0

## 5. PREPARATION

### [1] SEPARATING HYDRAULIC TRANSMISSION



#### Cargo Bed

#### CAUTION

- Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

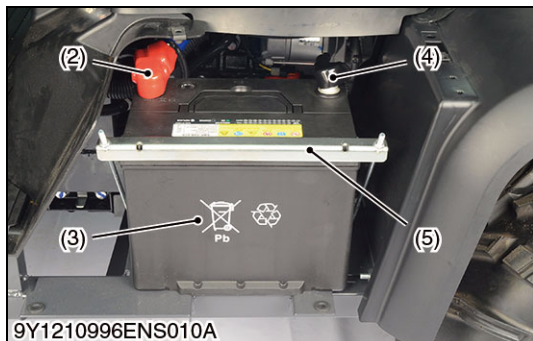
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0



#### Battery

#### CAUTION

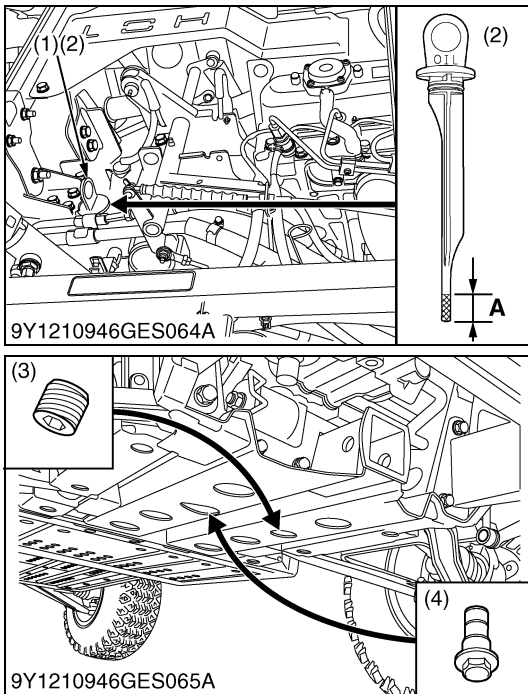
- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.
4. Remove the battery stay (5).
5. Remove the battery (3).

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (1) L.H. Side Cover | (4) Negative Cable |
| (2) Positive Cable  | (5) Battery Stay   |
| (3) Battery         |                    |

9Y1210996ENS0029US0





### Draining Transmission Fluid

#### ⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug at the bottom of the transmission case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

#### (When reassembling)

- Fill with the new KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid up to the upper cross hatched area on the dipstick.
- After running the engine for a few minutes, stop the engine and check the oil level again; add oil to prescribed level.

Transmission oil	Capacity	7.0 L 1.8 U.S.gals 1.5 Imp.gals
------------------	----------	---------------------------------------

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not operate the vehicle immediately after changing the transmission fluid.

Run the engine at medium speed for a few minutes to prevent damage to the transmission.

- (1) Oil Inlet
- (2) Dipstick
- (3) Drain Plug
- (4) Magnet Plug

A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.

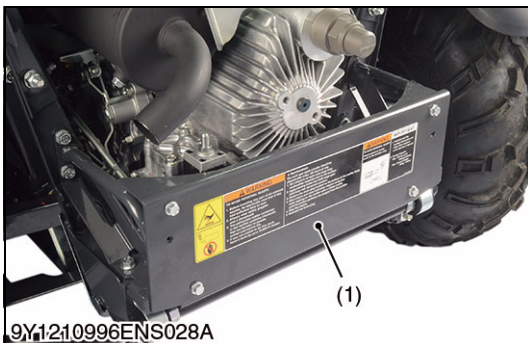
9Y1210996TRS0062US0

### Transmission Rear Cover

1. Remove the transmission rear cover (1).

- (1) Transmission Rear Cover

9Y1210996ENS0041US0



### Unload Cable Linkage

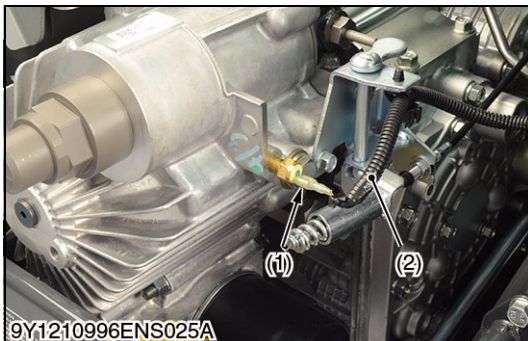
1. Disconnect the oil temperature switch connector (1).
2. Remove the unload cable linkage (2) with unload cable.

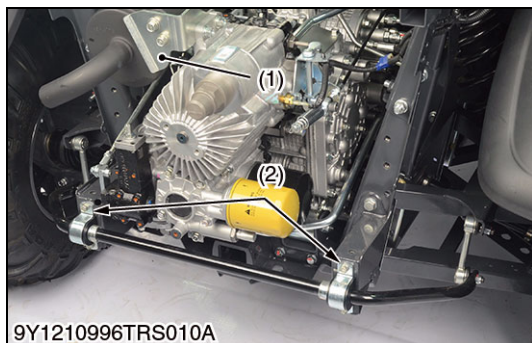
#### (When reassembling)

- Adjust the unload cable. (See page 2-S16.)

- (1) Oil Temperature Switch Connector
- (2) Unload Cable Linkage

9Y1210996ENS0038US0





### **Stabilizer Stay and Muffler Bracket**

1. Remove the stabilizer stay (2).
2. Remove the muffler bracket (1).

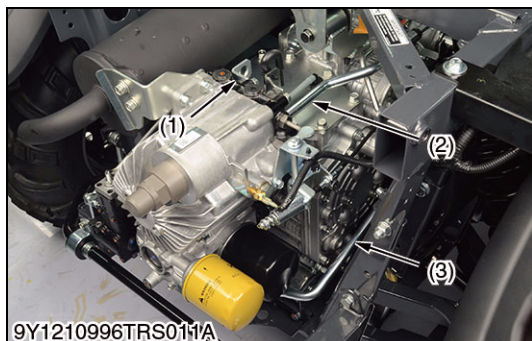
**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	Muffler bracket mounting bolt and nut	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------------------	---

(1) Muffler Bracket

(2) Stabilizer Stay

9Y1210996TRS0017US0



### **Pipes and Clamps**

1. Remove the breather pipe clamp (1).
2. Remove the pipe clamps (4), (5).
3. Disconnect the return pipe (2).
4. Disconnect the suction pipe (3).

**(When reassembling)**

- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.

(1) Breather Pipe Clamp

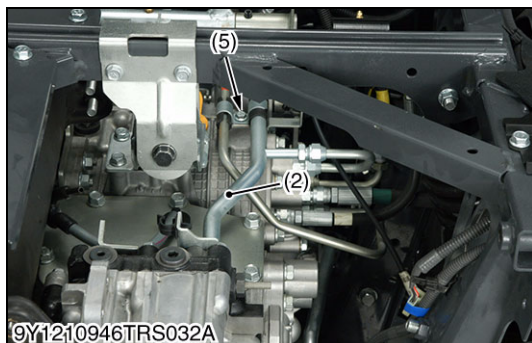
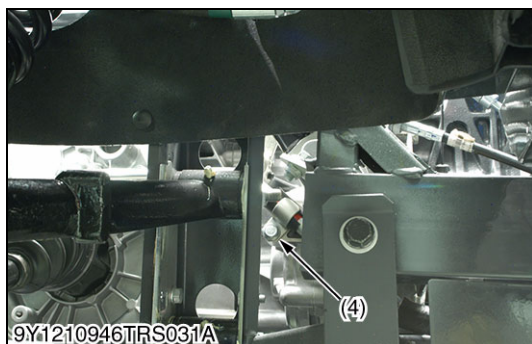
(4) Clamp

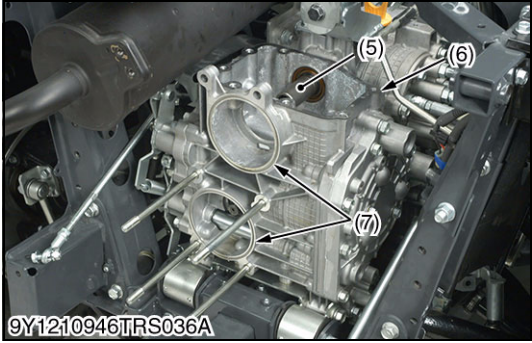
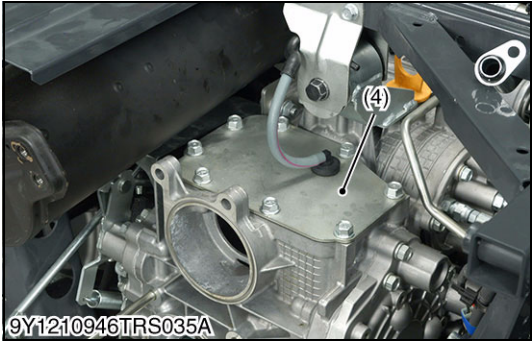
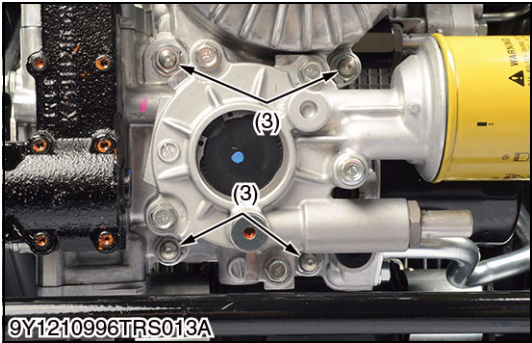
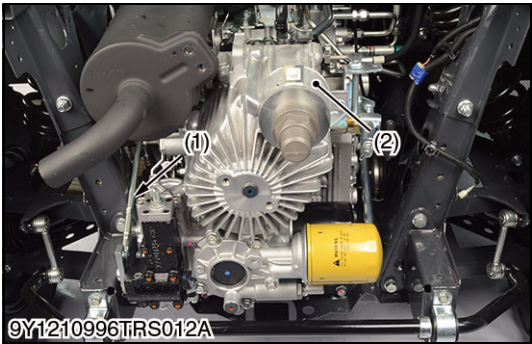
(2) Return Pipe

(5) Clamp

(3) Suction Pipe

9Y1210996TRS0018US0





**HST Assembly**

- 1. Disconnect the HST control rod (1).
- 2. Remove the HST mounting nuts (3).
- 3. Remove the HST assembly (2).

**(When reassembling)**

- Remove the upper cover (4).
- Be sure not to damage the O-ring (7).
- Align the HST output shaft and spline of coupling (5).
- Replace the upper cover gasket (6) with new one.

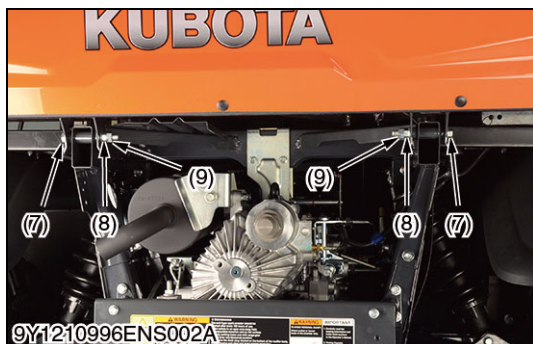
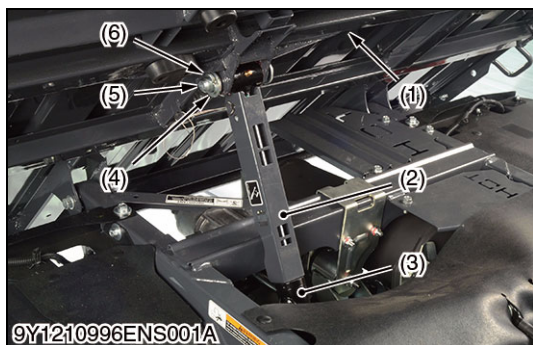
Tightening torque	HST assembly mounting nut	39 to 44 N·m 4.0 to 4.4 kgf·m 29 to 32 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------	---

- |                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| (1) HST Control Rod  | (5) Coupling |
| (2) HST Assembly     | (6) Gasket   |
| (3) HST Mounting Nut | (7) O-ring   |
| (4) Upper Cover      |              |

9Y1210996TRS0019US0



## [2] DISMOUNTING TRANSMISSION AND ENGINE



### Cargo Bed

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- **Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.**

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

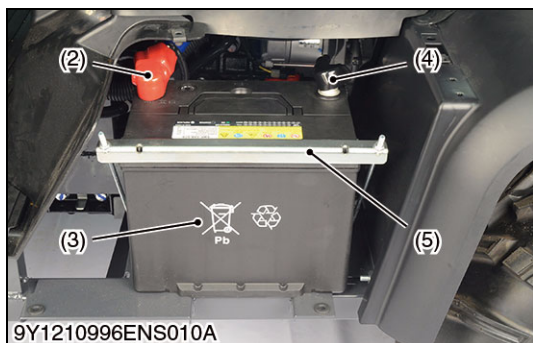
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0



### Battery

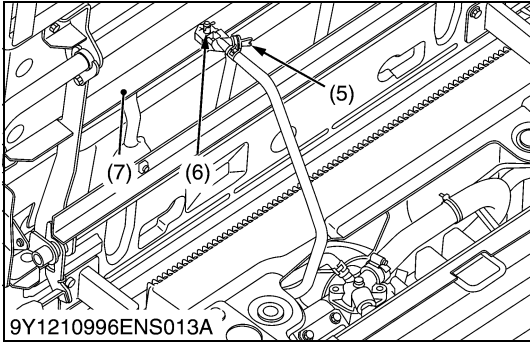
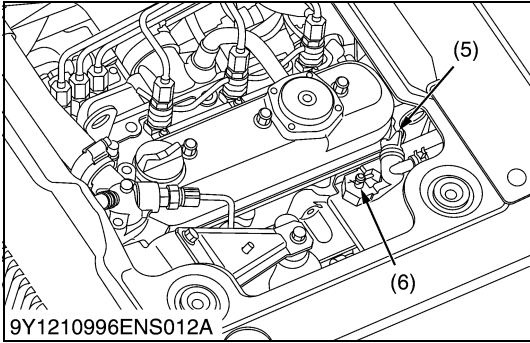
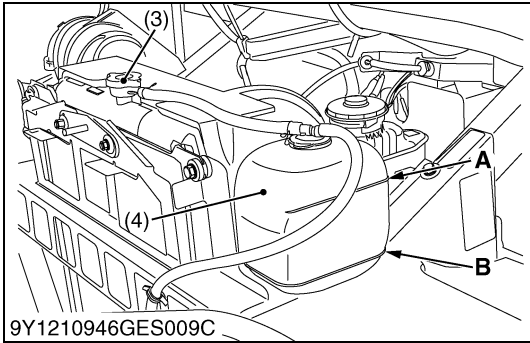
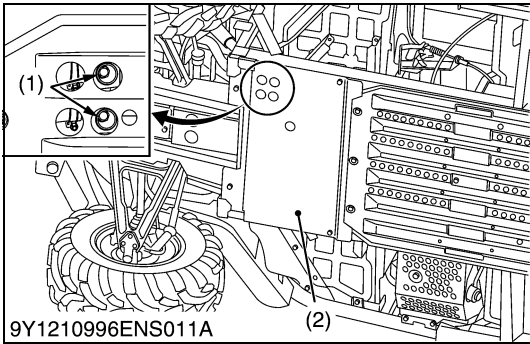
#### ⚠ CAUTION

- **When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.**

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.
4. Remove the battery stay (5).
5. Remove the battery (3).

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (1) L.H. Side Cover | (4) Negative Cable |
| (2) Positive Cable  | (5) Battery Stay   |
| (3) Battery         |                    |

9Y1210996ENS0029US0



**Draining Coolant**

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid serious injury:

- Do not remove the radiator cap while coolant is hot. When cool, slowly rotate cap to the first stop and allow sufficient time for excess pressure to escape before removing the cap completely.
- When the coolant has cooled down, remove the coolant breather together with the pin at the rear seat back.

**■ IMPORTANT**

- Do not start engine without coolant.
- Do not remove the cap on the radiator.
- Use clean, fresh distilled water and anti-freeze to fill the radiator and recovery tank.
- When the anti-freeze is mixed with distilled water, the antifreeze mixing ratio is 50 %.
- Securely tighten radiator cap. If the cap is loose or improperly fitted, water may leak out and the engine could overheat.
- Make sure that the engine coolant breather is closed, after filling the coolant.

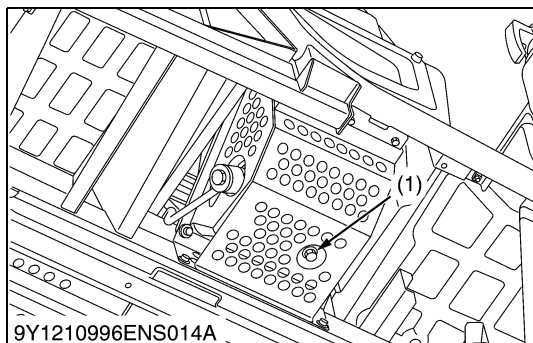
1. Stop the engine and let cool down.
2. Open the plastic cover loacted below the rear seat. Draw out the coolant breather hose and secure it to the pin (6) of the rear seat back (7).
3. Open the hood.
4. To drain the coolant, remove the radiator cap (3), open the engine coolant breather (5), and remove the radiator drain plugs (1). The radiator cap must be removed to completely drain the coolant.
5. After all coolant is drained, close the drain plug.

Radiator with recovery tank (Coolant)	Capacity	6.1 L 6.4 U.S.qts 5.4 Imp.qts
---------------------------------------	----------	-------------------------------------

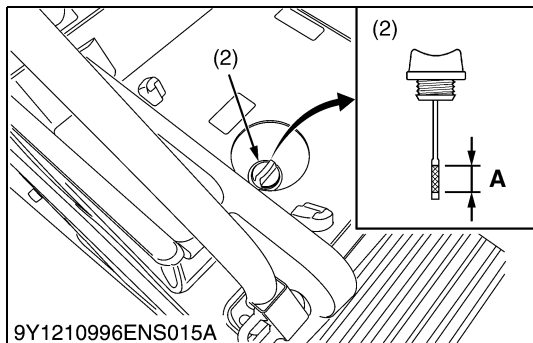
- |                             |                |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Drain Plug              | <b>A: FULL</b> |
| (2) Front Skid Plate        | <b>B: LOW</b>  |
| (3) Radiator Cap            |                |
| (4) Recovery Tank           |                |
| (5) Engine Coolant Breather |                |
| (6) Pin                     |                |
| (7) Rear Seat               |                |

9Y1210996ENS0030US0





9Y1210996ENS014A



9Y1210996ENS015A

## Draining Hydraulic Tank Oil

### WARNING

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the seat and remove the utility box.
3. Remove the rubber cap.
4. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug (1) and filling plug (2) plug and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
5. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

### (When reassembling)

- Fill with new KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid up to the upper notch on the dipstick.

How to check:

Wipe dipstick clean a rag and screw it into filling hole. Remove dipstick again to see if the oil level is between the upper and lower line.

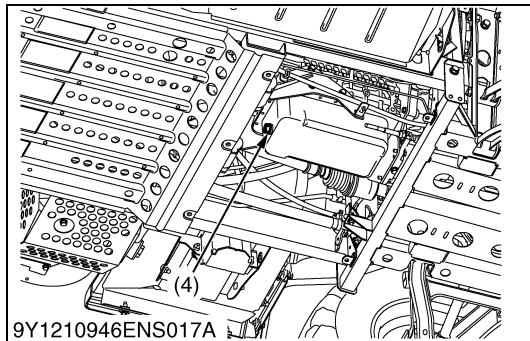
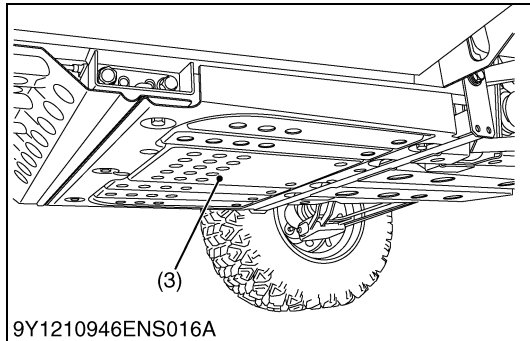
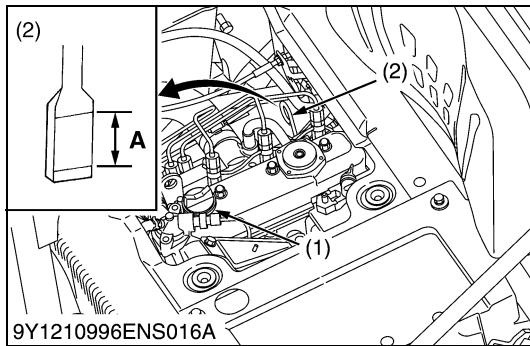
- After filling, reinstall the filling plug.

Hydraulic tank oil	Capacity	18.0 L
		19.0 U.S.qts
		15.8 Imp.qts

- (1) Drain Plug  
(2) Filling Plug with Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996ENS0031US0



## Draining Engine Oil



### WARNING

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to stop the engine before changing the oil.
- Allow engine to cool down sufficiently, oil can be hot and can burn.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. In 1 row seating mode, raise the cargo bed and mount the safety support.
3. Stop the engine.
4. Remove the rear skid plate (3).
5. To drain the used oil, remove the drain plug (4) at the bottom of the engine and completely drain the oil into an oil pan.  
All the used oil can be drained out easily when the engine is still warm.
6. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

### (When reassembling)

- Fill the new oil up to the upper notch on the dipstick.

Engine oil	Capacity	[Filter exchanged] 4.1 L 4.3 U.S.qts 3.6 Imp.qts
		[Filter non-exchanged] 3.8 L 4.0 U.S.qts 3.3 Imp.qts

- (1) Oil Inlet  
(2) Dipstick  
(3) Rear Skid Plate  
(4) Drain Plug

**C: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996ENS0032US0

## Rear Wheel

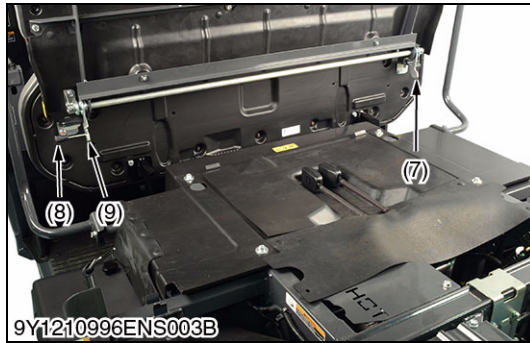
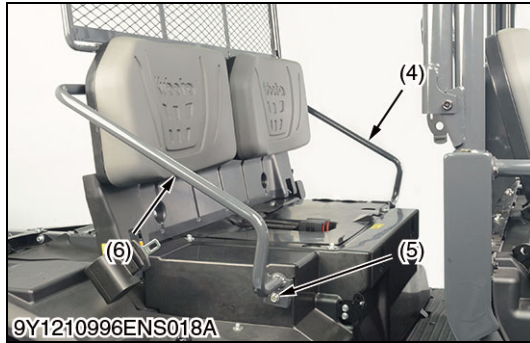
1. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block under the bottom plate of the transmission frame.
2. Remove the rear wheels (1).

### (When reassembling)

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Rear Wheel

9Y1210996ENS0033US0



## Rear Seat

### CAUTION

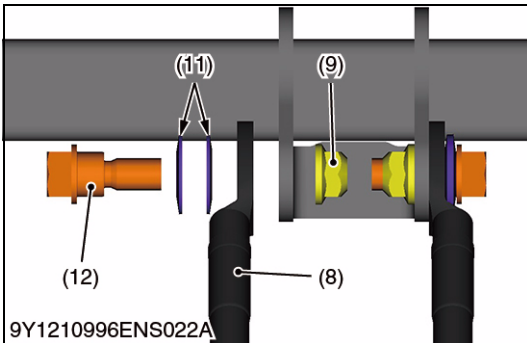
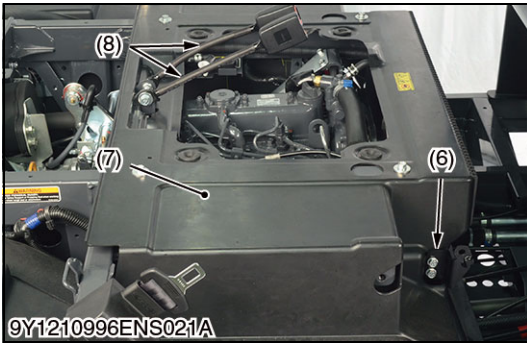
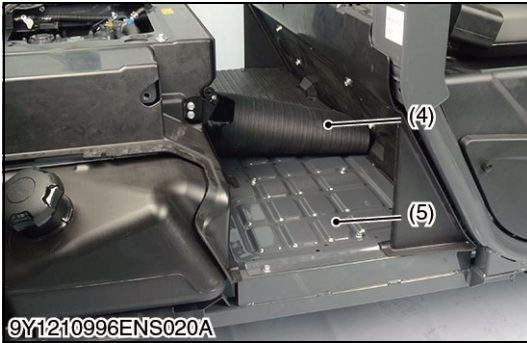
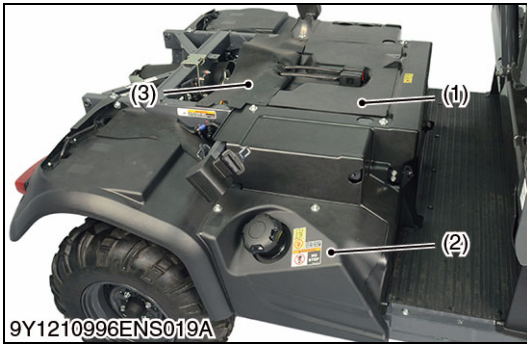
- Work with two people or a hoist when removing the rear seat back.

1. Set the rear seat back assembly (1) and rear seat assembly (2) into the 2 row seating mode.
2. Remove the snap pins (3) and remove the rear seat assembly.
3. Support the rear seat back assembly so that it will not move forward or back during removal.
4. Remove the flange bolts (5) from the rear L.H. and R.H. handrails (4), (6).
5. Use the lever grip (8) to release the L.H. and R.H. backrest lock hooks (9), (7) and remove the rear seat back assembly.

- (1) Rear Seat Back Assembly
- (2) Rear Seat Assembly
- (3) Snap Pin
- (4) Rear L.H. Handrail
- (5) Flange Bolt

- (6) Rear R.H. Handrail
- (7) R.H. Backrest Lock Hook
- (8) Lever Grip
- (9) L.H. Backrest Lock Hook

9Y1210996ENS0034US0



### Rear Cover and Rear Step

1. Remove the rear upper cover (1) and upper engine rubber cover (3).
2. Remove the R.H. side cover (2).
3. Remove the rear step mat (4) and rear step (5).
4. Remove the seat belts (8).
5. Remove the R.H. seat bottom stay (6) and L.H. seat bottom stay.
6. Remove the rear cover (7).

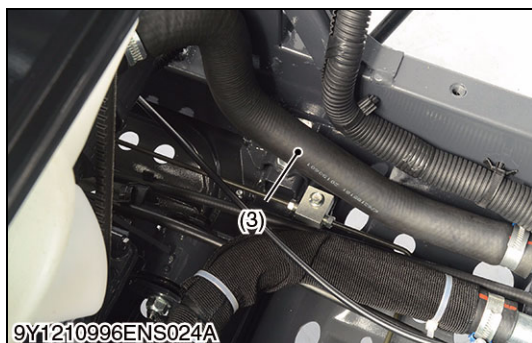
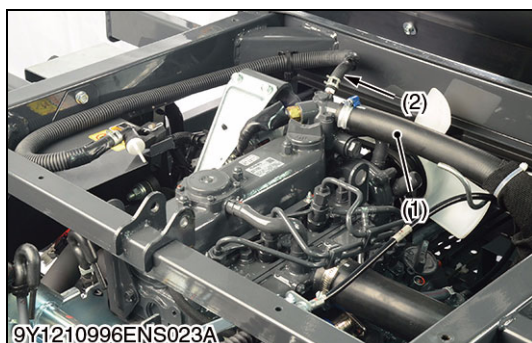
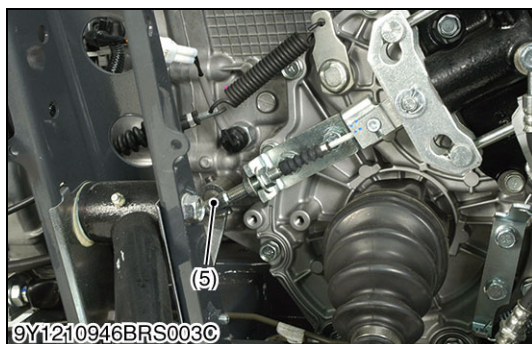
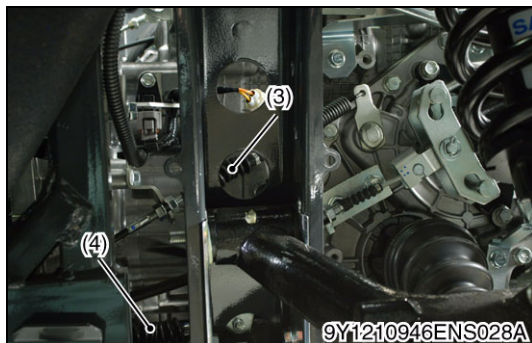
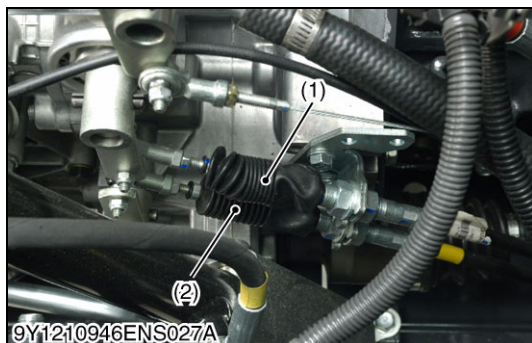
#### (When reassembling)

- Be sure to assemble the seat belt assembly as shown in the figure.

- |                               |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Rear Upper Cover          | (7) Rear Cover      |
| (2) R.H. Side Cover           | (8) Seat Belt       |
| (3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover | (9) Locking Nut     |
| (4) Rear Step Mat             | (10) Spring Plate   |
| (5) Rear Step                 | (11) Seat Belt Bolt |
| (6) R.H. Seat Bottom Stay     |                     |

9Y1210996ENS0035US0





### Cables

1. Disconnect the hydraulic lift cable (1).
2. Disconnect the 4WD shift cable (2).
3. Disconnect the differential lock cable (3).
4. Disconnect the range gear shift cable (4).
5. Disconnect the parking brake cable (5).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the length of hydraulic lift cable. (See page 7-S6.)
- Adjust the length of 4WD shift cable. (See page 2-S14.)
- Adjust the length of differential lock cable. (See page 2-S15.)
- Adjust the length of range gear shift cable. (See page 2-S13.)
- Adjust the length of parking brake cable. (See page 4-S7.)

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| (1) Hydraulic Lift Cable    | (4) Range Gear Shift Cable |
| (2) 4WD Shift Cable         | (5) Parking Brake Cable    |
| (3) Differential Lock Cable |                            |

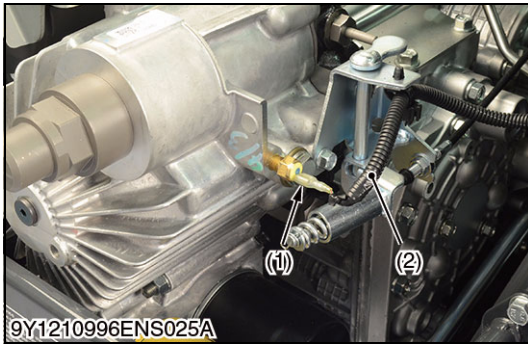
9Y1210996ENS0036US0

### Radiator Hose

1. Disconnect the upper engine radiator hose (1).
2. Disconnect the air breather hose (2).
3. Disconnect the lower engine radiator hose (3).

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Upper Engine Radiator Hose | (3) Lower Engine Radiator Hose |
| (2) Air Breather Hose          |                                |

9Y1210996ENS0037US0



### Unload Cable Linkage

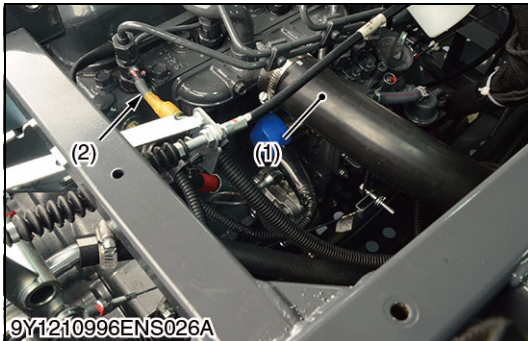
1. Disconnect the oil temperature switch connector (1).
2. Remove the unload cable linkage (2) with unload cable.

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the unload cable. (See page 2-S16.)

(1) Oil Temperature Switch Connector (2) Unload Cable Linkage

9Y1210996ENS0038US0



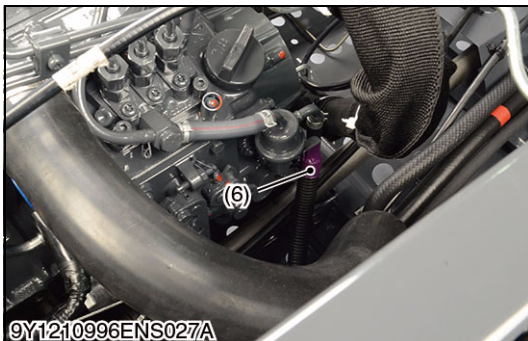
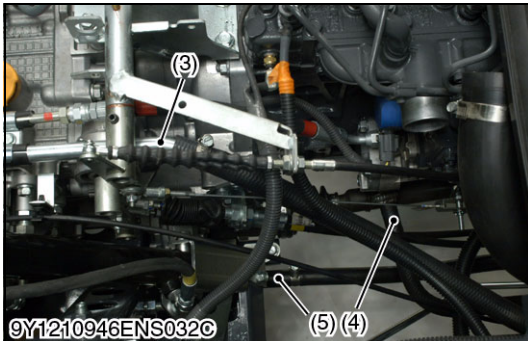
### Intake, Fuel, and Hydraulic Hoses

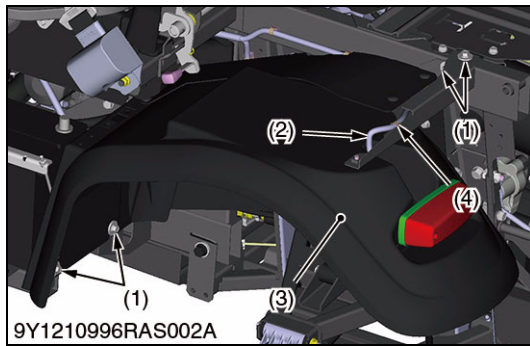
1. Disconnect the intake hose (1).
2. Disconnect the HST drain hose (3) and HST suction hose (5).
3. Disconnect the hydraulic suction hose (4).
4. Disconnect the fuel suction hose (6) and fuel return hose (2).

(1) Intake Hose  
(2) Fuel Return Hose  
(3) HST Drain Hose

(4) Hydraulic Suction Hose  
(5) HST Suction Hose  
(6) Fuel Suction Hose

9Y1210996ENS0039US0



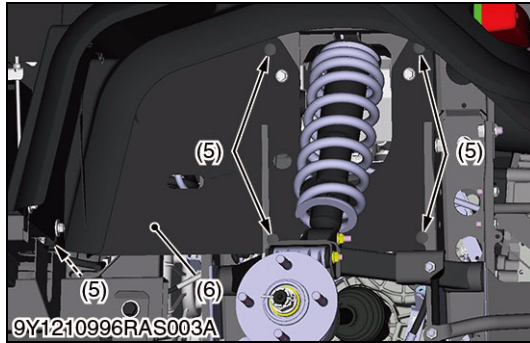


### **Fender**

1. Disconnect the rear lamp connectors (2).
2. Remove the rear lamp harness from the clamps (4).
3. Remove the inner mud guard rivets (5).
4. Remove the bolts (1) and remove the rear fender (3) with the inner mud guard (6).

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Bolt                 | (4) Clamp           |
| (2) Rear Lamp Connectors | (5) Rivet           |
| (3) Rear Fender          | (6) Inner Mud Guard |

9Y1210996RAS0008US0

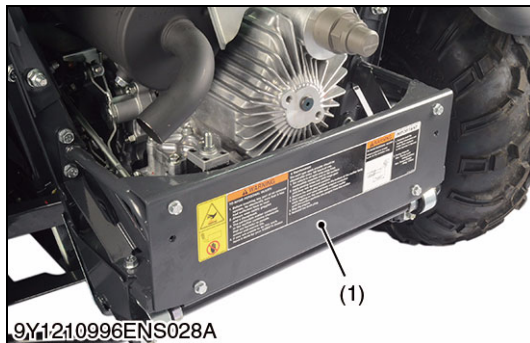


### **Transmission Rear Cover**

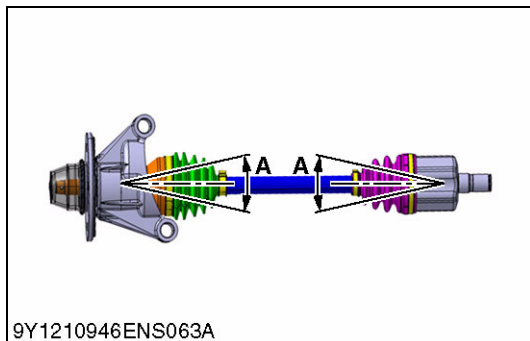
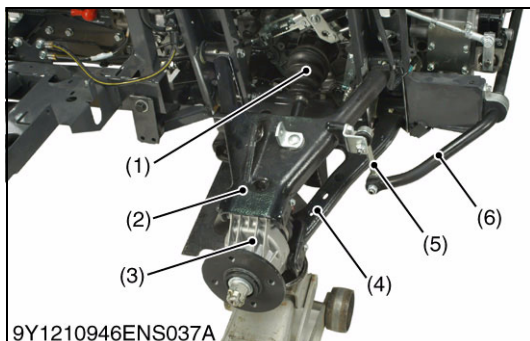
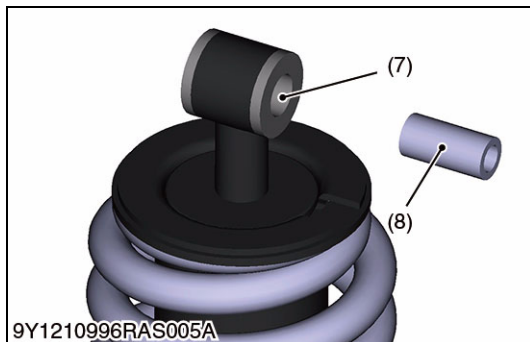
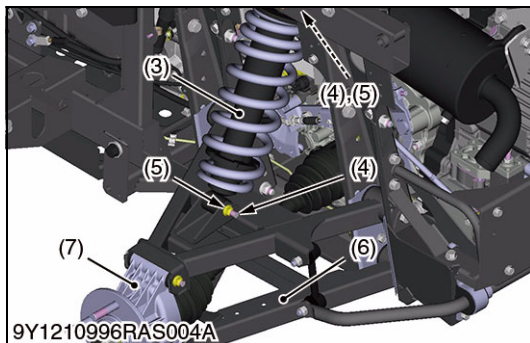
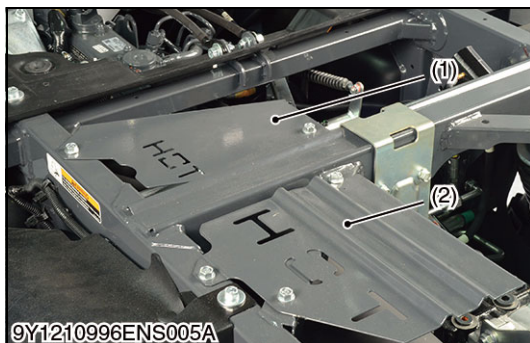
1. Remove the transmission rear cover (1).

- (1) Transmission Rear Cover

9Y1210996ENS0041US0







### Rear Shock Absorber

1. Remove the rear exhaust cover (1) and muffler cover (2).
2. Set a jack under the lower rear arm (6). Raise the jack until it touches the lower rear arm under the rear knuckle case (7).
3. Remove the flange bolts (4) and lock nuts (5).
4. Remove the rear shock absorber (3).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply grease (Shell Godus S5 T100 or equivalent) to the rear shock absorber bushing (7) before inserting collar (8).

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) Rear Exhaust Cover  | (5) Lock Nut          |
| (2) Muffler Cover       | (6) Lower Rear Arm    |
| (3) Rear Shock Absorber | (7) Rear Knuckle Case |
| (4) Bushing             | (8) Collar            |

9Y1210996RAS0009US0

### Rear Drive Shaft

#### ■ NOTE

- **Do not exceed the range  $\pm 25^\circ$  while handling.**

1. Remove the rear stabilizer (6) and stabilizer linkage (5).
2. Remove the rear arm mounting bolts and nuts.
3. Remove the rear upper arm (2).
4. Remove the rear drive shaft (1) with rear knuckle case (3).
5. Remove the rear lower arm (4).

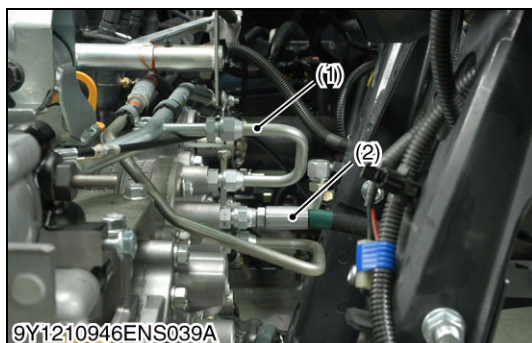
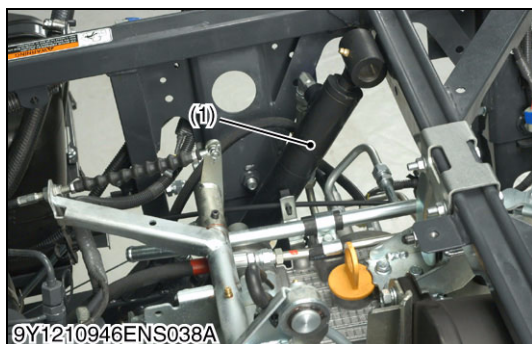
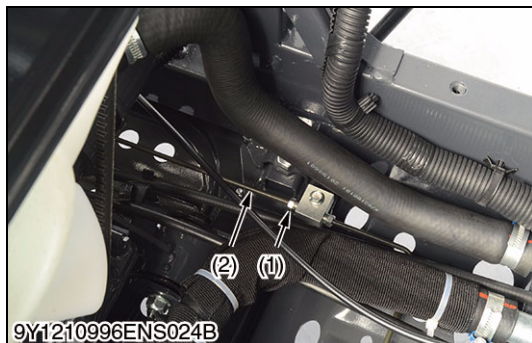
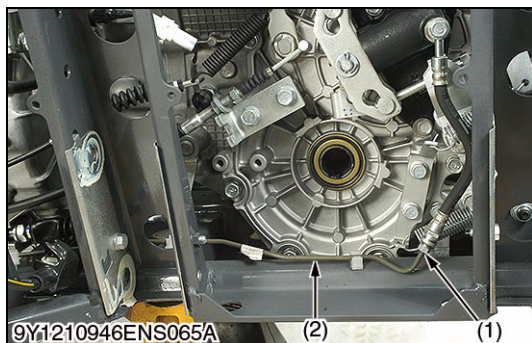
#### (When reassembling)

- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to splines of rear drive shaft.

- |                  |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Drive Shaft  | (5) Stabilizer Linkage              |
| (2) Upper Arm    | (6) Rear Stabilizer                 |
| (3) Knuckle Case |                                     |
| (4) Lower Arm    | <b>A: <math>\pm 25^\circ</math></b> |

9Y1210996ENS0043US0





### Brake Pipe

1. Remove the brake pipe retaining nuts (1).
2. Remove the brake pipe (2).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- After reassembling the brake pipe, bleed the air from the brake line immediately.

Tightening torque	Brake pipe retaining nut	13 to 17 N·m 1.4 to 1.7 kgf·m 9.6 to 12 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------------	--

(1) Brake Pipe Retaining Nut

(2) Brake Pipe

9Y1210996ENS0044US0

### Hydraulic Lift Cylinder

1. Disconnect the hydraulic hoses.
2. Remove the hydraulic lift cylinder (1) and cylinder bracket.

(1) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder

9Y1210996ENS0045US0

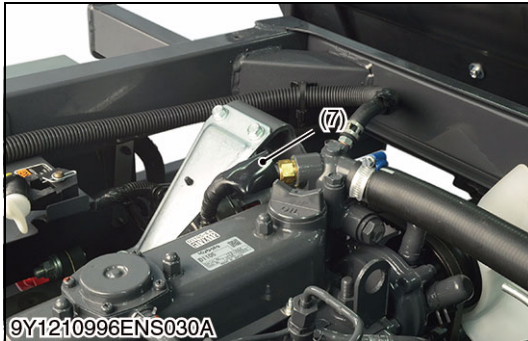
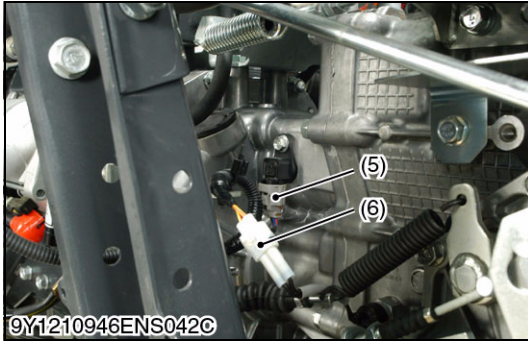
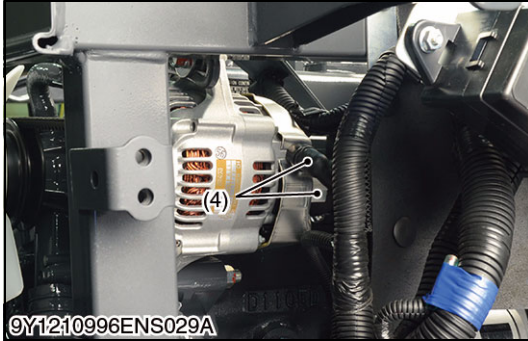
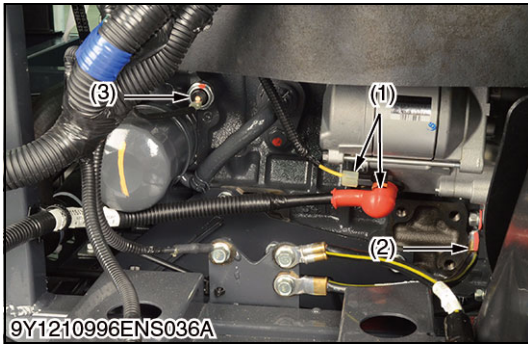
### Power Steering Hose and Return Pipe

1. Disconnect the power steering hose (2).
2. Remove the return pipe (1).

(1) Return Pipe

(2) Power Steering Hose

9Y1210996ENS0046US0

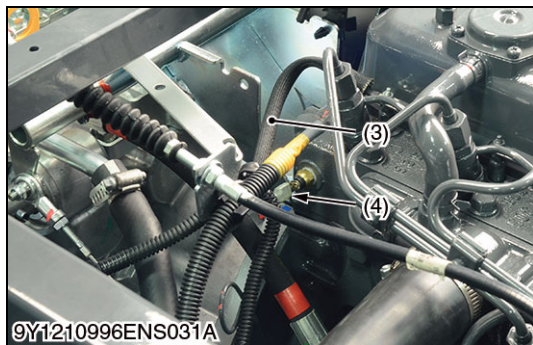
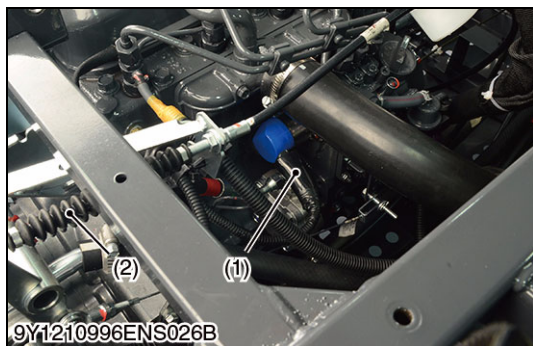


### Wiring Harness L.H.

1. Disconnect the starter connectors (1).
2. Disconnect the engine oil pressure switch connector (3).
3. Disconnect the ground cables (2).
4. Disconnect the alternator connectors (4).
5. Disconnect the thermometer switch connector (7).
6. Disconnect the speed sensor connector (5).
7. Disconnect the safety switch connector (6).

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (1) Starter Connector                    | (4) Alternator Connector         |
| (2) Ground Cable                         | (5) Speed Sensor Connector       |
| (3) Engine Oil Pressure Switch Connector | (6) Safety Switch Connector      |
|  | (7) Thermometer Switch Connector |

9Y1210996ENS0047US0

**Wiring Harness R.H. and Speed Control Panel Cable**

1. Disconnect the glow connector (3).
2. Disconnect the thermo sensor connector (4).
3. Disconnect the engine stop solenoid connector (1).
4. Disconnect the speed control pedal cable (2).

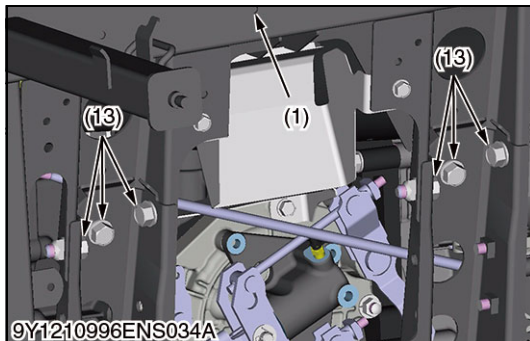
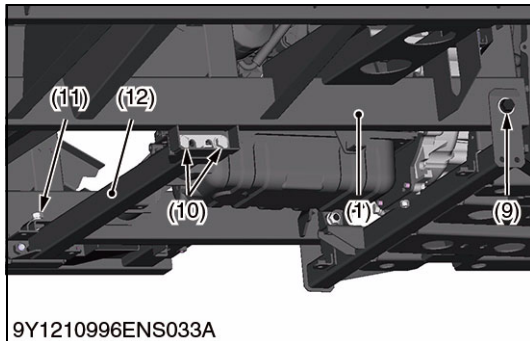
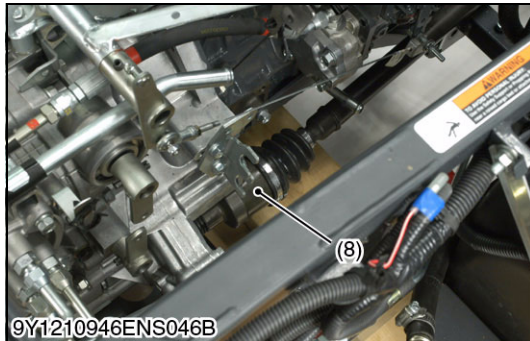
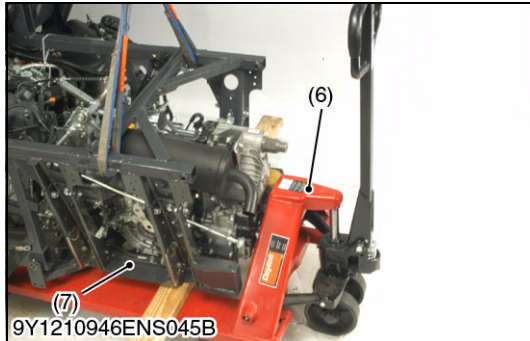
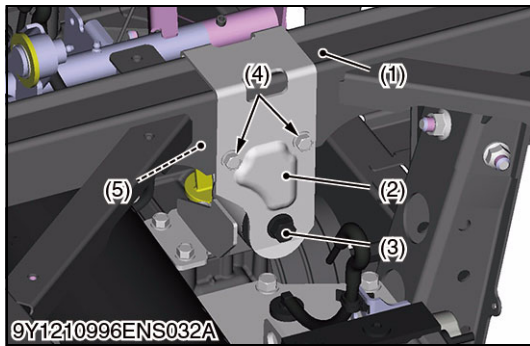
**(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the length of speed control pedal cable. (See page 2-S12.)

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Engine Stop Solenoid Connector | (3) Glow Plug Connector     |
| (2) Speed Control Pedal Cable      | (4) Thermo Sensor Connector |

9Y1210996ENS0048US0





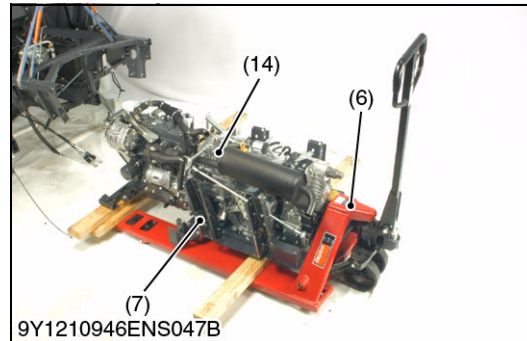
### Dismounting Transmission and Engine One Piece Assembly

1. Remove the upper mission support (2) with collars (5).
2. Set the hand pallet trucks or equivalent (6) under the mission frame (7) and engine support (12) as shown in figure.
3. Secure the mainframe (1) with straps and lift using a hoist as shown in figure.
4. Remove the engine support bolts (11) and engine support flange bolts (10).
5. Remove the mission frame reamer bolts (9) and mission frame flange bolts (13) with nuts.
6. Disconnect the 4WD propeller shaft (8) from the transmission.
7. Lift the main frame and remove the transmission and engine assembly (14).

#### (When reassembling)

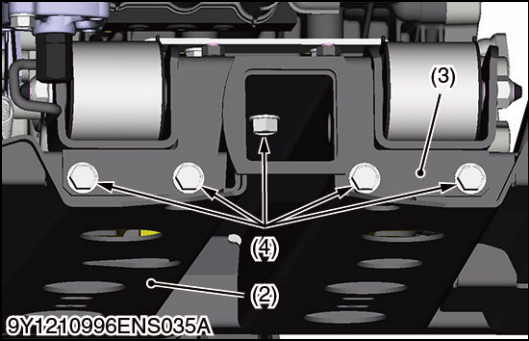
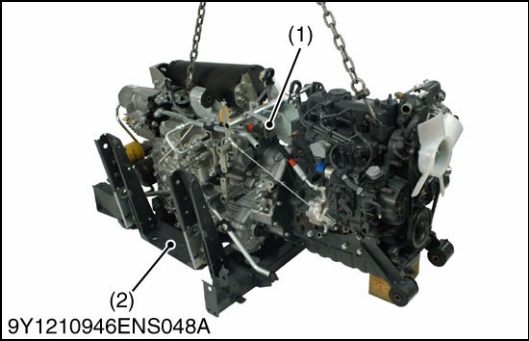
- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to 4WD propeller shaft (14) before installing onto transmission.
- When connecting the engine support (12) to the main frame (1), tighten the engine support bolts (11) first, then tighten the engine support flange bolts (10).

Tightening torque	Mission frame flange bolt (X12)	
	Engine support flange bolt (X4)	77.5 to 90.2 N·m
	Mission frame reamer bolt (X2)	7.90 to 9.20 kgf·m
	Upper mission support reamer bolt	57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
	Engine support bolt (X2)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m
		4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m
		35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
	Upper mission support flange bolt (X2)	23.5 to 27.5 N·m
		2.40 to 2.80 kgf·m
		17.4 to 20.2 lbf·ft



- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Main Frame                        | (8) 4WD Propeller Shaft               |
| (2) Upper Mission Support             | (9) Mission Frame Reamer Bolt         |
| (3) Upper Mission Support Reamer Bolt | (10) Engine Support Flange Bolt       |
| (4) Upper Mission Support Flange Bolt | (11) Engine Support Bolt              |
| (5) Collar                            | (12) Engine Support                   |
| (6) Hand Pallet Truck                 | (13) Mission Frame Flange Bolt        |
| (7) Mission Frame                     | (14) Transmission and Engine Assembly |

9Y1210996ENS0049US0



**Mission Frame**

- 1. With a hoist, lift the transmission and engine assembly (1) with mission frame (2).
- 2. Remove the mission support flange bolts (4) and mission frame (2).

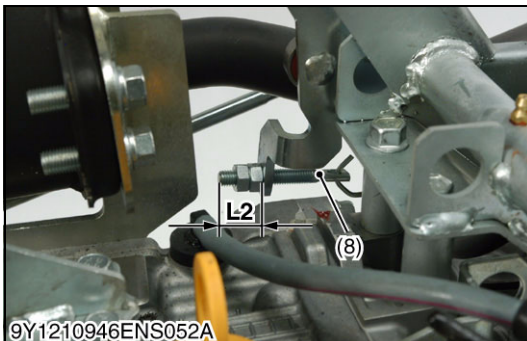
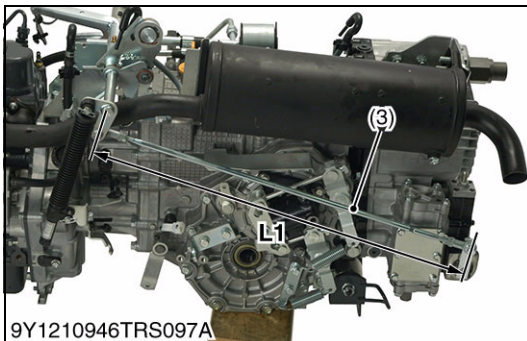
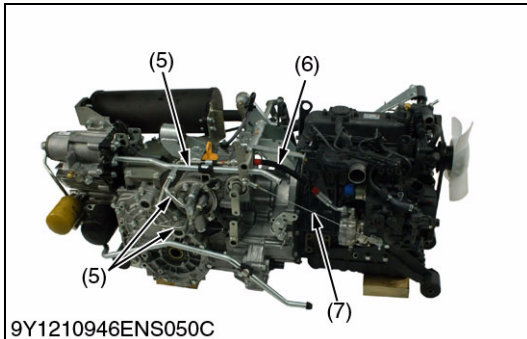
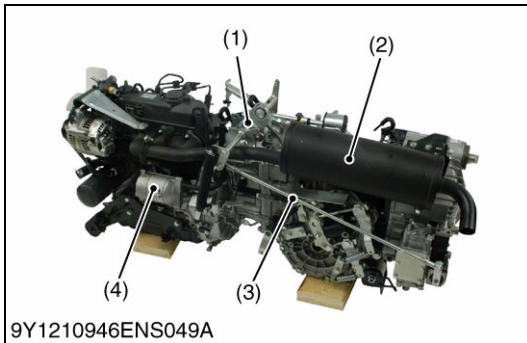
**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	Mission support flange bolts (X5)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

- (1) Transmission and Engine Assembly (3) Mission Support
- (2) Mission Frame (4) Mission Support Flange Bolt

9Y1210996ENS0050US0

### [3] SEPARATING TRANSMISSION AND ENGINE



#### Linkage, Muffler, Starter and Hydraulic Pipe

1. Remove the HST rod (3).
2. Remove the engine cable (7).
3. Remove the HST linkage (1).
4. Remove the muffler (2).
5. Remove the starter (4).
6. Remove the hydraulic hose (6) and hydraulic pipes (5).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the length the HST rod (3).
- Replace the muffler gasket with new one.

- (1) HST Linkage
- (2) Muffler
- (3) HST Rod
- (4) Starter
- (5) Hydraulic Pipe
- (6) Hydraulic Hose
- (7) Engine Cable
- (8) Tension Bolt

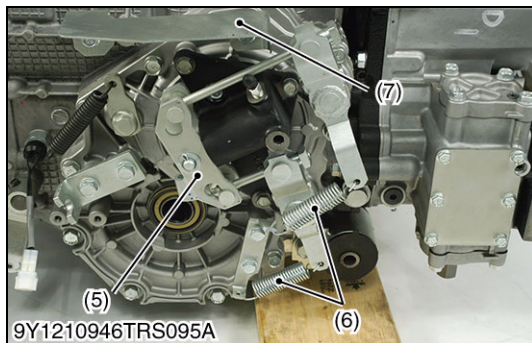
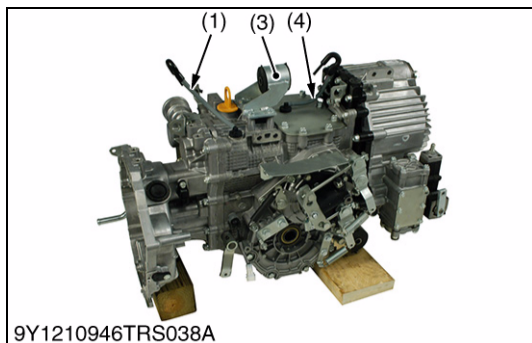
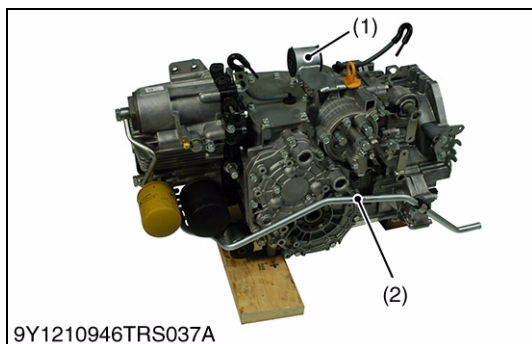
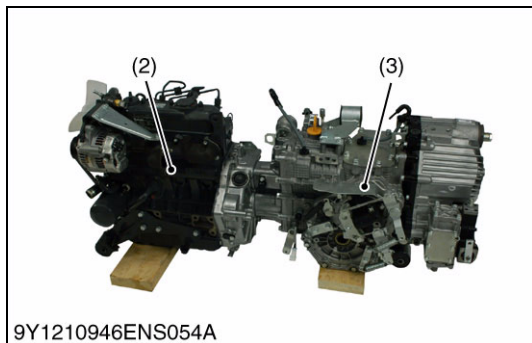
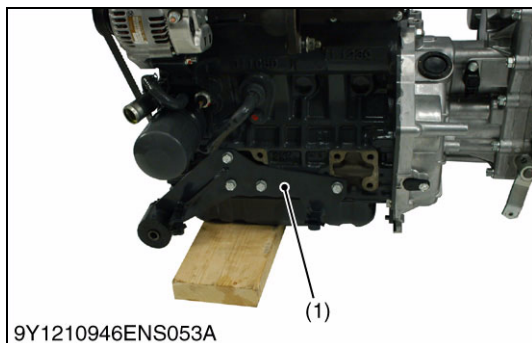
#### **(Reference)**

**L1: 620 mm (24.4 in.)**

**L2: 20 mm (0.79 in.)**

9Y1210996ENS0051US0





### **Separate the Transmission and Engine Assembly**

1. Remove the engine support (1).
2. Remove the engine mounting screws to separate the engine from the transmission.
3. Install the engine stand.

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Apply grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to spline hole of input flange.
- Apply liquid gasket (LOCTITE-5699 or equivalent) to joint face of engine rear and plate and the transmission case.

- (1) Engine Support  
(2) Engine

- (3) Transmission

9Y1210996ENS0052US0

### **Outer Parts**

1. Remove the hydraulic pipe (2)
2. Remove the mission upper bracket (1).
3. Remove the breather hoses (3), (4).
4. Remove the stay (7).
5. Remove the springs (6).
6. Remove the equalizer (5).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust the brake rod and parking brake cable.  
(See page 4-S7.)

- (1) Upper Bracket  
(2) Hydraulic Pipe  
(3) Breather Hose  
(4) Breather Hose

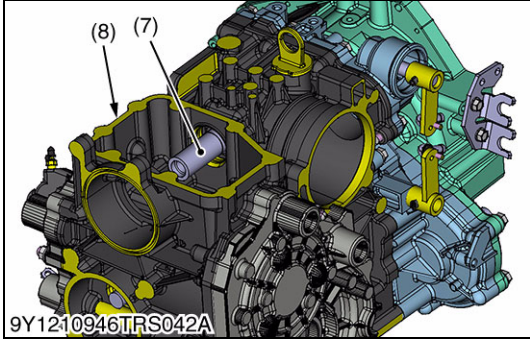
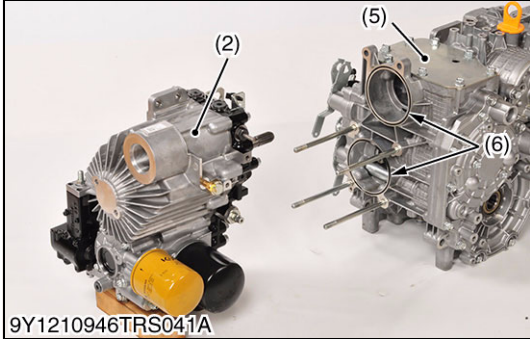
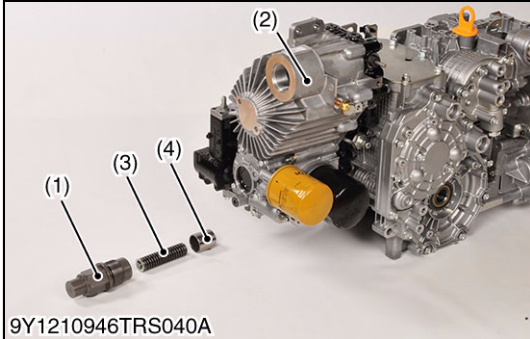
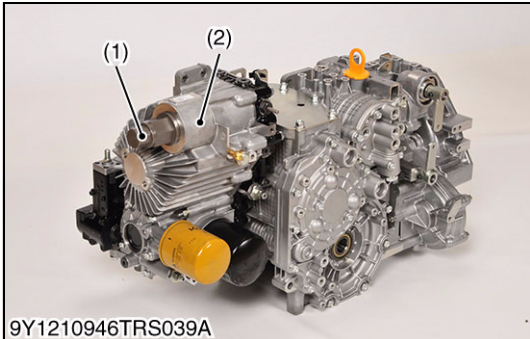
- (5) Equalizer  
(6) Spring  
(7) Stay

9Y1210996TRS0020US0

# 6. DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

## [1] TRANSMISSION

### (1) Removing HST Assembly



#### HST Assembly

- 1. Remove the piston case (1), spring (3) and piston (4).
- 2. Remove the HST assembly (2).

#### (When reassembling)

- Remove the upper cover (5).
- Be sure not to damage the O-rings (6).
- Align the HST output shaft and spline of coupling (7).
- Replace the upper cover gasket (8) with new one.

Tightening torque	HST assembly mounting nut	39 to 44 N·m 4.0 to 4.4 kgf·m 29 to 32 lbf·ft
	Piston case	70 to 80 N·m 7.2 to 8.1 kgf·m 52 to 59 lbf·ft

- (1) Piston Case

(2) HST Assembly

(3) Spring

(4) Piston
- (5) Upper Cover

(6) O-ring

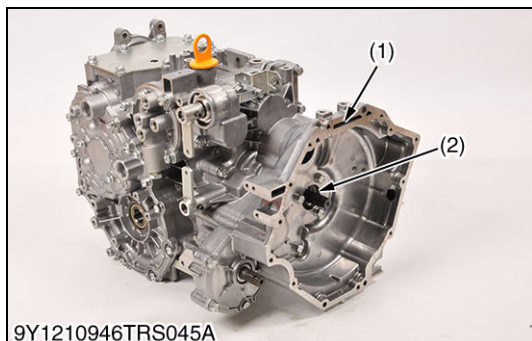
(7) Coupling

(8) Gasket

9Y1210996TRS0021US0



## (2) Disassembling Transmission



### Fly Wheel Cover

1. Remove the fly wheel cover (1).

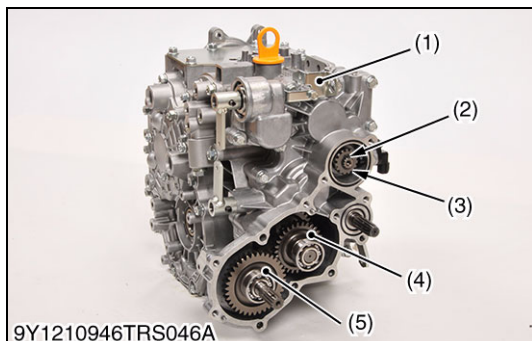
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Be sure not to damaged the O-ring (2).
- Apply liquid gasket (Three Bond 1216E or equivalent) to joint face the fly wheel cover and front cover.

(1) Fly Wheel Cover

(2) O-ring

9Y1210996TRS0022US0



### Four Wheel Drive Gear Shaft and Pulse Gear

1. Remove the four wheel drive gear shaft (5) and shifter gear (4).
2. Remove the air-clip (2) and pulse gear (3).
3. Remove the valve arm plate (1).

(1) Valve Arm Plate

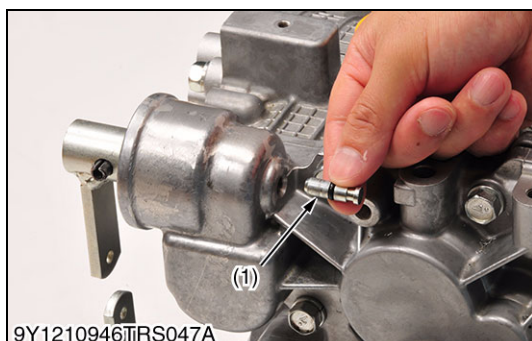
(4) Shifter Gear

(2) Air-clip

(5) Four Wheel Drive Gear Shaft

(3) Pulse Gear

9Y1210996TRS0023US0



### Control Valve Lever and Control Valve Arm

1. Remove the pin (1).
2. Remove the spring pin (4) and control valve lever (5).
3. Remove the internal snap ring (2) and valve arm cover (3).
4. Remove the control valve arm (6).

(1) Pin

(4) Spring Pin

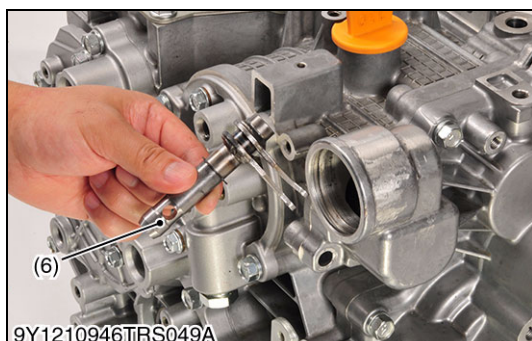
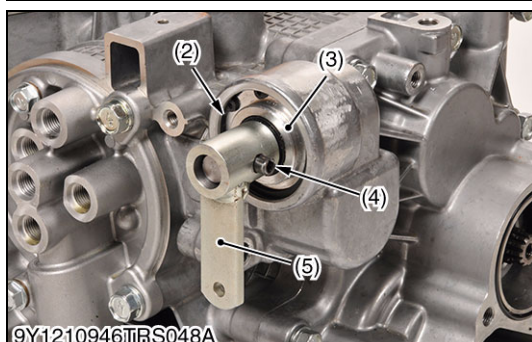
(2) Internal Snap Ring

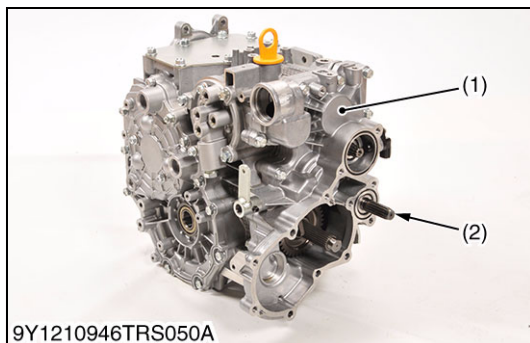
(5) Control Valve Lever

(3) Valve Arm Cover

(6) Control Valve Arm

9Y1210996TRS0024US0





### Front Cover and Dipstick

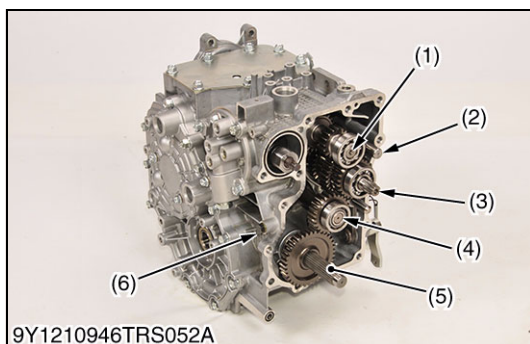
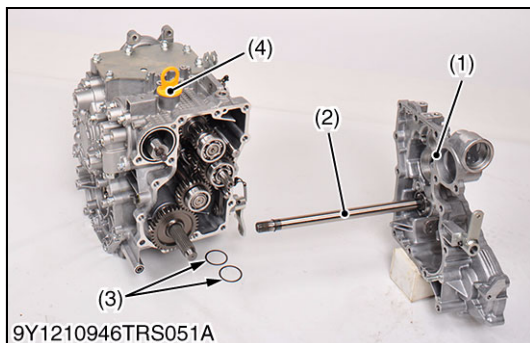
1. Remove the front cover (1) with input shaft (2).
2. Remove the dipstick (4).

#### (When reassembling)

- Be sure set the shims (3) to front cover (1).

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| (1) Front Cover | (3) Shim     |
| (2) Input Shaft | (4) Dipstick |

9Y1210996TRS0025US0



### Shaft Assemblies

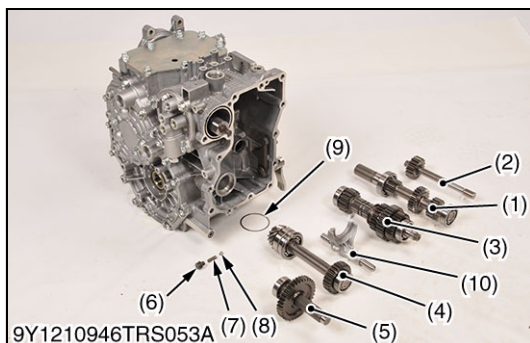
1. Remove the bolt (6) and spring (7) and ball (8).
2. Remove the four wheel drive gear shaft (5).
3. Remove the shaft assembly with shifter (10).

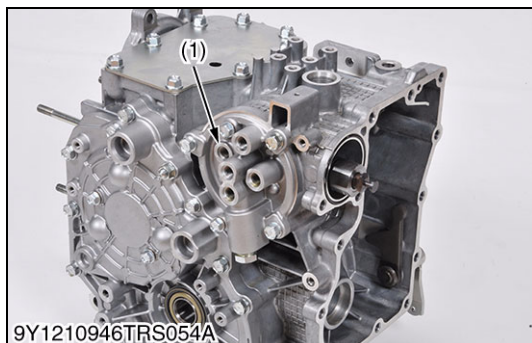
#### (When reassembling)

- Use same number of shim (9) as before disassembling.

- |                                   |              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| (1) 17T-23T-11T Gear Shaft        | (6) Bolt     |
| (2) Idle Gear Shaft               | (7) Spring   |
| (3) Range Gear Shaft Assembly     | (8) Ball     |
| (4) 13T Spiral Bevel Pinion Shaft | (9) Shim     |
| (5) Four Wheel Drive Gear Shaft   | (10) Shifter |

9Y1210996TRS0026US0





### **Control Valve**

1. Remove the valve cover (1) with control valve (3).

#### **(When reassembling)**

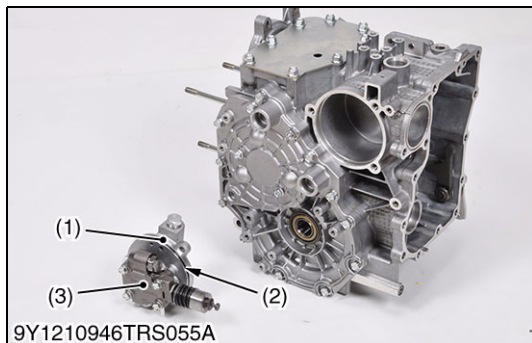
- Be sure not to damage the O-ring (2).

(1) Valve Cover

(3) Control Valve

(2) O-ring

9Y1210996TRS0027US0

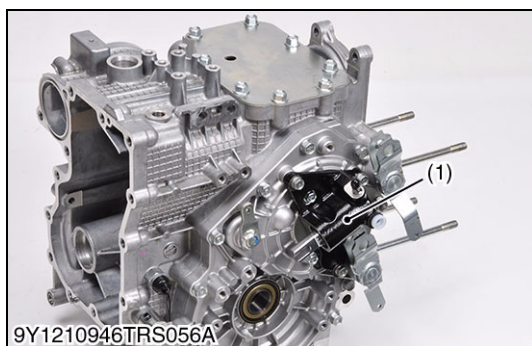


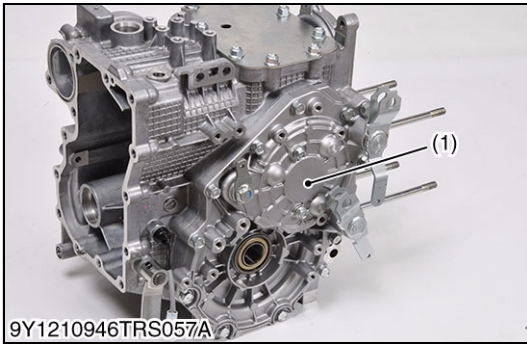
### **Brake Cylinder**

1. Remove the brake cylinder (1).

(1) Brake Cylinder

9Y1210996TRS0028US0



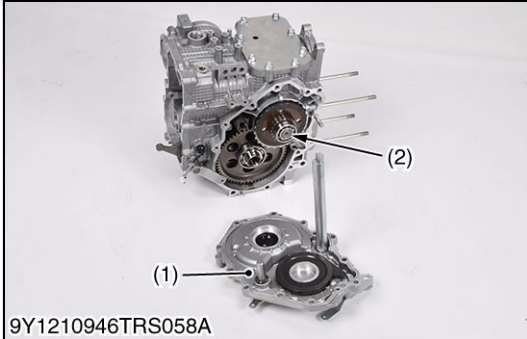


### Side Cover L.H., Differential Gear Shaft, and Final Gear

1. Remove the side cover L.H. (1).
2. Remove the brake disks (5) and friction plate (4).
3. Remove the brake plate (3).
4. Remove the differential gear shaft (2) with differential lock clutch (6) and spring (7).
5. Remove the final gear (8).

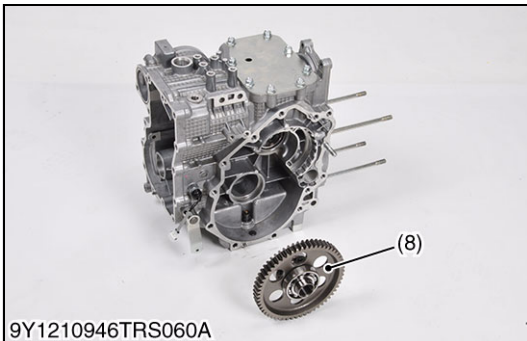
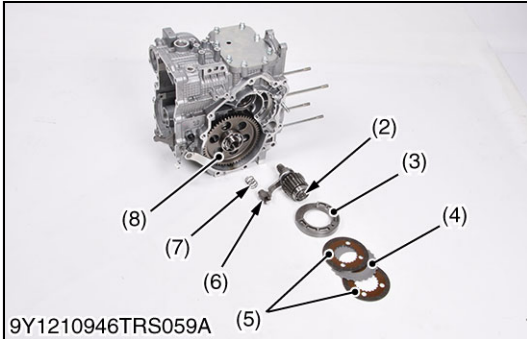
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Apply liquid gasket (Three Bond 1216E or equivalent) to joint face of side cover L.H. (1) and transmission case.

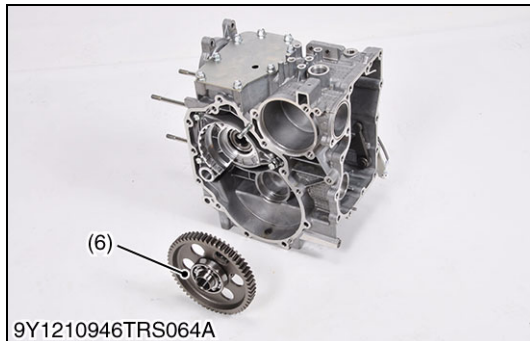
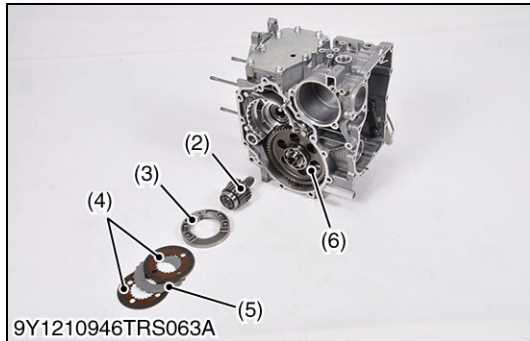
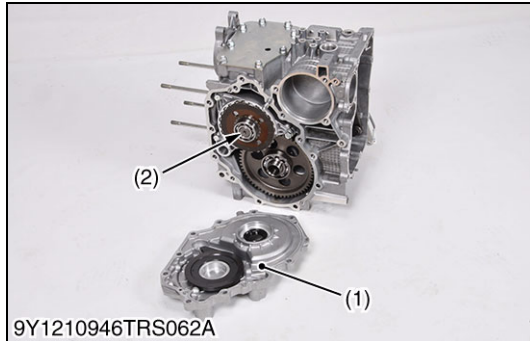


- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) Side Cover L.H.         | (5) Brake Disk               |
| (2) Differential Gear Shaft | (6) Differential Lock Clutch |
| (3) Brake Plate             | (7) Spring                   |
| (4) Friction Plate          | (8) Final Gear               |

9Y1210996TRS0029US0







### **Side Cover R.H., Differential Gear Shaft, and Final Gear**

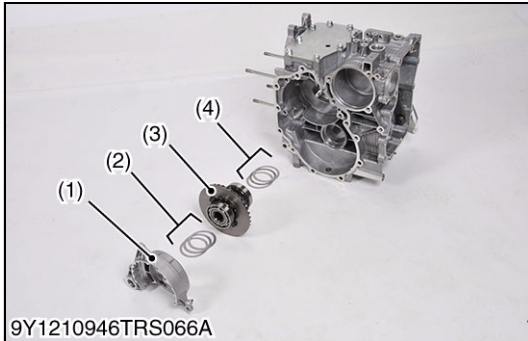
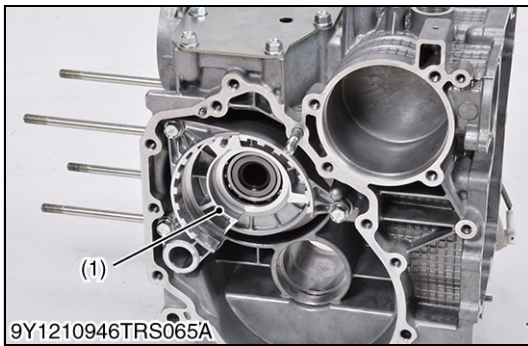
1. Remove the side cover R.H. (1).
2. Remove the brake disks (4) and friction plate (5).
3. Remove the brake plate (3).
4. Remove the differential gear shaft (2).
5. Remove the final gear (6).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Apply liquid gasket (Three Bond 1216E or equivalent) to joint face of side cover R.H. (1) and transmission case.

- |                             |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Side Cover R.H.         | (4) Brake Disk     |
| (2) Differential Gear Shaft | (5) Friction Plate |
| (3) Brake Plate             | (6) Final Gear     |

9Y1210996TRS0030US0



### **Differential Gear Assembly**

1. Remove the bearing holder (1), noting the number of right shims (2).
2. Remove the differential gear assembly (3), noting the number of shims (2).

#### **(When reassembling)**

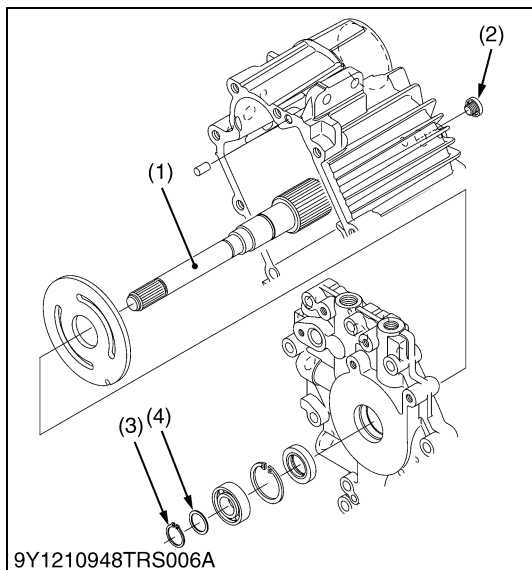
- Use same number of shims as before disassembling.

(1) Bearing Holder  
(2) Shim

(3) Differential Gear Assembly  
(4) Shim

9Y1210996TRS0031US0

### (3) Disassembling HST



#### Port Block Cover

1. Remove the plug (2) and install the M10 × pitch 1.0 mm screw.
2. Remove the snap ring (3) and washer (4).
3. Remove the bearing holder (5).
4. Remove the port block cover (6).

#### (When reassembling)

- Replace the port block cover gasket (7) with a new one.

Tightening torque	Port block cover mounting screw	39 to 44 N·m 4.0 to 4.4 kgf·m 29 to 32 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------------	---

(1) Motor Shaft

(2) Plug

(3) Snap Ring

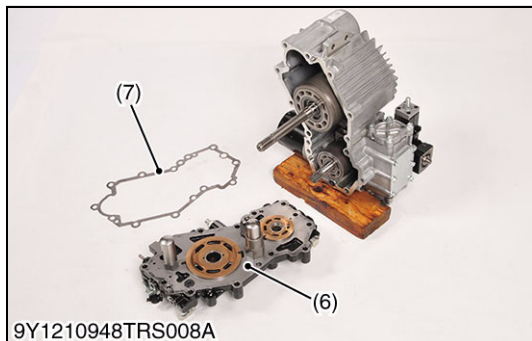
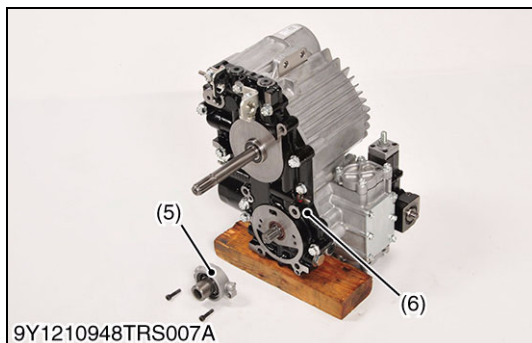
(4) Washer

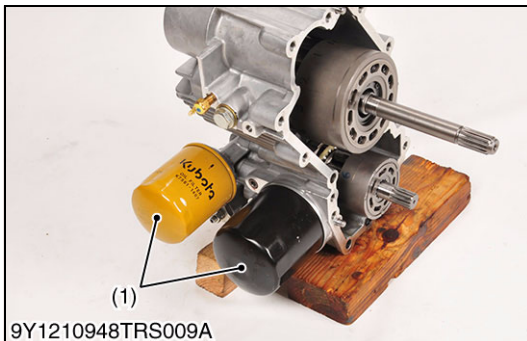
(5) Bearing Holder

(6) Port Block Cover

(7) Gasket

9Y1210996TRS0032US0



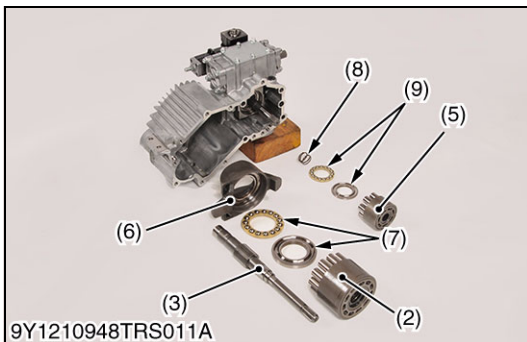
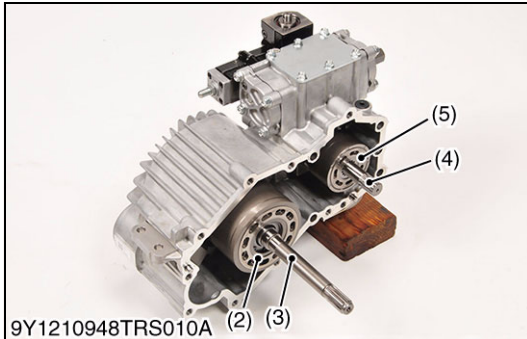


### Cylinder Block

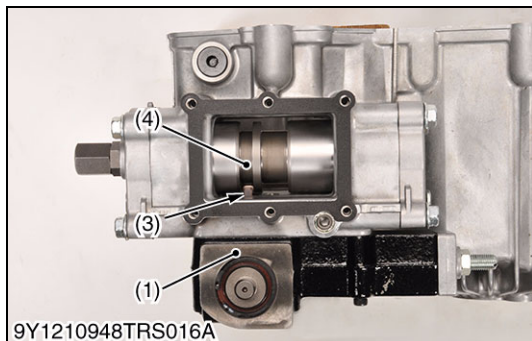
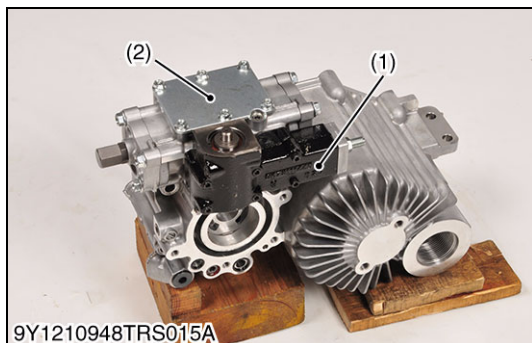
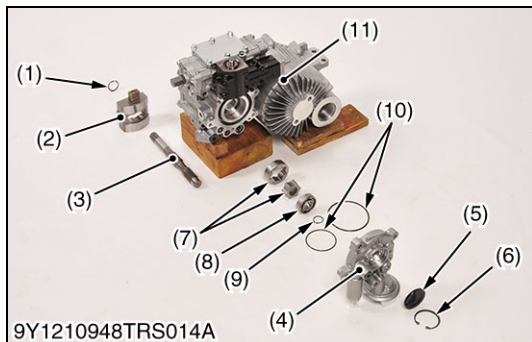
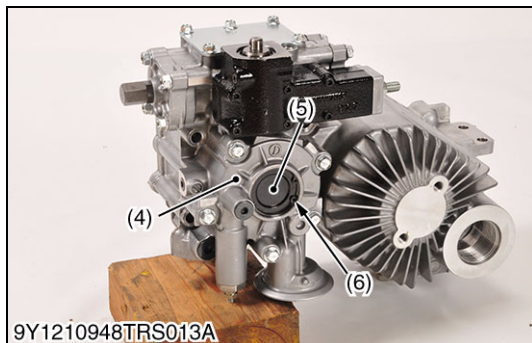
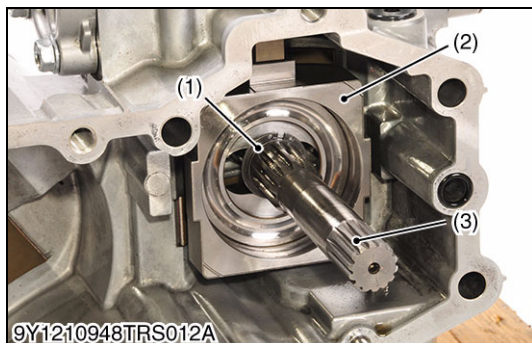
1. Remove the filters (1).
2. Remove the motor cylinder block (2) with motor shaft (3).
3. Remove the pump cylinder block (5).

- |                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Filter                 | (6) Swashplate     |
| (2) Cylinder Block (Motor) | (7) Thrust Bearing |
| (3) Motor Shaft            | (8) Spring         |
| (4) Pump Shaft             | (9) Thrust Bearing |
| (5) Cylinder Block (Pump)  |                    |

9Y1210996TRS0033US0







### Pump Shaft

1. Remove the external snap ring (1) and swashplate (2).
2. Remove the internal snap ring (6) and plug (5).
3. Remove the external snap ring (9) and pump shaft (3).
4. Remove the charge pump case (4).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Place the swashplate (2) into the HST case (11), align the slot guide of swashplate and servo piston.
- Align in the same direction the alignment mark of the rotors.
- Be careful not to damage the O-ring (10) on the charge pump case (4).
- Replace the plug (5) with a new one.

Tightening torque	Charge pump case mounting screw	18 to 21 N·m 1.9 to 2.1 kgf·m 14 to 15 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------------	---

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) External Snap Ring | (7) Charge Pump        |
| (2) Swashplate         | (8) Bearing            |
| (3) Pump Shaft         | (9) External Snap Ring |
| (4) Charge Pump Case   | (10) O-ring            |
| (5) Plug               | (11) HST Case          |
| (6) Internal Snap Ring |                        |

9Y1210996TRS0034US0

### Servo Regulator Assembly

1. Remove the servo piston cover (2).
2. Remove the regulator mounting hex. head screw.
3. Remove the servo regulator assembly (1).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Replace the gasket with new one.
- Install the servo regulator assembly to the housing, align the feedback lever (3) of regulator and groove of servo piston (4).

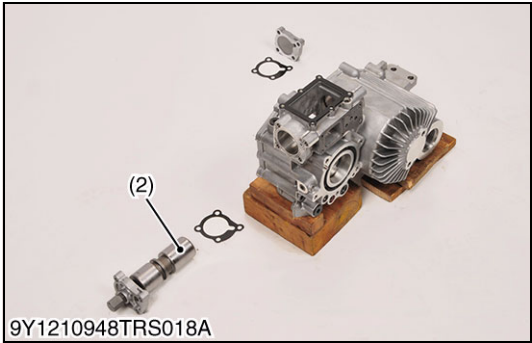
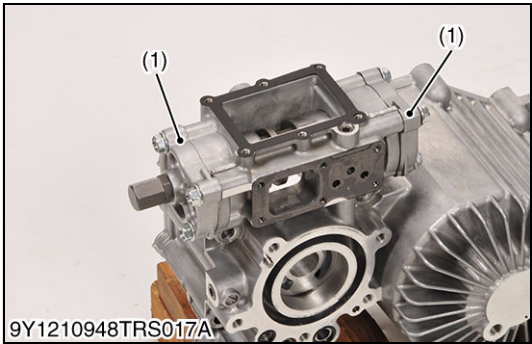
#### ■ NOTE

- **Since it has been factory-adjusted, do not disassemble the servo regulator assembly.**

Tightening torque	Regulator mounting hex. head screw	5.2 to 6.2 N·m 0.53 to 0.64 kgf·m 3.9 to 4.6 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------------------------	---

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) Servo Regulator Assembly | (3) Feedback Lever      |
| (2) Servo Piston Cover       | (4) Groove Servo Piston |

9Y1210996TRS0035US0



**Servo Piston Assembly**

- 1. Remove the servo piston assembly mounting hex. head screw.
- 2. Pull out the servo piston assembly (2) slightly by the hand.

**(When reassembling)**

- Replace the gasket with new one.

**NOTE**

- Be careful not to do damage the surface of servo piston.
- Do not disassemble the servo piston assembly, if the there is no problem.

Tightening torque	Servo piston and cover mounting screw	18 to 21 N·m 1.9 to 2.1 kgf·m 14 to 15 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------------------	---

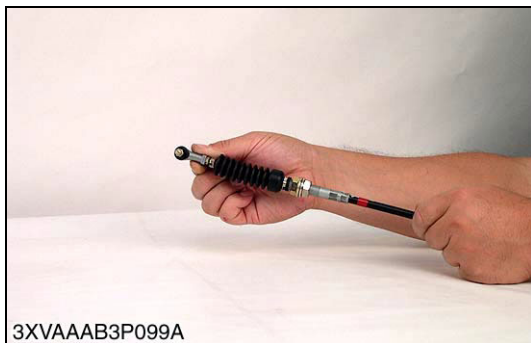
(1) Servo Piston Cover

(2) Servo Piston Assembly

9Y1210996TRS0036US0

# 7. SERVICING

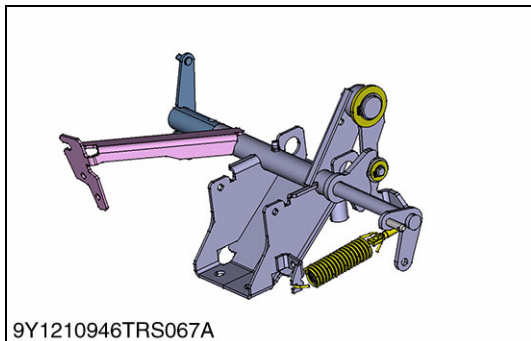
## [1] TRANSMISSION



### Cable

1. Check that the cable moves smoothly within the cable outer.
2. If the cable movement is not smooth, or if the cable is frayed, or if the cable outer is damaged, replace the cable.

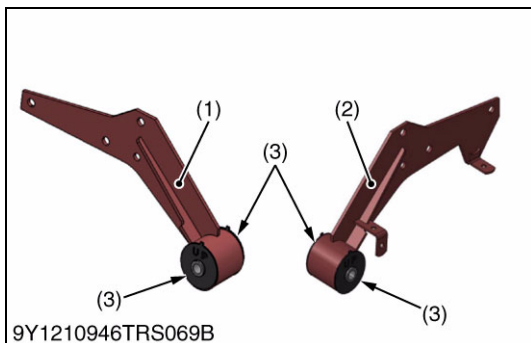
9Y1210996TRS0037US0



### HST Neutral Linkage

1. Check that the linkage moves smoothly.
2. If the linkage movement is not smooth, or if the inside bearing is worn, replace the bearing.

9Y1210996TRS0038US0



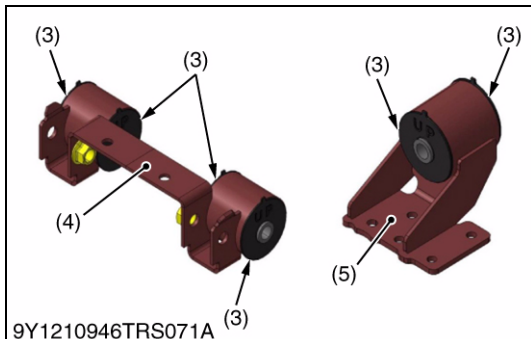
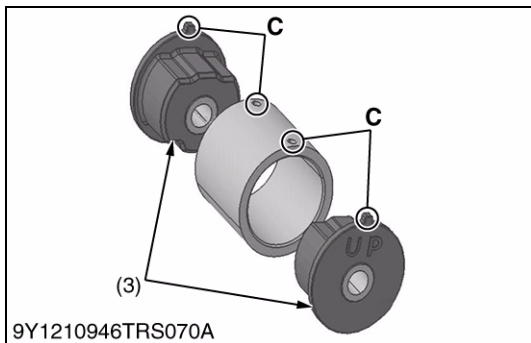
### Mission Frame and Rubber Bush

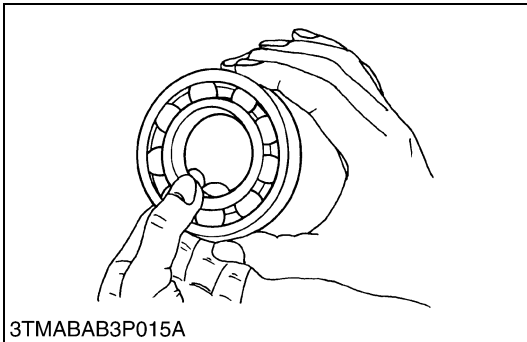
1. Visually check the engine support L.H. (2), engine support R.H. (1), mission upper bracket (5), mission bracket (4) and rubber bushes (3).
2. If the hole is miss happen, discolored, hardened or been otherwise damaged, replace the rubber bush.

- (1) Engine Support R.H.
- (2) Engine Support L.H.
- (3) Rubber Bush
- (4) Mission Bracket
- (5) Mission Upper Bracket

**C: Align Marks**

9Y1210996TRS0039US0





### **Checking Bearing**

1. Hold the inner race, and push and pull the outer race in all directions to check for wear and roughness.
2. Apply transmission fluid to the bearing, and hold the inner race. Then, turn the outer race to check rotation.
3. If there is any problem, replace it.

9Y1210996TRS0040US0



### **Checking Gear**

1. Visually check the tooth of gear which comes in contact.
2. If there is any doubt as to the condition of gears, replace it.

9Y1210996TRS0041US0



### **13T Spiral Bevel Pinion Shaft, Gear and Ball Bearing**

1. Remove the 25T gear by using the gear puller.
2. Check the ball bearing for abrasion, color change or other damage.
3. If there is any doubt as to the condition of a ball bearing, replace it.
4. Check both the shaft and the gear surface of the bearing contact point for abrasion, color change or other damage.
5. If there are any doubt as to the condition of shaft and gear.

9Y1210996TRS0042US0



### **Gear Shaft, Gear and Needle Bearing**

1. Remove the bearing.
2. Check the needle bearing for abrasion, color, change or other damage.
3. If there is any doubt as to the condition of a needle bearing, replace it.
4. Check both the shaft and the gear surface of the bearing contact point for abrasion, color change or other damage.
5. If there are any doubt as to the condition of shaft and gear.

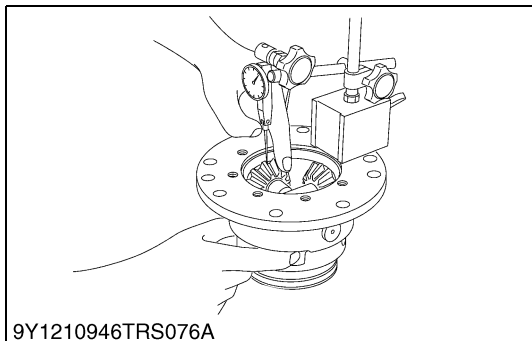
9Y1210996TRS0043US0



### **Back Idle Gear, Shaft and Ball Bearing**

1. Check the ball bearing for abrasion, color change, or other damage.
2. If there is any doubt as to the condition of a ball bearing, replace it.
3. Check both the shaft and gear bearing surface.

9Y1210996TRS0044US0



### **Backlash between Differential Pinion and Differential Side**

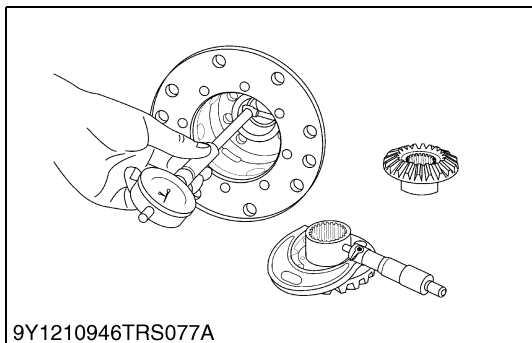
1. Set a dial indicator (lever type) on the tooth of the differential pinion.
2. Hold the differential side gear and move the differential pinion to measure the backlash.
3. If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, adjust with the differential side gear washer.

Backlash between differential pinion and differential side gear	Factory specification	0.15 to 0.30 mm 0.0059 to 0.011 in.
---	-----------------------	--

### **(Reference)**

- Thickness of differential side gear washer  
0.80 mm (0.031 in.)  
1.0 mm (0.039 in.)  
1.2 mm (0.047 in.)

9Y1210996TRS0045US0



### **Clearance between Differential Case and Differential Side Gear**

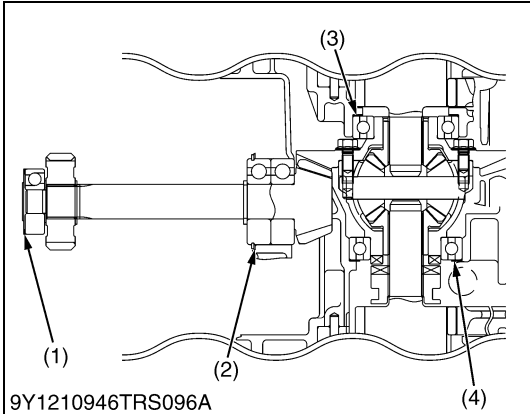
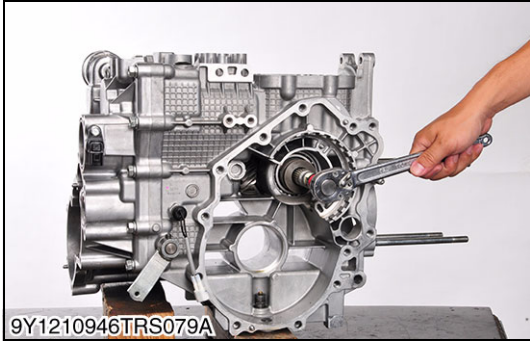
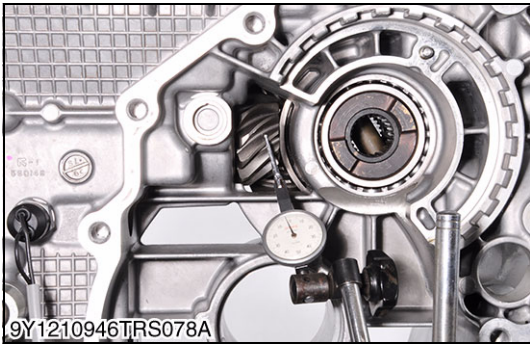
1. Measure the differential side gear boss O.D. with an outside micrometer.
2. Measure the differential case I.D. with a cylinder gauge and calculate the clearance.
3. If the clearance exceeds the allowable limit, replace faulty parts.

Clearance between differential case and differential side gear	Factory specification	0.050 to 0.151 mm 0.0020 to 0.0059 in.
	Allowable limit	0.30 mm 0.0118 in.

Differential case I.D.	Factory specification	38.000 to 38.062 mm 1.4961 to 1.4985 in.
Differential side gear O.D.	Factory specification	37.911 to 37.950 mm 1.4926 to 1.4941 in.

9Y1210996TRS0046US0





**Backlash and Tooth Contact between Spiral Bevel Gear and Spiral Bevel Pinion Shaft**

1. Set the dial indicator (lever type) with its finger on the tooth surface.
2. Measure the backlash by fixing the spiral bevel pinion shaft and moving the spiral bevel gear.
3. When the backlash is too large, decrease the number of shims (3), (4) in the side of the spiral bevel gear, and insert the shims (2) of the same thickness as the removed ones to the opposite side.  
When the backlash is too small, do the opposite way to increase backlash.
4. Adjust the backlash periphery by repeating the above procedure.
5. Apply red lead lightly over several teeth at three positions equally spaced on the spiral bevel gear.
6. Turn the differential gear using a jig as shown in the figure. (See page G-66.)
7. Check the tooth contact. If not proper, adjust according to the instructions below.

Backlash between spiral bevel gear and spiral bevel pinion shaft	Factory specification	0.20 to 0.30 mm 0.0079 to 0.011 in
--	-----------------------	---------------------------------------

**(Reference)**

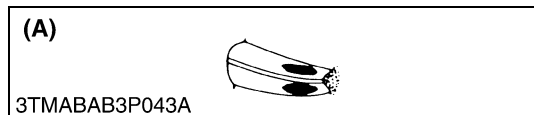
- Thickness of shims (1)  
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)  
0.5 mm (0.02 in.)
- Thickness of shims (2)  
0.8 mm (0.031 in.)  
0.9 mm (0.035 in.)  
1.0 mm (0.039 in.)  
1.1 mm (0.043 in.)  
1.2 mm (0.047 in.)
- Thickness of shims (3), (4)  
0.2 mm (0.008 in.)  
0.5 mm (0.02 in.)

- (1) Shim

(2) Shim
- (3) Shim

(4) Shim

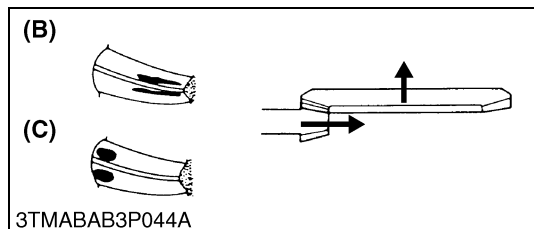
9Y1210996TRS0047US0



More than 35 % red lead contact area on the gear tooth surface. The center of tooth contact at 1/2 to 1/3 of the entire width from the small end.

**(A) Proper Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0048US0



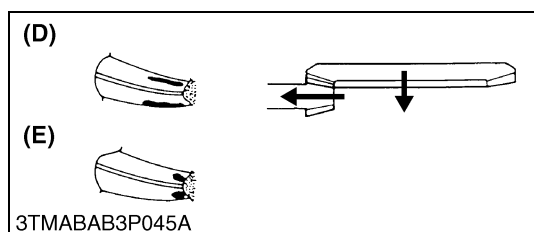
Change the adjusting collar to smaller size, and change the adjusting collar to larger size.

For move the spiral bevel gear rightward, reduce right side shim and add shim of the same thickness as the right side to left side.

**(B) Shallow Contact**

**(C) Heel Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0049US0



Change the adjusting collar to larger size, and change the adjusting collar to smaller size.

For move the spiral bevel gear leftward, reduce left side shim and add shim of the same thickness as the left side to right side.

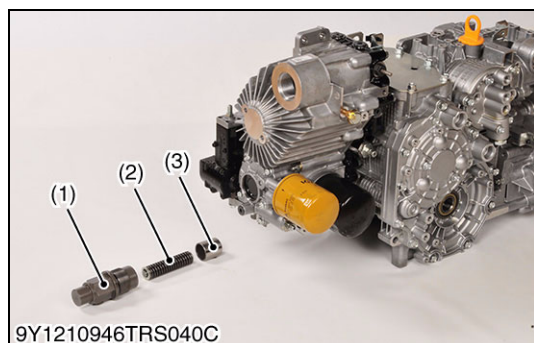
Repeat above until the proper tooth contact and backlash are achieved.

**(D) Deep Contact**

**(E) Toe Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0050US0

## [2] HST



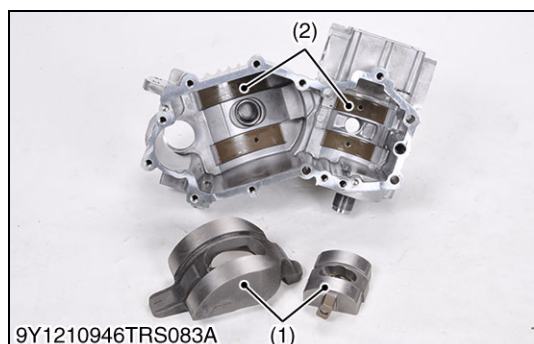
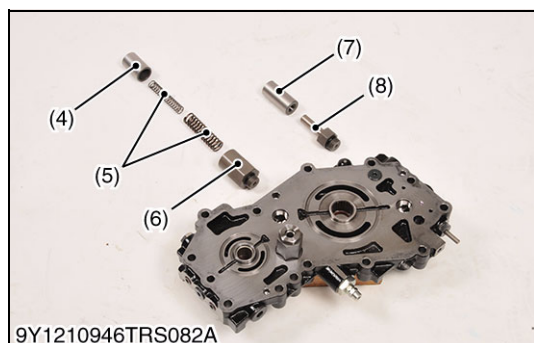
### Piston, Springs and Stopper Rod

1. Check the springs (2), (5) for breakage and wear.
2. Check the piston (4), (7) for free movement in the piston case (1).

- (1) Piston Case  
(2) Spring  
(3) Piston  
(4) Piston

- (5) Spring  
(6) Piston Case  
(7) Piston  
(8) Piston Rod

9Y1210996TRS0051US0



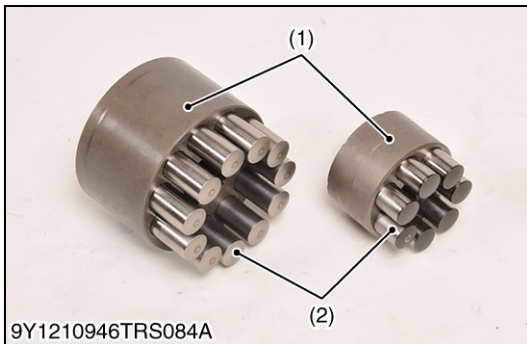
### Swashplate and Cradle Bearing

1. Check the surface of swashplate (1) and cradle bearings (2) for scratches and excessive wear.
2. If worn or scored, replace them.

- (1) Swashplate

- (2) Cradle Bearing

9Y1210996TRS0052US0



### Cylinder Block Bore and Pistons

1. Check the pistons (2) for their free movement in the cylinder block (1) bores.
2. If the piston or the cylinder block bore is scored, replace cylinder block assembly.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not interchange pistons (2) between pump and motor cylinder block (1).

(1) Cylinder Block

(2) Piston

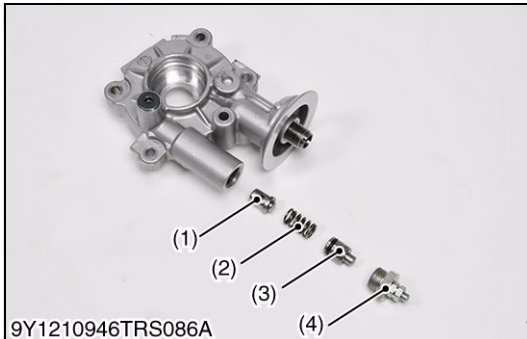
9Y1210996TRS0053US0



### Pump Shaft, Motor Shaft and Bearings

1. Check bearings for abrasion, color change, or other damage.
2. If there is any doubt as to the condition of a bearing, replace it.
3. Check the shaft surface for abrasion, color change or other damage.
4. If there is any doubt as to the condition of shaft, replace it.

9Y1210996TRS0054US0



### Charge Relief Valve

1. Check the spring (2) and charge relief valve poppet (1) for scratches, breakage and damage.
2. If any thing unusual, replace it.

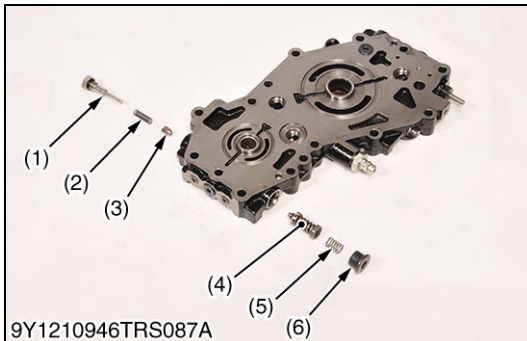
(1) Poppet

(3) Spring Holder

(2) Spring

(4) Plug

9Y1210996TRS0055US0



### Check and High Pressure Relief Valve

1. Check the check plug (1), spring (2), (5), poppet (3) and check and high pressure relief valve (4) for scratches and damage.
2. Check the valve seat (7), spring (8) and valve holder (9) for scratches and damage.
3. If any thing unusual replace it.

(1) Check Plug

(6) Plug

(2) Spring

(7) Valve Seat (Brake)

(3) Poppet

(8) Spring

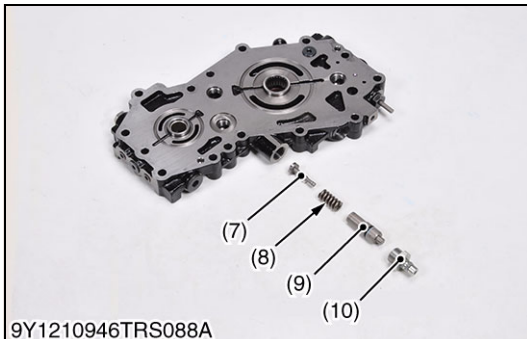
(4) Check and High Pressure Relief Valve (Traveling)

(9) Valve Holder

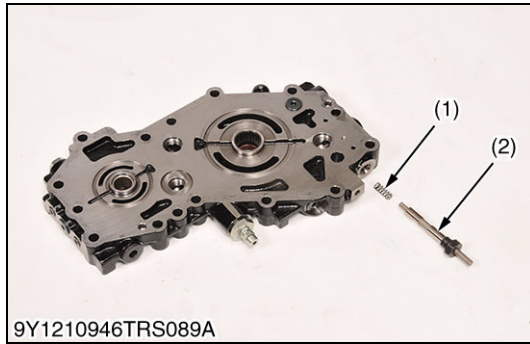
(5) Spring

(10) Plug

9Y1210996TRS0056US0







9Y1210946TRS089A

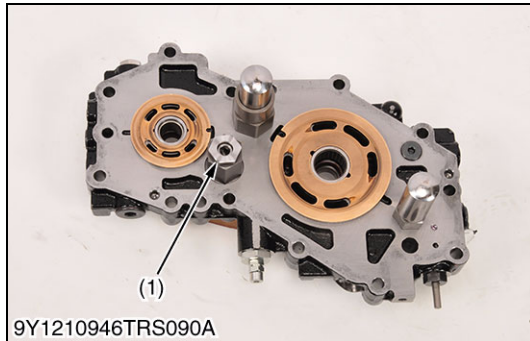
### Unload Valve

1. Check the spring (1) and spool (2) for abrasion and damage.
2. If anything unusual, replace it.

(1) Spring

(2) Spool

9Y1210996TRS0057US0



9Y1210946TRS090A

### Anti-cavitation Valve

1. Check the spring (4) for scratches, breakage and damage.
2. If anything unusual, replace it.
3. Check the poppet (3) for abrasion and damage.
4. If anything unusual, replace it.

(1) Anti-cavitation Valve

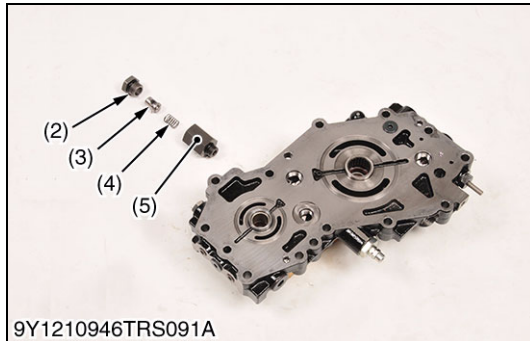
(4) Spring

(2) Valve Cover

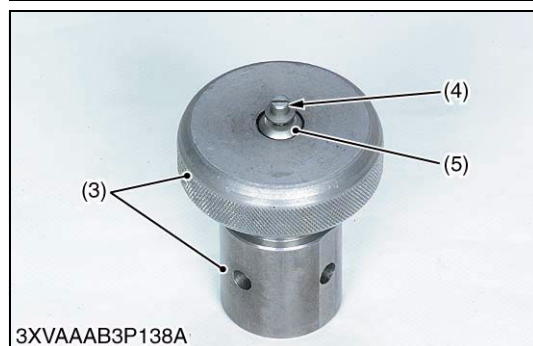
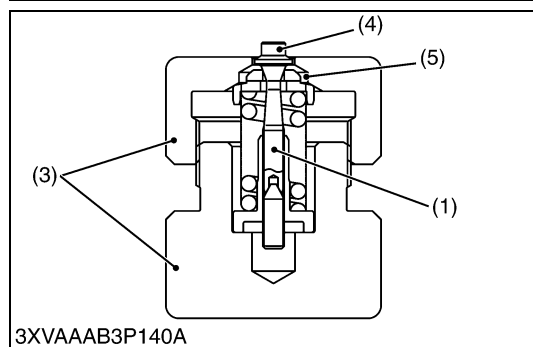
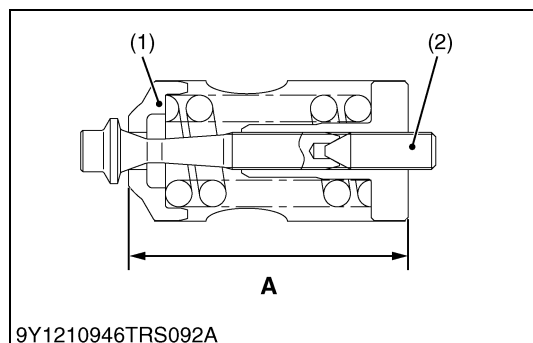
(5) Valve Case

(3) Poppet

9Y1210996TRS0058US0



9Y1210946TRS091A



### Readjustment of Relief Valve (When the HST does not work due to its loose hexagon socket head screw)

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- The KUBOTA does not recommend the readjustment of relief valve. And KUBOTA will recommend the exchange with genuine parts.
- As the HST may be damaged if the pressure is set to higher by mistake, be careful when adjusting it.

#### ■ NOTE

- The relief pressure is set in between (Forward: 25.5 to 26.5 MPa (260 to 270 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 3700 to 3840 psi), Reverse: 16.5 to 17.5 MPa (169 to 178 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 2400 to 2530 psi)) when shipped from the factory. But, for the purpose of after-sales services, as it is impossible to reset the pressure precisely as set in the factory, its setting range is defined as a slightly wider range between (Forward: 22.6 to 26.5 MPa (231 to 270 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 3280 to 3840 psi, Reverse: 15.3 to 17.5 MPa (156 to 178 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 2220 to 2530 psi)).

1. Measure the pre-adjustment distance "A".
2. Compress the spring of the relief valve with a relief valve assembling tool (3).
3. Then, find the distance "A" by turning the poppet (4) with a screwdriver.

Reference: The distance "A" changes by about 0.50 mm (0.020 in.) per one turn of the poppet (4).

4. Repeat the same operation a few times to find the distance "A" as it is difficult to acquire at the first time.
5. After finding the distance "A", hold the setscrew (6) to a vice and fasten the hexagon socket head screw (2) with specified torque.

On this occasion, use a copper plate, etc. for the vice jaws not to damage the setscrew (6).

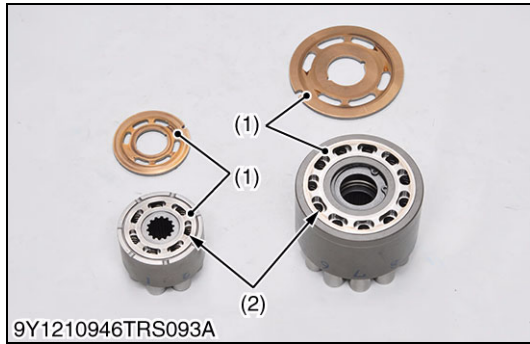
6. Install the relief valve in the HST.
7. Check the relief pressure as indicated in checking section. The distance "A" is for refresh only. Make sure to check the relief pressure after readjustment.
8. If the relief pressure does not fall within the readjustment pressure range, repeat the processes of the above item 1 onward.

Reference: The pressure changes by 1.47 MPa (15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 213.3 psi) per 0.1 mm (0.0039 in.) in distance "A".

Tightening torque	Hex. socket head screw	2.5 to 3.0 N·m 0.26 to 0.30 kgf·m 1.9 to 2.2 lbf·ft
Relief valve readjusting pressure	Traveling	24.5 to 27.5 MPa 250 to 280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 3560 to 3980 psi
Distance "A"	Reference value	Traveling 38.60 to 38.70 mm 1.520 to 1.523 in.

- |                                  |                |
|----------------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Relief Valve Assembly        | (4) Poppet     |
| (2) Hexagon Socket Head Screw    | (5) Valve Seat |
| (3) Relief Valve Assembling Tool | (6) Setscrew   |

9Y1210996TRS0059US0



### Cylinder Block Face and Valve Plate

1. Check the polished face (1) of cylinder block for scoring.
2. If scored, replace cylinder block assembly.
3. Check the spring (2) for breakage.
4. If broken, replace cylinder block assembly.
5. Check the valve plate for scratches, wear and erosion. (Run a finger nail across the valve plate surface. If worn, it will be felt.)
6. If worn or scored, replace.

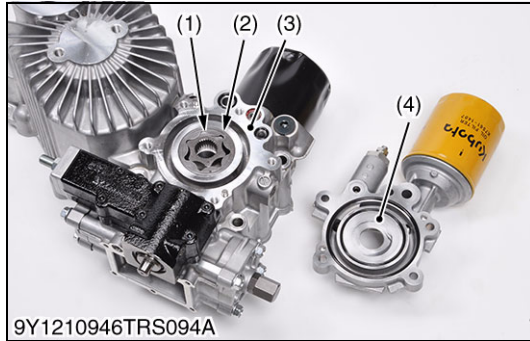
#### ■ NOTE

- After checking, coat them with transmission oil.
- Valve plates are not interchangeable.

(1) Polished Face

(2) Spring

9Y1210996TRS0060US0



### Charge Pump

1. Check the charge pump housing (3), pump cover (4) and the rotor (1), (2) for scratches and wear.
2. If scratch or worn, replace the charge pump complete assembly.

(1) Inner Rotor

(3) Charge Pump Housing

(2) Outer Rotor

(4) Pump Cover

9Y1210996TRS0061US0

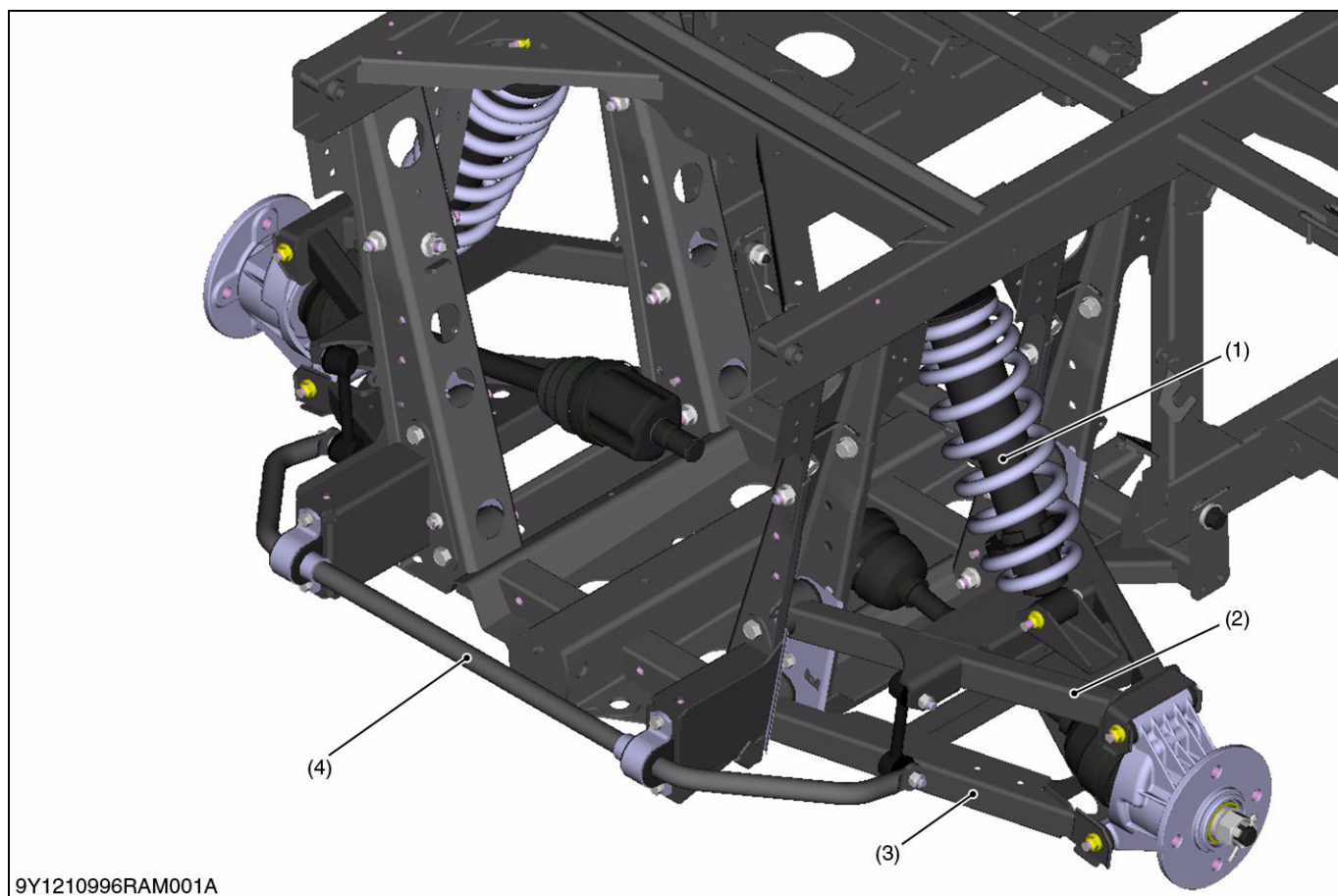
# **3 REAR AXLE**

# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. STRUCTURE.....	3-M1
-------------------	------

# 1. STRUCTURE



(1) Shock Absorber

(2) Upper Arm

(3) Lower Arm

(4) Stabilizer

The suspension is double wishbone type.

The suspension is made up of upper and lower arms (2), (3), a shock absorbers (1), and a stabilizer (4).

The stabilizer (4) performs the function of a torsion bar.

The stabilizer (4) is connected to the upper arm (2) by a link.

When the upper arm (2) moves up and down, the stabilizer (4) moves with it. When the arms on one side move, a differential is applied to the stabilizer link that is connected to the arms on the opposite side causing torsion on the stabilizer (4).

Based on torsion action of the stabilizer, a force is applied retaining its position so the arm connected is kept horizontally.

9Y1210996RAM0001US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	3-S1
2. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	3-S2
3. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING .....	3-S3
[1] ADJSUTING .....	3-S3
[2] PREPARATION .....	3-S4
(1) Rear Knuckle Case.....	3-S4
(2) Rear Shock Absorber .....	3-S5
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	3-S8
(1) Rear Knuckle Case.....	3-S8
[4] SERVICING.....	3-S8

# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
Noise When Start	1. CV joint bearing worn	Replace	3-S4
Noise While Forward And Reverse	1. CV joint bearing worn	Replace	3-S4
Noise	1. Bearings damaged or broken	Replace	3-S8

9Y1210996RAS0001US0



## 2. TIGHTENING TORQUES

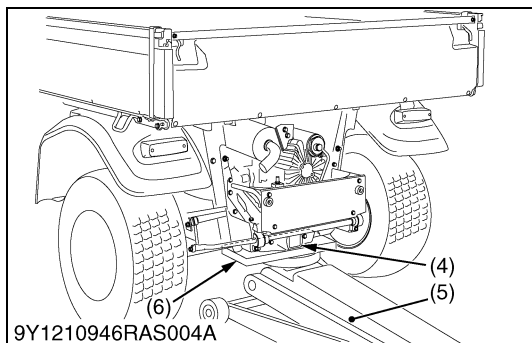
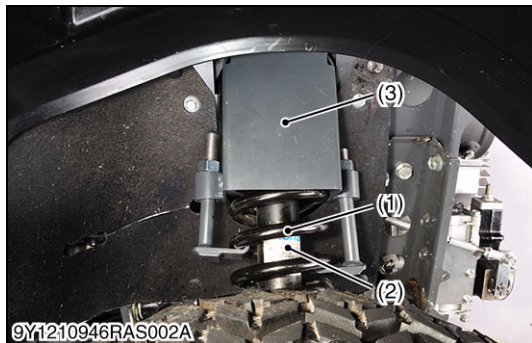
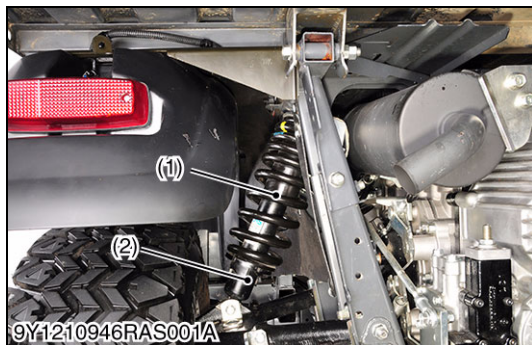
Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Rear axle slotted nut	190 to 200	19.4 to 20.3	141 to 147
Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2	7.91 to 9.19	57.2 to 66.5

9Y1210996RAS0002US0

### 3. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING

#### [1] ADJSUTING



#### Adjusting Rear Shock Absorber



#### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to work on a firm, flat an level surface with the engine shut off and parking brake "ON".
- Keep the position of the left right rear sock absorber equal. Uneven adjustment can cause poor handling and lose of control, which could lead to an accident.

1. Set the rear shock absorber adjusting tool (3) as shown in the figure.
2. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block (6) under the bottom plate (4) of the transmission frame.
3. Adjust the rear shock absorber springs, turn the adjusting sleeves on the shock absorbers to the desired position with the hook wrench (7).

#### [Shock absorber position]

Position	Spring	Load
1	Stronger	Heavy
2	↑	↑
3 (default)		
4	↓	↓
5	Weaker	Light

- (1) Spring  
(2) Shock Absorber  
(3) Rear Shock Absorber Adjusting Tool

- (4) Bottom Plate  
(5) Jack  
(6) Wooden Block  
(7) Hook Wrench

9Y1210996RAS0003US0

## [2] PREPARATION

### (1) Rear Knuckle Case



#### Rear Wheel

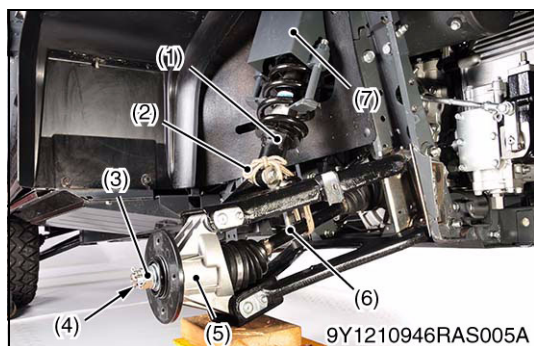
1. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block under the bottom plate of the transmission frame.
2. Remove the rear wheels (1).

#### (When reassembling)

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

(1) Rear Wheel

9Y1210996ENS0033US0



#### Rear Knuckle Case

##### ■ NOTE

- **CV joint shall not exceed the allowable bend angle  $\pm 25^\circ$  when being reassembled or disassembled.**

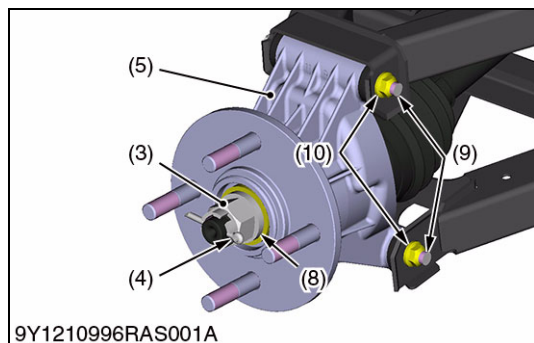
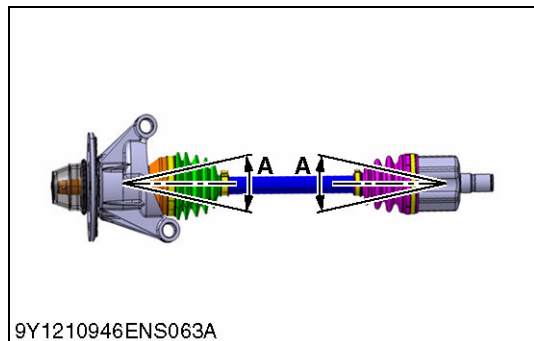
1. Set the rear shock absorber adjusting tool (7) as shown in the figure,
2. Support the CV joint (6) with a clamp (2) or equivalent to prevent the CV joint (6) from falling while removing the rear knuckle case (5).
3. Remove the cotter pin (4), rear axle slotted nut (3), and lock washer (8).
4. Remove the lock nuts (10) and flange bolts (9).
5. Remove the rear knuckle case (5).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply anti-fitting grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to spline of CV joint (6).
- After tightening the rear axle slotted nut (3) to specified torque, install a new cotter pin (4) as shown in the figure.

##### ■ NOTE

- **Tighten the slotted nut to 190 N·m (19.4 kgf·m, 140 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet and install cotter pin.**



Tightening torque	Rear axle slotted nut	190 to 200 N·m 19.4 to 20.3 kgf·m 141 to 147 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------	---

- (1) Rear Shock Absorber
- (2) Clamp
- (3) Rear Axle Slotted Nut
- (4) Cotter Pin
- (5) Rear Knuckle Case
- (6) CV Joint

- (7) Rear Shock Absorber Adjusting Tool
- (8) Lock Washer
- (9) Flange Bolt
- (10) Lock Nut

**A:  $\pm 25^\circ$**

9Y1210996RAS0004US0

## (2) Rear Shock Absorber



### Rear Wheel

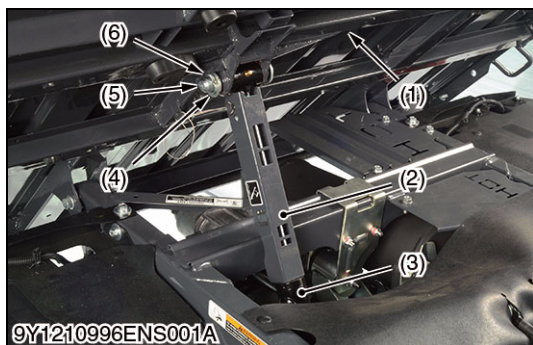
1. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block under the bottom plate of the transmission frame.
2. Remove the rear wheels (1).

#### (When reassembling)

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

(1) Rear Wheel

9Y1210996ENS003US0



### Cargo Bed

#### CAUTION

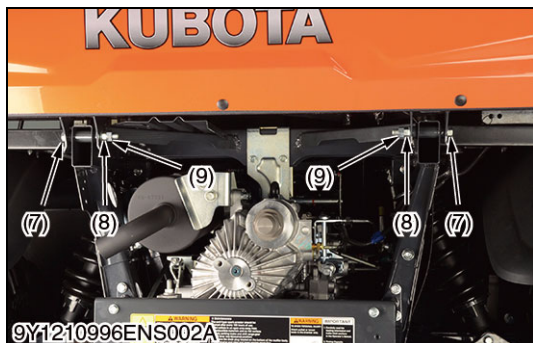
- Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---



- (1) Cargo Bed  
(2) Cylinder Lock  
(3) Hydraulic Cylinder  
(4) Washer  
(5) Clevis Pin

- (6) Cotter Pin  
(7) Bolt  
(8) Flange Nut  
(9) Lock Nut

9Y1210996ENS0009US0





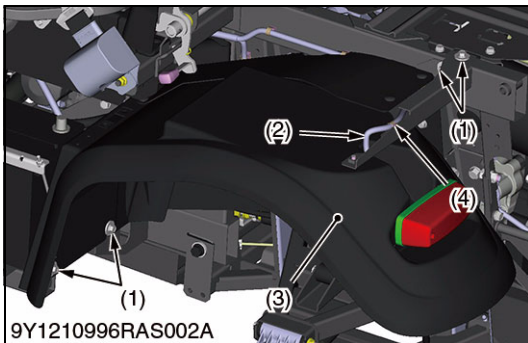
### **L.H. and R.H. Side Covers**

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuel cap (3) and R.H. side cover (2).  
Reinstall the fuel cap.

- (1) L.H. Side Cover  
(2) R.H. Side Cover

- (3) Fuel Cap

9Y1210996RAS0007US0



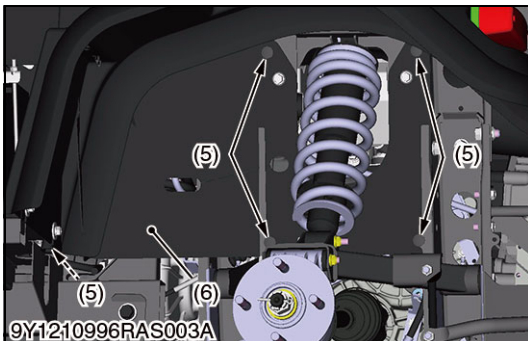
### **Fender**

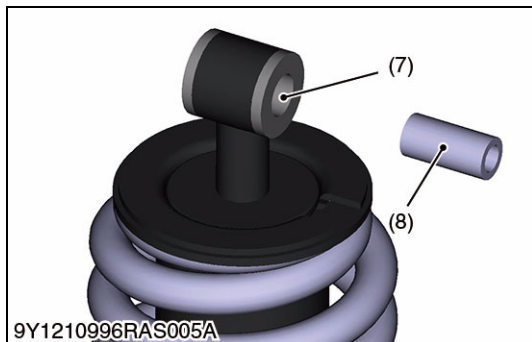
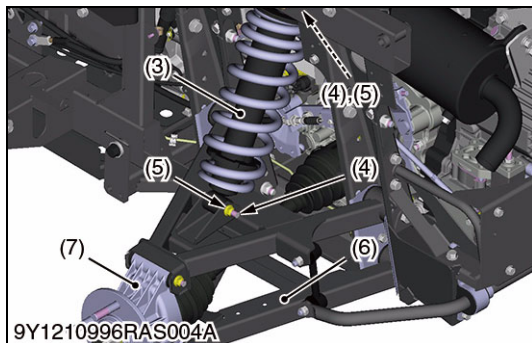
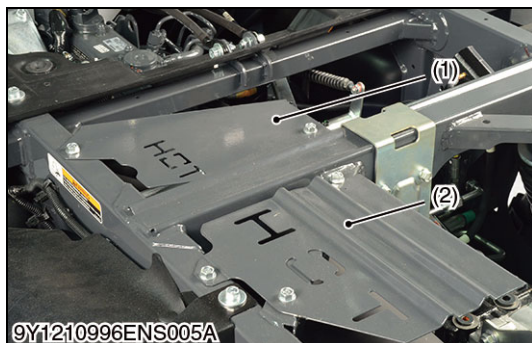
1. Disconnect the rear lamp connectors (2).
2. Remove the rear lamp harness from the clamps (4).
3. Remove the inner mud guard rivets (5).
4. Remove the bolts (1) and remove the rear fender (3) with the inner mud guard (6).

- (1) Bolt  
(2) Rear Lamp Connectors  
(3) Rear Fender

- (4) Clamp  
(5) Rivet  
(6) Inner Mud Guard

9Y1210996RAS0008US0





### **Rear Shock Absorber**

1. Remove the rear exhaust cover (1) and muffler cover (2).
2. Set a jack under the lower rear arm (6). Raise the jack until it touches the lower rear arm under the rear knuckle case (7).
3. Remove the flange bolts (4) and lock nuts (5).
4. Remove the rear shock absorber (3).

### **(When reassembling)**

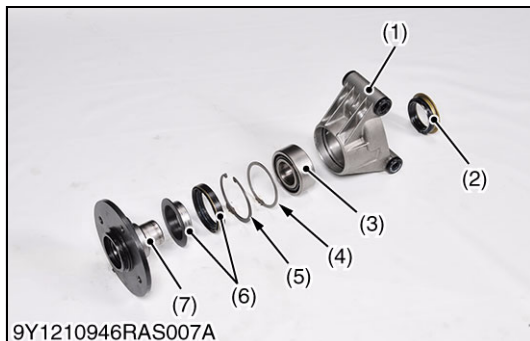
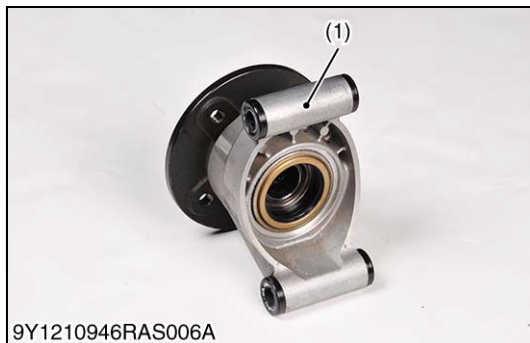
- Apply grease (Shell Godus S5 T100 or equivalent) to the rear shock absorber bushing (7) before inserting collar (8).

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) Rear Exhaust Cover  | (5) Lock Nut          |
| (2) Muffler Cover       | (6) Lower Rear Arm    |
| (3) Rear Shock Absorber | (7) Rear Knuckle Case |
| (4) Bushing             | (8) Collar            |

9Y1210996RAS0009US0

### [3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

#### (1) Rear Knuckle Case



#### Rear Knuckle Case

1. Tap out the rear axle (7).
2. Remove the oil seal (6).
3. Remove the internal snap ring (5) and spacer (4).
4. Remove the ball bearing (3).
5. Remove the oil seal (2).

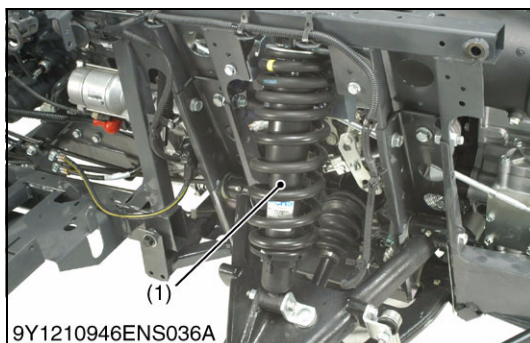
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Replace the oil seals with a new one.
- Apply grease (SHELL ALVANIA GREASE S2 or equivalent) the inside of the oil seal.

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Knuckle Case | (5) Internal Snap Ring |
| (2) Oil Seal     | (6) Oil Seal           |
| (3) Ball Bearing | (7) Rear Axle          |
| (4) Spacer       |                        |

9Y1210996RAS0005US0

### [4] SERVICING



#### Checking Shock Absorber

1. Visually check the shock absorber (1) for breaks or distortion.
2. If the shock absorber is damaged in any way, replace it.
3. Check for oil leakage at the shock absorber.
4. If oil leakage is noted, replace it.
5. Push, shorten the shock absorber, and check whether to return in former state.
6. Replace the shock absorber for the new one if it does not return to former state.
7. Visually check the bush in the upper and lower mountings of the rear shock absorber.
8. If they are worn, cracked, hardened, or otherwise damaged, replace them with new one.

- (1) Shock Absorber

9Y1210996RAS0006US0

# **4 BRAKES**

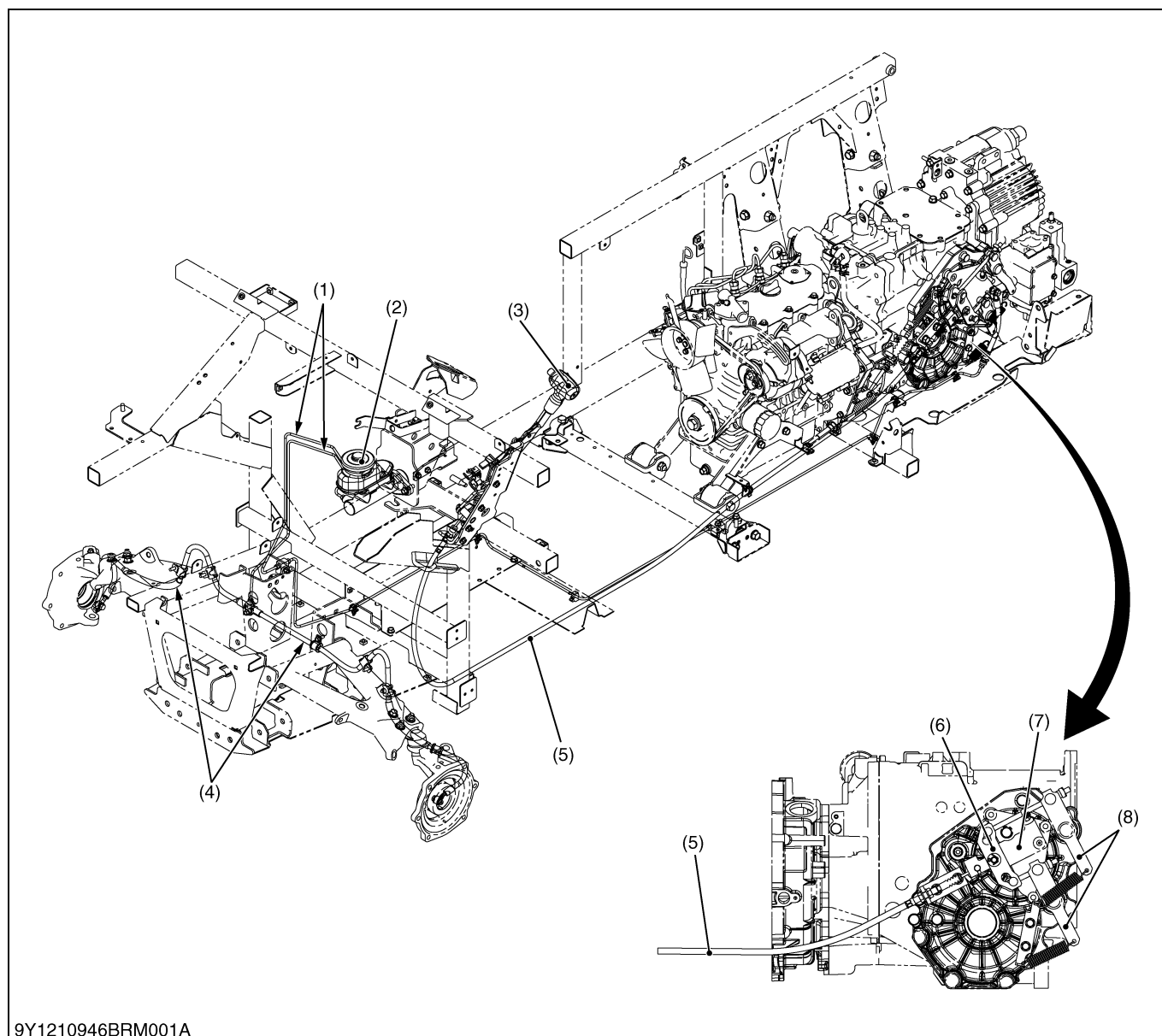


# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. GENERAL OUTLINE .....	4-M1
2. KNUCKLE (FRONT BRAKE) .....	4-M2
3. REAR BRAKE .....	4-M3
4. MASTER CYLINDER .....	4-M4
5. BRAKE OIL .....	4-M5
6. PARKING BRAKE .....	4-M6

# 1. GENERAL OUTLINE



(1) Brake Pipe  
(2) Master Cylinder

(3) Parking Brake Lever  
(4) Brake Hose

(5) Parking Brake Cable  
(6) Equalizer

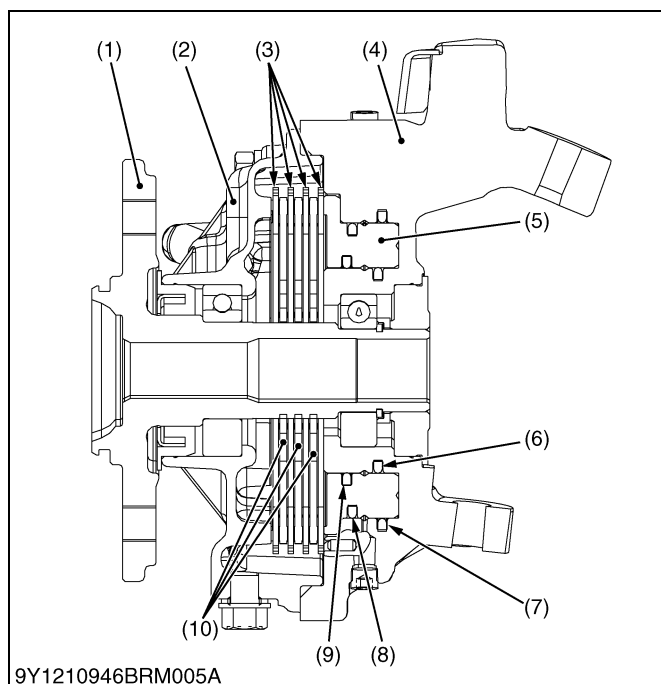
(7) Brake Cylinder  
(8) Brake Cam Lever

Description of the brake system with an illustration with all its component parts in place.

All the four wheels are equipped with an enclosed, wet multi-disk type brake. The system consists of brake pedal, master cylinder (2), brake hose (4), brake pipe (1), brake cylinder (7) and other parts.

9Y1210996BRM0001US0

## 2. KNUCKLE (FRONT BRAKE)



Basically, the brake body is similar to that of the mechanical wet disk brake. It is designed to brake when the brake disk (10) rotating together with the front axle (1) is pressed.

The knuckle (4) of the hydraulic brake serves as a master cylinder.

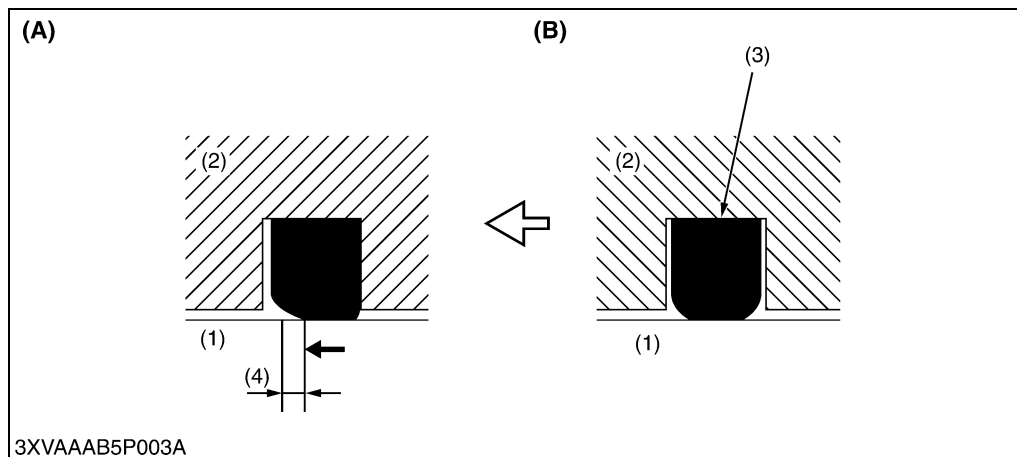
When brake oil pressure increases, the brake piston (5) is forced out and presses the brake disks against the knuckle cover (2), thereby causing braking. This brake uses three brake disks to obtain big braking force.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| (1) Front Axle    | (6) Brake Seal 3 |
| (2) Knuckle Cover | (7) Brake Seal 4 |
| (3) Plate         | (8) Brake Seal 2 |
| (4) Knuckle       | (9) Brake Seal 1 |
| (5) Brake Piston  | (10) Brake Disk  |

9Y1210996BRM0002US0

9Y1210946BRM0005A

### Automatic Brake Adjustment



- |  |
|--|
| (1) Knuckle                              |
| (2) Brake Piston                         |
| (3) Brake Seal                           |
| (4) Piston Return Stroke                 |
| <b>(A) When brake pedal is pressed.</b>  |
| <b>(B) When brake pedal is released.</b> |

3XVAAAB5P003A

With a mechanical brake system, when the brake pedal is released, the brake returns to its original position by spring tension and cam mechanism.

With a hydraulic brake system, the seal (3) serves to return the brake piston (2) to the original position (no braking force).

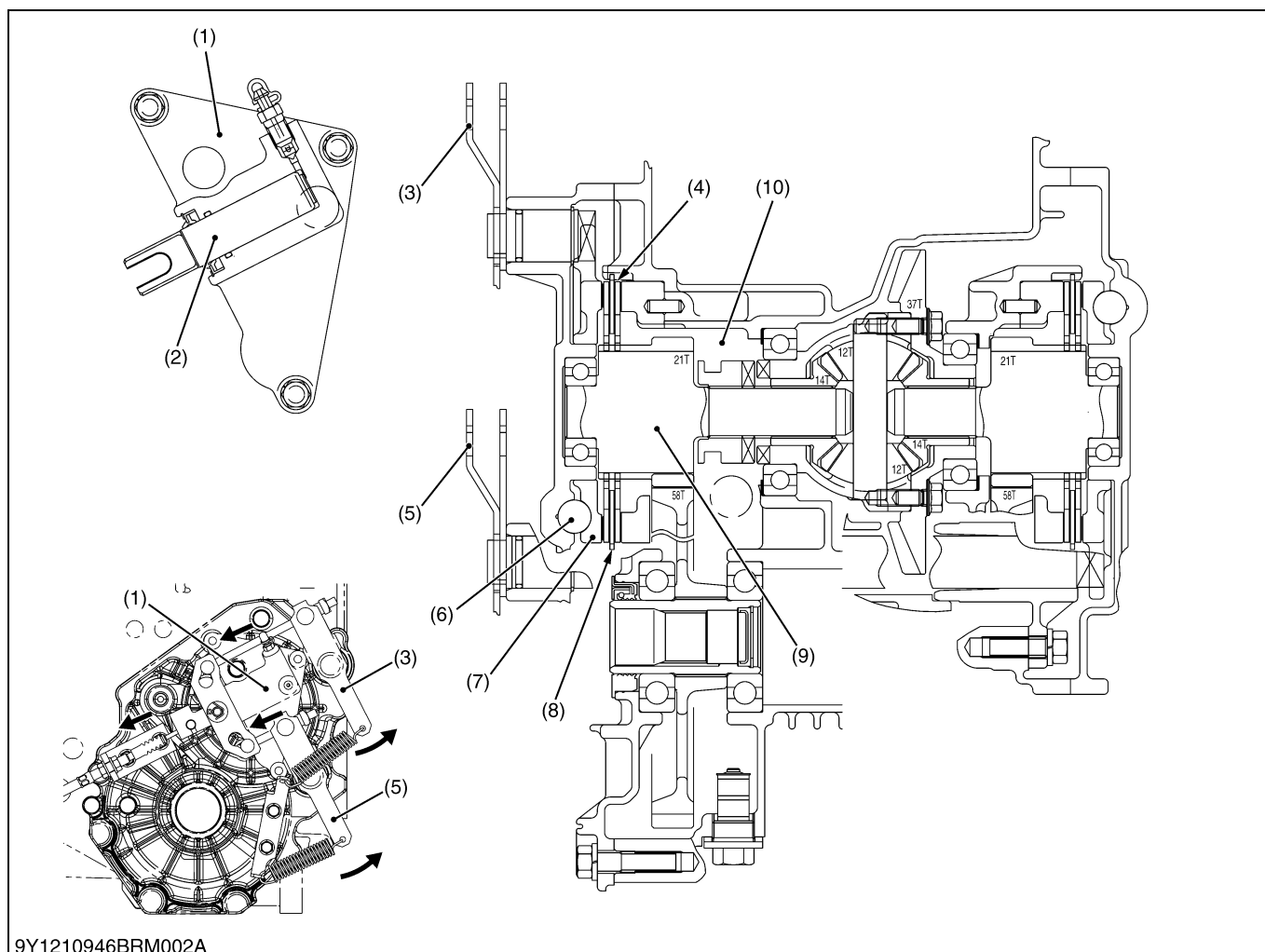
When the brake pedal is pressed, pressure in the knuckle case rises and the brake piston moves in the direction of arrow and causing the brake disks to press against the knuckle case. At this time, the brake seals are deformed in the knuckle case (1), and are subjected to elastic deformation as shown in the figure above.

When the brake pedal is released, pressure in the knuckle case reduces due to the brake seals reverting back to its original form. Together, a clearance is formed between the brake disk and brake piston to prevent the brake dragging.

Worn brake disks require longer brake piston movement. When the brake piston movement exceeds the elastic limit of brake seal, sliding occurs between the seals and the brake piston. With the brake seals deformed a clearance is automatically kept constant.

9Y1210996BRM0003US0

### 3. REAR BRAKE



9Y1210946BRM002A

- |                          |                          |                             |                     |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Brake Cylinder       | (4) Break Disk           | (7) Cam Plate (Actuator)    | (10) Bearing Holder |
| (2) Brake Piston         | (5) Brake Cam Lever R.H. | (8) Friction Plate          | (11) Equalizer      |
| (3) Brake Cam Lever L.H. | (6) Steel Ball           | (9) Differential Gear Shaft |                     |

The brake body is incorporated in the differential side cover filled with transmission oil and is designed to brake when the brake disk (4) splined with the differential gear shaft (9) is pressed against the cam plate (7) by means of the cam mechanism incorporating steel balls (6).

For greater braking force, two brake disks are provided at the right and left sides respectively, and the friction plate (8) fixed to the rear axle case is arranged between the brake disks.

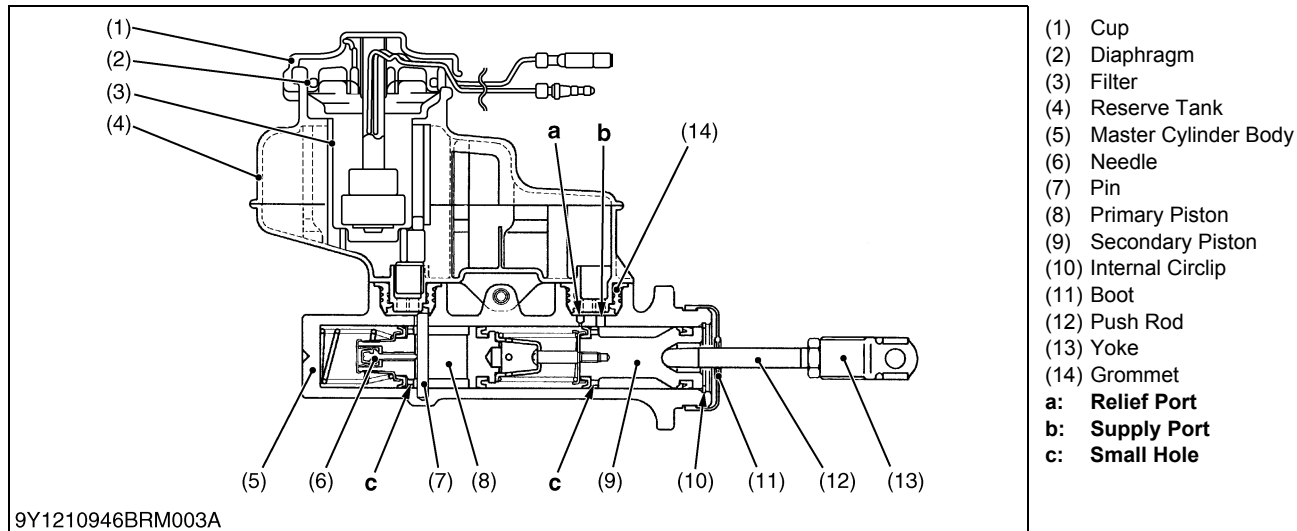
#### ■ During Braking

When brake oil pressure increases, the brake piston (2) is shortened, the linkage causes the brake cam levers (3), (5) to turn into the direction of arrow shown in the above figure.

Therefore, the cam plate (7) also moves the direction of arrow. At this time, since the cam plate rides on the steel balls (6) set in the grooves of the bearing holder (10) to press the brake disk (4), the differential gear shaft (9) is braked by the frictional force generated by the cam plate (7) and brake disk (4).

9Y1210996BRM0004US0

## 4. MASTER CYLINDER



The master cylinder is intended to convert the brake pedal operating force to the fluid pressure. It consists of the reservoir that contains the brake fluid and the cylinder proper that generates the fluid pressure. There are several different fluid pressure generating mechanisms. Kubota has picked up the tandem type cylinder out of them. Even if a pipe has got cracked and the front or rear set of wheels have failed to get braked, this mechanism can apply the brakes on the other set of wheels.

(This is to comply with the rules and regulations stipulating that two lines must be independently controlled.). Step on the brake pedal, and the push rod (12) drives the piston (9) the primary cup blocks the relief port **a**, and the path between the pressure chamber and reservoir is shut off. As the piston moves on, the brake fluid flows through the brake hose or pipe to the front wheel brake piston and the rear wheel brake cylinder, and the fluid pressure is then boosted.

Release the brake pedal, and the piston returns to its initial position under the force of the return spring. But the brake fluid in the front wheel brake piston and the rear wheel brake cylinder is delayed in flowing back, which puts the pressure chamber under negative pressure.

To get rid of the negative pressure, the brake fluid in the reservoir flows through the supply port **b**, supply chamber and piston-end small hole **c**, along the back of the primary cup, into the pressure chamber.

Now the brake fluid flows back from the front wheel brake piston and the rear wheel brake cylinder. The brake fluid in the reservoir fluctuates in volume, but there is no pressure fluctuation thanks to the reservoir cap that has a small hole open to the atmosphere.

The tandem type master cylinder works like this. Step on the brake pedal, and the push rod (12) activates the primary piston (8) first (spring force different between front and back; front one weaker), raising its pressure. The primary piston gets balanced in pressure with the secondary one (9) (fluid pressure adjustment). Now the brakes are applied.

The relief port **a** (at the secondary piston side) absorbs temperature dependent volumetric changes in the brake fluid. This helps prevent fluid pressure buildup when unnecessary. If this port is clogged, the braking effect may drag on. (At the primary piston side, the clearance between the needle (6) and piston, as well as the one between the pin (7) and master cylinder body (5), serve as the relief port.)

9Y1210996BRM0005US0

## 5. BRAKE OIL

Non-mineral oil is used for the brake oil.

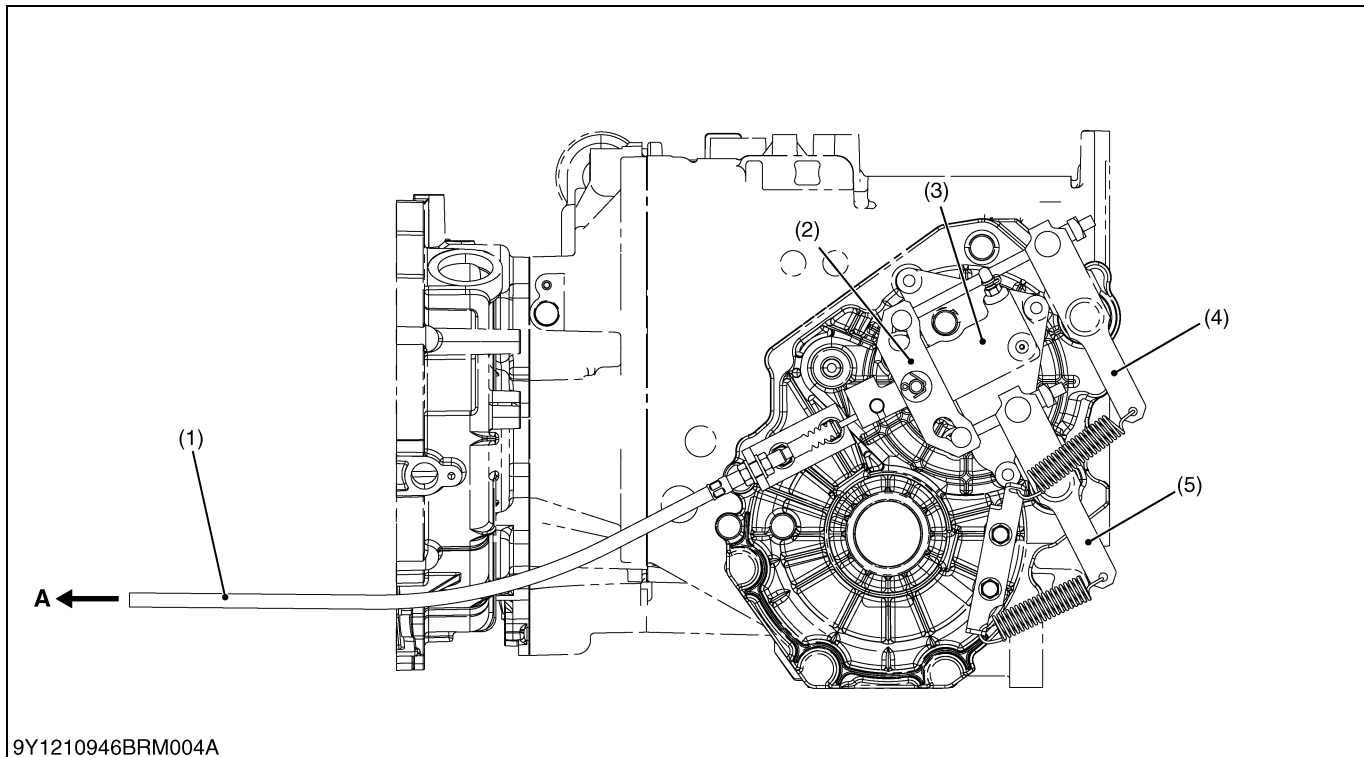
The brake oil for the machine is a brand of vegetable oil, that is basically the same as the DOT3 (FMVSS No. 116 Brake Fluid Standard) used on automobiles and motorcycles.

Keep in mind that the UDT oil used for Kubota tractors so far cannot be applied as the brake oil.

If a coated surface gets stained with the brake oil, the paint becomes degraded. Immediately wipe off the oil just in case. Also immediately wipe the oil off the power steering hose if any.

9Y1210996BRM0006US0

## 6. PARKING BRAKE



(1) Parking Brake Cable  
(2) Mechanical Equalizer

(3) Brake Cylinder  
(4) Brake Cam Lever L.H.

(5) Brake Cam Lever R.H.

**A: To Parking Brake Lever**

The parking brake is mechanical type which is connected to the brake cam levers (4), (5) by the parking brake cable (1). This parking brake is a mechanism that same brake disks as travelling brake is operated.

The parking brake consists basically of the following:

Brake cam lever, parking brake lever, mechanical equalizer and parking brake cable, etc..

Pull the parking brake lever, and the rear wheel brakes are applied and the rear axle comes to a halt. The equalizer is installed to adjust the right-to-left balance of mechanical force and to achieve an equal force.

9Y1210996BRM0007US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	4-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	4-S2
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	4-S3
4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING .....	4-S4
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING.....	4-S4
[2] PREPARATION .....	4-S8
(1) Front Brake.....	4-S8
(2) Master Cylinder .....	4-S12
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	4-S13
(1) Front Brake.....	4-S13
(2) Master Cylinder .....	4-S15
(3) Rear Brake .....	4-S15
[4] SERVICING.....	4-S16
(1) Front Brake.....	4-S16
(2) Rear Brake .....	4-S16
(3) Brake Piston .....	4-S17



# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Poor Braking Force</b>	1. Brake pedal play excessive	Adjust	4-S4
	2. Brake disk worn	Replace	4-S16, 4-S17
	3. Brake fluid insufficient or improper	Fill or change with specified oil	4-S5
	4. Brake fluid leakage from brake pipes, bleeder, master cylinder	Repair or replace	4-S12
	5. Master cylinder malfunctioning	Repair or replace	4-S12
<b>Uneven Braking Force</b>	1. Brake disk worn	Replace	4-S16, 4-S17
	2. Brake fluid leakage from brake pipes, bleeder or master cylinder	Repair or replace	4-S12
	3. Master cylinder malfunctioning	Repair or replace	4-S12
<b>Brake Drags</b>	1. Brake pedal play too small	Adjust	4-S4
	2. Master cylinder return spring weaken or broken	Replace	4-S15
	3. Master cylinder malfunctioning	Repair or replace	4-S12
	4. Brake seal failure	Replace	4-S15
	5. Brake lines clogged	Clean	4-S12
	6. Brake pedal return spring weaken or broken	Replace	4-S15
	7. Brake fluid improper	Change with specified oil	4-S5
<b>Spongy Brake Pedal</b>	1. Brake fluid insufficient or improper	Fill or change with specified oil	4-S5
	2. Air in brake system	Bleed air	4-S6
<b>Brake Oil Consumed Excessively</b>	1. Brake seal failure	Replace	4-S14
	2. Brake fluid leakage in brake lines	Repair or replace	4-S12
<b>Poor Parking Brake Force</b>	1. Parking brake lever travel excessive	Adjust	4-S7
	2. Parking brake lever travel too small	Adjust	4-S7

9Y1210996BRS0001US0

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

### TRAVELLING BRAKE

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Brake Pedal	Free Travel	8 to 18 mm 0.3 to 0.7 in.	—
	Stroke	Less than 150 mm 5.91 in.	—
Brake Disk	Thickness (Front)	3.3 to 3.5 mm 0.130 to 0.138 in.	3.0 mm 0.118 in.
	Thickness (Rear)	3.32 to 3.48 mm 0.131 to 0.137 in.	3.15 mm 0.124 in.
Friction Plate	Thickness (Front)	1.92 to 2.08 mm 0.0756 to 0.0819 in.	1.52 mm 0.0598 in.
	Thickness (Rear)	1.92 to 2.08 mm 0.0756 to 0.0819 in.	1.52 mm 0.0598 in.
Actuator and Bearing Holder	Flatness	—	0.30 mm 0.0118 in.
Cam Plate and Ball	Height	20.77 to 20.87 mm 0.8178 to 0.8216 in.	20.57 mm 0.8098 in.

9Y1210996BRS0002US0

### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

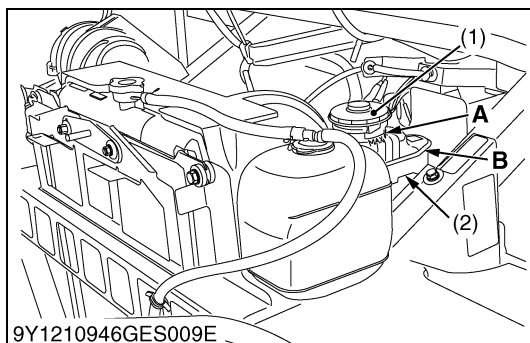
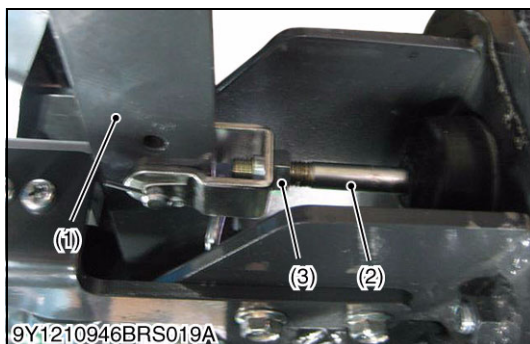
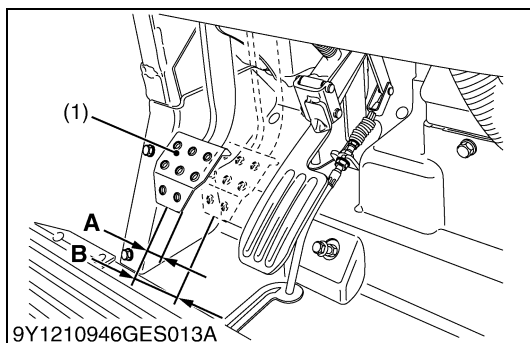
Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Front axle slotted nut	190 to 200	19.4 to 20.3	141 to 147
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0	5.10 to 5.60	36.9 to 40.5
Brake hose eye joint bolt (M10)	22.6 to 26.8	2.31 to 2.73	16.7 to 19.7
Brake pipe flare nut	13 to 17	1.4 to 1.7	9.6 to 12
Knuckle case cover mounting screw	48.1 to 55.9	4.91 to 5.70	35.5 to 41.2

9Y1210996BRS0003US0

## 4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING

### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING



#### Brake Pedal

##### CAUTION

- When checking, park the tractor on flat ground, and stop the engine.

- Measure the free travel by depressing the brake pedal (1).
- If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, adjust the free travel by the push rod (2).
- After adjustment, tighten the lock nut (3) firmly.

Brake pedal free travel	Factory specification	8 to 18 mm 0.3 to 0.7 in.
Brake pedal stroke	Factory specification	Less than 150 mm 5.9 in. on the pedal

- (1) Brake Pedal  
(2) Push Rod  
(3) Lock Nut

A: Free Travel  
B: Pedal Stroke

9Y1210996BRS0004US0

#### Checking Brake Fluid Level

##### WARNING

To avoid serious injury:

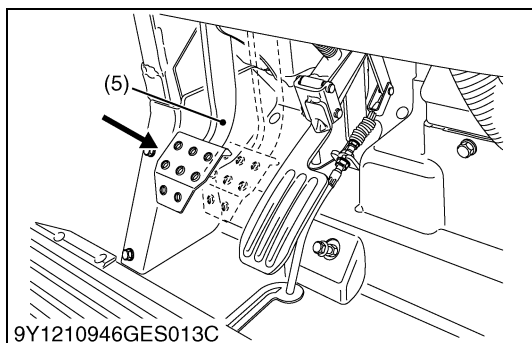
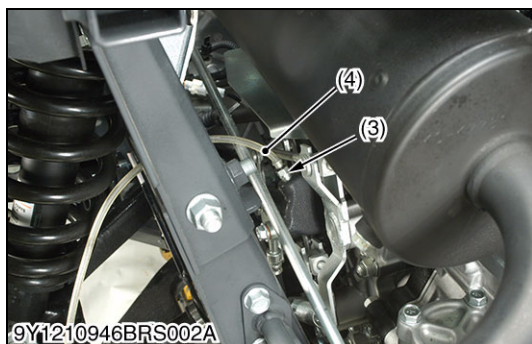
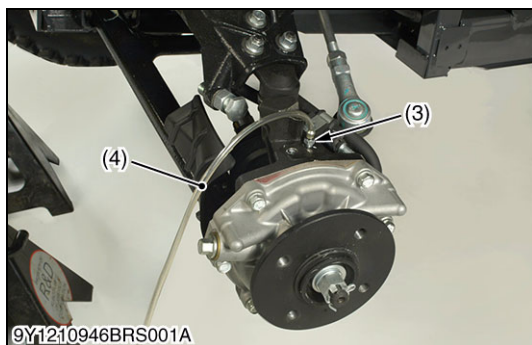
- Never operate the vehicle, if the brake fluid is below the "MIN" mark.
- Use only KUBOTA DOT3 GENUINE BRAKE FLUID from a sealed container. Using other type of oil ruins synthetic resin or rubber installed in brake system components, and may cause brake failure.
- Avoid contamination of the brake fluid.  
Thoroughly clean area around the filler cap before removing. Do not open the brake fluid reservoir cap unless absolutely necessary.
- Use extreme care when filling the reservoir. If brake fluid is spilled on the power steering hose, wash off with water immediately. Brake fluid quickly ruins synthetic resin or rubber hoses.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Open the hood.
- Check to see that the brake fluid level is between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks.
- If it is below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid to the "MAX" mark.

- (1) Reservoir Cap  
(2) Brake Fluid Reservoir

A: MAX  
B: MIN

9Y1210996BRS0005US0



## Brake Fluid Change

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Use only DOT-3 brake fluid from a sealed container. Conforms to motor vehicle safety standard No. 116. Using other type of oil ruins synthetic resin or rubber installed in brake system components, and may cause brake failure.
- Avoid contamination of the brake fluid. Thoroughly clean area around the filler cap before removing. Do not open the brake fluid reservoir cap unless absolutely necessary.
- Use extreme care when filling the reservoir. If brake fluid is spilled on power steering hoses, wash off with water immediately. Brake fluid quickly ruins synthetic resin or rubber hoses.

### ■ NOTE

- The fluid level must be checked several times during the fluid change and filled as necessary. If the fluid in the reservoir runs completely out any time during fluid changing, air bleeding must be done since air will have entered the line.
  - Start with the rear either side and finish with the front either side.
1. Jack up the front side of machine and remove the front wheels.
  2. Connect a clear plastic hose (4) to the bleeder (3), running the other end of the hose into a container.
  3. Remove the brake fluid reservoir cap (1).
  4. Fill the reservoir (2) with new brake fluid.
  5. Temporarily install the reservoir cap.
  6. Open the bleeder.
  7. Then, pump brake pedal (5) and hold it.
  8. Close the bleeder and release the brake pedal.
  9. Repeat the previous step for each wheel.
  10. When brake fluid changing is finished, add the fluid to the upper level in the reservoir.
  11. After changing the fluid, check the brake for good braking power, no brake drag, and no fluid leakage.
  12. If necessary, bleed the air from the brake lines.

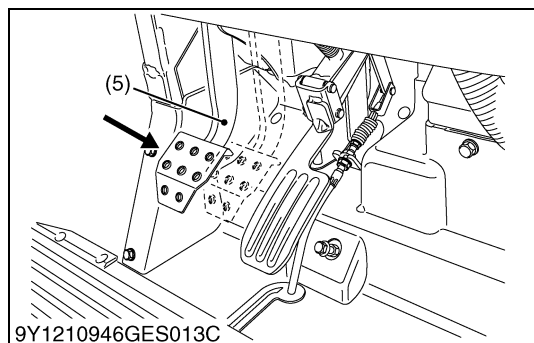
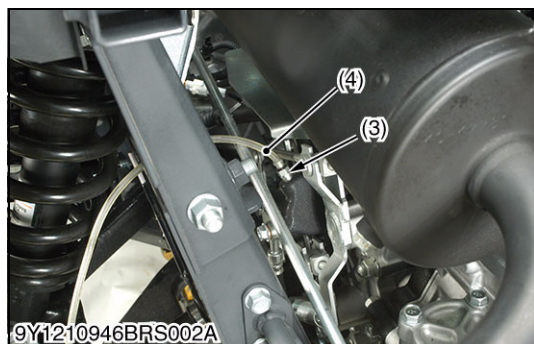
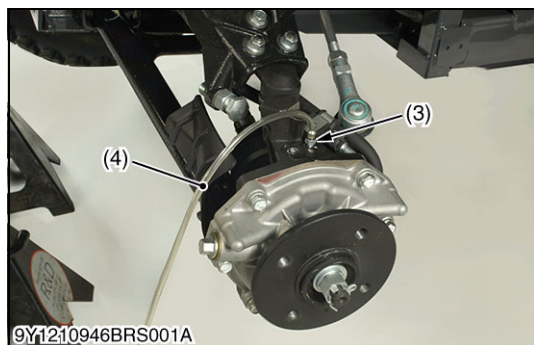
### ⚠ WARNING

- If the brake pedal has a soft or "spongy feeling" when it is applied, there might be air in the brake line or the brake may be damaged. Since it is dangerous to operate the vehicle under such conditions, bleed the air from the brake line immediately.

- (1) Reservoir Cap  
(2) Reservoir  
(3) Bleeder

- (4) Clear Plastic Hose  
(5) Brake Pedal

9Y1210996BRS0006US0



## Brake Line Air Bleeding

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Use only DOT-3 brake fluid from a sealed container. Conforms to motor vehicle safety standard No. 116. Using other type of oil ruins synthetic resin or rubber installed in brake system components, and may cause brake failure.
- Avoid contamination of the brake fluid. Thoroughly clean area around the filler cap before removing. Do not open the brake fluid reservoir cap unless absolutely necessary.
- Use extreme care when filling the reservoir. If brake fluid is spilled on power steering hoses, wash off with water immediately. Brake fluid quickly ruins synthetic resin or rubber hoses.

### ■ NOTE

- The fluid level must be checked several times during the bleeding operation and filled as necessary. If the fluid in the reservoir runs completely out any time during bleeding, the bleeding operation must be done over again from the beginning since air will have entered the line.

1. Jack up the front side of machine and remove the front wheels.
2. Connect a clear plastic hose (4) to the bleeder (3), running the other end of the hose into a container.
3. Pump the brake pedal (5) until it becomes hard, and apply the brake pedal and hold it.
4. Quickly open and close the bleeder (3) while holding the brake pedal applied.
5. Release the brake pedal.
6. Check the brake fluid level and fill the reservoir (2) with new brake fluid.
7. Repeat the previous step for each wheel.
8. Repeat this operation until no more air can be seen coming out into the plastic hose.
9. When air bleeding is finished, add fluid up to the upper level in the reservoir.
10. Apply the brake forcefully for a few seconds, and check for fluid leakage around the fittings.

### ⚠ WARNING

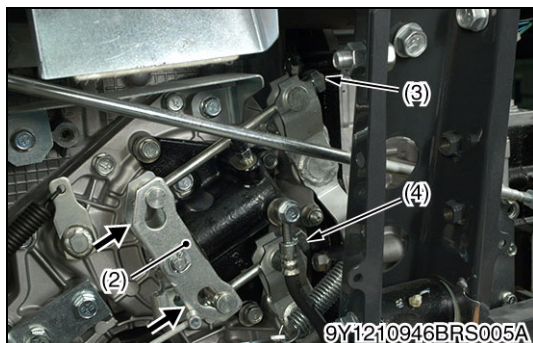
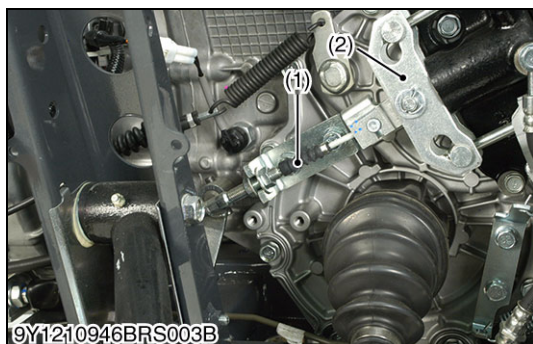
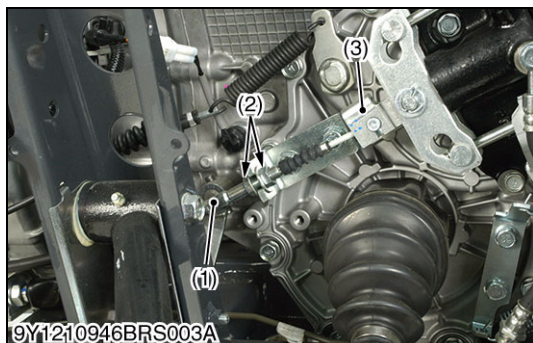
- If the brake pedal has a soft or "spongy feeling" when it is applied, there might be air in the brake line or the brake may be damaged. Since it is dangerous to operate the vehicle under such conditions, bleed the air from the brake line immediately.

- (1) Reservoir Cap  
(2) Reservoir  
(3) Bleeder

- (4) Clear Plastic Hose  
(5) Brake Pedal

9Y1210996BRS0007US0





### Parking Brake Lever (Adjustment of the Parking Brake Cable)

#### **CAUTION**

- When checking, parking the machine on flat ground.
  - Work by two people when you measure pressure.
1. Adjust the length of the parking brake cable (1) outer section so that the cable does not pull the parking brake bracket (3).
  2. Parking brake cable begins to pull the parking bracket (3) when the lever is moved at first notch.

(1) Parking Brake Cable  
(2) Lock Nut

(3) Parking Brake Bracket  
(4) Parking Brake Lever

9Y1210996BRS0008US0

### Brake Rod

#### **CAUTION**

- When checking, park the machine on flat ground.
  - Work by two people when you measure pressure.
1. Jack up the rear end after placing a wooden block under the bottom plate of the transmission frame.
  2. Remove the rear wheels.
  3. Disconnect the parking brake cable (1).
  4. Push the equalizer into the brake piston body and adjustment nuts so that there is no play in the brake rod.
  5. Tighten the adjustment nut of the brake by hand until the point where it get firm.
  6. Measure the turning torque of the CV joint, and then if the torque is over 10 N·m (1.02 kgf·m, 7.38 lbf·ft), loosen the adjustment nut half-turn.
  7. After adjust the turning torque on right and left side, adjust the parking brake cable.

#### **CAUTION**

- Over-pulling due to poor turnbuckle adjustment can result in the problem of brake drag (overheating and burning).

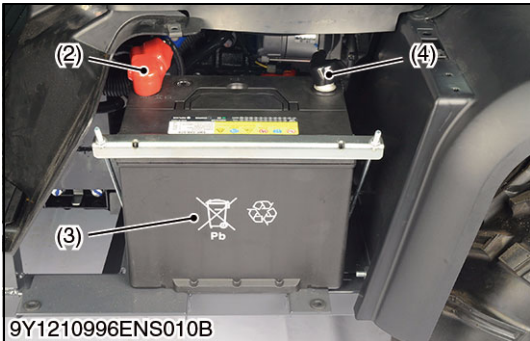
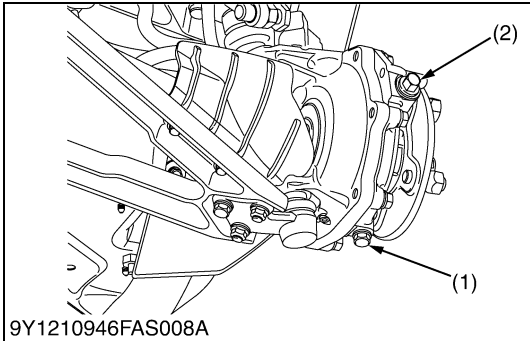
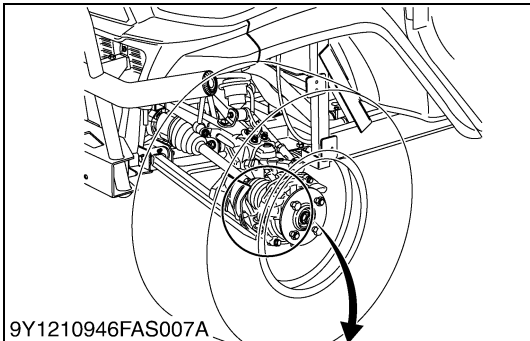
(1) Parking Brake Cable  
(2) Equalizer

(3) Adjustment Nut (Left Side)  
(4) Adjustment Nut (Right Side)

9Y1210996BRS0009US0

[2] PREPARATION

(1) Front Brake



Draining Knuckle Case Oil

- 1. Park the vehicle on a firm, flat, and level surface.
- 2. Remove the wheel.
- 3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain the filling plugs at the L.H. knuckle case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
- 4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
- 5. Use the same procedure to change the R.H. knuckle case oil.

Knuckle case oil	Reference capacity (one side)	0.25 L 0.26 U.S.qts 0.22 Imp.qts
------------------	----------------------------------	--

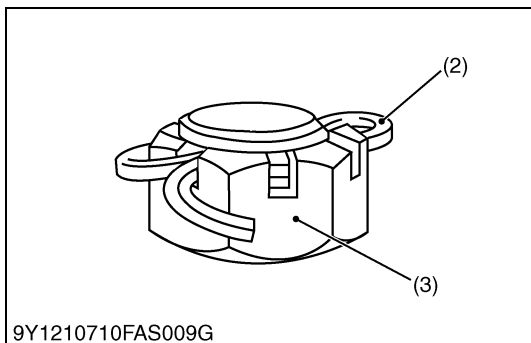
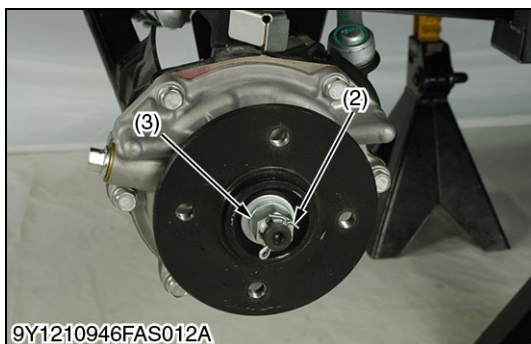
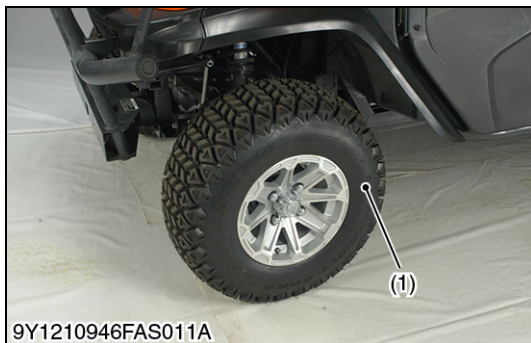
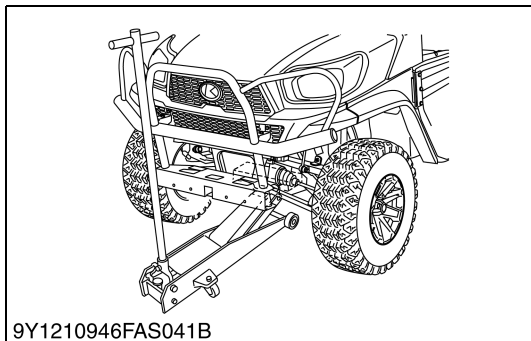
- (1) Drain Plug
  - (2) Filling Plug
- 9Y1210996BRS0010US0

Battery

- CAUTION**
- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.
- 1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
  - 2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
  - 3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.

- (1) L.H. Side Cover
  - (2) Positive Cable
  - (3) Battery
  - (4) Negative Cable
- 9Y1210996BRS0011US0





## Front Wheel and Front Axle Nut

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury, death or vehicle damage:

- Do not work under the vehicle unless it is secured by safe stands or suitable blocking.

1. Jack up at the plate under the front axle case only.
2. Remove the front wheel (1).
3. Remove the cotter pin (2) and slotted nut (3).

### **(When reassembling)**

- After tightening the front axle slotted nut to specified torques, install a cotter pin as shown in the figure left.

### **■ NOTE**

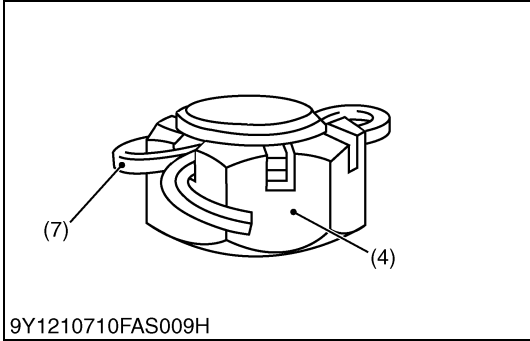
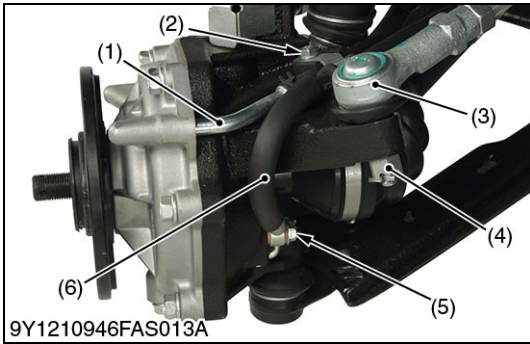
- Tighten the slotted nut to 190 N·m (19.4 kgf·m, 140 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Front axle slotted nut	190 to 200 N·m 19.4 to 20.3 kgf·m 141 to 147 lbf·ft
	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Front Wheel  
(2) Cotter Pin

- (3) Slotted Nut

9Y1210996BRS0012US0



**Tie-rod End, Brake Hose and Breather Hose**

**CAUTION**

- When the brake hose is removed, the brake fluid come out. Be careful not to stain other hoses or rubber boot with the brake fluid. Brake fluid stains should be washed and wiped off immediately. Likewise, the brake fluid on the tools should be wiped off immediately.

1. Remove the clamp (2).
2. Remove the eye joint bolt (5) for brake hose (6) and drain the brake fluid.
3. Remove the breather pipe (1).
4. Remove the cotter pin (7) and remove the tie-rod end slotted nut (4).

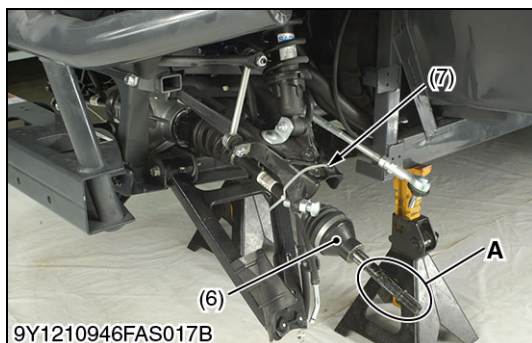
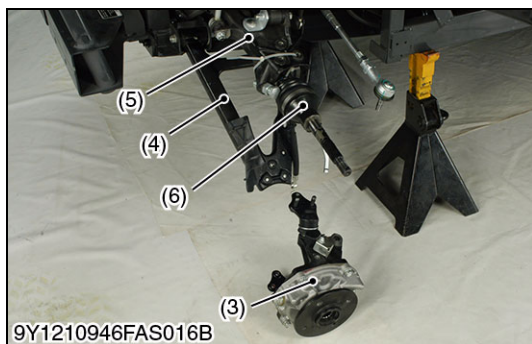
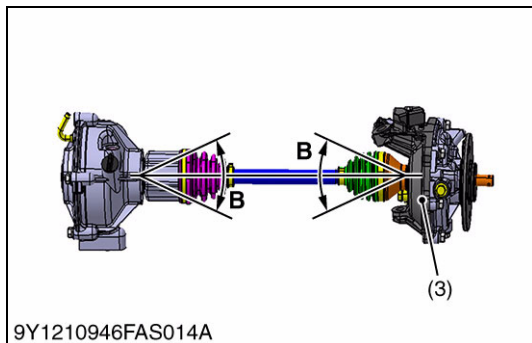
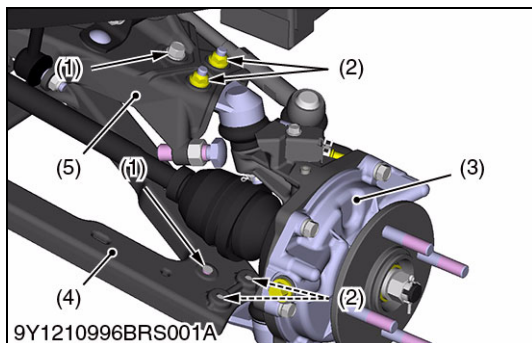
**(When reassembling)**

- Replace the copper washers with new ones.
- Bleed air of the brake line after break hoses reassembled.
- Tighten the slotted nut to 50.0 N·m (5.10 kgf·m, 36.9 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0 N·m 5.10 to 5.60 kgf·m 36.9 to 40.5 lbf·ft
	Brake hose eye joint bolt (M10)	22.6 to 26.8 N·m 2.31 to 2.73 kgf·m 16.7 to 19.7 lbf·ft

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Breather Pipe       | (5) Eye Joint Bolt |
| (2) Clamp               | (6) Brake Hose     |
| (3) Tie-rod End         | (7) Cotter Pin     |
| (4) Tie-rod Slotted Nut |                    |

9Y1210996BRS0013US0



### Knuckle Case

#### NOTE

- CV joint should not exceed the allowable bend angle  $\pm 25^\circ$  when being reassembled or disassembled.

- Remove the flange bolts (1) and lock nuts (2) from the upper and lower arms (5), (4).
- Support the CV joint (6) with a clamp (7) or equivalent to prevent the CV joint from falling before removing the knuckle case assembly.
- Remove the knuckle case assembly (3).
- Remove the CV joint (6).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply anti-fretting grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to the spline of CV joint (6).

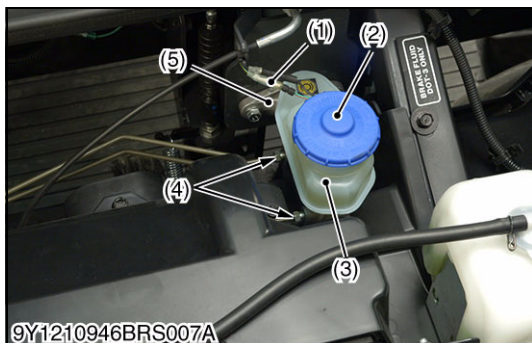
- Flange Bolt
- Lock Nut
- Knuckle Case Assembly
- Upper Arm
- Lower Arm
- CV Joint
- Clamp

A: Apply to grease.

B:  $\pm 25^\circ$

9Y1210996BRS0014US0

## (2) Master Cylinder



### Master Cylinder Assembly



#### CAUTION

- Use only DOT-3 brake fluid from a sealed container. Conforms to motor vehicle safety standard No. 116. Using other type of oil ruins synthetic resin or rubber installed in brake system components, and may cause brake failure.
- Avoid contamination of the brake fluid. Thoroughly clean area around the filler cap before removing. Do not open the brake fluid reservoir cap unless absolutely necessary.
- Use extreme care when filling the reservoir. If brake fluid is spilled on power steering hoses, wash off with water immediately. Brake fluid quickly ruins synthetic resin or rubber hoses.

#### NOTE

- Do not transform, and do not damage the brake pipe.
- Do not reuse the drained brake fluid.
- Do not the brake fluid of the other brand to prevent chemical change from occurring.

1. Disconnect the connector (1).
2. Remove the brake fluid reservoir cap (2).
3. Drain the brake fluid.
4. Disconnect the brake pipes (4) from master cylinder (5).
5. Remove the master cylinder (5).

#### (When reassembling)

- Air bleed the brake line after master cylinder reassembled. (See page 4-S6.)
- Check and adjust the brake pedal free travel. (See page 4-S4.)

Tightening torque	Brake pipe flare nut	13 to 17 N·m 1.4 to 1.7 kgf·m 9.6 to 12 lbf·ft
-------------------	----------------------	--

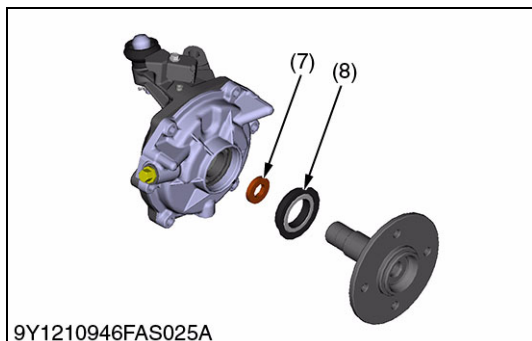
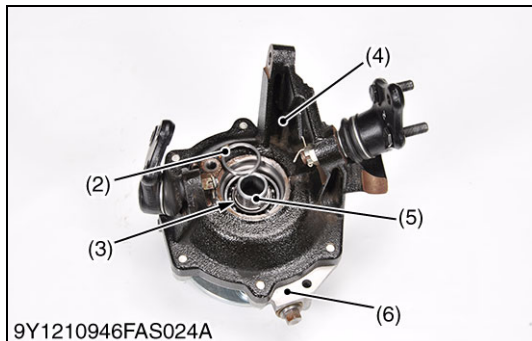
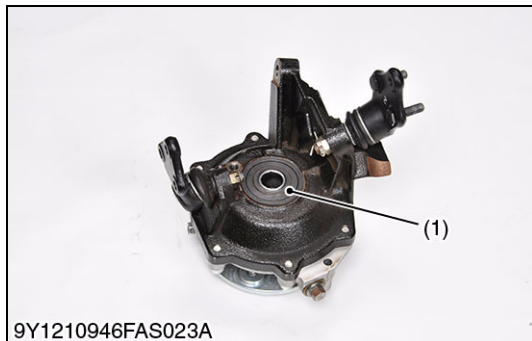
- (1) Connector  
(2) Reservoir Cap  
(3) Reservoir

- (4) Brake Pipe  
(5) Master Cylinder

9Y1210996BRS0015US0

### [3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

#### (1) Front Brake



#### Front Axle

1. Remove the oil seal (1).
2. Remove the snap ring collar (2) and remove the external snap ring (3).
3. Tap out the front axle (5) with plastic hammer.
4. Remove the knuckle case mounting screw.
5. Separate the knuckle case (4) and knuckle case cover (6).

#### (When reassembling)

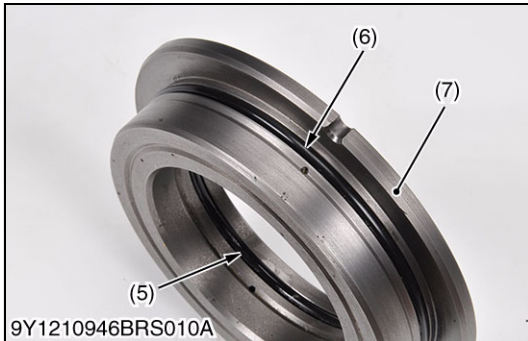
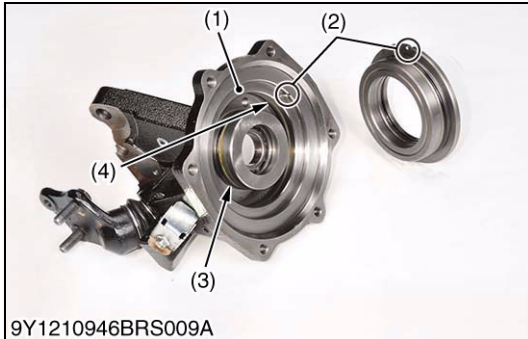
- Be sure insert the external snap ring.
- Replace the oil seal with new one.
- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.
- Insert the bearing (7) and oil seal (8) first to the knuckle cover, and then install the knuckle case cover.

Tightening torque	Knuckle case cover mounting screw	48.1 to 55.9 N·m 4.91 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.5 to 41.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Oil Seal           | (5) Front Axle         |
| (2) Snap Ring Collar   | (6) Knuckle Case Cover |
| (3) External Snap Ring | (7) Bearing            |
| (4) Knuckle Case       | (8) Oil Seal           |

9Y1210996BRS0016US0





## Brake Piston

### ⚠ CAUTION

- The brake seal 1 (5), 2 (6) are used for brake fluid only.
- The brake seal 3 (4), 4 (3) are used for transmission fluid only.
- Degrease both the piston (7) and the knuckle case (1) before installing each brake seal.
- Before installing both the piston (7), apply a thin coat of the special grease (KLUBER LUBRICATION: SEALUB-L-101 or equivalent) to the brake seal surface. The special grease is a dual use type that can be applied to the oil seal and the O-rings for both of the brake fluid and the transmission fluid.
- When servicing the brake, pay due attention to any oil adhered to your hands.
- Exert full care when handling the mineral oil (transmission fluid) and the brake fluid.

### ■ NOTE

- Align the each alignment mark (2) of piston and knuckle case.
- Assemble the bearing and oil seal of rear axle into the knuckle case cover side, and then assemble the rear axle.

### ■ IMPORTANT

- It is recommended to replace the brake seal with a new one every 2 years.
- Therefore, do not remove the piston unnecessarily from the knuckle case.
- If the piston should be removed, replace the seal ring with a new one.

1. Remove the brake piston (7) by compressed air.

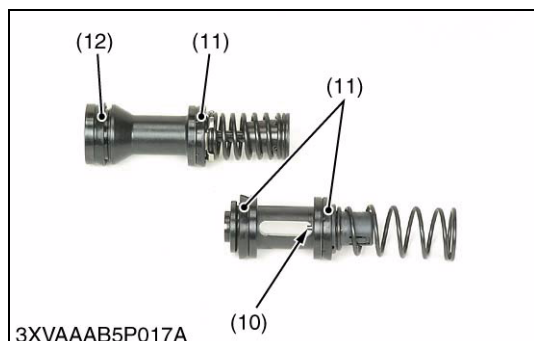
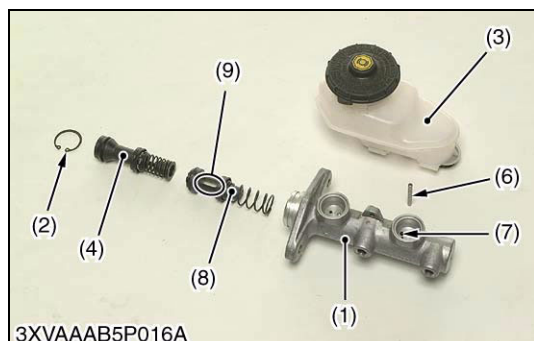
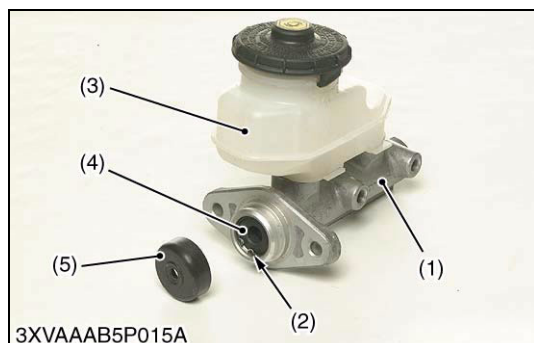
### (When reassembling)

- Replace the brake seal 1 (5) and brake seal 2 (6).
- Replace the brake seal 3 (4) and brake seal 4 (3).

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| (1) Knuckle Case   | (5) Brake Seal 1 |
| (2) Alignment Mark | (6) Brake Seal 2 |
| (3) Brake Seal 4   | (7) Brake Piston |
| (4) Brake Seal 3   |                  |

9Y1210996BRS0017US0

## (2) Master Cylinder



### Master Cylinder Inner Parts

1. Remove the reservoir (3) from master cylinder body (1).
2. Pushing in the piston (4), remove the internal snap ring (2).
3. Remove the piston from master cylinder body.
4. Pushing in the secondary piston (8), remove the stop pin (6).
5. Remove the secondary piston from master cylinder body.

#### NOTE

- Keep the disassembled parts in order and prevent them from being contaminated with dust or dirt.

#### (When reassembling)

- Wash the disassembled parts with the brake fluid and clean each port with the compressed air.
- Install the new grommet in the reservoir tank.
- Apply the brake fluid to the piston cup (11) and (12).
- Do not reuse the removed piston (4) and secondary piston (8).
- Before installation, tap the valve stem (10) through the slot (9) of the piston and check that the valve stem moves smoothly.
- Push in the secondary piston, match the slot of the piston with the stop pin (6) installation hole (7) and insert the stop pin (6).
- Apply a thin coat of special grease (COSMO RUBBER GREASE BY COSMO OIL CO.) to surface of piston cup (12) and hole of rod seal (5).

- |                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Master Cylinder Body | (7) Hole             |
| (2) Internal Snap Ring   | (8) Secondary Piston |
| (3) Reservoir            | (9) Slot             |
| (4) Piston               | (10) Valve Stem      |
| (5) Rod Seal             | (11) Piston Cup      |
| (6) Stop Pin             | (12) Piston Cup      |

9Y1210996BRS0018US0

## (3) Rear Brake

- Removing the rear brake assembly. (Refer to 2-S42, 2-S43.)

9Y1210996BRS0019US0

## [4] SERVICING

### (1) Front Brake



9Y1210946BRS011A



9Y1210946BRS012A

#### **Brake Disk and Friction Plate Wear**

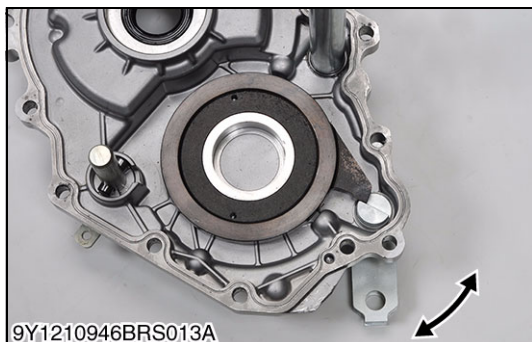
1. Measure the brake disk thickness and the friction plate thickness with an outside micrometer.
2. If the thickness is less than the allowable limit, replace it.

Brake disk thickness	Factory specification	3.3 to 3.5 mm 0.130 to 0.138 in.
	Allowable limit	3.0 mm 0.118 in.

Friction plate thickness	Factory specification	1.92 to 2.08 mm 0.0756 to 0.0819 in.
	Allowable limit	1.52 mm 0.0598 in.

9Y1210996BRS0020US0

### (2) Rear Brake



9Y1210946BRS013A

#### **Brake Cam Lever Movement**

1. Move the brake cam lever by hand to check the movement.
2. If the movement is heavy, refine the brake cam with emery paper.

9Y1210996BRS0021US0



9Y1210946BRS014A

#### **Flatness of Actuator and Bearing Holder**

1. Measure the height of the cam plate with the boll installed.
2. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace the cam plate and balls.
3. Inspect the ball holes of cam plate for uneven wear.
4. If the uneven wear is found, replace it.

Flatness of actuator and bearing holder	Allowable limit	0.30 mm 0.0118 in.
---	-----------------	-----------------------

9Y1210996BRS0022US0





9Y1210946BRS015A

### Height of Cam Plate and Ball

1. Measure the height of the cam plate with the ball installed.
2. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace the cam plate and balls.
3. Inspect the ball holes of cam plate for uneven wear.
4. If the uneven wear is found, replace it.

Height of cam plate and ball	Factory specification	20.77 to 20.87 mm 0.8178 to 0.8216 in.
	Allowable limit	20.57 mm 0.8098 in.

9Y1210996BRS0023US0



9Y1210946BRS016A

### Brake Disk and Friction Plate Wear

1. Measure the brake disk thickness and the friction plate thickness with an outside micrometer.
2. If the thickness is less than the allowable limit, replace it.

Brake disk thickness	Factory specification	3.32 to 3.48 mm 0.131 to 0.137 in.
	Allowable limit	3.15 mm 0.124 in.

Friction plate thickness	Factory specification	1.92 to 2.08 mm 0.0756 to 0.0819 in.
	Allowable limit	1.52 mm 0.0598 in.

9Y1210996BRS0024US0

## (3) Brake Piston



9Y1210946BRS017A

### Brake Cylinder

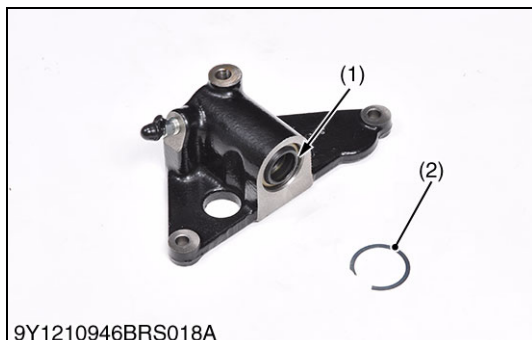
1. Push the brake piston from brake rod connecting side, and pull out the brake piston (1).
2. Check the brake piston and brake cylinder for signs of scoring or other damage.
3. If there is any doubt as to the condition of a piston and cylinder, replace it.

#### NOTE

- Apply a thin coat of the brake fluid to the piston before inserting it. Never use mineral oil, grease or the like.

(1) Brake Piston

9Y1210996BRS0025US0



9Y1210946BRS018A

### Dust Seal and O-ring

1. If oil leaks from dust seal.
2. Remove the internal circlip (2) and remove the dust seal (1) and O-ring and replace the new one.

#### NOTE

- These O-ring and dust seal are designed specifically for brake fluid application. Use only Kubota genuine parts (for brake fluid use) for replacement. During replacement, be careful to avoid adherence of other oil or grease.

(1) Dust Seal

(2) Internal Circlip

9Y1210996BRS0026US0

# **5 FRONT AXLE**

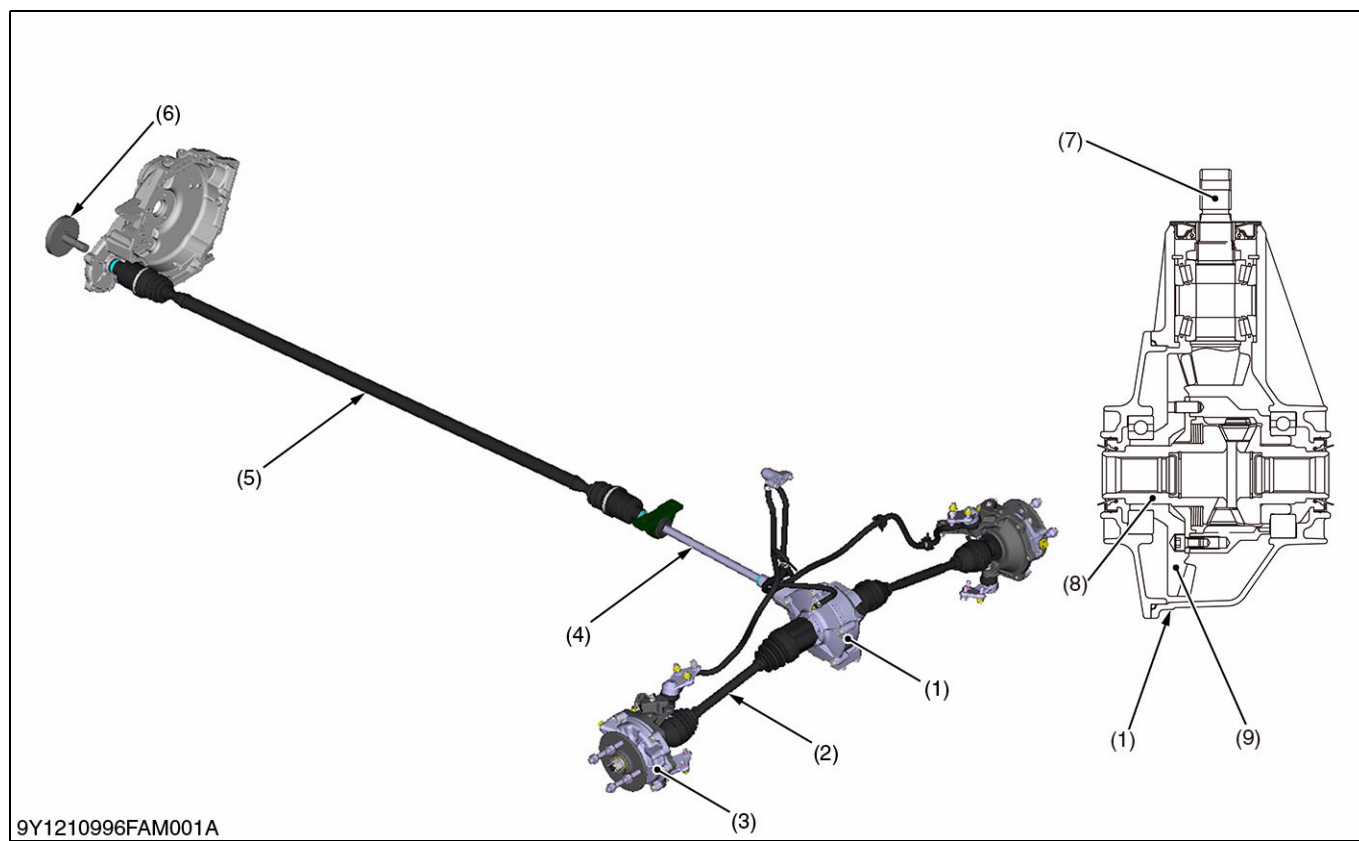
# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. STRUCTURE.....	5-M1
[1] FRONT AXLE .....	5-M1
[2] FRONT SUSPENSION.....	5-M2
[3] LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (LSD).....	5-M3
(1) Structure .....	5-M3
(2) Operation.....	5-M4

## 1. STRUCTURE

## [1] FRONT AXLE



- |                |                     |                               |                      |
|----------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Front Case | (4) FWD Drive Shaft | (6) Transmission Output Shaft | (8) Face Cam         |
| (2) CV Shaft   | (5) Propeller Shaft | (7) Bevel Gear Shaft (8T)     | (9) Bevel Gear (35T) |
| (3) Knuckle    |                     |                               |                      |

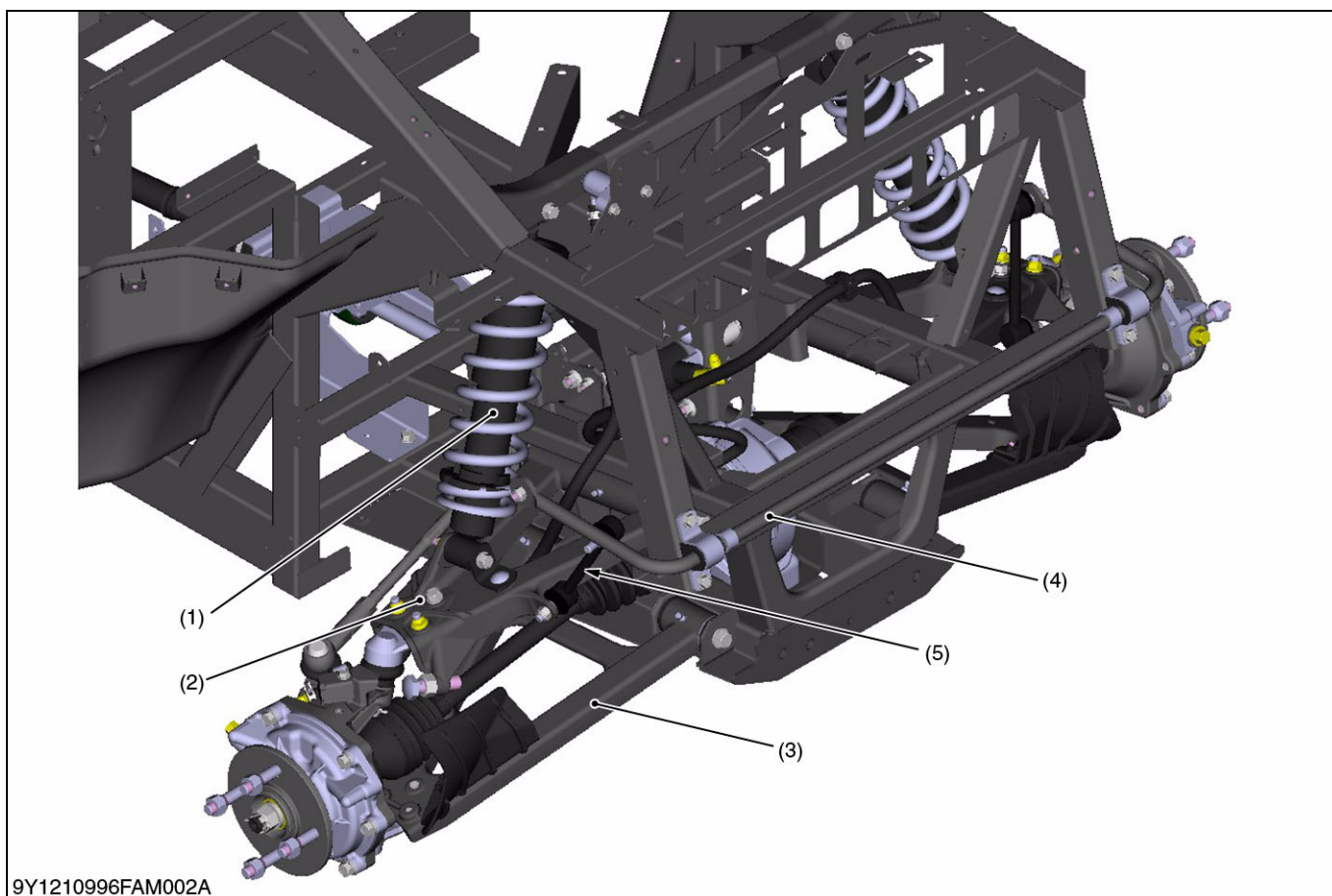
The front axle consists of knuckles (L.H. and R.H.), CV shafts (L.H. and R.H.), front case assembly, FWD drive shaft, and propeller shaft. (See the above illustration.)

Power is transmitted from the transmission output shaft (6) through the propeller shaft (5) to the FWD drive shaft (4). From the FWD drive shaft, power is transmitted to the bevel gear (9) and face cam (8) to the CV shafts (2) and knuckles (3).

The knuckles and front case are separate from each other. This means that the front case and knuckles must be separately lubricated.

9Y1210996FAM0001US0

## [2] FRONT SUSPENSION



- |                    |               |                |          |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|----------|
| (1) Shock Absorber | (3) Lower Arm | (4) Stabilizer | (5) Link |
| (2) Upper Arm      |               |                |          |

The suspension is double wishbone type.

The suspension is made up of upper and lower arms (2), (3), a shock absorber (1), and a stabilizer (4).

The stabilizer (4) performs the function of a torsion bar.

The stabilizer (4) is connected to the upper arm (2) by a link (5).

When the upper arm (2) moves up and down, the stabilizer (4) moves with it.

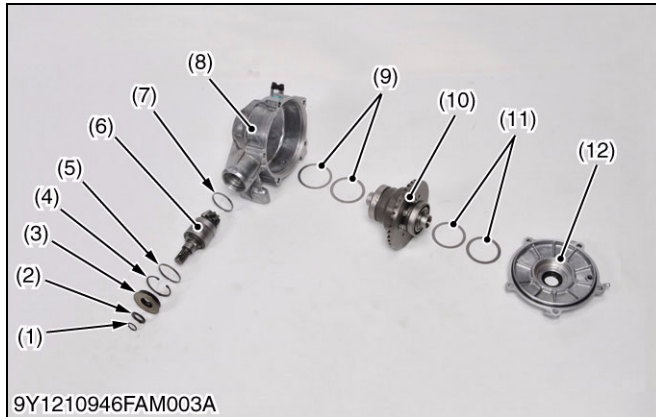
When the arms on one side move, a differential is applied to the stabilizer link that is connected to the arms on the opposite side causing torsion on the stabilizer (4).

Based on torsion action of the stabilizer, a force is applied retaining its position so the arm connected is kept horizontally.

9Y1210996FAM0002US0

### [3] LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (LSD)

#### (1) Structure

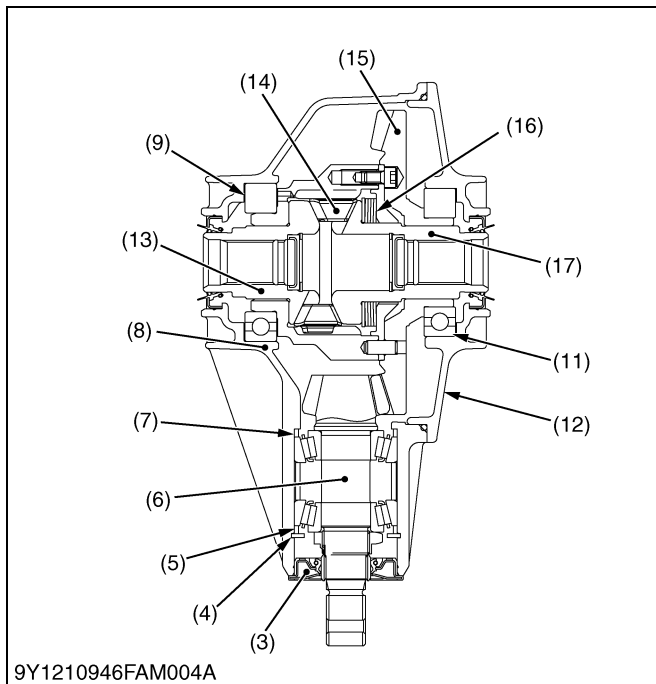


The configuration of the differential gear is as shown in the figure.

The differential gear is prepared with a limited slip differential (LSD) function.

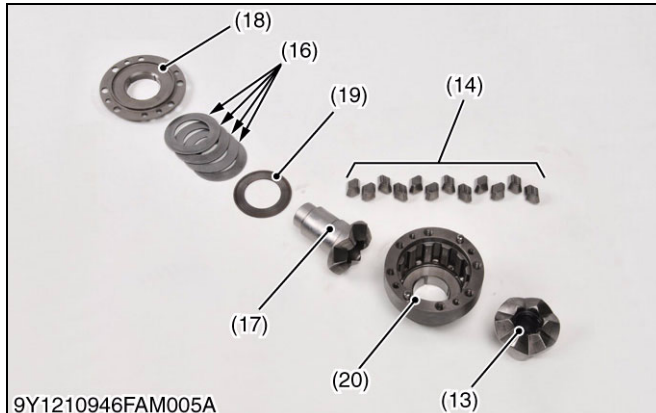
This is torque sensitive; therefore, even if the temperature of the LSD rises, the TBR (Torque Bias Ratio) is not reduced.

The structure is a differential case assembly (10), cam face (13), cam follower (14), disc spring (16), thrust washer (19), and differential case cap (18). The cam follower (14) has sintered metal and thermal processing and therefore superior durability.

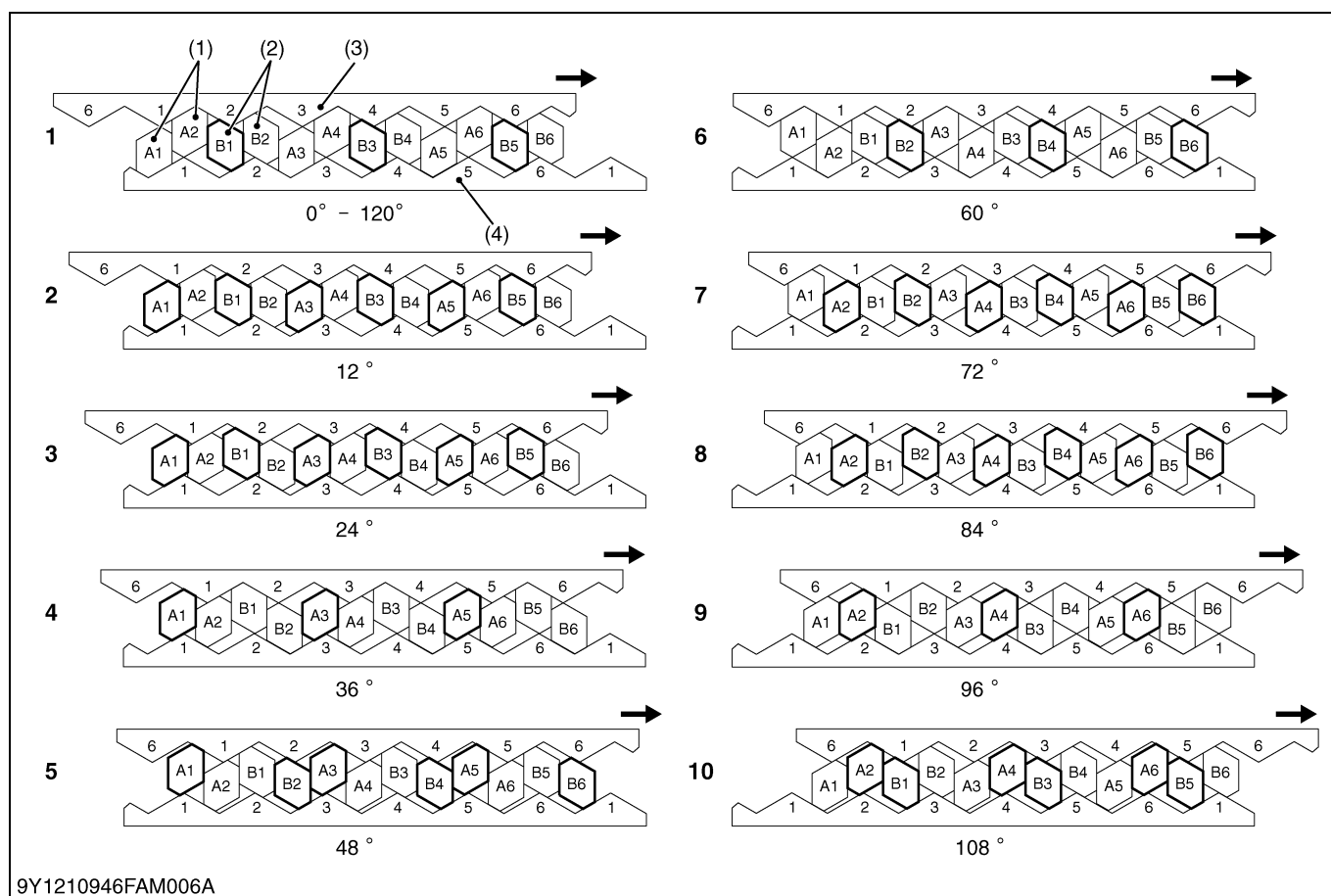


- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (1) O-ring                      | (11) Shim                  |
| (2) Plug                        | (12) Front Case Cover      |
| (3) Oil Seal                    | (13) Cam Face              |
| (4) Internal Cir-clip           | (14) Cam Follower          |
| (5) Collar                      | (15) Bevel Gear (35T)      |
| (6) Bevel Gear Shaft (8T)       | (16) Disc Spring           |
| (7) Collar                      | (17) Cam Face              |
| (8) Front Case                  | (18) Differential Case Cap |
| (9) Shim                        | (19) Thrust Washer         |
| (10) Differential Case Assembly | (20) Differential Case     |

9Y1210996FAM0003US0



## (2) Operation



(1) Cam Follower A

(2) Cam Follower B

(3) Face Cam (Move)

(4) Face Cam (Fix)

The two face cams are described linearly and schematically.

This shows the difference in cross sectional shape of the cam followers A (1), B (2).

The cam followers transferring drive power are shown using thicker lines.

This is a figure showing drawings of the outer wheel moved by the face cam (3) 12 degrees each when turning.

Each of the cam followers (1), (2) are hooked into a groove on the differential case and so move in up and down directions.

The cam followers (1), (2) receive power from the differential case and transfer the drive force to the face cam (4) through the contact surface.

During turning, when the upper face cam (3) start to move earlier than the lower face cam (4), each of the cam followers start to move up and down.

When the face cam (3) is offset in order the cam followers slide obliquely providing space to ride over the cam lobes.

Illustrations "1" and "6" show the instant cam follower A (1) is riding over the cam lobe and the "6" cam followers A (1) are going over the upper and lower cam lobes at the same time.

Illustrations "4" and "9" are the instant that cam follower B (2) is riding over the cam lobe.

The continuous differential motion of from illustration "1" to "10" make 1 round.

This enables absorbing of the difference in rotation of the left and right wheels.

After straightening out, the cam followers are captured 2 to a space sandwiched between upper and lower cam (4) based on where they are.

9Y1210996FAM0004US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	5-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	5-S2
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	5-S3
4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING .....	5-S4
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING .....	5-S4
[2] PREPARATION .....	5-S6
(1) Knuckle Case .....	5-S6
(2) Front Differential Case.....	5-S10
(3) Front Shock Absorber.....	5-S17
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	5-S18
(1) Knuckle Case .....	5-S18
(2) Front Differential Case.....	5-S19
(3) Front Shock Absorber.....	5-S22
[4] SERVICING .....	5-S23



# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Front Wheels Wander to Right or Left</b>	1. Tire pressure uneven	Adjust	G-24
	2. Improper toe-in adjustment (improper alignment)	Adjust	5-S4
	3. Tie-rod end loose	Tighten	5-S4
	4. Air sucked in power steering circuit	Bleed	—
<b>Front Wheels Can Not Be Driven</b>	1. CV joint broken	Replace	5-S13
	2. Front wheel drive gears in transmission broken	Replace	2-S40
	3. Front differential gear broken	Replace	5-S20
<b>Noise</b>	1. Gear backlash excessive	Adjust or replace	5-S26
	2. Oil insufficient	Fill	5-S10
	3. Bearings damaged or broken	Replace	5-S19
	4. Gears damaged or broken	Replace	5-S20
	5. Bevel pinion shaft turning force improper	Adjust	5-S23
	6. 4WD drive shaft o-ring damaged	Replace	5-S15

9Y1210996FAS0001US0

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Front Wheel Alignment	Toe-in	5 to 15 mm 0.2 to 0.59 in.	—
Bevel Pinion Shaft	Turning Torque	0.79 to 0.98 N·m 0.080 to 0.10 kgf·m 0.058 to 0.72 lbf·ft	—
Bevel Pinion Shaft to Bevel Gear	Backlash	0.15 to 0.30 mm 0.0059 to 0.011 in.	—

9Y1210996FAS0002US0

### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

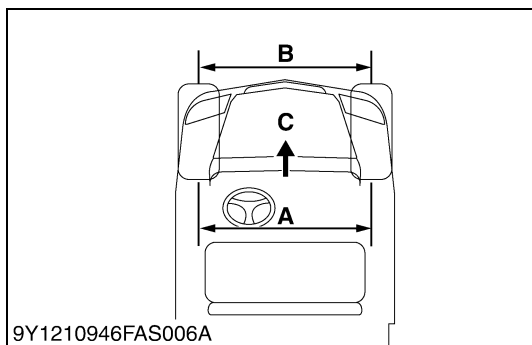
Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Tie-rod end lock nut	74 to 84	7.6 to 8.5	55 to 60
Front axle slotted nut	190 to 200	19.4 to 20.3	141 to 147
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0	5.10 to 5.60	36.9 to 40.5
Brake hose eye joint bolt (M10)	22.6 to 26.8	2.31 to 2.73	16.7 to 19.7
Front differential case mounting screw	39.2 to 44.1	4.00 to 4.49	29.0 to 32.5
Knuckle case cover mounting screw	48.1 to 55.9	4.91 to 5.70	35.5 to 41.2
Front differential case cover mounting screw	39.2 to 44.1	4.00 to 4.49	29.0 to 32.5
Bevel gear UBS screw	29.4 to 34.3	3.00 to 3.49	21.7 to 25.2
Differential case cap mounting screw	14 to 17	1.5 to 1.7	11 to 12

9Y1210996FAS0003US0

## 4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING

### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING



9Y1210946FAS006A

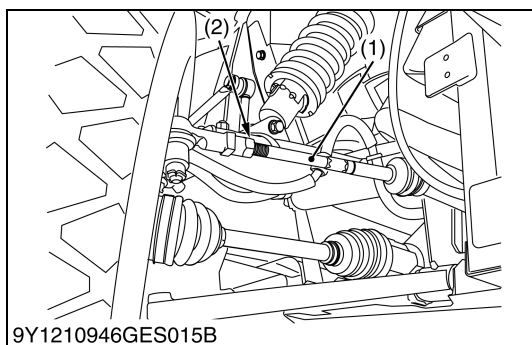
#### Checking Toe-in

1. Park vehicle on a flat place.
2. Turn steering wheel so front wheels are in the straight ahead position.
3. Lock the park brake and stop the engine.
4. Measure distance between tire beads at front of tire, at hub height ("A"- "B").
5. Measure distance between tire beads at rear of tire, at hub height.
6. Front distance should be shorter than distance. If not, adjust tie-rod length.

Toe-in ("A" – "B")	Factory specification	5 to 15 mm 0.2 to 0.59 in.
--------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------------

A: Wheel to Wheel Distance at Rear B: Wheel to Wheel Distance at Front  
C: Front

9Y1210996FAS0004US0



9Y1210946GES015B

#### Adjusting Toe-in

##### ■ IMPORTANT

- Keep the length of the left and right tie-rod equal.

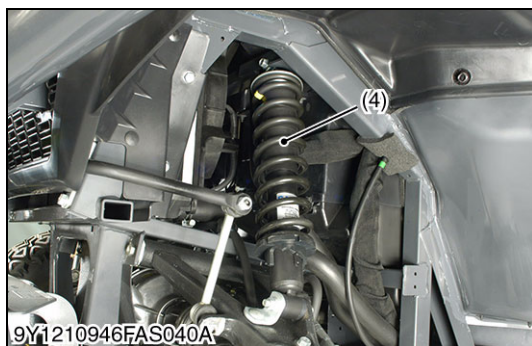
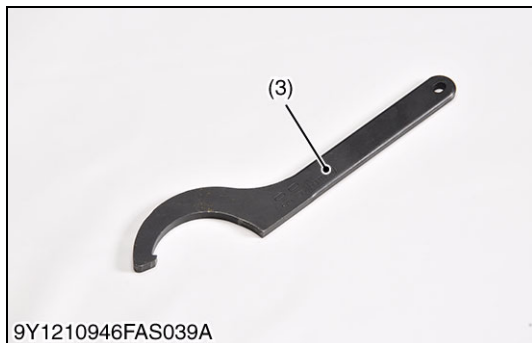
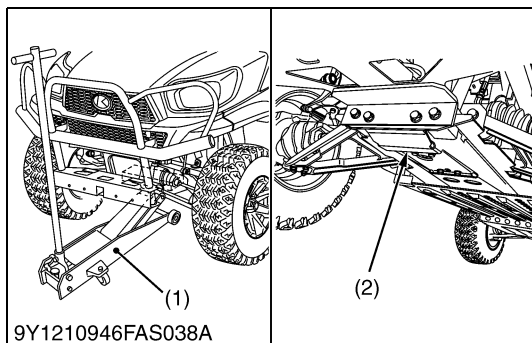
1. Loosen the lock nut and turn the tie-rod to adjust the rod length until the proper toe-in measurement is obtained.
2. Retighten the lock nut.

Tightening torque	Tie-rod end lock nut	74 to 84 N·m 7.6 to 8.5 kgf·m 55 to 60 lbf·ft
-------------------	----------------------	---

(1) Tie-rod

(2) Lock Nut

9Y1210996FAS0005US0



## Adjusting Front Shock Absorber

### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury:

- Be sure to work on a firm, flat and level surface with the engine shut off and parking brake "ON".
- Keep the position of the left right rear shock absorber equal.

**Uneven adjustment can cause poor handling and loss of control, which could lead to an accident.**

1. Jack up the plate under the front axle case only.
2. Adjust the rear shock absorber springs, turn the adjusting sleeves on the shock absorbers to the desired position with the hook wrench.

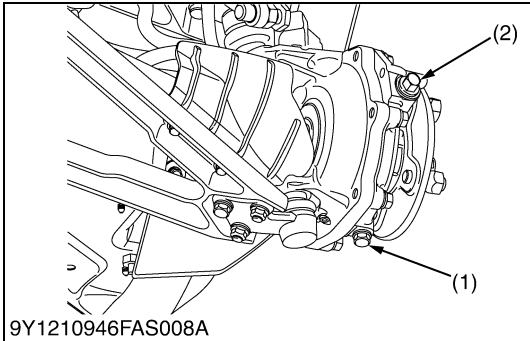
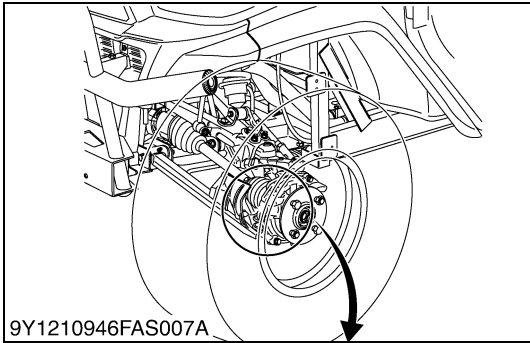
Position	Spring	Load
1	Stronger	Heavy
2	↑	↑
3 (default)		
4	↓	↓
5	Weaker	Light

- (1) Jack (3) Hook Wrench  
(2) Plate Under the Front Axle Case (4) Front Shock Absorber

9Y1210996FAS0006US0

[2] PREPARATION

(1) Knuckle Case



**Draining Knuckle Case Oil**

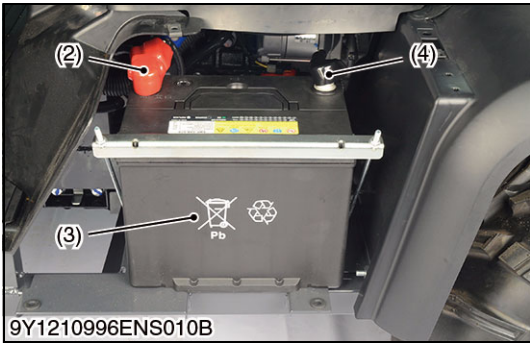
- 1. Park the vehicle on a firm, flat, and level surface.
- 2. Remove the wheel.
- 3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain the filling plugs at the L.H. knuckle case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
- 4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.
- 5. Use the same procedure to change the R.H. knuckle case oil.

Knuckle case oil	Reference capacity (one side)	0.25 L 0.26 U.S.qts 0.22 Imp.qts
------------------	----------------------------------	--

(1) Drain Plug

(2) Filling Plug

9Y1210996BRS0010US0



**Battery**

**CAUTION**

- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.
- 1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
- 2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
- 3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.

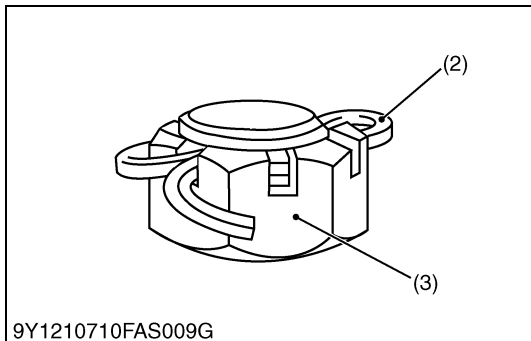
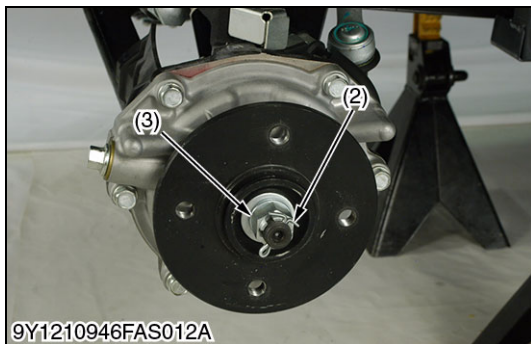
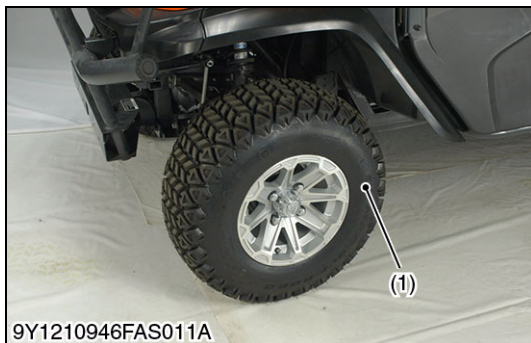
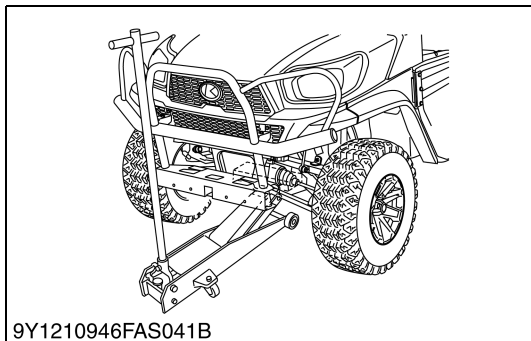
(1) L.H. Side Cover

(3) Battery

(2) Positive Cable

(4) Negative Cable

9Y1210996BRS0011US0



## Front Wheel and Front Axle Nut

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury, death or vehicle damage:

- Do not work under the vehicle unless it is secured by safe stands or suitable blocking.

1. Jack up at the plate under the front axle case only.
2. Remove the front wheel (1).
3. Remove the cotter pin (2) and slotted nut (3).

### **(When reassembling)**

- After tightening the front axle slotted nut to specified torques, install a cotter pin as shown in the figure left.

### **■ NOTE**

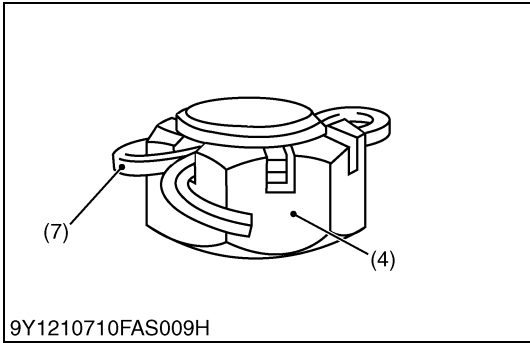
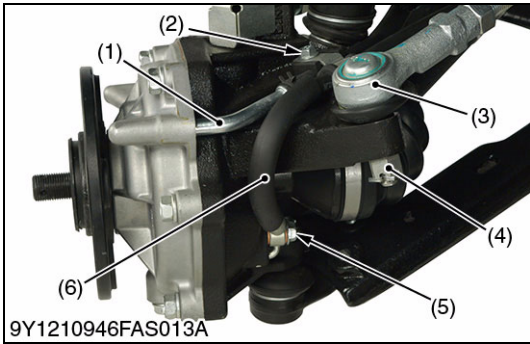
- Tighten the slotted nut to 190 N·m (19.4 kgf·m, 140 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Front axle slotted nut	190 to 200 N·m 19.4 to 20.3 kgf·m 141 to 147 lbf·ft
	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Front Wheel  
(2) Cotter Pin

- (3) Slotted Nut

9Y1210996BRS0012US0



**Tie-rod End, Brake Hose and Breather Hose**

**CAUTION**

- When the brake hose is removed, the brake fluid come out. Be careful not to stain other hoses or rubber boot with the brake fluid. Brake fluid stains should be washed and wiped off immediately. Likewise, the brake fluid on the tools should be wiped off immediately.

1. Remove the clamp (2).
2. Remove the eye joint bolt (5) for brake hose (6) and drain the brake fluid.
3. Remove the breather pipe (1).
4. Remove the cotter pin (7) and remove the tie-rod end slotted nut (4).

**(When reassembling)**

- Replace the copper washers with new ones.
- Bleed air of the brake line after break hoses reassembled.
- Tighten the slotted nut to 50.0 N·m (5.10 kgf·m, 36.9 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0 N·m 5.10 to 5.60 kgf·m 36.9 to 40.5 lbf·ft
	Brake hose eye joint bolt (M10)	22.6 to 26.8 N·m 2.31 to 2.73 kgf·m 16.7 to 19.7 lbf·ft

- (1) Breather Pipe

(2) Clamp

(3) Tie-rod End

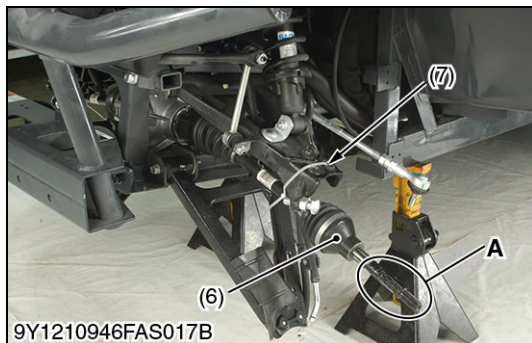
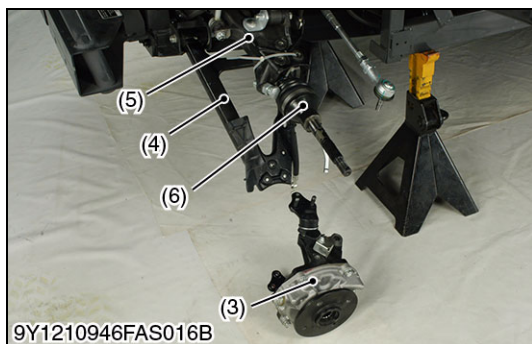
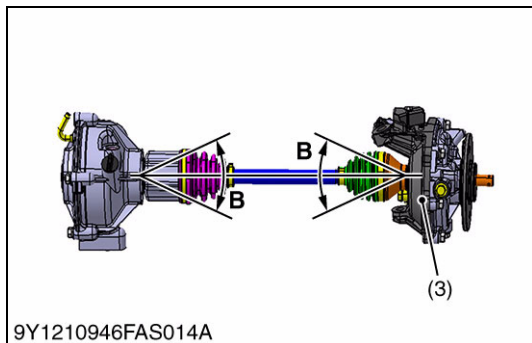
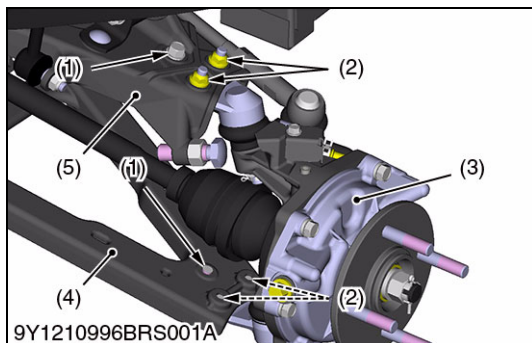
(4) Tie-rod Slotted Nut
- (5) Eye Joint Bolt

(6) Brake Hose

(7) Cotter Pin

9Y1210996BRS0013US0





### Knuckle Case

#### NOTE

- CV joint should not exceed the allowable bend angle  $\pm 25^\circ$  when being reassembled or disassembled.

- Remove the flange bolts (1) and lock nuts (2) from the upper and lower arms (5), (4).
- Support the CV joint (6) with a clamp (7) or equivalent to prevent the CV joint from falling before removing the knuckle case assembly.
- Remove the knuckle case assembly (3).
- Remove the CV joint (6).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply anti-fretting grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to the spline of CV joint (6).

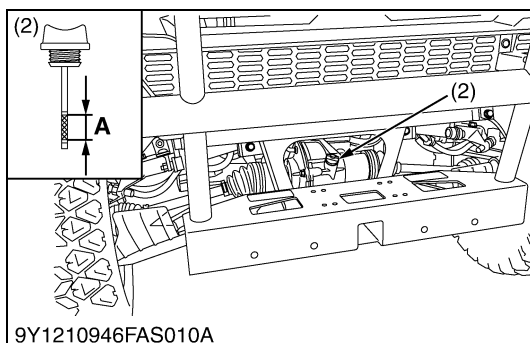
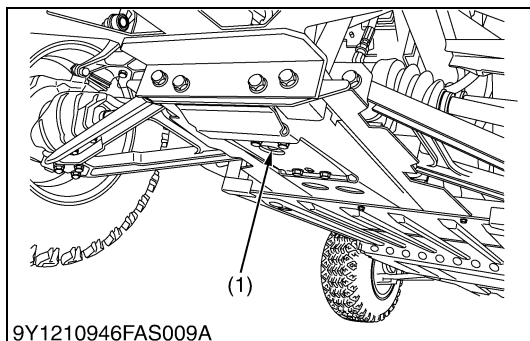
- Flange Bolt
- Lock Nut
- Knuckle Case Assembly
- Upper Arm
- Lower Arm
- CV Joint
- Clamp

A: Apply to grease.

B:  $\pm 25^\circ$

9Y1210996BRS0014US0

## (2) Front Differential Case



### Draining Front Axle Case Oil

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, flat and level surface.
2. Turn over the rubber sheet.
3. To drain the used oil, remove the drain and filling plugs at the front axle case and drain the oil completely into the oil pan.
4. After draining, reinstall the drain plug.

#### (When reassembling)

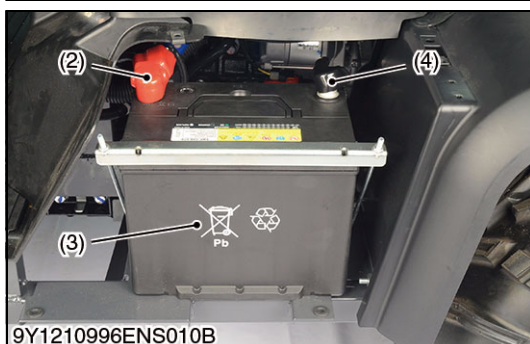
- Use KUBOTA UDT or KUBOTA SUPER UDT fluid. Refer to G-8.

Front axle case oil	Capacity	0.6 L 0.63 U.S.qts 0.52 Imp.qts
---------------------	----------	---------------------------------------

- (1) Drain Plug
- (2) Filling Plug with Dipstick

**A: Oil level is acceptable within this range.**

9Y1210996FAS0007US0



### Battery



#### CAUTION

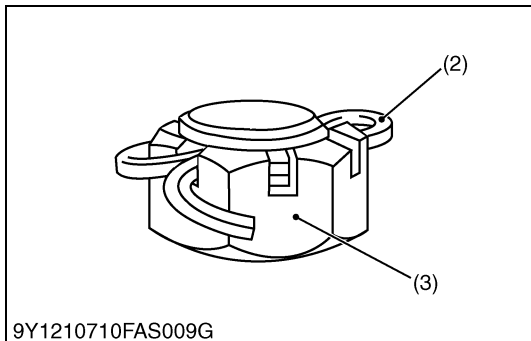
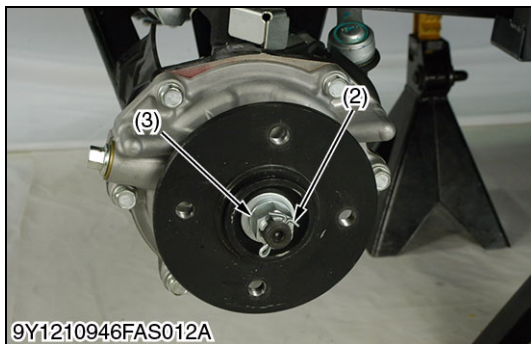
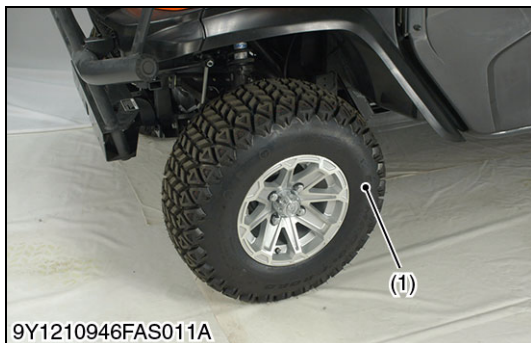
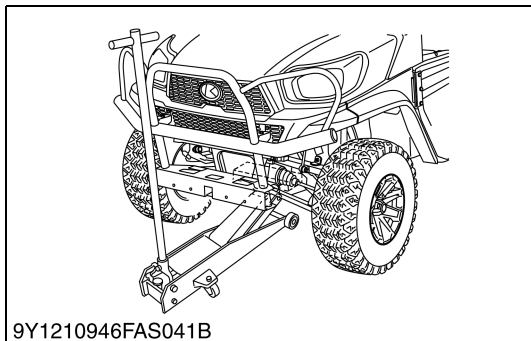
- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.

- (1) L.H. Side Cover
- (2) Positive Cable

- (3) Battery
- (4) Negative Cable

9Y1210996BRS0011US0



## Front Wheel and Front Axle Nut

### **! WARNING**

To avoid serious injury, death or vehicle damage:

- Do not work under the vehicle unless it is secured by safe stands or suitable blocking.

1. Jack up at the plate under the front axle case only.
2. Remove the front wheel (1).
3. Remove the cotter pin (2) and slotted nut (3).

### **(When reassembling)**

- After tightening the front axle slotted nut to specified torques, install a cotter pin as shown in the figure left.

### **■ NOTE**

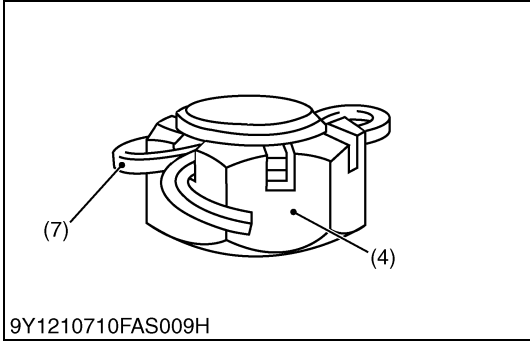
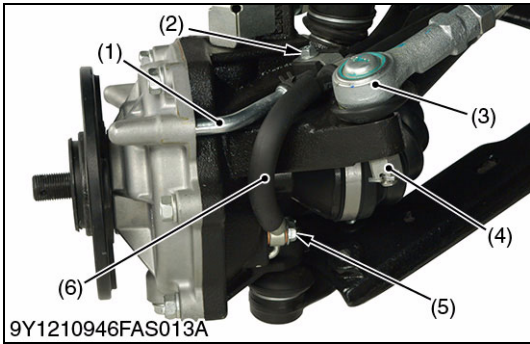
- Tighten the slotted nut to 190 N·m (19.4 kgf·m, 140 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Front axle slotted nut	190 to 200 N·m 19.4 to 20.3 kgf·m 141 to 147 lbf·ft
	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Front Wheel  
(2) Cotter Pin

- (3) Slotted Nut

9Y1210996BRS0012US0



**Tie-rod End, Brake Hose and Breather Hose**

**CAUTION**

- When the brake hose is removed, the brake fluid come out. Be careful not to stain other hoses or rubber boot with the brake fluid. Brake fluid stains should be washed and wiped off immediately. Likewise, the brake fluid on the tools should be wiped off immediately.

1. Remove the clamp (2).
2. Remove the eye joint bolt (5) for brake hose (6) and drain the brake fluid.
3. Remove the breather pipe (1).
4. Remove the cotter pin (7) and remove the tie-rod end slotted nut (4).

**(When reassembling)**

- Replace the copper washers with new ones.
- Bleed air of the brake line after break hoses reassembled.
- Tighten the slotted nut to 50.0 N·m (5.10 kgf·m, 36.9 lbf·ft). If the slot and pin hole do not meet, tighten the nut until they do meet, and install cotter pin.

Tightening torque	Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0 N·m 5.10 to 5.60 kgf·m 36.9 to 40.5 lbf·ft
	Brake hose eye joint bolt (M10)	22.6 to 26.8 N·m 2.31 to 2.73 kgf·m 16.7 to 19.7 lbf·ft

- (1) Breather Pipe

(2) Clamp

(3) Tie-rod End

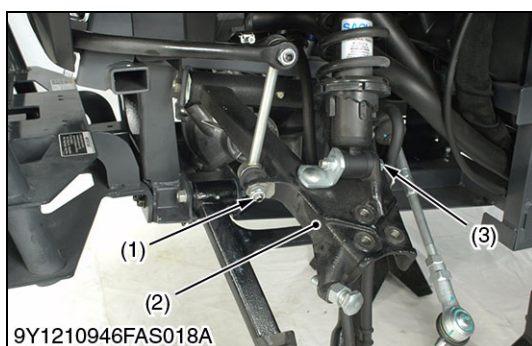
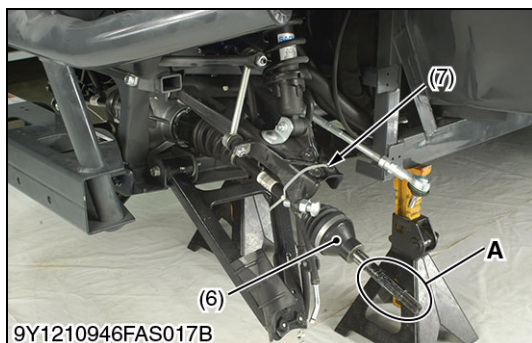
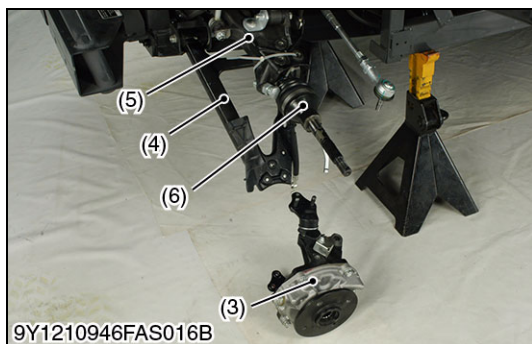
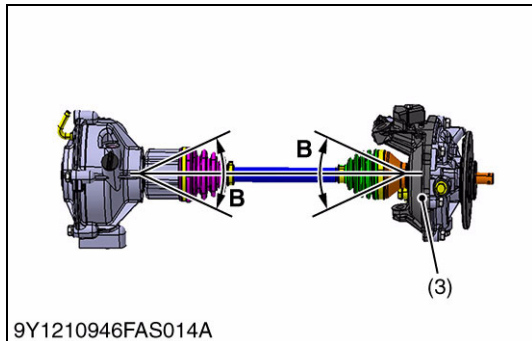
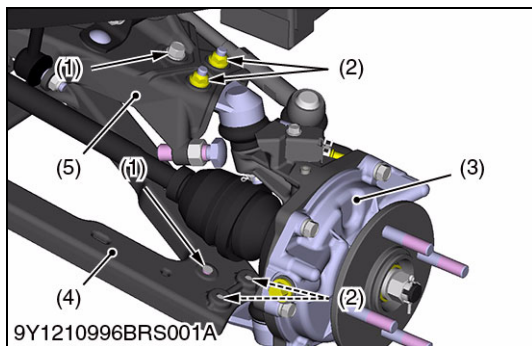
(4) Tie-rod Slotted Nut
- (5) Eye Joint Bolt

(6) Brake Hose

(7) Cotter Pin

9Y1210996BRS0013US0





### Knuckle Case

#### NOTE

- CV joint should not exceed the allowable bend angle  $\pm 25^\circ$  when being reassembled or disassembled.

- Remove the flange bolts (1) and lock nuts (2) from the upper and lower arms (5), (4).
- Support the CV joint (6) with a clamp (7) or equivalent to prevent the CV joint from falling before removing the knuckle case assembly.
- Remove the knuckle case assembly (3).
- Remove the CV joint (6).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply anti-fretting grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to the spline of CV joint (6).

- Flange Bolt
- Lock Nut
- Knuckle Case Assembly
- Upper Arm
- Lower Arm
- CV Joint
- Clamp

A: Apply to grease.

B:  $\pm 25^\circ$

9Y1210996BRS0014US0

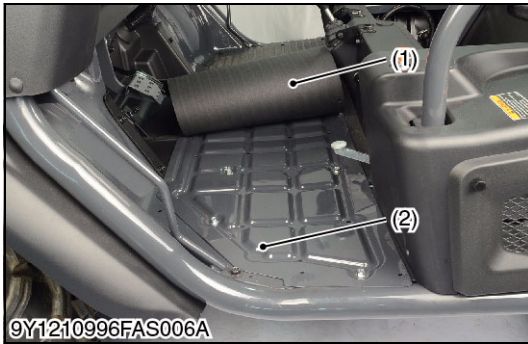
### Upper Arm and Stabilizer

- Remove the front shock absorber lower bolt and nut (3).
- Remove the stabilizer nut (1).
- Remove the upper arm (2).

- Stabilizer Nut
- Upper Arm

- Bolt and Nut

9Y1210996FAS0008US0



### **Step Mat and Step**

1. Remove the step mat (1).
2. Remove the step (2).

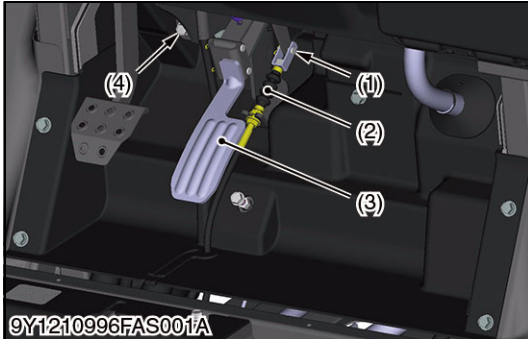
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Replace any damaged rivets.

(1) Step Mat

(2) Step

9Y1210996FAS0009US0



### **Throttle Pedal and Front Center Cover**

1. Remove the pin (1) and disconnect the accelerator cable (2) from the accelerator pedal assembly.
2. Remove the flange bolts (4) and remove the accelerator pedal assemble (3).
3. Remove the flange bolts (5) and remove the front center cover (6).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Adjust accelerator cable. (See page 2-S12)

(1) Pin

(4) Flange Bolt

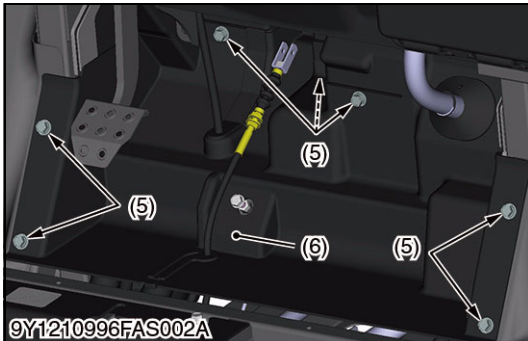
(2) Accelerator Cable

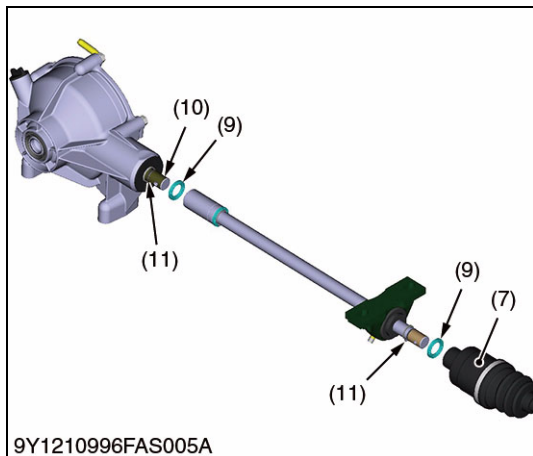
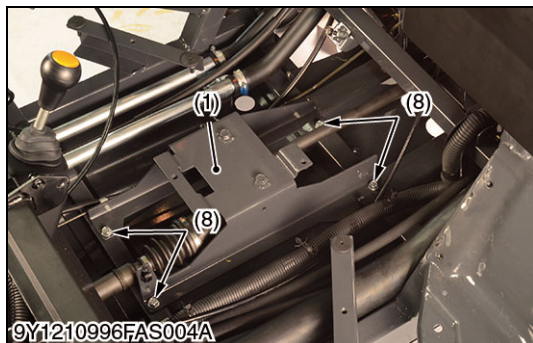
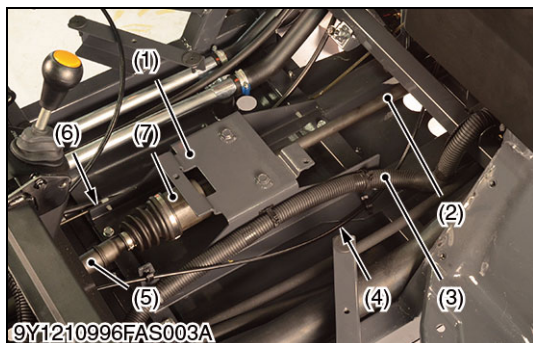
(5) Flange Bolt

(3) Accelerator Pedal Assembly

(6) Front Center Cover

9Y1210996FAS0010US0





### **Propeller Shaft, 4WD Drive Shaft, and Bearing Unit Stay**

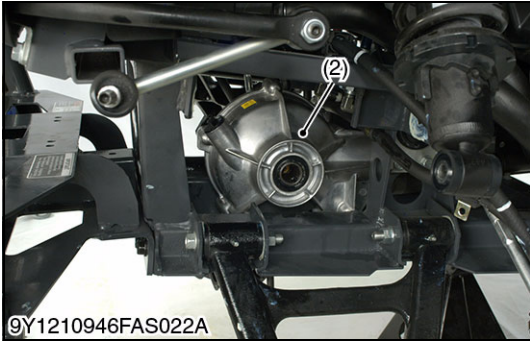
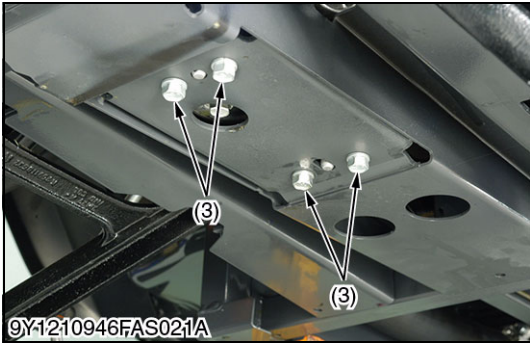
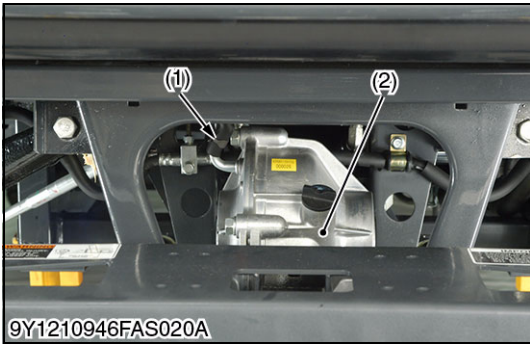
1. Disconnect the harness (3), unload cable (4), and brake pipe (6) from the bearing unit stay (1).
2. Disconnect the propeller shaft assembly (5) from the 4WD drive shaft (2) by pulling back on the CV joint (7). Set propeller shaft assembly to the side.
3. Remove the flange bolts (8) from the bearing unit stay.
4. Remove the bearing unit stay with the 4WD drive shaft (2).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Inspect DT front plugs (9) and O-rings (11) for damage. Replace when necessary.
- Adjust accelerator cable. (See page 2-S12)
- Apply anti-fretting grease (RAILMASTER or equivalent) to the splines of FWD drive shaft (2) and bevel pinion shaft (10).

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) Bearing Unit Stay | (7) CV Joint            |
| (2) 4WD Drive Shaft   | (8) Flange Bolt         |
| (3) Harness           | (9) DT Front Plug       |
| (4) Unload cable      | (10) Bevel Pinion Shaft |
| (5) Propeller Shaft   | (11) O-ring             |
| (6) Brake Pipe        |                         |

9Y1210996FAS0011US0



**Front Differential Case**

- 1. Disconnect the breather hose (1).
- 2. Remove the front differential case mounting screws (3).
- 3. Remove the front differential case (2).

**(When reassembling)**

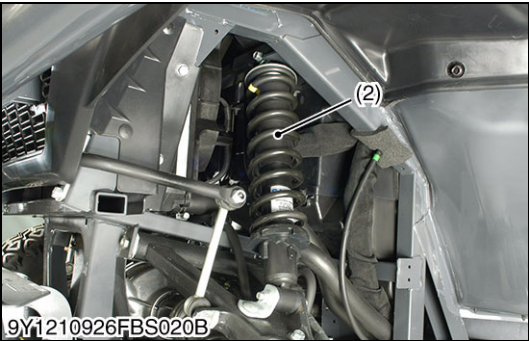
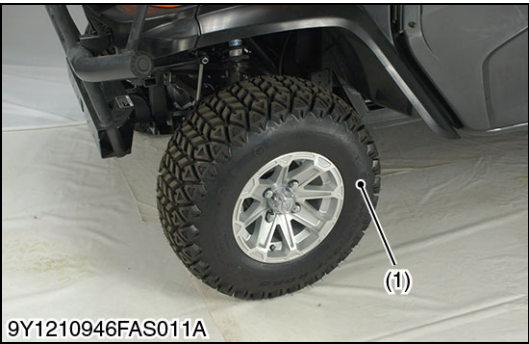
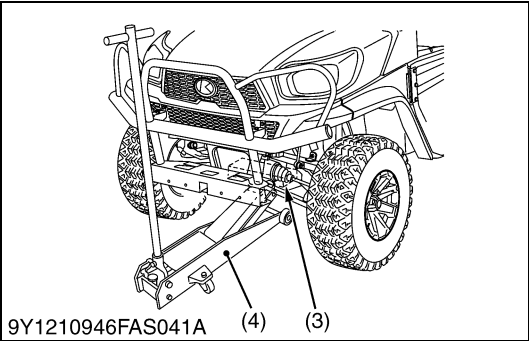
Tightening torque	Front differentiae case mounting screw	39.2 to 44.1 N·m 4.00 to 4.49 kgf·m 29.0 to 32.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--	---

- (1) Breather Hose
- (3) Front Differential Mounting Screw

9Y1210996FAS0023US0



(3) Front Shock Absorber



Front Shock Absorber

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid serious injury, death or vehicle damage:

- Do not work under the vehicle unless it is secured by safe stands or suitable blocking.
1. Jack up at the palte under the front axle case only.
  2. Remove the front wheel mounting screw.
  3. Remove the front shock absorber (2).

(When reassembling)

Tightening torque	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- (1) Front Wheel

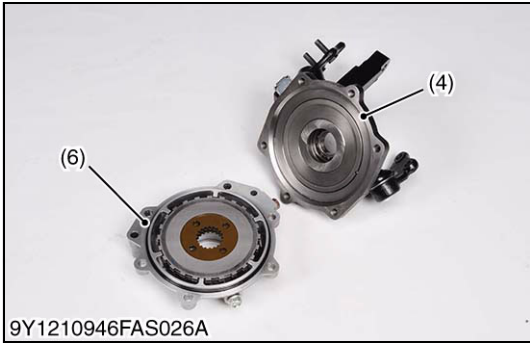
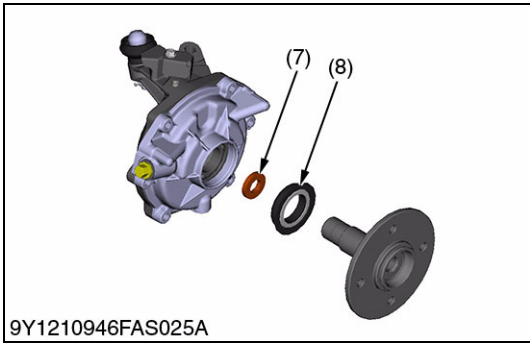
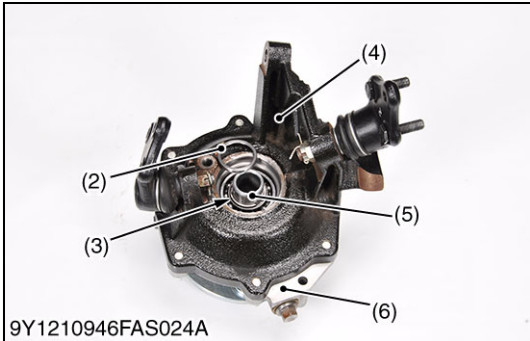
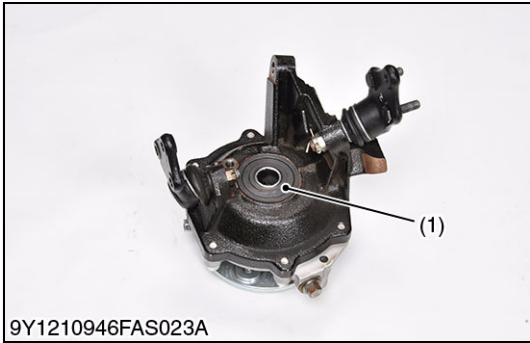
(2) Shock Absorber
- (3) Wooden Block

(4) Jack

9Y1210996FAS0012US0

[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

(1) Knuckle Case



**Front Axle**

1. Remove the oil seal (1).
2. Remove the snap ring collar (2) and remove the external snap ring (3).
3. Tap out the front axle (5) with plastic hammer.
4. Remove the knuckle case mounting screw.
5. Separate the knuckle case (4) and knuckle case cover (6).

**(When reassembling)**

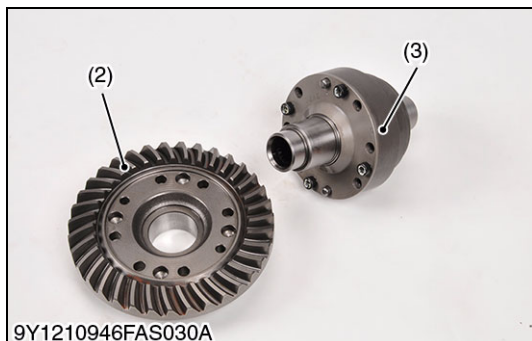
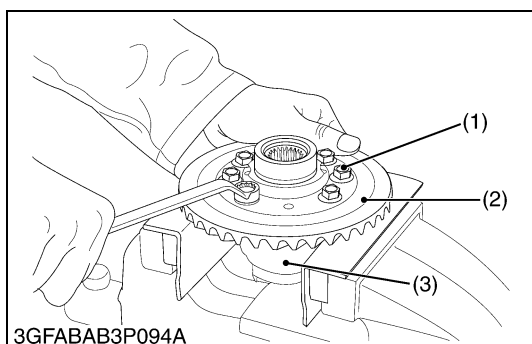
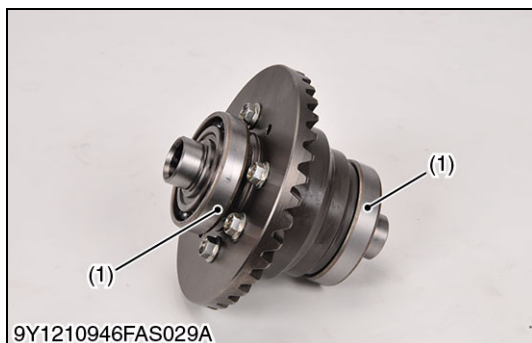
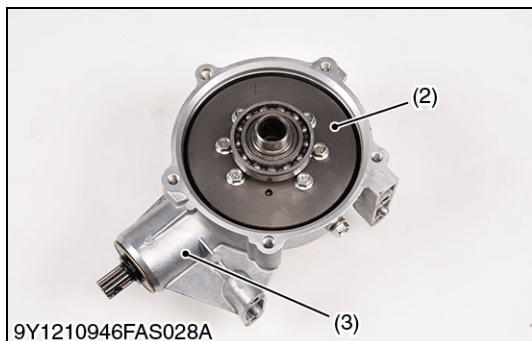
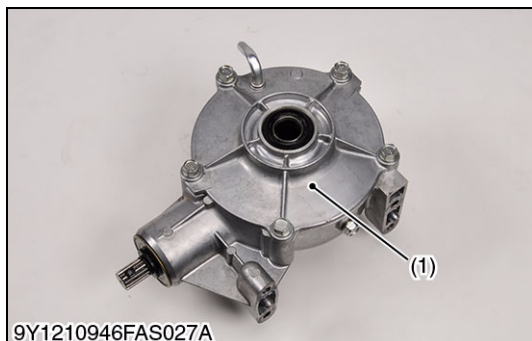
- Be sure insert the external snap ring.
- Replace the oil seal with new one.
- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.
- Insert the bearing (7) and oil seal (8) first to the knuckle cover, and then install the knuckle case cover.

Tightening torque	Knuckle case cover mounting screw	48.1 to 55.9 N·m 4.91 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.5 to 41.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Oil Seal           | (5) Front Axle         |
| (2) Snap Ring Collar   | (6) Knuckle Case Cover |
| (3) External Snap Ring | (7) Bearing            |
| (4) Knuckle Case       | (8) Oil Seal           |

9Y1210996BRS0016US0

## (2) Front Differential Case



### Front Differential Assembly

1. Remove the front differential case cover mounting screws and separate the front differential case cover (1).
2. Remove the differential gear assembly (2).

#### (When reassembling)

- Use same number of shims as before disassembling.

Tightening torque	Front differential case cover mounting screw	39.2 to 44.1 N·m 4.00 to 4.49 kgf·m 29.0 to 32.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--	---

(1) Front Differential Case Cover

(3) Front Differential Case

(2) Differential Gear Assembly

9Y1210996FAS0013US0

### Bearing

1. Remove the right and left bearings (1) from the differential case.

(1) Bearing

9Y1210996FAS0014US0

### Bevel Gear

1. Remove the bevel gear UBS screws (1).
2. Remove the bevel gear (2) from differential case (3).

#### (When reassembling)

- Apply liquid lock (Loctite 262 or its equivalent) to the spiral bevel gear UBS screws.

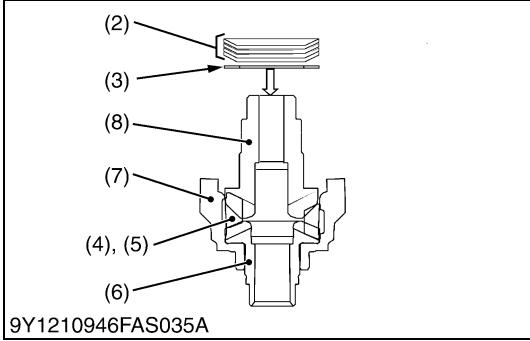
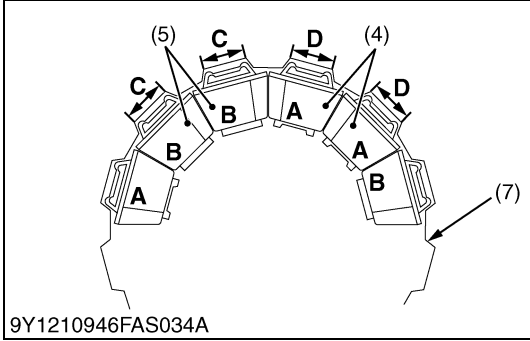
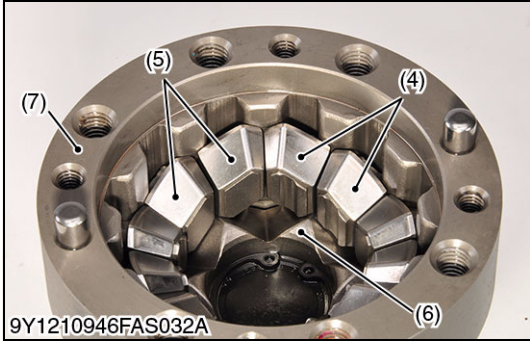
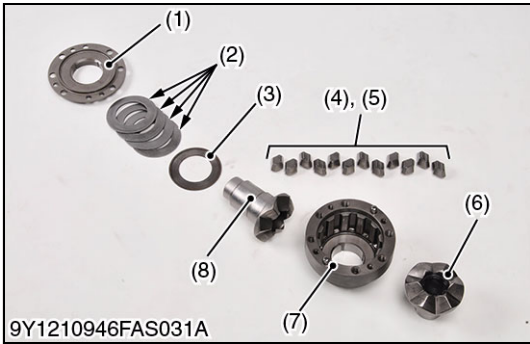
Tightening torque	Bevel gear UBS screw	29.4 to 34.3 N·m 3.00 to 3.49 kgf·m 21.7 to 25.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	----------------------	---

(1) Bevel Gear UBS Screw

(3) Differential Case

(2) Bevel Gear

9Y1210996FAS0015US0



**Differential Gear (LSD)**

1. Remove the differential case cap (1).
2. Remove the disc springs (2) and thrust washer (3).
3. Remove the cam face (6).
4. Remove the cam followers (4), (5).
5. Remove the cam face (8).

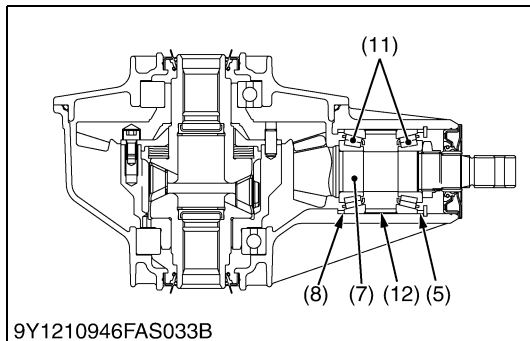
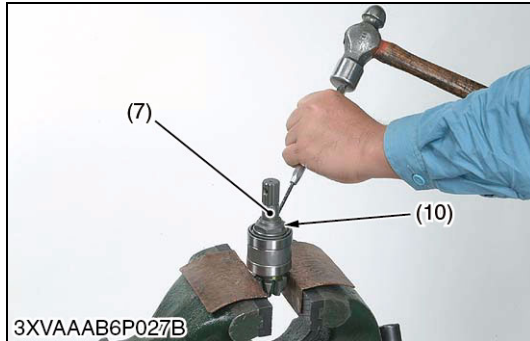
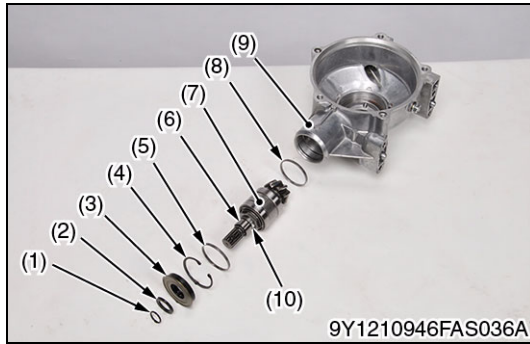
**(When reassembling)**

- Make sure of the width of the groove by measuring.
- Assemble the cam followers B (5) two by two into the narrower groove "C" of the differential case (7) as shown in the figure.
- Assemble the cam followers A (4) in to the wider groove "D" of differential case (7) as shown in the figure.
- Assemble the disc spring (2) in the direction as shown in the figure.

Tightening torque	Differential case cap mounting screw	14 to 17 N·m 1.5 to 1.7 kgf·m 11 to 12 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------------------------	---

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) Differential Case Cap | (7) Differential Case |
| (2) Disc Spring           | (8) Cam Face          |
| (3) Thrust Washer         |                       |
| (4) Cam Follower A        | <b>C: Narrow</b>      |
| (5) Cam Follower B        | <b>D: Wide</b>        |
| (6) Cam Face              |                       |

9Y1210996FAS0016US0



### Bevel Pinion Gear Assembly

1. Remove the O-ring (1) and plug (2).
2. Remove the oil seal (3).
3. Remove the internal snap ring (4) and tap out the bevel pinion shaft (7) from front.
4. Remove the sleeve (6).
5. Clamp the bevel pinion shaft assembly in a vise.
6. Remove the stake of lock nut (10), and then remove the lock nut (10).

### (When reassembling)

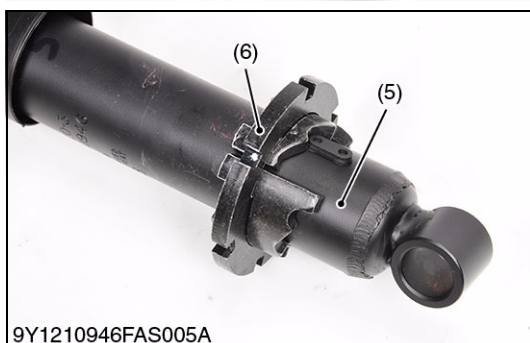
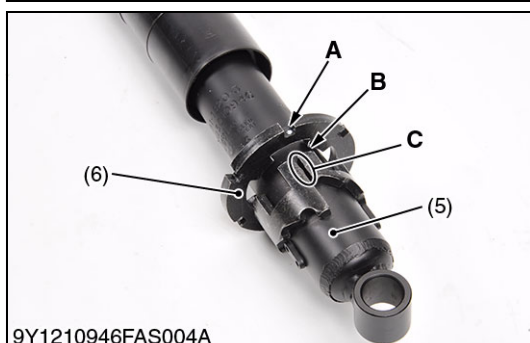
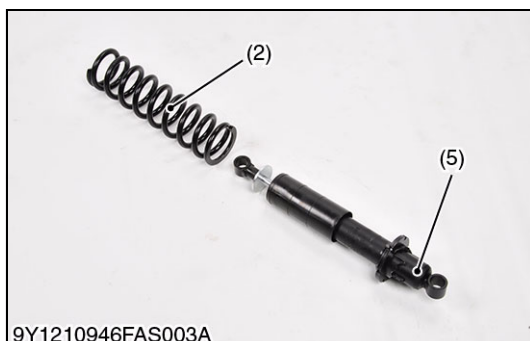
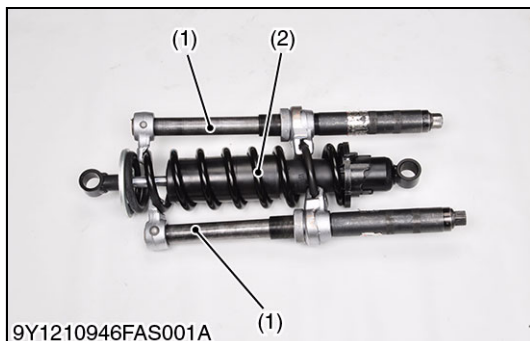
- Apply gear oil to the taper roller bearings (11) and install them correctly, noting their direction.
- Replace the lock nut (10) and oil seal (3) with new ones.
- After tighten the lock nut (10) to the specified torque, stake it firmly.
- Install the adjusting collars (5), (8) to their original position.
- Use same thickness of collars as before disassembling.

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) O-ring             | (7) Bevel Pinion Shaft      |
| (2) Plug               | (8) Collar                  |
| (3) Oil Seal           | (9) Front Differential Case |
| (4) Internal Snap Ring | (10) Lock Nut               |
| (5) Collar             | (11) Taper Roller Bearing   |
| (6) Sleeve             | (12) Collar                 |

9Y1210996FAS0017US0



### (3) Front Shock Absorber



#### Shock Absorber and Spring

1. Set the spring compressor (1).
2. Shorten spring with a spring compressor (1).
3. Remove the retainer (3) and spacer (4).
4. Remove the spring (2).

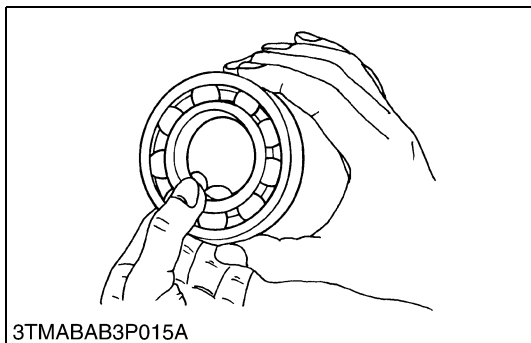
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the washer (6) to shock absorber (5), aligning the white mark "A", groove "B" and slit "C".

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Spring Compressor | <b>A: White Mark</b> |
| (2) Spring            | <b>B: Groove</b>     |
| (3) Retainer          | <b>C: Slit</b>       |
| (4) Spacer            |                      |
| (5) Shock Absorber    |                      |
| (6) Washer            |                      |

9Y1210996FAS0018US0

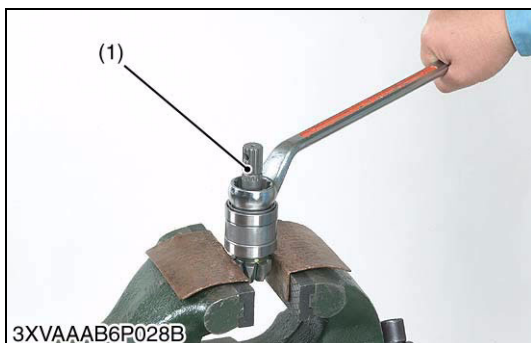
## [4] SERVICING



### Checking Bearing

1. Hold the inner race, and push and pull the outer race in all directions to check for wear and roughness.
2. Apply transmission fluid to the bearing, and hold the inner race. Then, turn the outer race to check rotation.
3. If there is any problem, replace it.

9Y1210996FAS0019US0



### Turning Torque of Bevel Pinion Shaft

1. Clamp the spiral bevel pinion shaft assembly to the vise and tighten the staking nut.
2. Measure the turning torque of bevel pinion shaft.
3. If the turning torque is not within the factory specifications, adjust with the lock nut.

Turning torque	Factory specification	0.79 to 0.98 N·m 0.080 to 0.10 kgf·m 0.58 to 0.72 lbf·ft
----------------	-----------------------	--

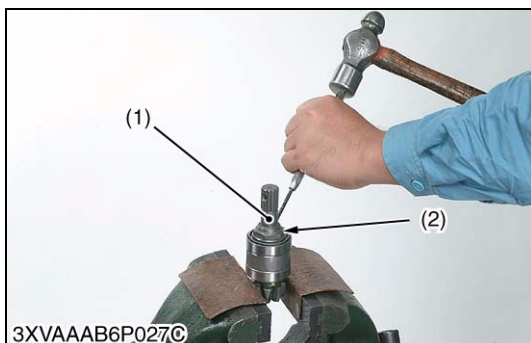
### NOTE

- After turning force adjustment, be sure to stake the lock nut.

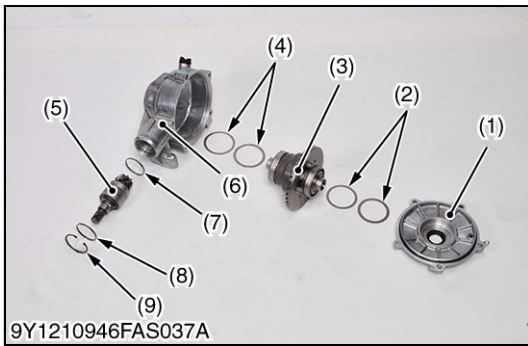
(1) Pinion Shaft

(2) Staking Lock Nut

9Y1210996FAS0020US0







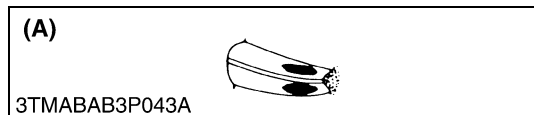
### **Tooth Contact between Bevel Pinion Shaft and Bevel Gear**

#### **(When checking)**

- Use same number of shims as before disassembling.
  - Use same thickness of collar as before disassembling.
1. Apply red lead (or prussian blue) lightly on the teeth of spiral bevel pinion shaft.
  2. Reassemble the front differential case and front differential case cover.
  3. Tighten the front differential case cover mounting screws to specified torque.
  4. Turn the bevel pinion shaft to the clockwise by 5 to 6 rotations and 5 to 6 rotations to the counterclockwise.
  5. Check the tooth contact. If not proper, adjust with shims and collars according to the instructions below.

- |                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Front Differential Case Cover    | (6) Front Differential Case |
| (2) Adjusting Shim                   | (7) Adjusting Collar        |
| (3) Front Differential Gear Assembly | (8) Adjusting Collar        |
| (4) Adjusting Shim                   | (9) Internal Snap Ring      |
| (5) Bevel Pinion Shaft Assembly      |                             |

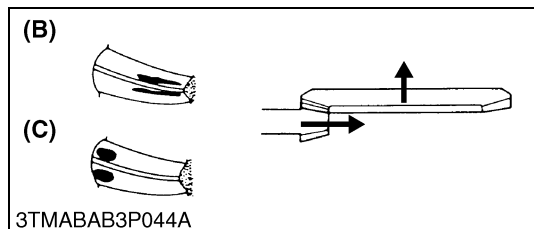
9Y1210996FAS0021US0



More than 35 % red lead contact area on the gear tooth surface. The center of tooth contact at 1/2 to 1/3 of the entire width from the small end.

**(A) Proper Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0048US0



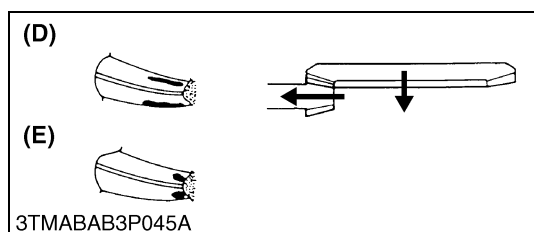
Change the adjusting collar to smaller size, and change the adjusting collar to larger size.

For move the spiral bevel gear rightward, reduce right side shim and add shim of the same thickness as the right side to left side.

**(B) Shallow Contact**

**(C) Heel Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0049US0



Change the adjusting collar to larger size, and change the adjusting collar to smaller size.

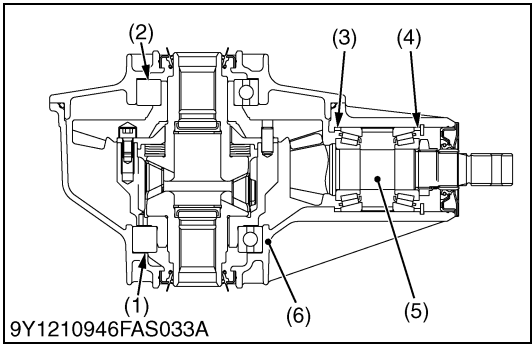
For move the spiral bevel gear leftward, reduce left side shim and add shim of the same thickness as the left side to right side.

Repeat above until the proper tooth contact and backlash are achieved.

**(D) Deep Contact**

**(E) Toe Contact**

9Y1210996TRS0050US0



**Backlash between Bevel Pinion Shaft and Bevel Gear**

1. Put the solder (0.5 mm (0.020 in.) thickness) on the position where the tooth proper contact of bevel pinion shaft.
2. Reassemble the differential assembly and front case cover, and rotate the bevel pinion shaft carefully.
3. Separate the front differential case cover and remove the differential assembly, again.
4. Measure the backlash by thickness of the point where solder is the thinnest.
5. When the backlash is too large, decrease the number of shims (L.H.) in the side of the bevel gear, and insert the shim (R.H.) of the same thickness as the removed ones to the opposite side.
6. When the backlash is too small, do the opposite way to increase backlash.

Adjust the backlash properly by repeating the above procedure.

Backlash between bevel pinion shaft and bevel gear	Factory specification	0.15 to 0.30 mm 0.0059 to 0.011 in.
--	-----------------------	--

**(Reference)**

- Thickness of shims (1) (L.H.):  
0.20 mm (0.0079 in.)  
0.30 mm (0.012 in.)  
0.50 mm (0.020 in.)
- Thickness of shims (2) (R.H.):  
0.10 mm (0.0039 in.)  
0.20 mm (0.0079 in.)  
0.30 mm (0.012 in.)  
0.50 mm (0.020 in.)
- Thickness of adjusting collars (3), (4):  
3.40 mm (0.134 in.)  
3.60 mm (0.142 in.)  
3.80 mm (0.150 in.)  
3.90 mm (0.154 in.)  
4.00 mm (0.157 in.)  
4.10 mm (0.161 in.)  
4.20 mm (0.165 in.)  
4.40 mm (0.173 in.)  
4.50 mm (0.177 in.)  
4.60 mm (0.181 in.)

- (1) Adjusting Shim

(2) Adjusting Shim

(3) Adjusting Collar
- (4) Adjusting Collar

(5) Bevel Pinion Shaft

(6) Front Differential Case Cover

9Y1210996FAS0022US0

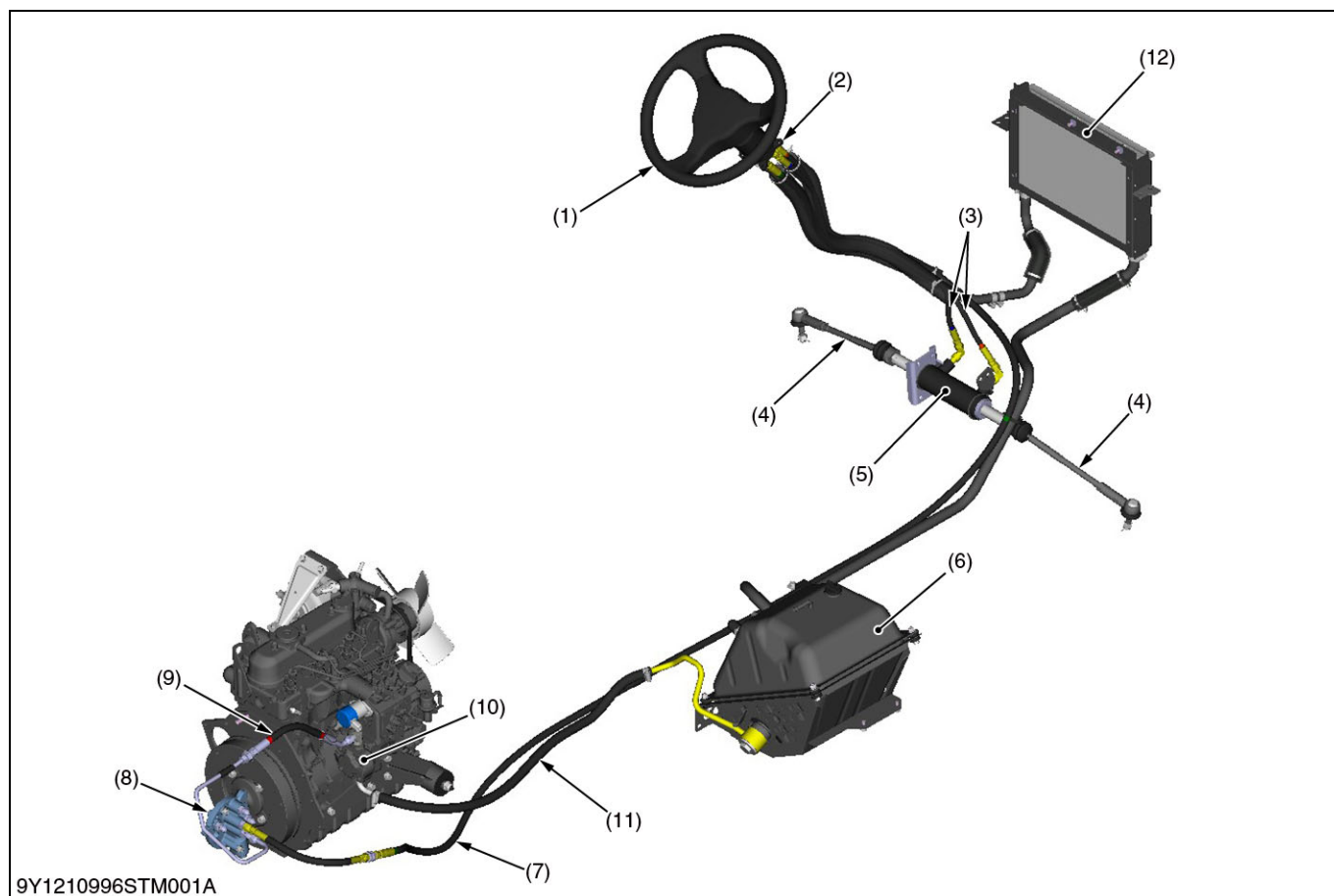
# **6 STEERING**

# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. STRUCTURE.....	6-M1
2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT .....	6-M2
3. STEERING CONTROLLER.....	6-M3
4. STEERING CYLINDER .....	6-M5

# 1. STRUCTURE



- |                                  |                             |                             |                     |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Steering Wheel               | (4) Tie-rod                 | (7) Return Hose             | (10) Hydraulic Pump |
| (2) Power Steering Controller    | (5) Power Steering Cylinder | (8) Hydraulic Control Valve | (11) Suction Hose   |
| (3) Power Steering Cylinder Hose | (6) Hydraulic Oil Tank      | (9) Delivery Hose           | (12) Oil Cooler     |

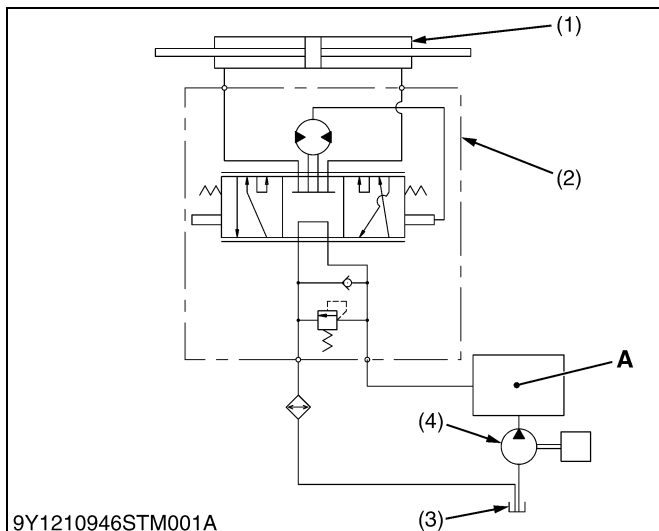
The full hydrostatic type power steering is used on the RTV-X1140.

This steering system consists of the power steering controller (2), power steering cylinder (5), hydraulic control valve (8), and hydraulic pump (10).

The steering system also consists of hydraulic hoses (3), (7), (9), (11), tie-rods (4), hydraulic oil tank (6), oil cooler (12), and steering wheel (1).

9Y1210996STM0001US0

## 2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



This model is provided with a full hydrostatic power steering.

In the full hydrostatic power steering, the steering controller is connected to the steering cylinder (1) with only the hydraulic piping. Accordingly, it does not have mechanical transmitting parts such as steering gear, pitman arm, drag link, etc. Therefore, it is simple in construction. This steering system consists of the power steering oil tank (3), hydraulic pump (4), steering controller (2), steering cylinder, etc.

An oil tank dedicated for power steering is located below the operator's seat. The oil in this tank is fed by the engine driven hydraulic pump to the steering controller. With the steering wheel at neutral, the oil returns through the controller to the oil tank. Turn the steering wheel, and just a required amount of oil is sent to the steering cylinder. The oil at the side opposite to the cylinder flows back to the tank.

This power steering controller is of non-load reaction type.

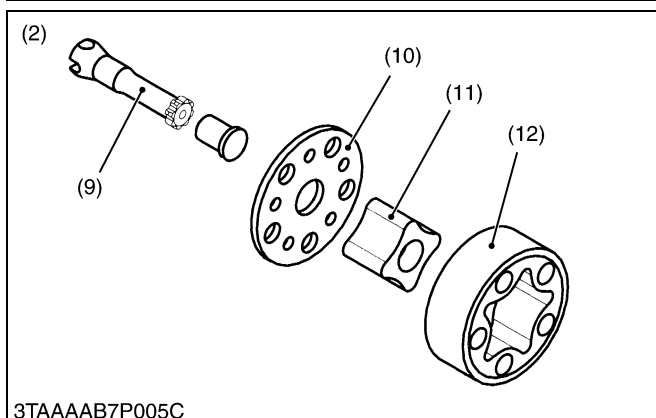
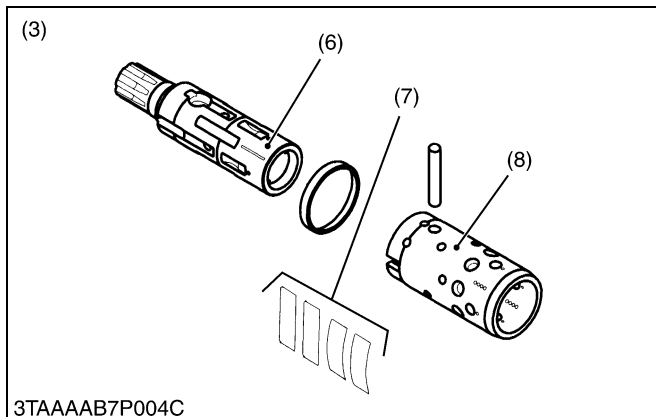
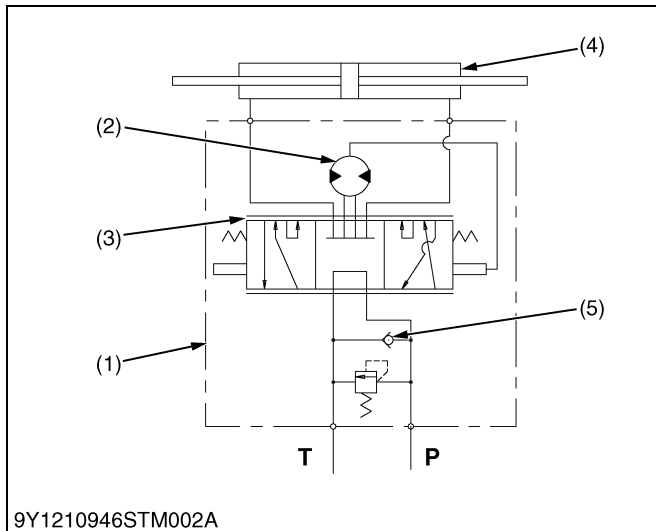
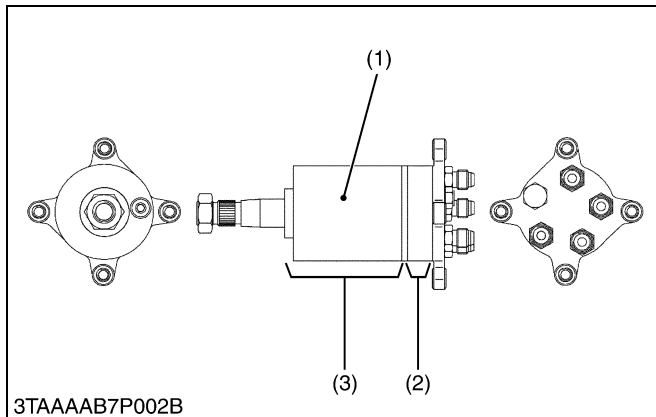
- (1) Steering Cylinder
- (2) Steering Controller
- (3) Oil Tank
- (4) Hydraulic Pump

**A: Control Valve**

9Y1210996STM0002US0



### 3. STEERING CONTROLLER



The steering controller consists of a control valve (3) and a metering device (2).

#### ■ Control Valve

The control valve is a rotating spool type.

When the steering wheel is not turned, the position of the spool (6) and sleeve (8) is kept neutral by the centering spring (7). This causes the forming of a "Neutral" oil circuit.

When the steering wheel is turned either clockwise or counterclockwise, the position of the spool and sleeve changes in relation to the centering spring. This allows the forming of a "Right Turning" or "Left Turning" oil circuit. At the same time, the gear pump (Metering device) rotates with the spool and sends the oil to the cylinder corresponding to the rotation of the steering wheel.

#### ■ Metering Device

An oil, sent from the hydraulic pump to the steering cylinder, passes through the metering device (2).

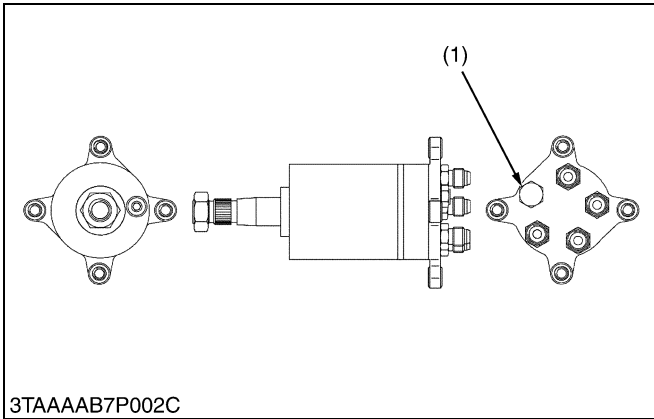
Namely, when the rotor is driven, two chambers suck in oil due to volumetric change in the pup chambers formed between the rotor (11) and the stator (12), while oil is discharged from other two chambers. On the other hand, rotation of the steering wheel is directly transmitted to the rotor through the spool (6), drive shaft (9), etc.

Accordingly, the metering device serves to supply the steering cylinder with oil, amount of which corresponds to the rotation of the steering wheel. The wheels are thus turned by the angle corresponding to the rotation of the steering wheel.

When the engine stops or the hydraulic pump malfunctions, the metering device functions as a manual trochoid pump, which makes manual steering possible.

- |                         |                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Steering Controller | (10) Distributor Plate              |
| (2) Metering Device     | (11) Rotor                          |
| (3) Control Valve       | (12) Stator                         |
| (4) Steering Cylinder   |                                     |
| (5) Check Valve         |                                     |
| (6) Spool               | <b>P: P Port</b>                    |
| (7) Centering Spring    | <b>(From Hydraulic Pump)</b>        |
| (8) Sleeve              | <b>T: T Port (To Power Steering</b> |
| (9) Drive Shaft         | <b>Oil Tank)</b>                    |

9Y1210996STM0003US0



### ■ Relief Valve

The relief valve (1) is located in the steering controller. It controls the maximum pressure of the power steering system.

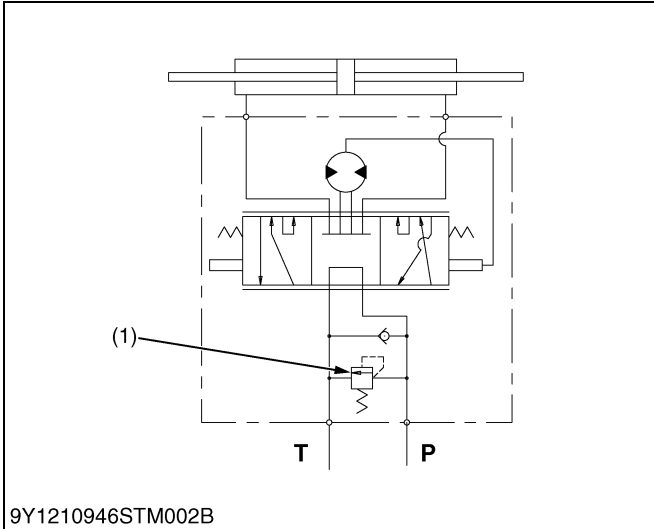
Its setting pressure is as follows.

8.00 to 9.00 MPa

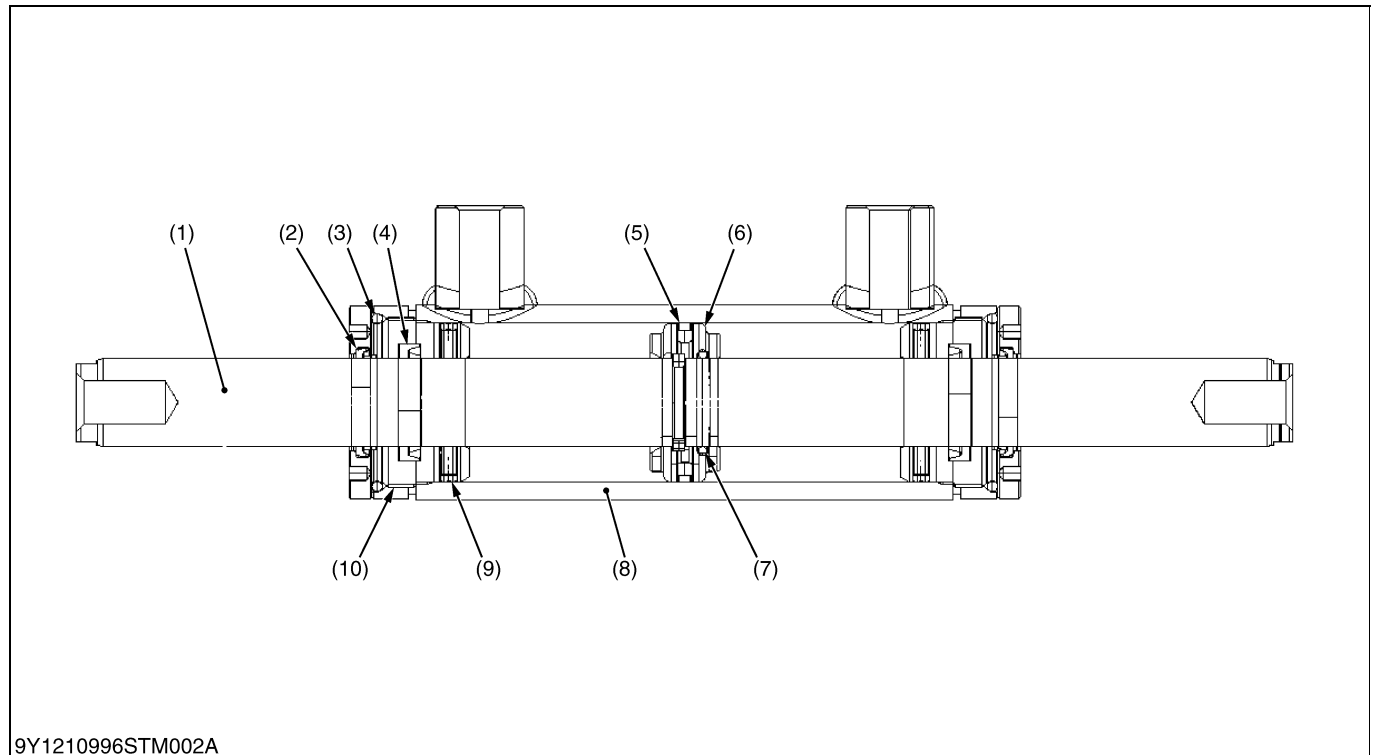
(81.6 to 91.7 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1160 to 1300 psi)

(1) Relief Valve

9Y1210996STM0004US0



## 4. STEERING CYLINDER



- |                |                 |                   |                    |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Rod        | (4) Seal Ring   | (7) O-ring        | (9) Seal           |
| (2) Wiper Ring | (5) Piston Seal | (8) Cylinder Tube | (10) Guide Bushing |
| (3) O-ring     | (6) Piston      |                   |                    |

The steering cylinder is single piston both rod double-acting type. This steering cylinder is installed parallel to the front axle and connected to tie-rods.

The tie-rods connected to both knuckle arm guarantees equal steering movement to both front wheels.

The steering cylinder provide force in both directions. Depending upon direction the steering wheel is turned pressure oil enters at one end of the cylinder to extend, or the other end to retract it, thereby turning front wheel of the tractor.

9Y1210996STM0005US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	6-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	6-S2
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	6-S3
4. CHECKING AND DISASSEMBLING .....	6-S4
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING.....	6-S4
[2] PREPARATION .....	6-S5
(1) Separating Power Steering Controller .....	6-S5
(2) Separating Power Steering Cylinder .....	6-S10
(3) Removing Power Steer Hoses .....	6-S11
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	6-S16
(1) Power Steering Cylinder .....	6-S16

# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Cannot Be Steered</b>	1. Hose broken	Replace	6-S16
	2. Steering controller malfunctioning	Replace	6-S9
<b>Hard Steering</b>	1. Power steering oil improper	Change with specified oil	G-43
	2. Hydraulic pump malfunctioning	Replace	7-S8
	3. Steering controller malfunctioning	Replace	6-S9
<b>Steering Force Fluctuates</b>	1. Steering controller malfunctioning	Replace	6-S9
	2. Air sucked in pump due to lack of oil	Fill	G-43
	3. Air sucked in pump from suction circuit	Repair	6-S16
<b>Steering Wheel Turns Spontaneously When Released</b>	1. Steering controller malfunctioning	Replace	6-S9
<b>Front Wheels Wander to Right and Left</b>	1. Steering controller malfunctioning	Replace	6-S9
	2. Air sucked in pump due to lack of oil	Fill	G-43
	3. Air sucked in pump from suction circuit	Repair	6-S16
	4. Insufficient bleeding	Bleed	—
	5. Cylinder malfunctioning	Repair or replace	6-S10
	6. Improper toe-in adjustment	Adjust	5-S4
	7. Tire pressure uneven	Inflate	G-24
<b>Wheels Are Turned to A Direction Opposite to Steering Direction</b>	1. Cylinder hoses connected in reverse	Repair	6-S10
<b>Steering Wheel Turns Idle in Manual Steering</b>	1. Insufficient bleeding	Bleed	—
	2. Air sucked in due to lack of oil	Fill	G-43
<b>Noise</b>	1. Air sucked in pump due to lack of oil	Fill	G-43
	2. Air sucked in pump from suction circuit	Repair	6-S16
<b>Oil Temperature Increases Rapidly</b>	1. Steering controller (relief valve) malfunctioning	Replace	6-S15

9Y1210996STS0001US0

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

### POWER STEERING BODY

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Relief Valve	Operating Pressure	8.00 to 9.00 MPa 81.6 to 91.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1160 to 1300 psi	—
Front Upper Arm and Stopper	Length	22 mm 0.87 in.	—

9Y1210996STS0002US0

### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

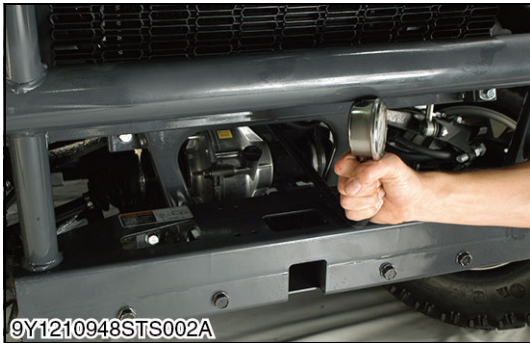
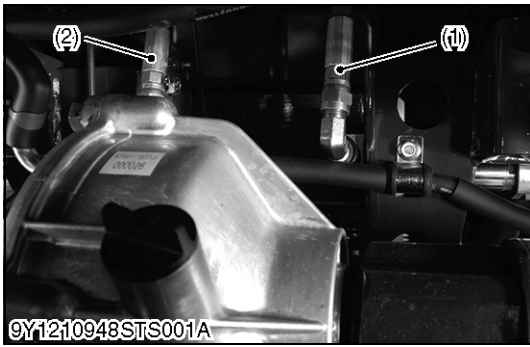
Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Steering wheel mounting nut	29 to 49	3.0 to 4.9	22 to 36
ROPS mounting bolt (M10)	48.0 to 55.9	4.90 to 5.70	35.4 to 41.2
ROPS mounting bolt (M12)	77.6 to 90.2	7.91 to 9.20	57.2 to 66.5
Power steering hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0	2.25 to 2.54	16.3 to 18.4
Power steering controller mounting screw	29.4 to 49.0	3.00 to 4.99	21.7 to 36.1
Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0	5.10 to 5.60	36.9 to 40.5
Power steering cylinder hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0	2.25 to 2.54	16.3 to 18.4
Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110	9.18 to 11.2	66.4 to 81.1
Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130	11.1 to 13.2	79.7 to 95.8
Tie-rod assembly	74 to 84	7.5 to 8.6	55 to 62
Steering cylinder guide bushing	200 to 230	20.4 to 23.4	148 to 169

9Y1210996STS0003US0

## 4. CHECKING AND DISASSEMBLING

### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING



#### Relief Valve Operating Pressure



#### CAUTION

- When checking, park the machine on flat ground, apply the parking brake.
- Set the range gear shift lever in **NEUTRAL** position.
- Work by two people when you measure pressure.

#### NOTE

- After set a pressure gauge, be sure to bleed air.
- Note that the pressure value changes by the pump action of the power steering controller when the steering operation is continued after the steering wheel is lightly locked and accurate relief valve pressure cannot be measured.

1. Disconnect the cylinder hose L.H. (2) (or R.H (1)) from power steering cylinder, and set a pressure gauge.
2. Start the engine and set at maximum speed.
3. Fully turn the steering wheel to the left (or right) to check the feeling which the steering wheel lightly locks. Read the relief valve operating pressure when the steering wheel to the above mentioned lock position.

#### (Reference)

- Hose and adaptor Tee, swivel (9/16-18).

Relief valve operating pressure	Factory specification	8.00 to 9.00 MPa 81.6 to 91.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1160 to 1300 psi
---------------------------------	-----------------------	--

#### Condition

- Engine speed:  
3200 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

(1) Cylinder Hose R.H.

(2) Cylinder Hose L.H.

9Y1210996STS0004US0

#### Adjusting between Front Upper Arm and Stopper

1. Adjust the stopper bolt (1) to make a specified length as shown in the table.
2. Perform the same procedure on the other side.

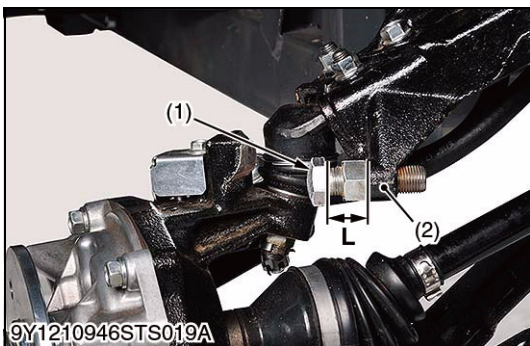
Length between front upper arm and stopper "L"	Factory specification	22 mm 0.87 in.
--	-----------------------	-------------------

(1) Stopper Bolt

**L: Length**

(2) Front Upper Arm

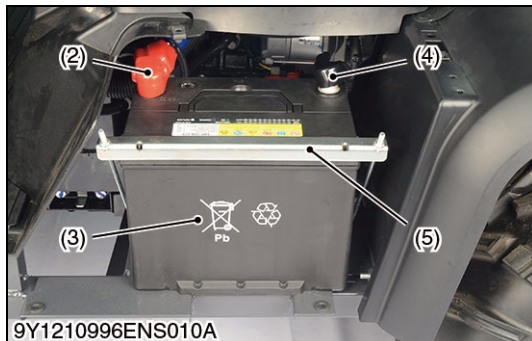
9Y1210996STS0005US0





## [2] PREPARATION

### (1) Separating Power Steering Controller



#### Battery



#### CAUTION

- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.
4. Remove the battery stay (5).
5. Remove the battery (3).

(1) L.H. Side Cover

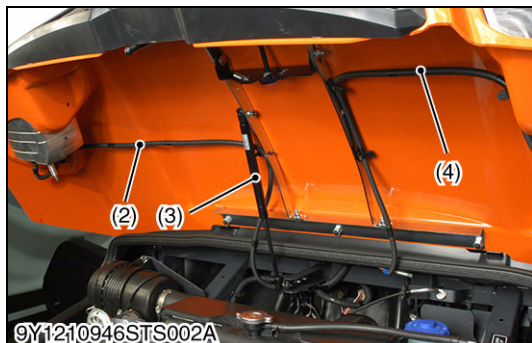
(2) Positive Cable

(3) Battery

(4) Negative Cable

(5) Battery Stay

9Y1210996ENS0029US0



#### Bonnet

1. Open the bonnet (1).
2. Disconnect the wiring harness clamp and connectors.
3. Remove the damper (3).

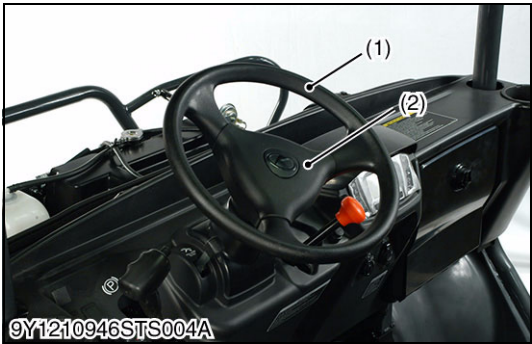
(1) Bonnet

(2) Wiring Harness R.H.

(3) Damper

(4) Wiring Harness L.H.

9Y1210996STS0006US0



**Steering Wheel**

- 1. Remove the steering wheel cover (2).
- 2. Remove the steering wheel nut (3).
- 3. Remove the steering wheel (1).

**(When reassembling)**

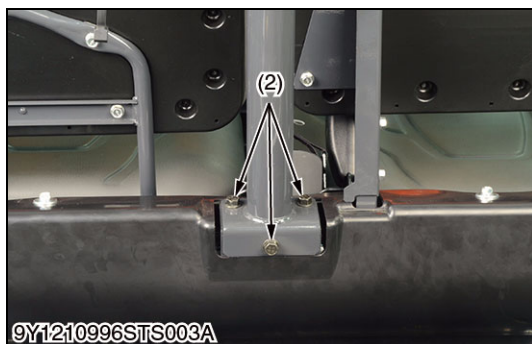
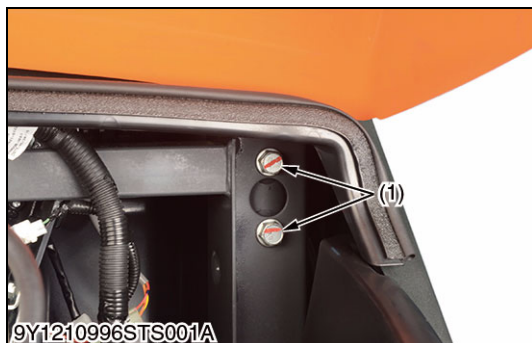
Tightening torque	Steering wheel mounting nut	29 to 49 N·m 3.0 to 4.9 kgf·m 22 to 36 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------	---

- (1) Steering Wheel
- (2) Steering Wheel Cover

(3) Steering Wheel Nut

9Y1210996STS0007US0





## ROPS

1. Remove the ROPS mounting bolts (1) and (2).
2. Remove the ROPS assembly (3).

**(When reassembling)**

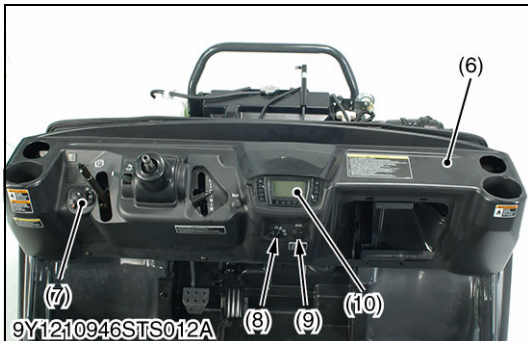
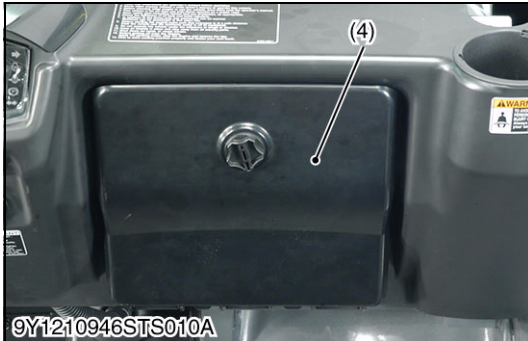
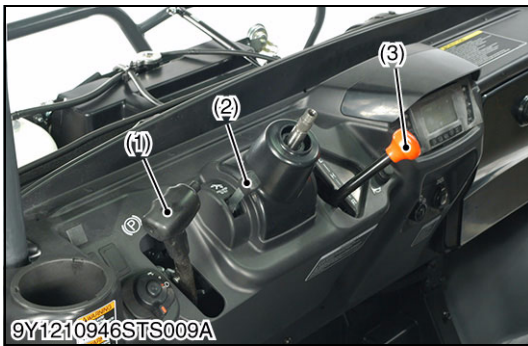
Tightening torque	ROPS mounting bolts (M10)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
	ROPS mounting bolts (M12)	77.6 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.20 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft

(1) ROPS Mounting Bolts (M12)

(3) ROPS Assembly

(2) ROPS Mounting Bolts (M10)

9Y1210996STS0008US0

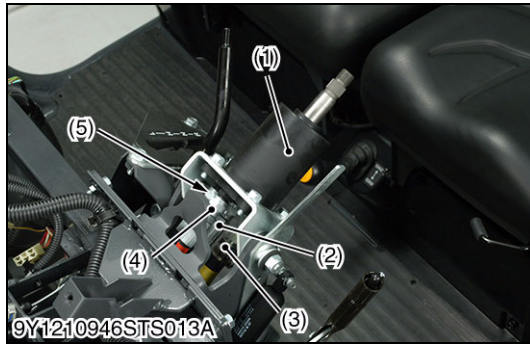


### Panel

1. Remove the grips for the range gear shift lever (3), tilt lever (2) and parking brake lever (1).
2. Remove the glove box cover (4).
3. Remove the glove box (5).
4. Disconnect the connector for light switch (7), key switch (8), accessory plug (9) and meter panel (10).
5. Remove the panel (6).

- |                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Parking Brake Lever    | (6) Panel          |
| (2) Tilt Lever             | (7) Light Switch   |
| (3) Range Gear Shift Lever | (8) Key Switch     |
| (4) Glove Box Cover        | (9) Accessory Plug |
| (5) Glove Box              | (10) Meter Panel   |

9Y1210996STS0009US0



### **Steering Controller**

1. Disconnect the power steering hoses from the power steering controller (1).
2. Remove the power steering controller (1).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Be sure to connect the power steering hoses to their original position, and tighten them to the specified torque.

Tightening torque	Power steering hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0 N·m 2.25 to 2.54 kgf·m 16.3 to 18.4 lbf·ft
	Power steering Controller mounting screw	29.4 to 49.0 N·m 3.00 to 4.99 kgf·m 21.7 to 36.1 lbf·ft

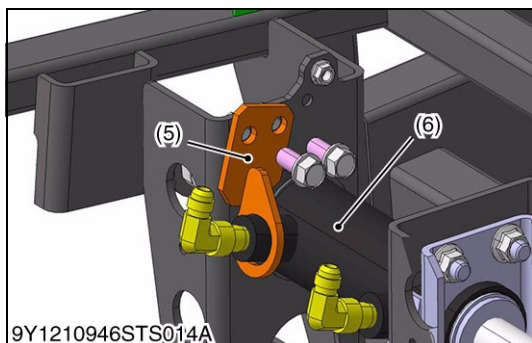
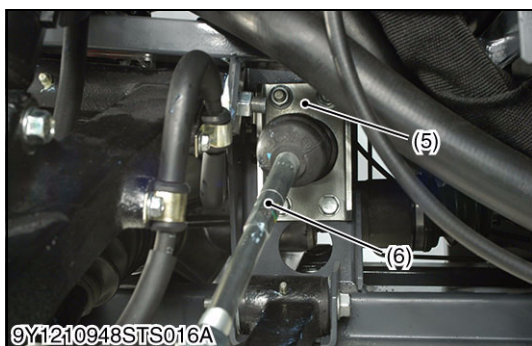
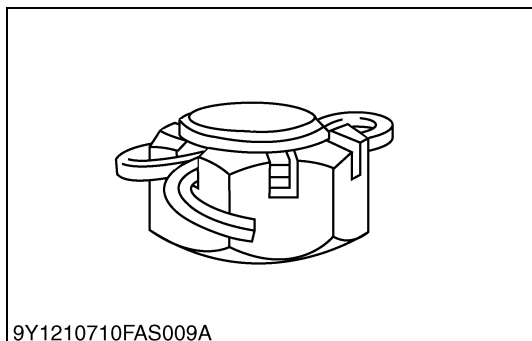
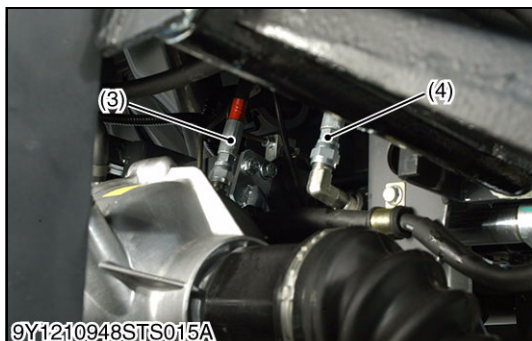
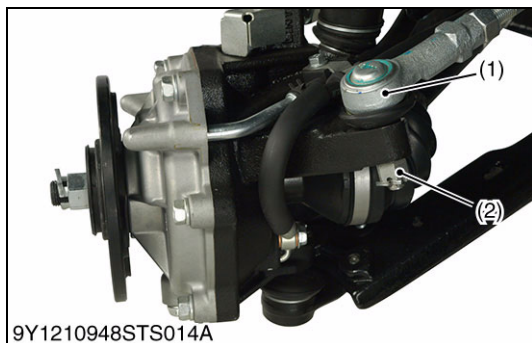
- (1) Power Steering Controller  
 (2) Delivery Hose (Pump Port)  
 (3) Return Hose (Tank Port)

- (4) Power Steering Cylinder Hose R.H. (R Port)  
 (5) Power Steering Cylinder Hose L.H. (L Port)

9Y1210996STS0010US0



## (2) Separating Power Steering Cylinder



### Power Steering Cylinder

1. Place jack stands under both R.H. and L.H. side of the frame.
2. Remove the front wheels.
3. Remove the cotter pins and slotted nuts (2) for the tie-rod ends (1).
4. Disconnect the tie-rod ends (1) from the hubs.
5. Disconnect the power steering cylinder hoses (3), (4).
6. Remove the power steering cylinder brackets (5) and mounting bolts.
7. Remove the power steering cylinder (6) with tie-rods.

### (When reassembling)

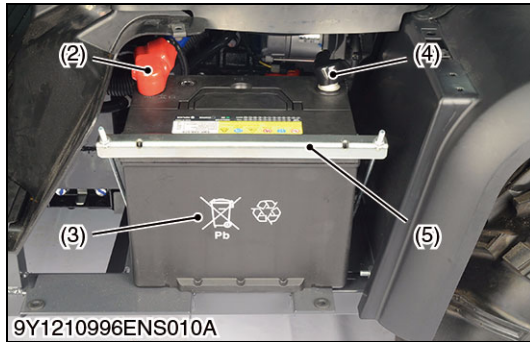
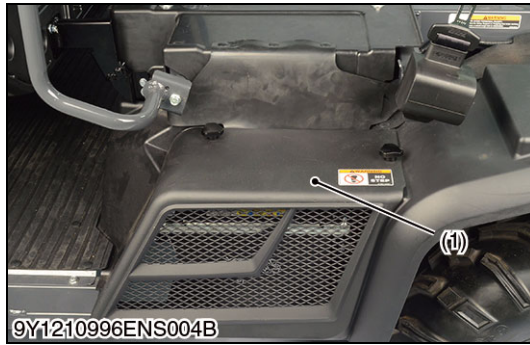
- When inserting the cotter pin, if the slots in the nut do not align with the cotter pin hole in tie-rod end, tighten the nut clockwise up to next alignment. It should be within 30 degree.
- Loosen once and tighten again when the slit goes past the nearest hole.
- After tightening the these slotted nut to specified torques, install a cotter pin as shown in the figure left.

Tightening torque	Tie-rod end slotted nut	50.0 to 55.0 N·m 5.10 to 5.60 kgf·m 36.9 to 40.5 lbf·ft
	Power steering cylinder hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0 N·m 2.25 to 2.54 kgf·m 16.3 to 18.4 lbf·ft
	Aluminum wheel mounting nut	90.0 to 110 N·m 9.18 to 11.2 kgf·m 66.4 to 81.1 lbf·ft
	Steel wheel mounting nut	108 to 130 N·m 11.1 to 13.2 kgf·m 79.7 to 95.8 lbf·ft

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Tie-rod End R.H.                    | (5) Power Steering Cylinder Bracket |
| (2) Slotted Nut (for Tie-rod End)       | (6) Power Steering Cylinder         |
| (3) Power Steering Cylinder Hose (R.H.) |                                     |
| (4) Power Steering Cylinder Hose (L.H.) |                                     |

9Y1210996STS0011US0

### (3) Removing Power Steer Hoses



#### Battery



#### CAUTION

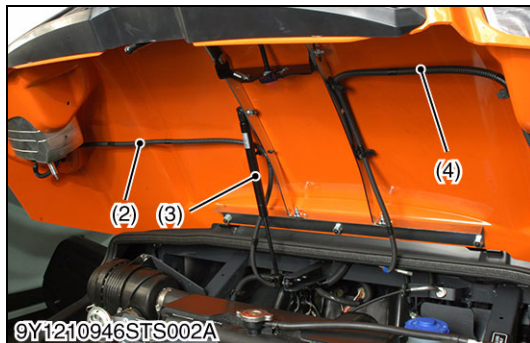
- When disconnecting the battery cables, disconnect the negative cable from the battery first. When connecting, connect the positive cable to the battery first.

1. Remove the L.H. side cover (1).
2. Disconnect the negative cable (4) from the battery.
3. Disconnect the positive cable (2) from the battery.
4. Remove the battery stay (5).
5. Remove the battery (3).

- (1) L.H. Side Cover  
(2) Positive Cable  
(3) Battery

- (4) Negative Cable  
(5) Battery Stay

9Y1210996ENS0029US0



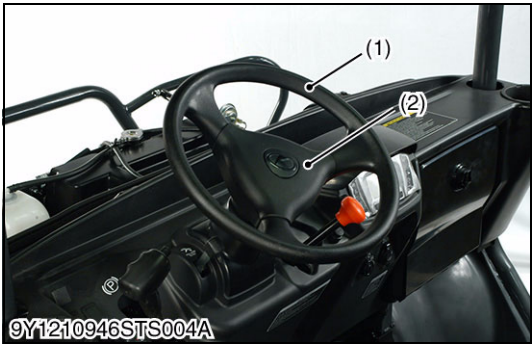
#### Bonnet

1. Open the bonnet (1).
2. Disconnect the wiring harness clamp and connectors.
3. Remove the damper (3).

- (1) Bonnet  
(2) Wiring Harness R.H.

- (3) Damper  
(4) Wiring Harness L.H.

9Y1210996STS0006US0



**Steering Wheel**

- 1. Remove the steering wheel cover (2).
- 2. Remove the steering wheel nut (3).
- 3. Remove the steering wheel (1).

**(When reassembling)**

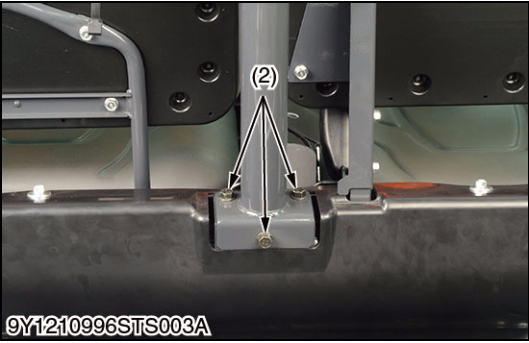
Tightening torque	Steering wheel mounting nut	29 to 49 N·m 3.0 to 4.9 kgf·m 22 to 36 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------	---

- (1) Steering Wheel
- (2) Steering Wheel Cover

- (3) Steering Wheel Nut

9Y1210996STS0007US0





**ROPS**

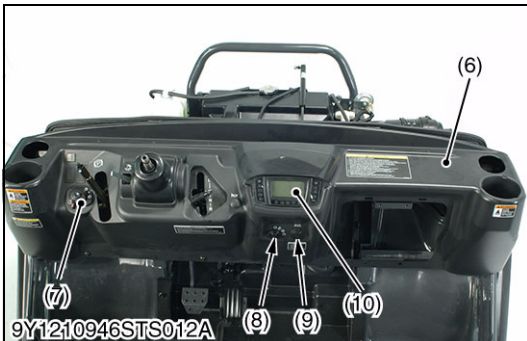
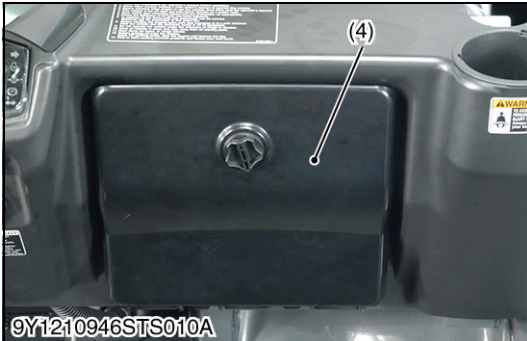
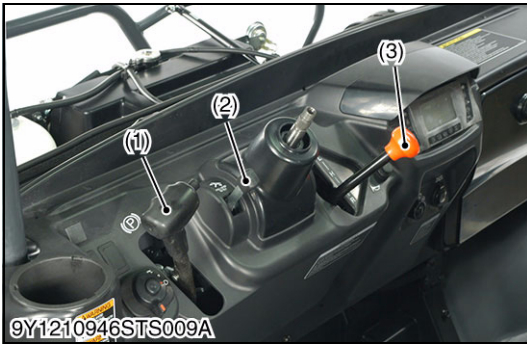
- 1. Remove the ROPS mounting bolts (1) and (2).
- 2. Remove the ROPS assembly (3).

**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	ROPS mounting bolts (M10)	48.0 to 55.9 N·m 4.90 to 5.70 kgf·m 35.4 to 41.2 lbf·ft
	ROPS mounting bolts (M12)	77.6 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.20 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft

- (1) ROPS Mounting Bolts (M12)
- (2) ROPS Mounting Bolts (M10)
- (3) ROPS Assembly

9Y1210996STS0008US0

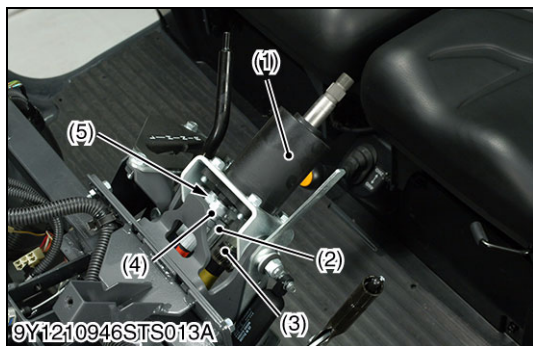


### Panel

1. Remove the grips for the range gear shift lever (3), tilt lever (2) and parking brake lever (1).
2. Remove the glove box cover (4).
3. Remove the glove box (5).
4. Disconnect the connector for light switch (7), key switch (8), accessory plug (9) and meter panel (10).
5. Remove the panel (6).

- |                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Parking Brake Lever    | (6) Panel          |
| (2) Tilt Lever             | (7) Light Switch   |
| (3) Range Gear Shift Lever | (8) Key Switch     |
| (4) Glove Box Cover        | (9) Accessory Plug |
| (5) Glove Box              | (10) Meter Panel   |

9Y1210996STS0009US0



### **Steering Controller**

1. Disconnect the power steering hoses from the power steering controller (1).
2. Remove the power steering controller (1).

#### **(When reassembling)**

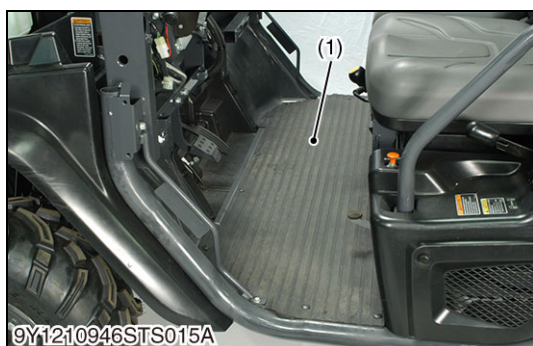
- Be sure to connect the power steering hoses to their original position, and tighten them to the specified torque.

Tightening torque	Power steering hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0 N·m 2.25 to 2.54 kgf·m 16.3 to 18.4 lbf·ft
	Power steering Controller mounting screw	29.4 to 49.0 N·m 3.00 to 4.99 kgf·m 21.7 to 36.1 lbf·ft

- (1) Power Steering Controller  
(2) Delivery Hose (Pump Port)  
(3) Return Hose (Tank Port)

- (4) Power Steering Cylinder Hose R.H. (R Port)  
(5) Power Steering Cylinder Hose L.H. (L Port)

9Y1210996STS0010US0



### **Rubber Mat and Step**

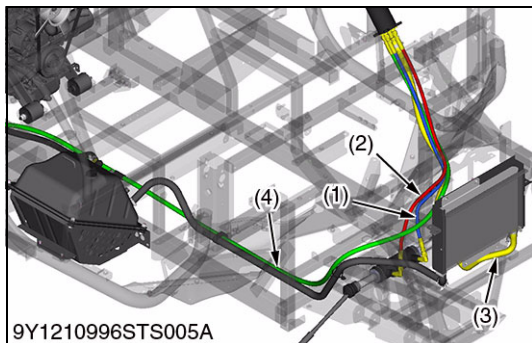
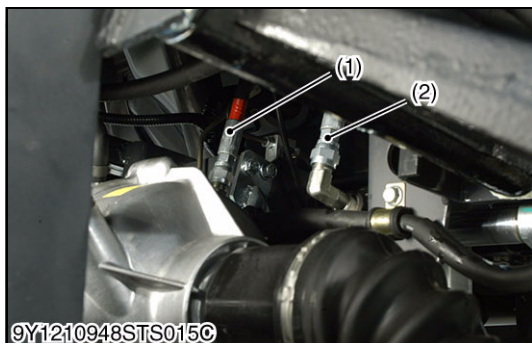
1. Remove the rubber mat (1).
2. Remove the step (2).

- (1) Rubber Mat

- (2) Step

9Y1210996STS0012US0





### Power Steering Hose

1. Remove the power steering cylinder hose L.H. (1) and power steering cylinder hose R.H. (1).
2. Remove the return hose (3) and delivery hose (4).

#### (When reassembling)

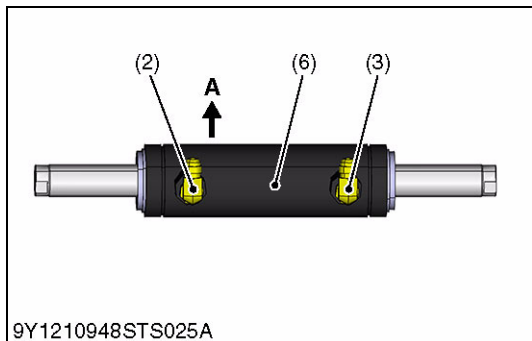
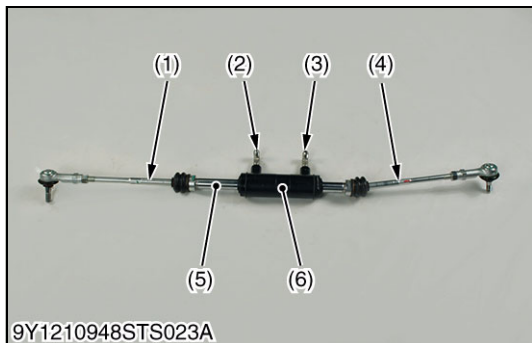
Tightening torque	Power steering hose retaining nut	22.0 to 25.0 N·m 2.25 to 2.54 kgf·m 16.3 to 18.4 lbf·ft
-------------------	-----------------------------------	---

- (1) Power Steering Cylinder Hose R.H. (3) Return Hose  
(2) Power Steering Cylinder Hose L.H. (4) Delivery Hose

9Y1210996STS0013US0

## [3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

### (1) Power Steering Cylinder



### Power Steering Cylinder and Tie-rod

1. Remove the cylinder hose adaptors (2), (3).
2. Remove the tie-rods (1), (4) from piston rod (5).

#### (When reassembling)

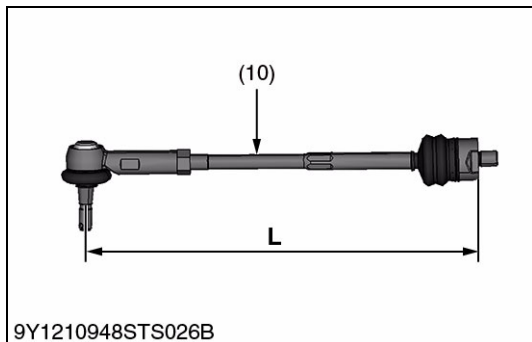
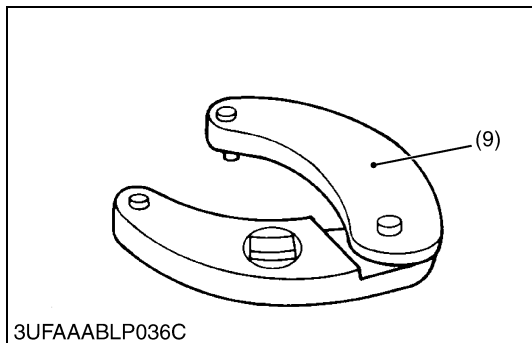
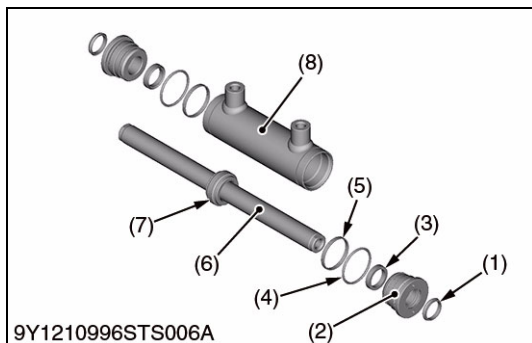
- Be sure to install the cylinder hose adaptors (2), (3) as shown figure left.
- After reassembling the tie-rod, be sure to adjust the toe-in. (See page 5-S4.)
- Apply liquid lock to the thread of piston rod (5).

Tightening torque	Tie-rod assembly	74 to 84 N·m 7.5 to 8.6 kgf·m 55 to 62 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------	---

- (1) Tie-rod L.H. (5) Piston Rod  
(2) Hose Adaptor L.H. (6) Power Steering Cylinder  
(3) Hose Adaptor R.H.  
(4) Tie-rod R.H. **A: UP**

9Y1210996STS0014US0





### Power Steering Cylinder

1. Carefully clamp the cylinder in a vise.
2. Loosen the guide bushing (2) from the cylinder tube (8) using an adjustable gland nut wrench (9). Remove the guide bushing from the cylinder rod.
3. Remove and discard the seals (1), (3), (5) from the guide bushing.
4. Remove the piston rod assembly (6).

#### (When reassembling)

#### ■ NOTE

- Seal rings must be exchanged after disassembling.
- Apply transmission fluid to the exchanged seals.
- Adjust the tie rod (10) to the length shown (L).

Tightening torque	Steering cylinder guide bushing	200 to 230 N·m 20.4 to 23.4 kgf·m 148 to 169 lbf·ft
-------------------	---------------------------------	---

- |                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| (1) Wiper Seal    | (7) Seal                        |
| (2) Guide Bushing | (8) Cylinder Tube               |
| (3) Ring Seal     | (9) Adjustable Gland Nut Wrench |
| (4) O-ring        | (10) Tie Rod                    |
| (5) Seal          |                                 |
| (6) Rod Assembly  |                                 |
- L: 338 mm (13.3 in.)**

9Y1210996STS0015US0

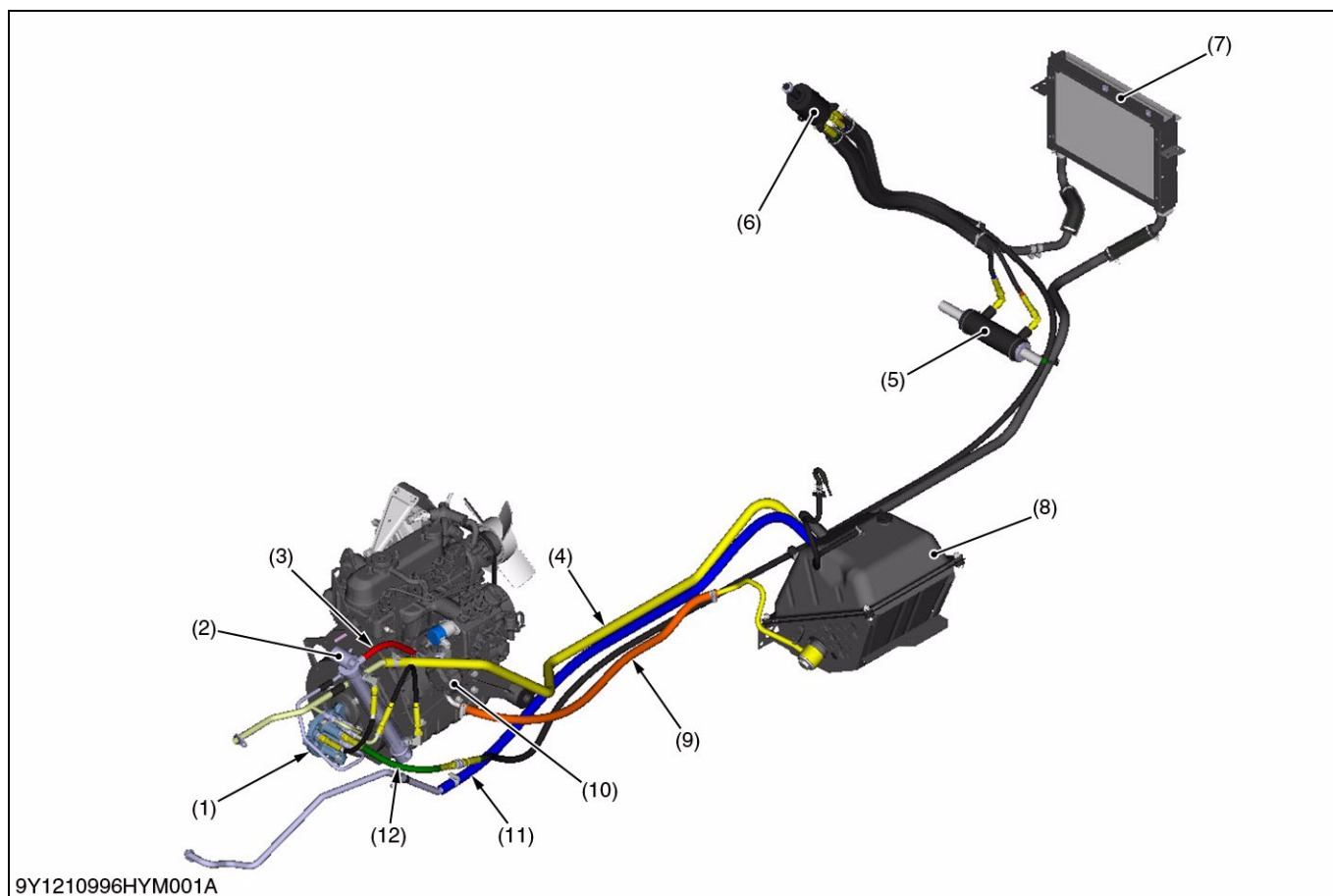
# **7 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM**

# MECHANISM

## CONTENTS

1. STRUCTURE.....	7-M1
2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT .....	7-M2
3. HYDRAULIC PUMP.....	7-M3
4. HYDRAULIC LIFT CYLINDER .....	7-M4
5. CONTROL VALVE.....	7-M5
[1] DOUBLE ACTING TYPE 1 .....	7-M5
(1) Floating with Detent Valve.....	7-M5

# 1. STRUCTURE



- |                             |                             |                                 |                               |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Control Valve           | (4) HST Drain Hose          | (7) Oil Cooler                  | (10) Hydraulic Pump           |
| (2) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder | (5) Power Steering Cylinder | (8) Oil Tank                    | (11) HST Suction Hose         |
| (3) Pump C.V. Hose          | (6) Power Steering Unit     | (9) Power Steering Suction Hose | (12) Power Steering C.V. Hose |

The hydraulic system consists of the hydraulic control valve (1), hydraulic pump (10), power steering cylinder (5), power steering unit (6), and hydraulic lift cylinder (2).

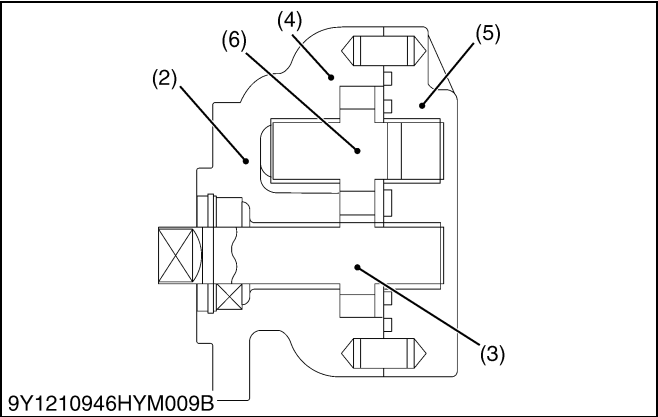
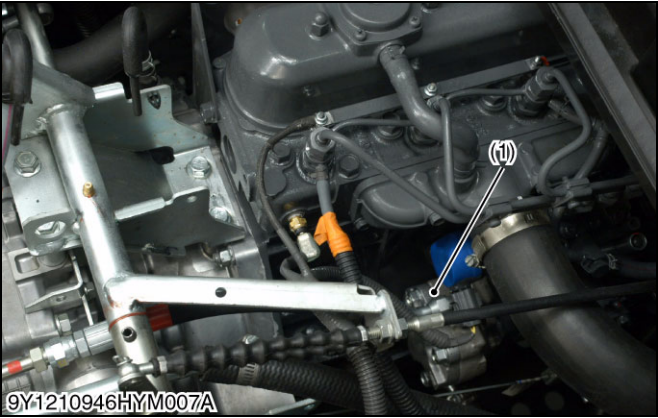
The hydraulic system also consists of hydraulic hoses (3), (4), (9), (11), (12), hydraulic oil tank (8), and oil cooler (7).

9Y1210996HYM0001US0



The diagram illustrates a hydraulic system for a machine tool. It features a pump (1) driven by a motor (6) connected to a power source (7). The system includes a pressure relief valve (2) and a directional control valve (3). The hydraulic circuit is divided into two main sections: a main cylinder (4) and a sub-cylinder (5). The main cylinder is controlled by a 4/3-way directional control valve (3) and a pressure relief valve (2). The sub-cylinder (5) is controlled by a 3/2-way directional control valve (5) and a pressure relief valve (5). The system also includes a check valve (11) and a pressure relief valve (12). The hydraulic lines are labeled with numbers (1) through (13) indicating specific components and connections.

### 3. HYDRAULIC PUMP



The hydraulic pump (1) consists of the casing (4), cover (5), and two spur gears (drive gear (3) and driven gear (5)) that are in mesh.

Hydraulic pump (1) is driven by the input shaft in the transmission case.

Maximum displacement is as follows.

Displacement	Engine speed	Condition
11.2 L/min. (2.96 U.S.gals/min, 2.46 Imp.gals/min.)	At 3000 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	at no load

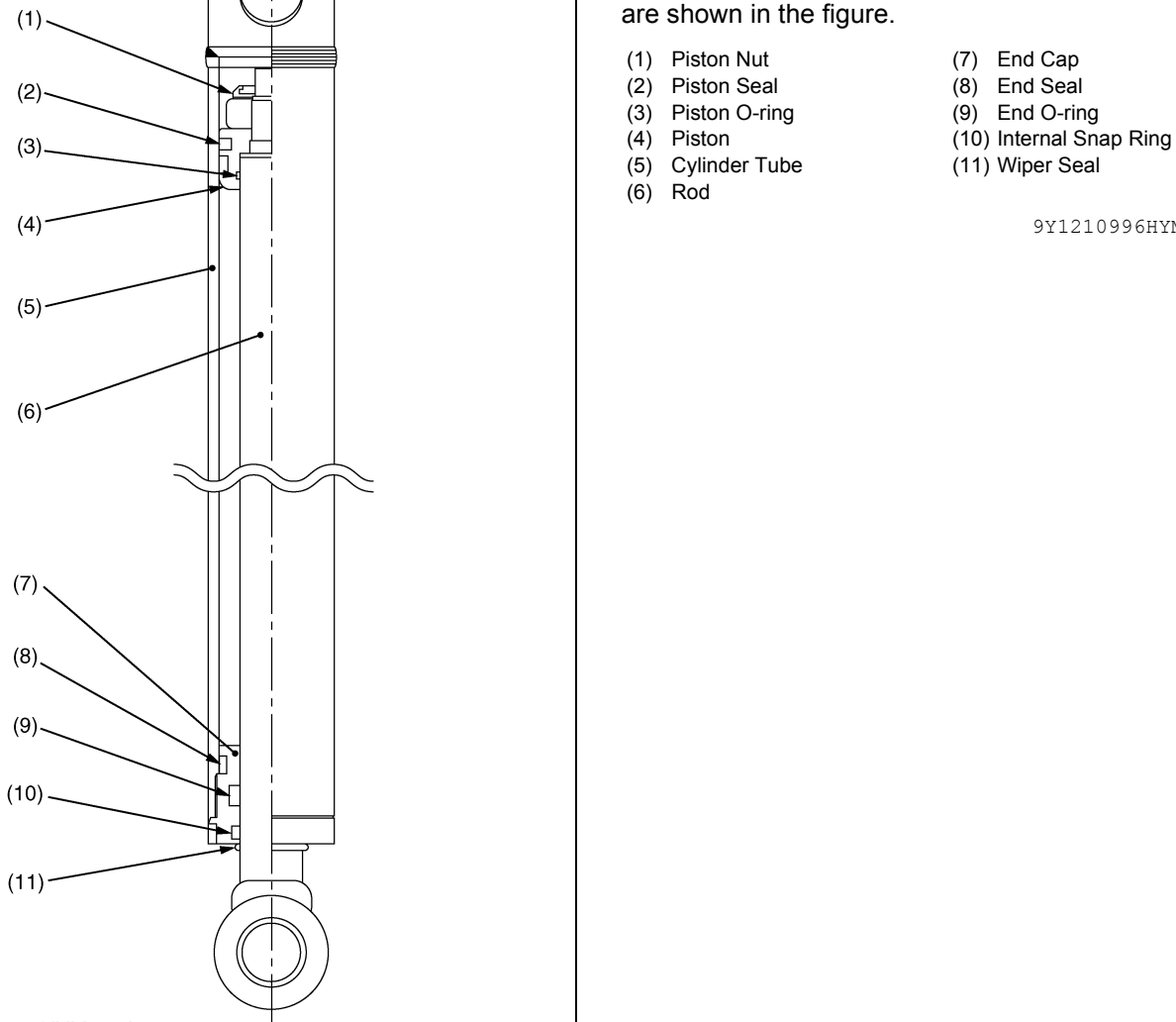
- (1) Hydraulic Pump
- (2) Cover
- (3) Drive Gear
- (4) Casing
- (5) Cover
- (6) Driven Gear

9Y1210996HYM0003US0

## 4. HYDRAULIC LIFT CYLINDER

The external type hydraulic lift cylinder is used for cargo bed lifting system. This hydraulic lift cylinder is single double type, and it is installed directly between main frame arm cargo bed.

The main components of the hydraulic lift cylinder are shown in the figure.



- |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) Piston Nut    | (7) End Cap             |
| (2) Piston Seal   | (8) End Seal            |
| (3) Piston O-ring | (9) End O-ring          |
| (4) Piston        | (10) Internal Snap Ring |
| (5) Cylinder Tube | (11) Wiper Seal         |
| (6) Rod           |                         |

9Y1210996HYM0004US0

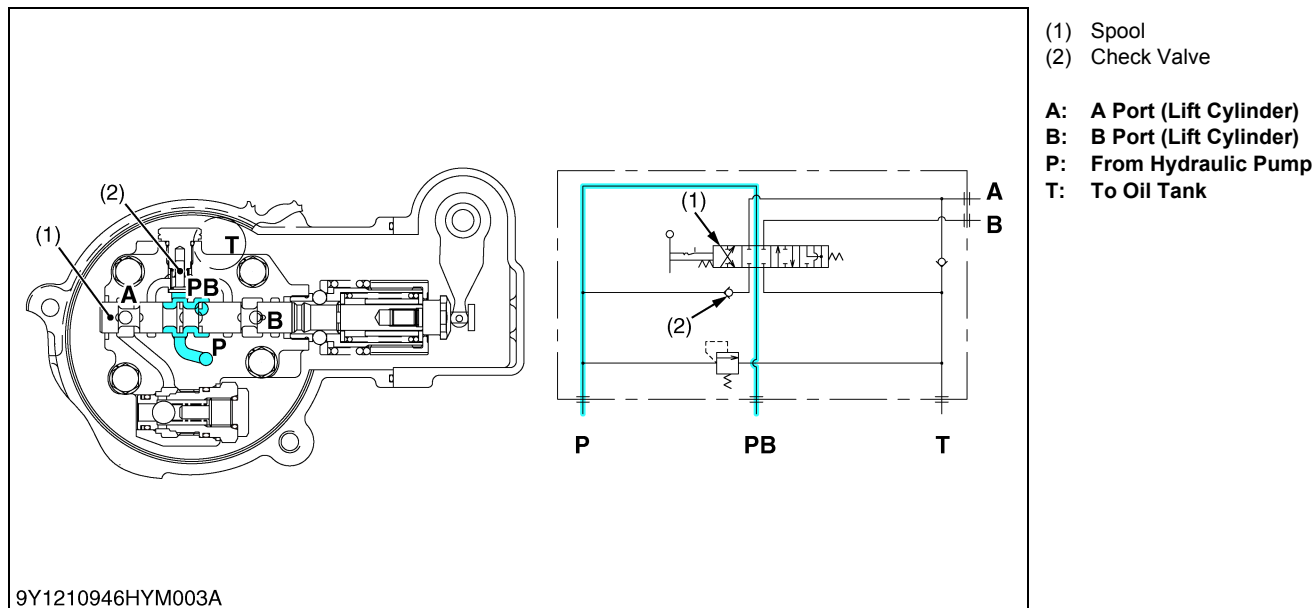
9Y1210946HYM010A

## 5. CONTROL VALVE

### [1] DOUBLE ACTING TYPE 1

#### (1) Floating with Detent Valve

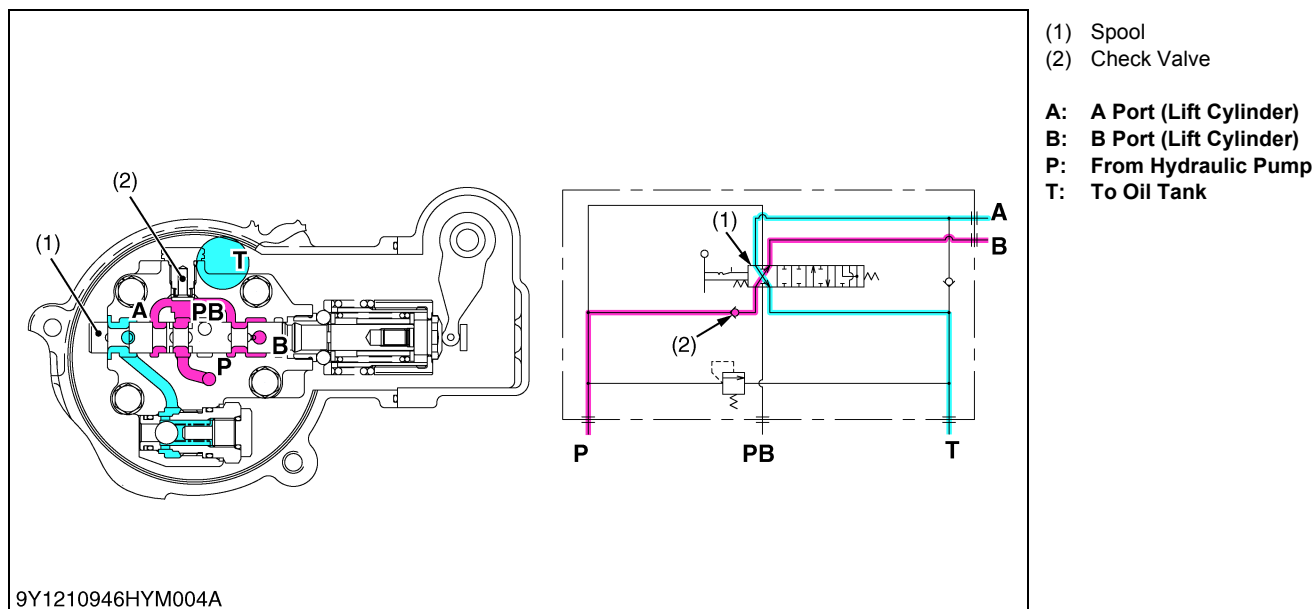
#### [A] Neutral



Pressure-fed oil from the hydraulic pump is delivered into the **P** port, and flows to the oil tank through **T** port.

9Y1210996HYM0005US0

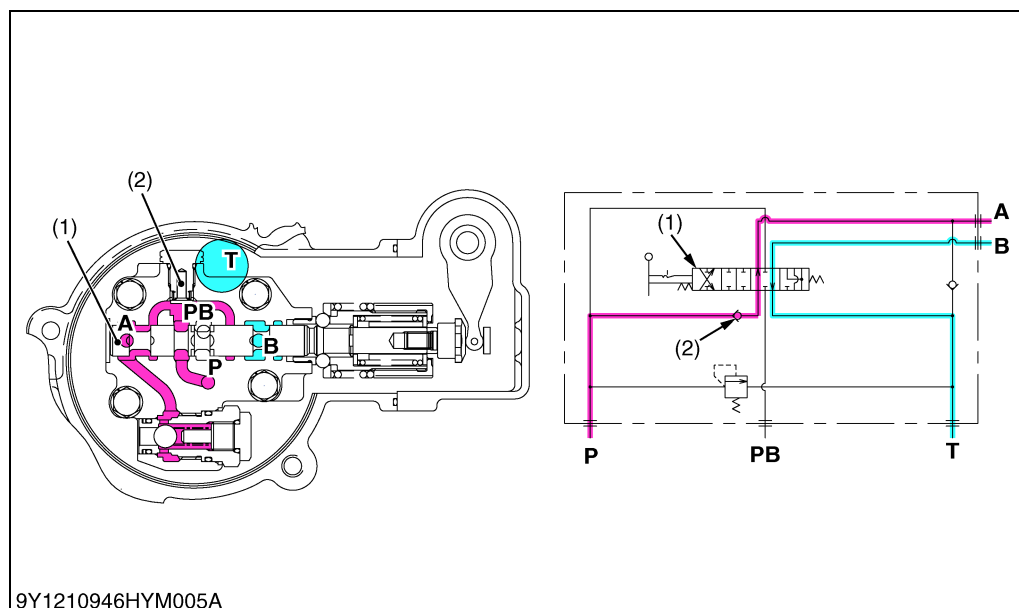
#### [B] Lift



When the spool (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow, the pressure-fed oil in the **P** port opens the check valve (2) and flows to the implement cylinder via **B** port.

Return oil from the implement cylinder flows from the **A** port to the transmission case through **T** port.

9Y1210996HYM0006US0

**[C] Down**

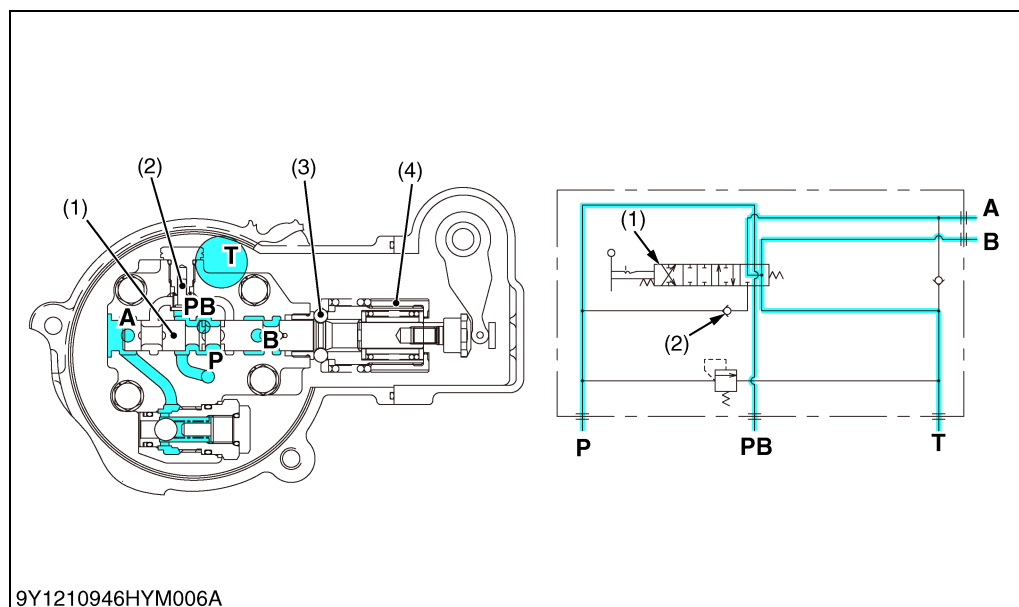
- (1) Spool
- (2) Check Valve

**A:** A Port (Lift Cylinder)  
**B:** B Port (Lift Cylinder)  
**P:** From Hydraulic Pump  
**T:** To Oil Tank

When the spool (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow, the pressure-fed oil in the **P** port opens the check valve (2) and flows to the implement cylinder via **A** port.

Return oil from the implement cylinder flows from the **B** port to the oil tank through **T** port.

9Y1210996HYM0007US0

**[D] Floating**

- (1) Spool
- (2) Check Valve
- (3) Detent Ball
- (4) Detent Sleeve

**A:** A Port (Lift Cylinder)  
**B:** B Port (Lift Cylinder)  
**P:** From Hydraulic Pump  
**T:** To Oil Tank

When the spool (1) moves to extreme right, the detent ball (3) and detent sleeve (4) holds the spool (1) at the floating position as shown in the figure. The pressure-fed oil from the hydraulic pump flows to oil tank through **T** port. And, the **A** port and **B** port lead to the **T** port along the notched sections of the spool (1). This result in the attached implement to follow the power from implement.

9Y1210996HYM0008US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	7-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	7-S2
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	7-S3
4. CHECKING AND DISASSEMBLING .....	7-S4
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING.....	7-S4
(1) Hydraulic Control Valve, Pump and Cylinder .....	7-S4
[2] PREPARATION .....	7-S7
(1) Removing Hydraulic Pump .....	7-S7
(2) Removing Hydraulic Cylinder Lift Cylinder .....	7-S8
[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	7-S10
(1) Hydraulic Pump .....	7-S10
(2) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder.....	7-S11
(3) Control Valve .....	7-S12

# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Implement Does Not Rise (No Noise)</b>	1. Control valve broken	Replace	2-S41
	2. Control valve improperly assembled	Repair	2-S41
	3. Relief valve spring damaged	Replace	7-S12
	4. Spool sticks	Repair	7-S12
	5. Piston O-ring or cylinder damaged	Replace	7-S12
<b>(Noise)</b>	1. Suction hose loosen or broken	Repair	7-S8
	2. Insufficient hydraulic lift oil	Repair or replace	G-43
	3. Relief valve setting pressure too low	Refill	7-S5
	4. Hydraulic pump broken	Adjust or replace	7-S8
<b>Implement Does Not Lower</b>	1. Control valve malfunctioning	Repair or replace	2-S41
<b>Implement Drops by Its Weight</b>	1. Hydraulic lift cylinder worn or damaged	Replace	7-S9
	2. Piston O-ring worn or damaged	Replace	7-S11
	3. Control valve malfunctioning	Replace	2-S41

9Y1210996HYS0001US0



## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Relief Valve	Setting Pressure	12.5 to 13.5 MPa 128 to 137 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1820 to 1950 psi	—

9Y1210996HYS0002US0

### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

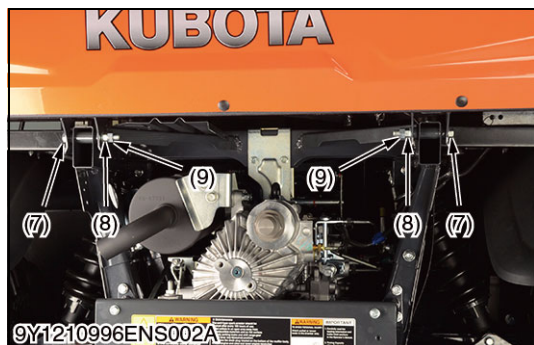
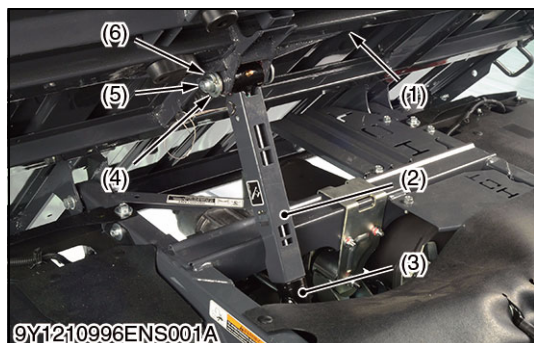
Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2	7.91 to 9.19	57.2 to 66.5
Hydraulic pump mounting bolt	37.0 to 44.0	3.78 to 4.48	27.3 to 32.4
Hydraulic pump cover mounting screw	40 to 44	4.0 to 4.5	29 to 32
Hydraulic lift cylinder head	100 to 120	10.2 to 12.2	73.8 to 88.5
Hydraulic lift cylinder piston mounting nut	80.0 to 100	8.16 to 10.1	59.0 to 73.7
Relief valve plug	29.4 to 34.3	3.00 to 3.49	21.7 to 25.2
Control valve mounting screw	19 to 21	1.9 to 2.1	14 to 15
Check valve plug	19.6 to 24.5	2.00 to 2.49	14.5 to 18.0
Check valve seat	34 to 39	3.5 to 3.9	25 to 28

9Y1210996HYS0003US0

## 4. CHECKING AND DISASSEMBLING

### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING

#### (1) Hydraulic Control Valve, Pump and Cylinder



#### Cargo Bed



#### CAUTION

- Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

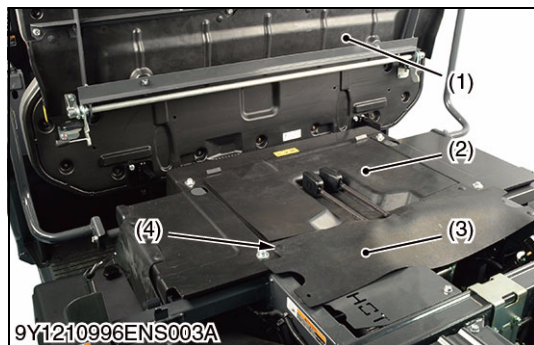
#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0



#### Rear Upper Cover

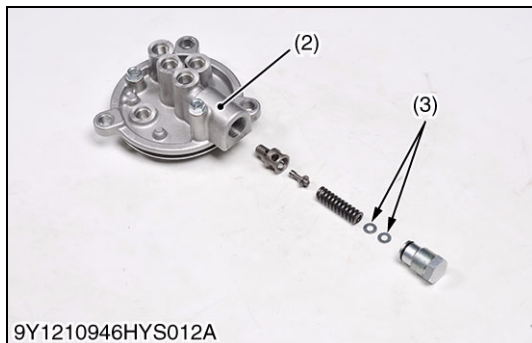
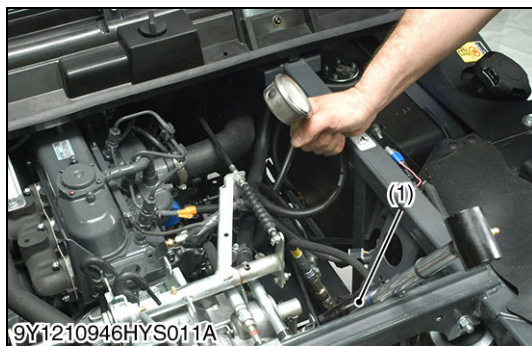
1. Lift the rear seat assembly (1) and secure in the raised position, if the seat is in the lowered position.
2. Remove the rear upper cover (2) and upper engine rubber cover (3).

#### (When reassembling)

- Replace damaged push rivets (4).

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Rear Seat Assembly | (3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover |
| (2) Rear Upper Cover   | (4) Push Rivet                |

9Y1210996HYS0004US0



### Relief Valve Setting Pressure

1. Disconnect the lift cylinder hose.
2. Set the adaptor, cable and pressure gauge.
3. Start the engine and depress the speed control pedal.
4. Move the hydraulic lift cylinder lever way up to operate the relief valve and read the gauge.
5. If the pressure is not within the factory specifications, adjust with the adjusting shims (3).

Relief valve setting pressure	Factory specification	12.5 to 13.5 MPa 128 to 137 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> 1820 to 1950 psi
-------------------------------	-----------------------	--

### Condition

- Engine speed:  
3000 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
- Oil temperature:  
45 to 55 °C (113 to 131 °F)

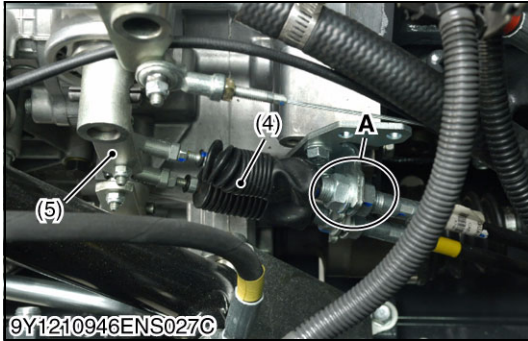
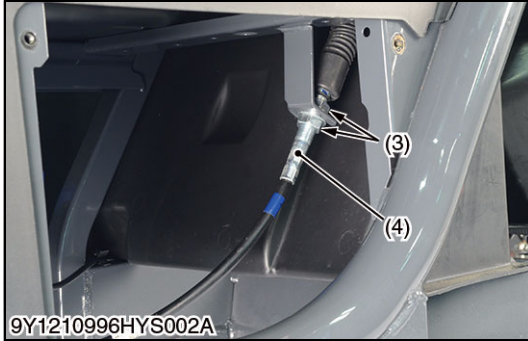
### (Reference)

- Thickness of shims (3):  
0.10 mm (0.0039 in.),  
0.20 mm (0.0079 in.),  
0.40 mm (0.016 in.)
- 0.269 MPa (2.74 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 39.0 psi) pressure is increased whenever the thickness of adjusting shim is increased by 0.1 mm (0.0039 in.)

- (1) Lift Cylinder  
(2) Control Valve Cover

- (3) Shim

9Y1210996HYS0014US0



### Checking Hydraulic Lift Cable

1. Set the hydraulic lift cylinder lever (1) to neutral position.
2. Set the restricting plate (2).
3. Check that the cable is fixed to the stay, with the cable outer section screw being set near the center "A". Also check that the lock nuts at the cable end and the ball joint are not loose.
4. Check that the ball joint fitting nuts tightened.
5. Set the control valve lever (5) as shown in figure.
6. Then tighten the lock nuts (3) firmly.
7. Release the restricting plate (2).
8. Move the hydraulic lift cylinder lever and make sure to engage control valve to each position (4 positions) correctly.

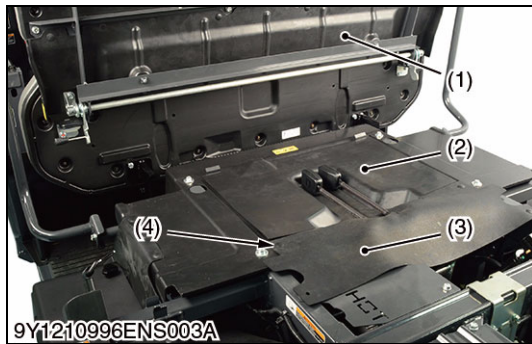
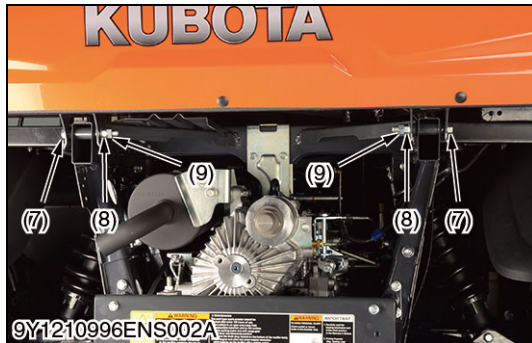
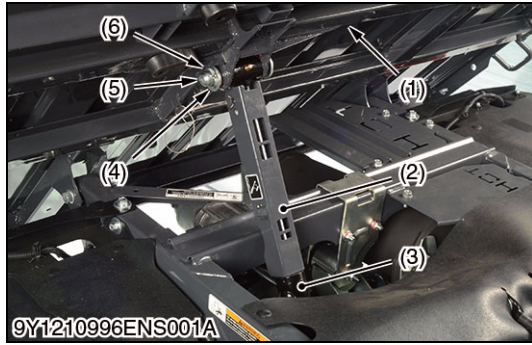
- (1) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder Lever
- (2) Restricting Plate
- (3) Lock Nut
- (4) Hydraulic Lift Cable
- (5) Control Valve Lever

**A: Center of Tread**

9Y1210996HYS0005US0

## [2] PREPARATION

### (1) Removing Hydraulic Pump



#### Cargo Bed

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- **Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.**
1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
  2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
  3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
  4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
  5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

#### (When reassembling)

- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Cargo Bed          | (6) Cotter Pin |
| (2) Cylinder Lock      | (7) Bolt       |
| (3) Hydraulic Cylinder | (8) Flange Nut |
| (4) Washer             | (9) Lock Nut   |
| (5) Clevis Pin         |                |

9Y1210996ENS0009US0

#### Rear Upper Cover

1. Lift the rear seat assembly (1) and secure in the raised position, if the seat is in the lowered position.
2. Remove the rear upper cover (2) and upper engine rubber cover (3).

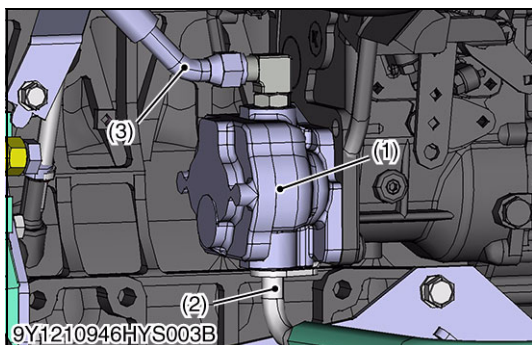
#### (When reassembling)

- Replace damaged push rivets (4).

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Rear Seat Assembly | (3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover |
| (2) Rear Upper Cover   | (4) Push Rivet                |

9Y1210996HYS0004US0





### Hydraulic Pump

1. Disconnect the suction pipe (2) and delivery hose (3).
2. Remove the hydraulic pump (1).

#### (When reassembling)

- Be careful not to damage the O-ring on the hydraulic pump (1) and suction pipe (2).

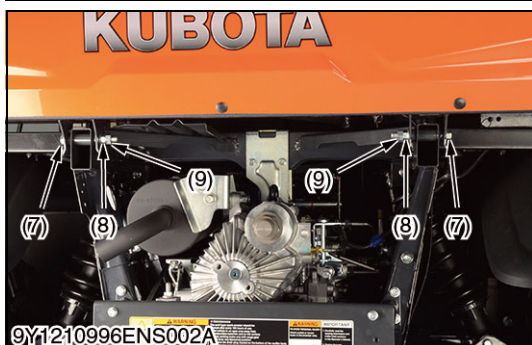
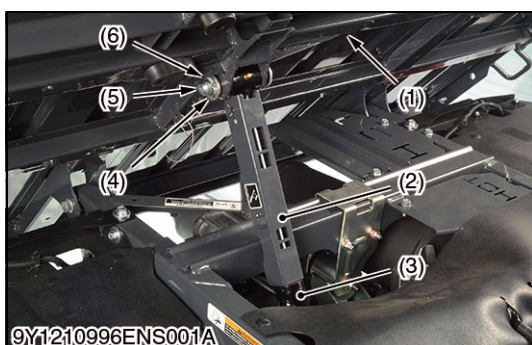
Tightening torque	Hydraulic pump mounting bolt	37.0 to 44.0 N·m 3.78 to 4.48 kgf·m 27.3 to 32.4 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------------------------	---

- (1) Hydraulic Pump  
(2) Suction Pipe

- (3) Delivery Hose

9Y1210996HYS0006US0

## (2) Removing Hydraulic Cylinder Lift Cylinder



### Cargo Bed



#### CAUTION

- **Work with two people or a hoist when removing the cargo bed.**

1. Lift the cargo bed (1) to the raised position and support it so that the hydraulic cylinder (3) does not drop.
2. Remove the cotter pin (2), washer (4), and clevis pin (3).
3. With the cargo bed supported in the raised position, remove the cylinder lock (3) and compress the hydraulic cylinder. Slowly lower the cargo bed.
4. Remove the lock nuts (9), flange nuts (8), and remove the bolts (7).
5. Remove the cargo bed (1).

#### (When reassembling)

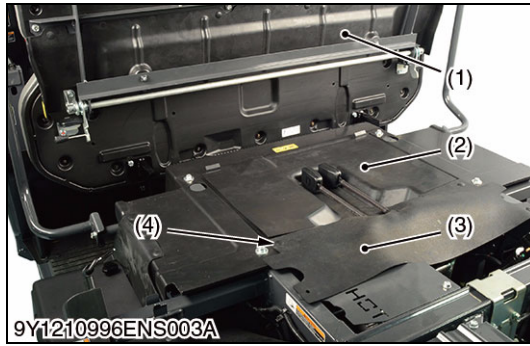
- Install the cotter pin both side bending.
- Torque the lock nut (9) while holding the flange nut (8) with a wrench.

Tightening torque	Cargo bed lock nut	77.5 to 90.2 N·m 7.91 to 9.19 kgf·m 57.2 to 66.5 lbf·ft
-------------------	--------------------	---

- (1) Cargo Bed  
(2) Cylinder Lock  
(3) Hydraulic Cylinder  
(4) Washer  
(5) Clevis Pin

- (6) Cotter Pin  
(7) Bolt  
(8) Flange Nut  
(9) Lock Nut

9Y1210996ENS0009US0



### **Rear Upper Cover**

1. Lift the rear seat assembly (1) and secure in the raised position, if the seat is in the lowered position.
2. Remove the rear upper cover (2) and upper engine rubber cover (3).

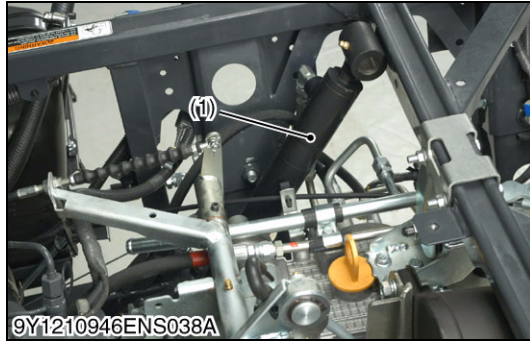
#### **(When reassembling)**

- Replace damaged push rivets (4).

(1) Rear Seat Assembly  
(2) Rear Upper Cover

(3) Upper Engine Rubber Cover  
(4) Push Rivet

9Y1210996HYS0004US0



### **Hydraulic Lift Cylinder**

1. Disconnect the hydraulic hoses.
2. Remove the hydraulic lift cylinder (1) and cylinder bracket.

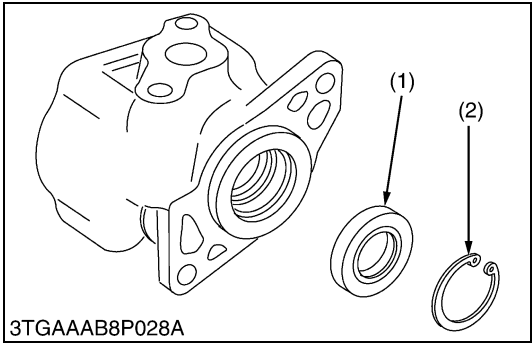
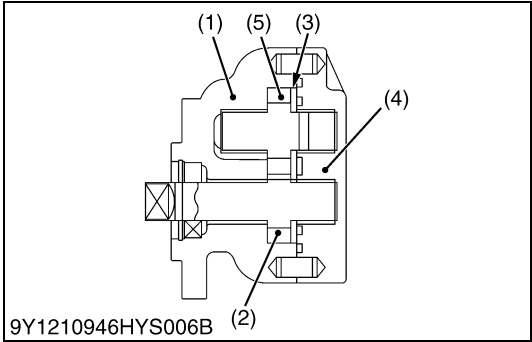
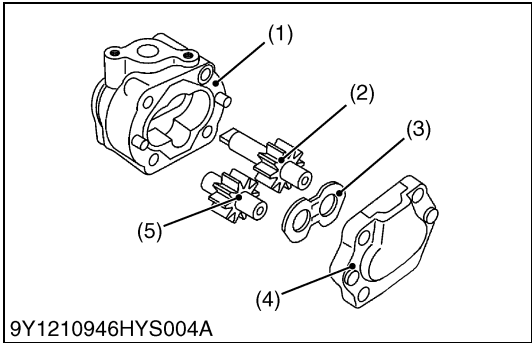
(1) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder

9Y1210996HYS0007US0



[3] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

(1) Hydraulic Pump



**Hydraulic Pump**

- 1. Secure the hydraulic pump with a vise, and remove the hydraulic pump cover (4).
- 2. Remove the side plate (3).
- 3. Remove the drive gear (2) and driven gear (5) from the casing (1).

**(When reassembling)**

- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.
- Align the holes of the hydraulic pump cover (4) and casing (1).
- Install the side plate (3), noting its location and direction.
- Install the gears, noting its direction.

Tightening torque	Hydraulic pump cover mounting screw	40 to 44 N·m 4.0 to 4.5 kgf·m 29 to 32 lbf·ft
-------------------	-------------------------------------	---

- (1) Casing
- (2) Drive Gear
- (3) Side Plate
- (4) Hydraulic Pump Cover
- (5) Driven Gear

9Y1210996HYS0008US0

**Oil Seal**

- 1. Remove the internal snap ring (2), and remove the oil seal (1).

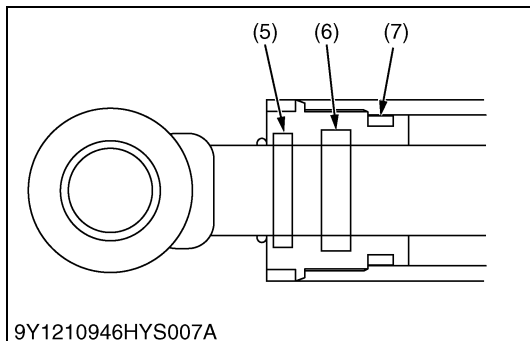
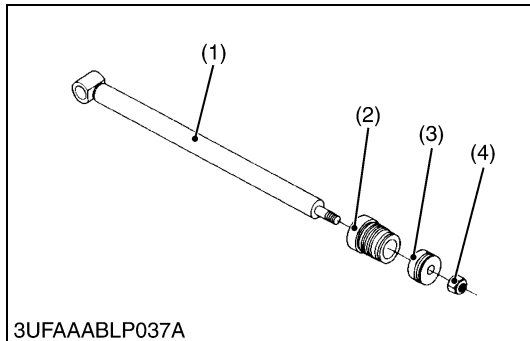
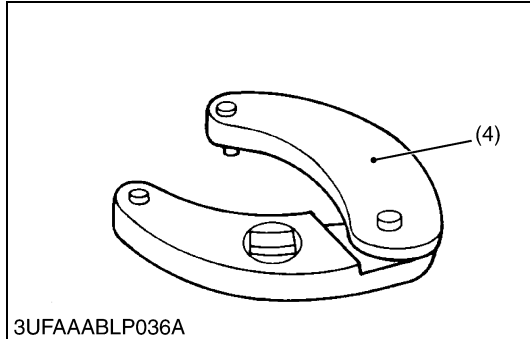
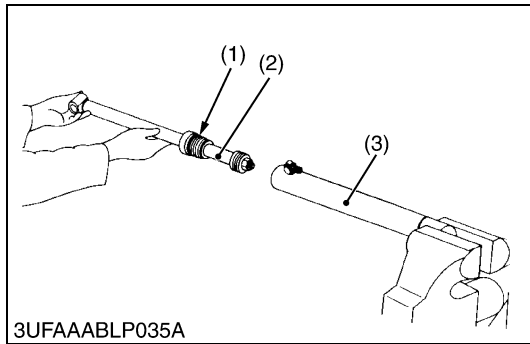
**(When reassembling)**

- If the oil seal is damaged, worn or scratched, replace it.

- (1) Oil Seal
- (2) Internal Snap Ring

9Y1210996HYS0009US0

## (2) Hydraulic Lift Cylinder



### Piston Rod Assembly

1. Drain hydraulic oil from the hydraulic lift cylinder, and set the tube end of the hydraulic lift cylinder in a vise.
2. Remove the cylinder head (1) with the adjustable gland nut wrench (4).
3. Pull out the piston rod assembly (2) from the cylinder tube (3).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Visually inspect the cylinder tube for signs of scoring or damage.
- Insert the piston rod assembly to the cylinder tube, being careful not to damage the piston seal on the piston.
- Install the cylinder head to the cylinder tube, being careful not to damage the O-ring on the cylinder head.

(1) Cylinder Head

(2) Piston Rod Assembly

(3) Cylinder Tube

(4) Adjustable Gland Nut Wrench

9Y1210996HYS0010US0

### Cylinder Head, Piston and Nut

1. Set the od end in a vise.
2. Remove the nut, remove the piston (3) and cylinder head (2) from the piston rod (1).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Visually inspect all parts for signs of scoring or damage.
- Insert the piston rod to the cylinder head, being careful not to damage the wiper seal (5) and oil seal (6).
- When installing the cylinder head, apply Loctite 262 to the nut (4).

Tightening torque	Hydraulic lift cylinder head	100 to 120 N·m 10.2 to 12.2 kgf·m 73.8 to 88.5 lbf·ft
	Hydraulic lift cylinder piston mounting nut	80.0 to 100 N·m 8.16 to 10.1 kgf·m 59.0 to 73.7 lbf·ft

(1) Piston Rod

(2) Cylinder Head

(3) Piston

(4) Nut

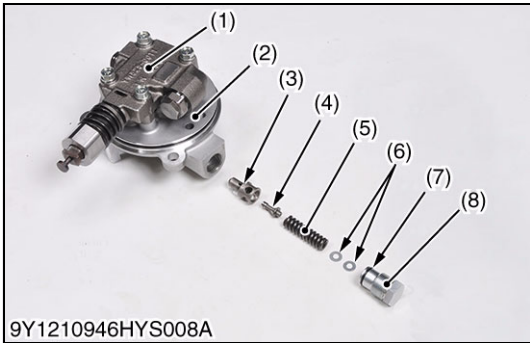
(5) Wiper Seal

(6) Oil Seal

(7) Oil Seal

9Y1210996HYS0011US0

(3) Control Valve



Relief Valve and Control Valve

- 1. Remove the relief valve plug (8), shims (6), spring (5), poppet (4) and seat (3).
- 2. Remove the control valve (1).

(When reassembling)

- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.

Tightening torque	Relief valve plug	29.4 to 34.3 N·m 3.00 to 3.49 kgf·m 21.7 to 25.2 lbf·ft
	Control valve mounting screw	19 to 21 N·m 1.9 to 2.1 kgf·m 14 to 15 lbf·ft

- (1) Control Valve

(2) Control Valve Cover

(3) Seat

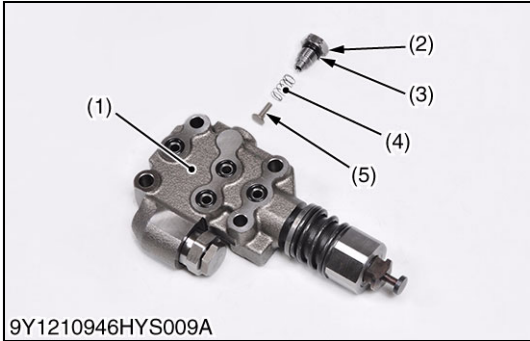
(4) Poppet
- (5) Spring

(6) Shim

(7) O-ring

(8) Plug

9Y1210996HYS0012US0



Check Valve

- 1. Remove the plug (2) and remove the spring (4) and poppet (5).
- 2. Remove the plug (7) and remove the spring (8) and ball (9).
- 3. Remove the check valve seat (11).

(When reassembling)

- Be careful not to damage the O-ring.

Tightening torque	Check valve plug (2), (7)	19.6 to 24.5 N·m 2.00 to 2.49 kgf·m 14.5 to 18.0 lbf·ft
	Check valve seat (11)	34 to 39 N·m 3.5 to 3.9 kgf·m 25 to 28 lbf·ft

- (1) Control Valve

(2) Check Valve Plug

(3) O-ring

(4) Spring

(5) Poppet

(6) O-ring

(7) Check Valve Plug
- (8) Spring

(9) Ball

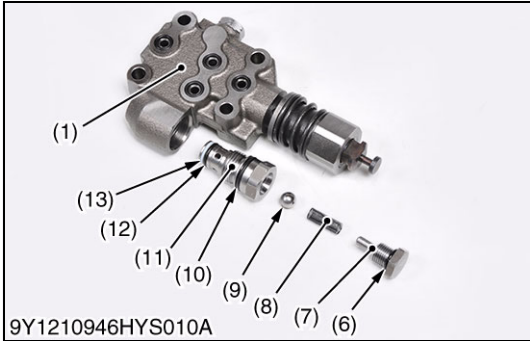
(10) O-ring

(11) Check Valve Seat

(12) O-ring

(13) Back Up Ring

9Y1210996HYS0013US0



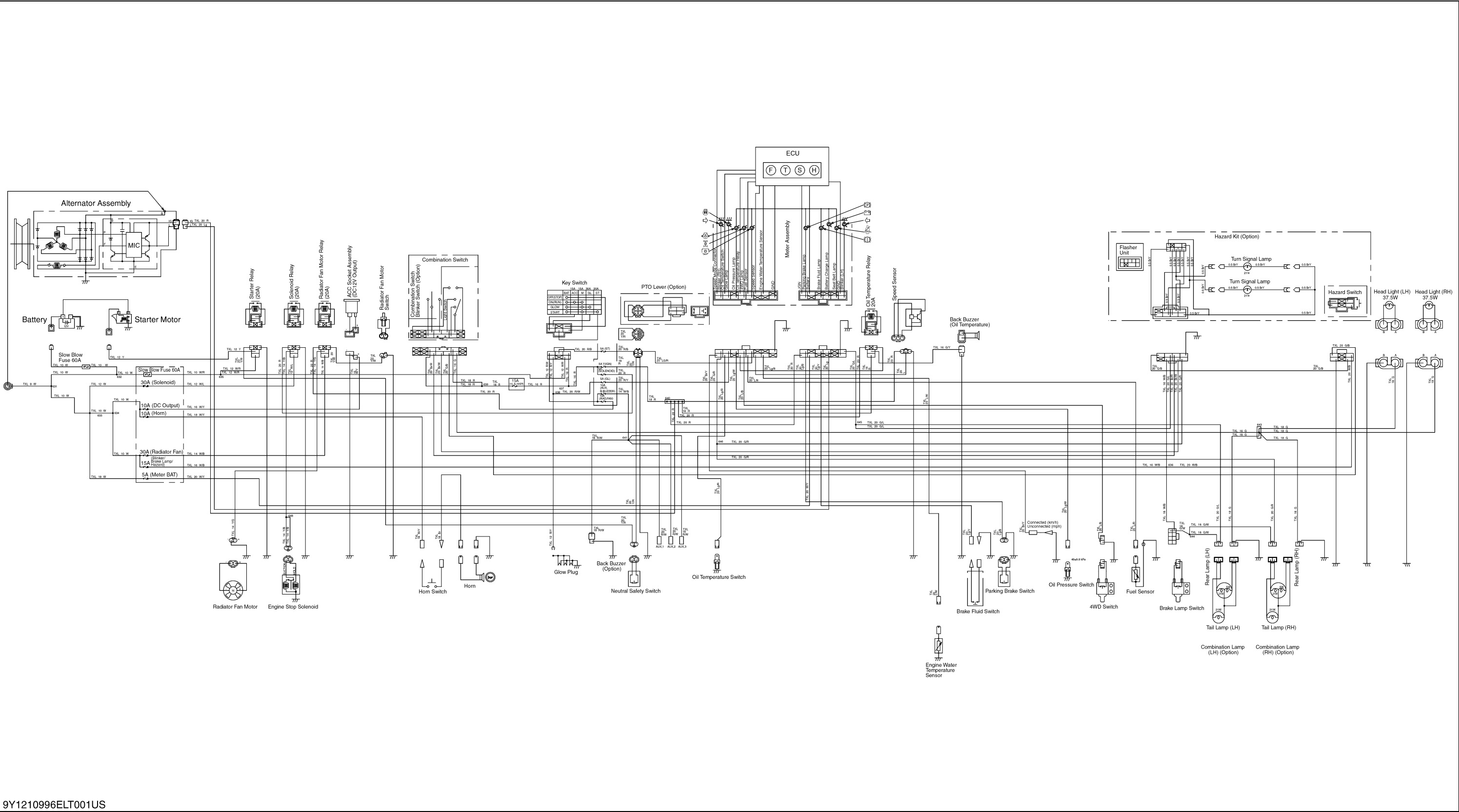
# **8 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**

# MECHANISM

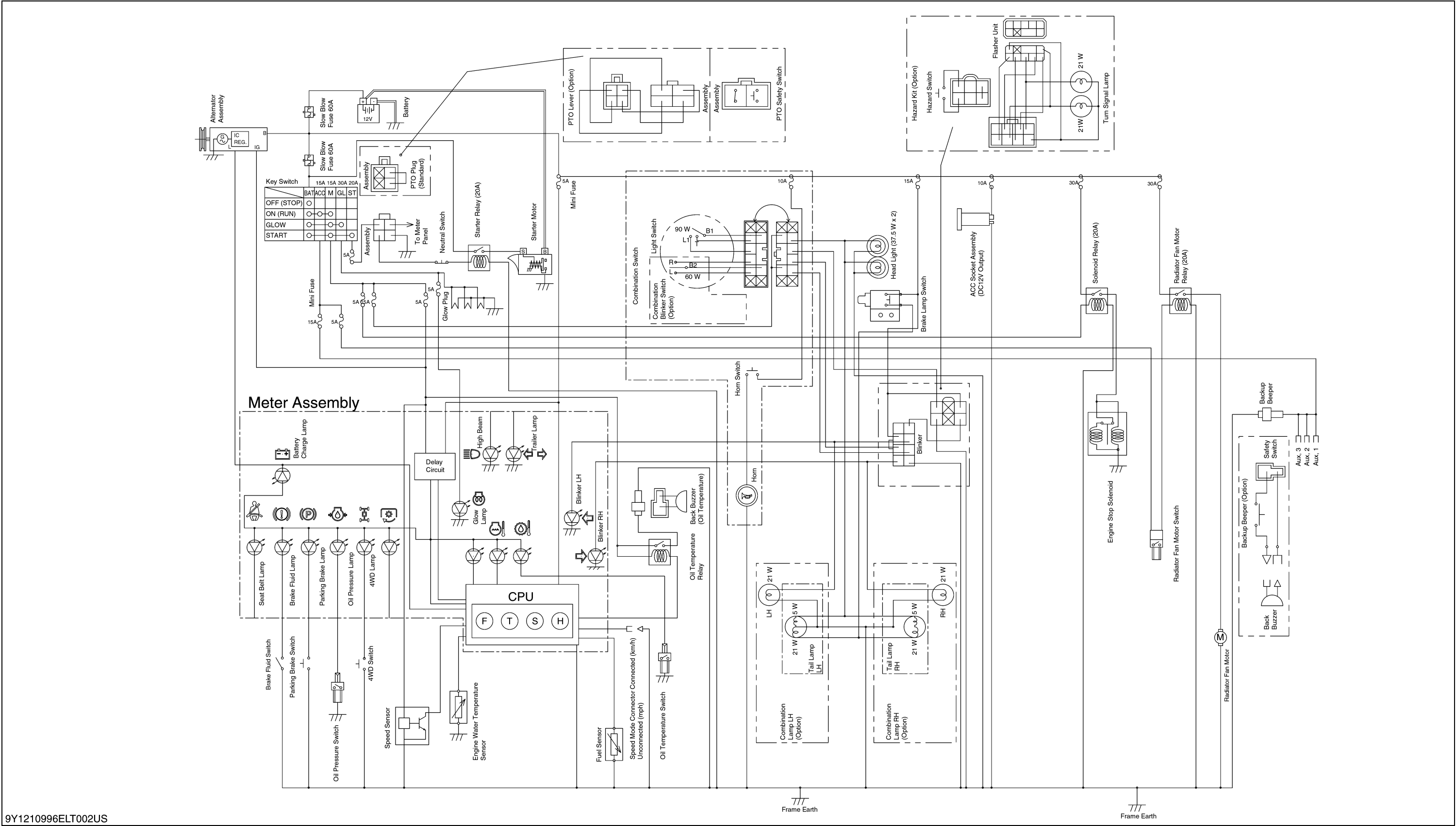
## CONTENTS

1. WIRING DIAGRAM.....	8-M1
2. ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT .....	8-M2
3. STARTING SYSTEM.....	8-M3
[1] STARTER.....	8-M3
(1) Structure .....	8-M3
(2) Operation of Starter .....	8-M4
(3) Overrunning Clutch.....	8-M5
(4) Magnetic Switch .....	8-M5
[2] GLOW PLUG.....	8-M6
[3] SAFETY SWITCH (NEUTRAL SWITCH) .....	8-M7
[4] ENGINE STOP SOLENOID .....	8-M8
4. CHARGING SYSTEM.....	8-M9
[1] ALTERNATOR .....	8-M9
[2] IC REGULATOR.....	8-M10
5. LIGHTING SYSTEM .....	8-M11
6. COOLING SYSTEM .....	8-M12
[1] COOLING SYSTEM .....	8-M12
[2] FAN MOTOR.....	8-M12
[3] RADIATOR FAN MOTOR SWITCH .....	8-M13
7. GAUGES .....	8-M14
[1] FUEL QUANTITY .....	8-M15
[2] TRAVELING SPEED SENSOR.....	8-M15
[3] ENGINE WATER TEMPERATURE SENSOR .....	8-M16
8. METER PANEL .....	8-M17
[1] EASY CHECKER™ .....	8-M17
[2] ERROR CODE DISPLAY .....	8-M19

1. WIRING DIAGRAM



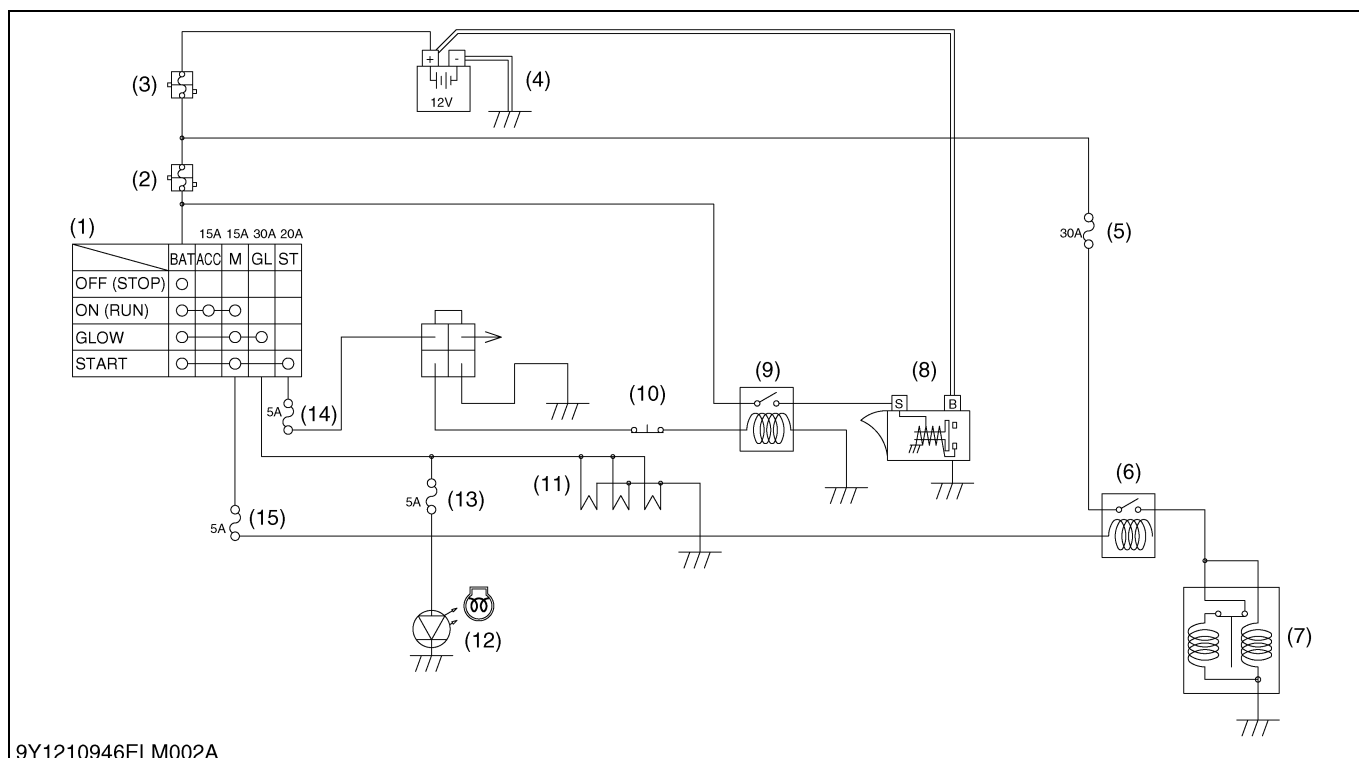
2. ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT



9Y1210996ELT002US



### 3. STARTING SYSTEM



- |                          |                          |                                     |                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Key Switch           | (5) Fuse (30A)           | (9) Starter Relay                   | (13) Fuse (5A) |
| (2) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) | (6) Solenoid Relay       | (10) Safety Switch (Neutral Switch) | (14) Fuse (5A) |
| (3) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) | (7) Engine Stop Solenoid | (11) Glow Plug                      | (15) Fuse (5A) |
| (4) Battery              | (8) Starter Motor        | (12) Glow Lamp                      |                |

When the key switch (1) is turned to the **PREHEAT** position, the terminal **BAT** is connected to the terminals **GLOW** and **ON**. The glow plugs (11) become red-hot, and the preheat indicator lamp also lights on while preheating.

When the key switch is then turned to the **START** position with the safety switch (10) on, the terminal **BAT** is connected to the terminals **ST** and **ON**. Consequently, battery current flows to the starter motor and start the engine.

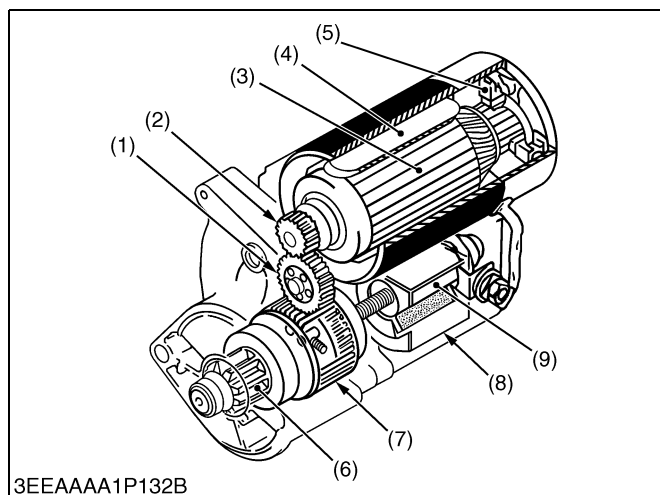
The key switch (1) automatically returns to the **ON** position, the terminal **BAT** is connected only to the terminal **ON**, thereby causing the starting circuit to be opened, stopping the starter motor (8).

When the key switch (1) turned from the **ON** position to the **OFF** position, the engine stop solenoid (7) moves the fuel injection pump control rack to the **"No Fuel Injection"** position and stop the engine.

9Y1210996ELM0028US0

#### [1] STARTER

##### (1) Structure

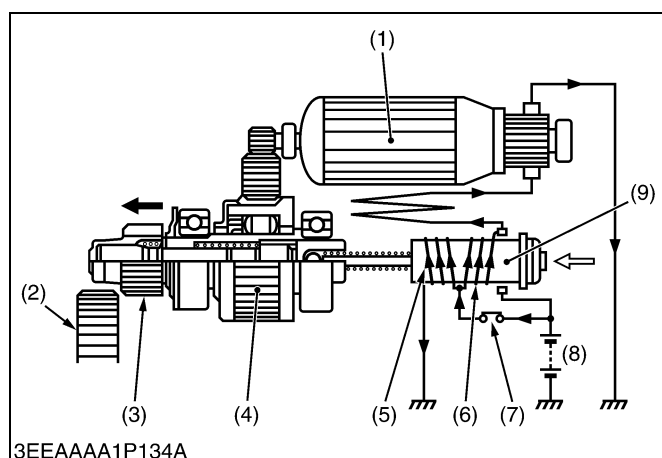


The starter is a reduction type starter with heat-resistant and vibration-resistant features that has a small, high-speed motor, and the revolutions of the armature drive the pinion gear approximately one-third the speed to increase torque.

- |                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| (1) Idler Gear | (6) Pinion Gear        |
| (2) Drive Gear | (7) Overrunning Clutch |
| (3) Armature   | (8) Magnetic Switch    |
| (4) Field Coil | (9) Plunger            |
| (5) Brush      |                        |

9Y1210996ELM0003US0

## (2) Operation of Starter

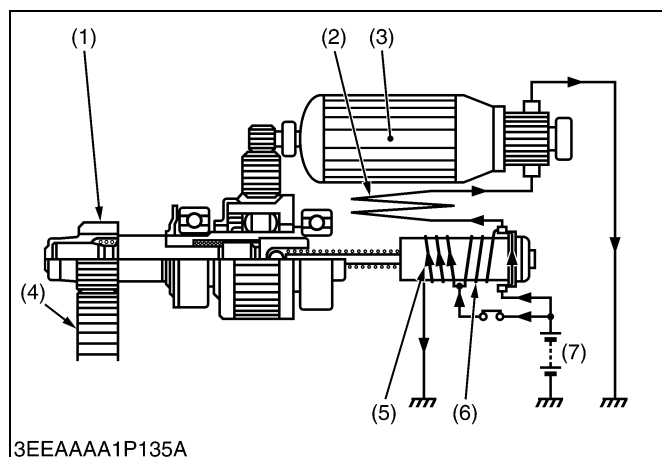


### When Key Switch Is Turned to START Position

When key switch (7) is turned to **START** position, current from battery (8) flows to holding coil (5) and pull-in coil (6). The plunger (9) is motivated by magnetism and the pinion gear (3) is pushed out.

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| (1) Armature           | (6) Pull-in Coil |
| (2) Ring Gear          | (7) Key Switch   |
| (3) Pinion Gear        | (8) Battery      |
| (4) Overrunning Clutch | (9) Plunger      |
| (5) Holding Coil       |                  |

9Y1210996ELM0004US0



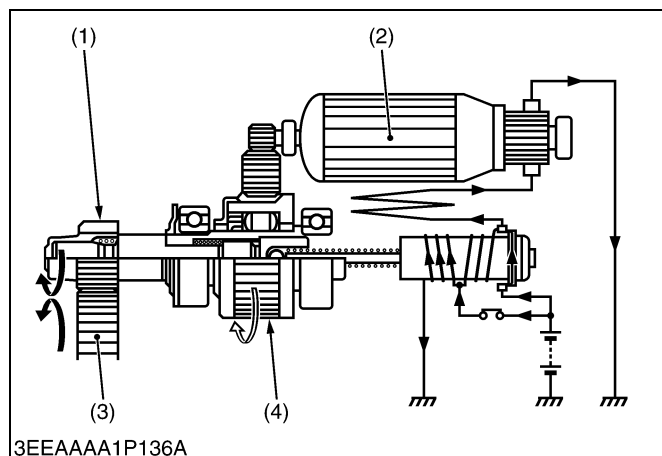
### When Pinion Gear Meshes with Ring Gear

When the pinion gear (1) comes into mesh with the ring gear (4) on the flywheel and the magnetic switch is closed, a large current flows from the battery (7) directly into the field coil (2) and armature coil, but not through the pull-in coil (6).

This rotates the armature (3) at a high speed, which in turn drives the ring gear (4) through the pinion gear (1) at 200 to 300 min<sup>-1</sup> (rpm).

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (1) Pinion Gear | (5) Holding Coil |
| (2) Field Coil  | (6) Pull-in Coil |
| (3) Armature    | (7) Battery      |
| (4) Ring Gear   |                  |

9Y1210996ELM0005US0

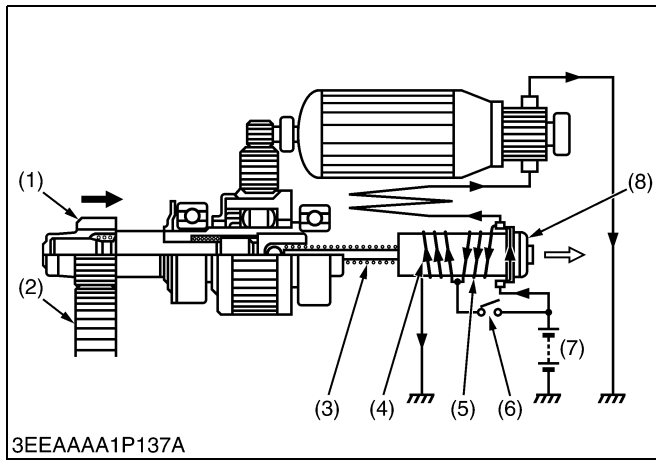


### When Engine Has Started

When the engine starts and drives the pinion gear (1) with the ring gear (3), the overrunning clutch (4) disengages to prevent the armature (2) from being driven by the engine.

- |                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| (1) Pinion Gear | (3) Ring Gear          |
| (2) Armature    | (4) Overrunning Clutch |

9Y1210996ELM0006US0



### When Key Switch Is Released

When releasing the key switch (6), it returns from **START** to **ON** position and the starter circuit opens.

Then, current flows from the battery (7) to the pull-in coil (5) and the holding coil (4) through the contact plate.

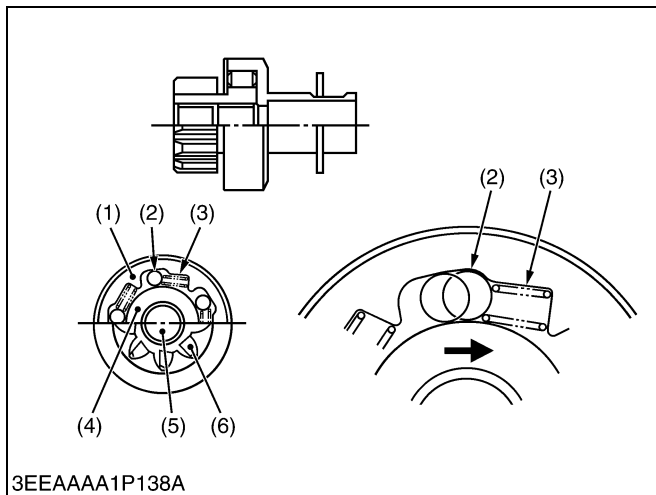
Since the magnetic force is generated in each coil in the opposite direction, the magnetic field collapses and the plunger (8) is returned to its former position by a return spring (3).

This opens the contacts on the contact plate and separates the pinion gear (1) from the ring gear (2), whereupon the pinion gear stops rotating.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| (1) Pinion Gear   | (5) Pull-in Coil |
| (2) Ring Gear     | (6) Key Switch   |
| (3) Return Spring | (7) Battery      |
| (4) Holding Coil  | (8) Plunger      |

9Y1210996ELM0007US0

### (3) Overrunning Clutch



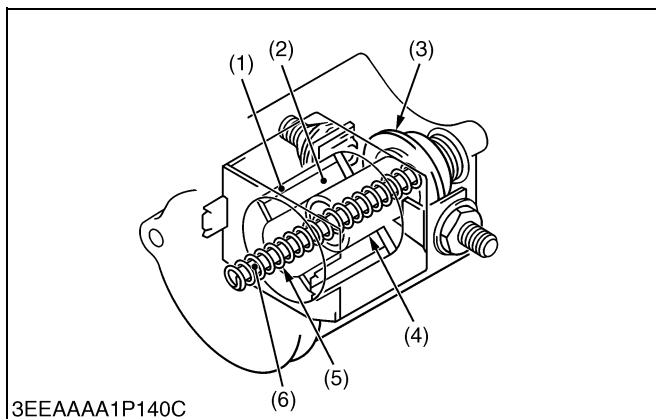
The overrunning clutch is so constructed that the power transmission relationship is automatically severed when the clutch pinion shaft (5) speed exceeds the clutch gear outer (1) speed at increased engine speeds.

Therefore, the armature drives the ring gear and is never driven by the engine.

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) Clutch Gear Outer | (4) Spline Tube Inner   |
| (2) Roller            | (5) Clutch Pinion Shaft |
| (3) Roller Spring     | (6) Pinion Gear         |

9Y1210996ELM0008US0

### (4) Magnetic Switch



The plunger (4), contact plate (3) and plunger shaft (6) are made as one unit. When the key switch is turned to **START** position, the plunger is drawn in and thus the clutch pinion shaft is forced out.

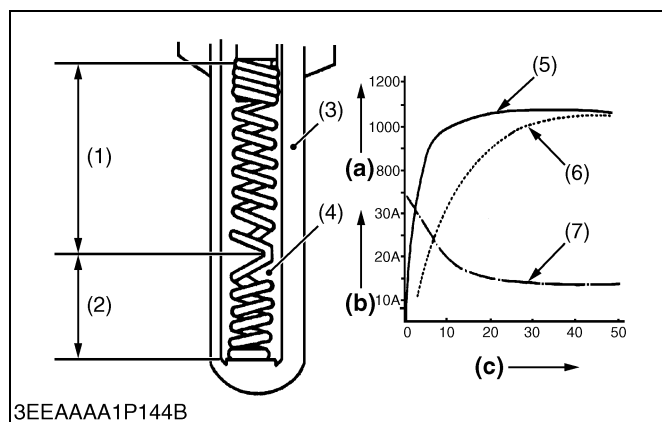
This meshes the pinion gear and ring gear, and causes the contact plate to close the contacts, causing the main current to flow into the armature.

When releasing the key switch, the plunger is returned to its former position by a return spring (5).

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| (1) Holding Coil  | (4) Plunger       |
| (2) Pull-in Coil  | (5) Return Spring |
| (3) Contact Plate | (6) Plunger Shaft |

9Y1210996ELM0009US0

## [2] GLOW PLUG



### Quick Glow System (QGS)

This plug is a two-material type QGS for quick temperature rises, and has self-controlling function as well as excellent durability.

The heater (2) connected in series to the heater which also functions as the resistor, is incorporated in the sheath tube (3) of the super glow plug.

The resistance of this heater (1) cum resistor is small when the temperature is low, while the resistance becomes large when the temperature rises.

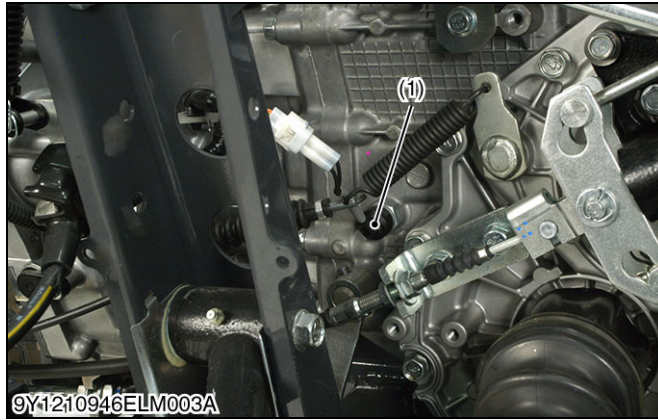
Therefore, because sufficient current is flow to the heater (2) during the initial period of energization, the temperature rise quickly and the resistance grows with the rise quickly and the resistance grows with the rise in the temperature of the resistor, the flowing current is reduced to prevent the heater (2) from being heated.

The ignition point is in the area of 2.0 to 3.0 mm (0.079 to 0.11 in.) from the tip of the plug in order to reduce its projection into the combustion chamber.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (1) Heater also functioning as a Resistor     | (a) Glow Plug Temperature (°C) |
| (2) Heater                                    | (b) Current (A)                |
| (3) Sheath Tube                               | (c) Time (Sec.)                |
| (4) Insulation Powder                         |                                |
| (5) Super Glow Plug                           |                                |
| (6) Conventional Quick Heating Type Glow Plug |                                |
| (7) Glow Plug Current                         |                                |

9Y1210996ELM0010US0

### [3] SAFETY SWITCH (NEUTRAL SWITCH)



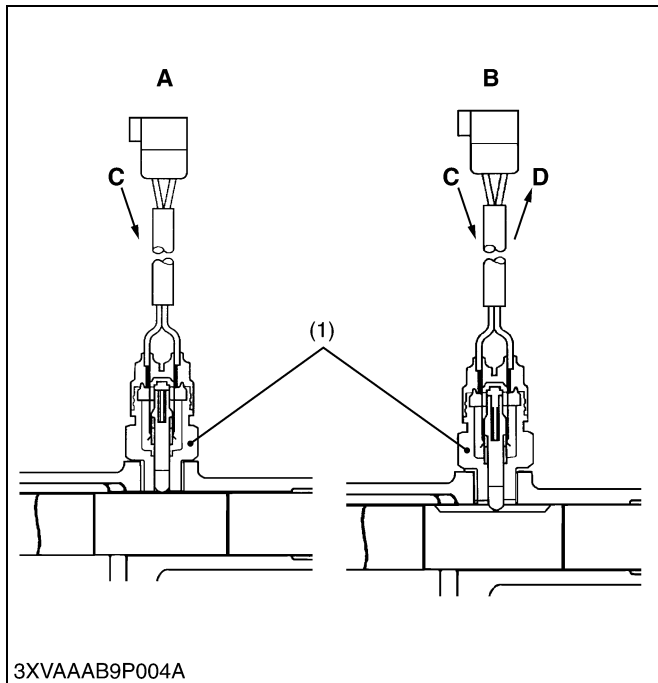
The safety switch (1) prevents current from flowing to the starter when the point of contact is released. This is to ensure safe starting.

The location of the safety switch is located at the range gear shift lever of the transaxle case.

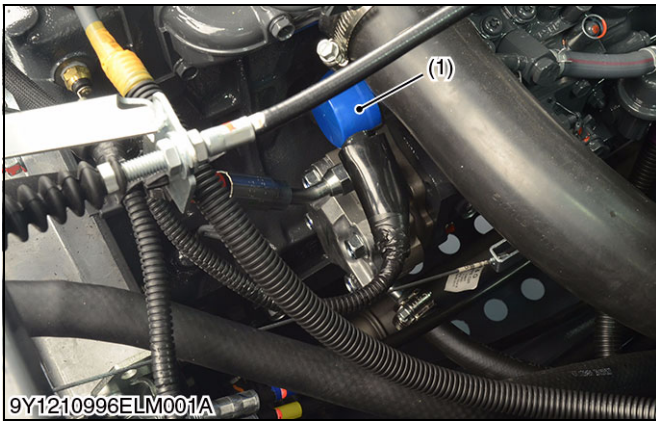
(1) Safety Switch

**A: When Shifted**  
**B: When Neutral**  
**C: From Key Switch**  
**D: To Starter**

9Y1210996ELM0011US0



## [4] ENGINE STOP SOLENOID

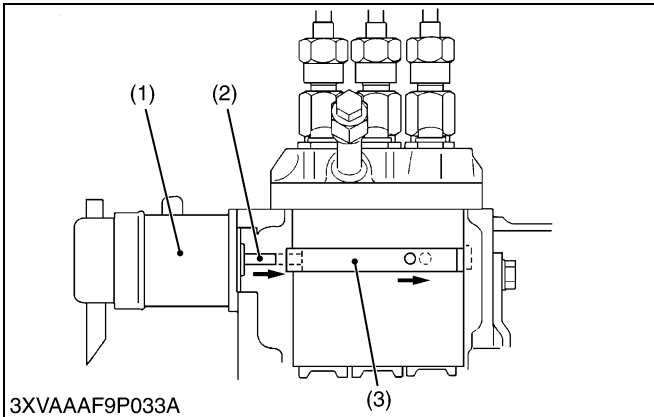


Flowing of the battery current into the stop solenoid (1), the plunger (2) move to left side so that the movement of control rack become free, when the battery current stops, the plunger (2) is returned to the in **"No fuel injection"** position.

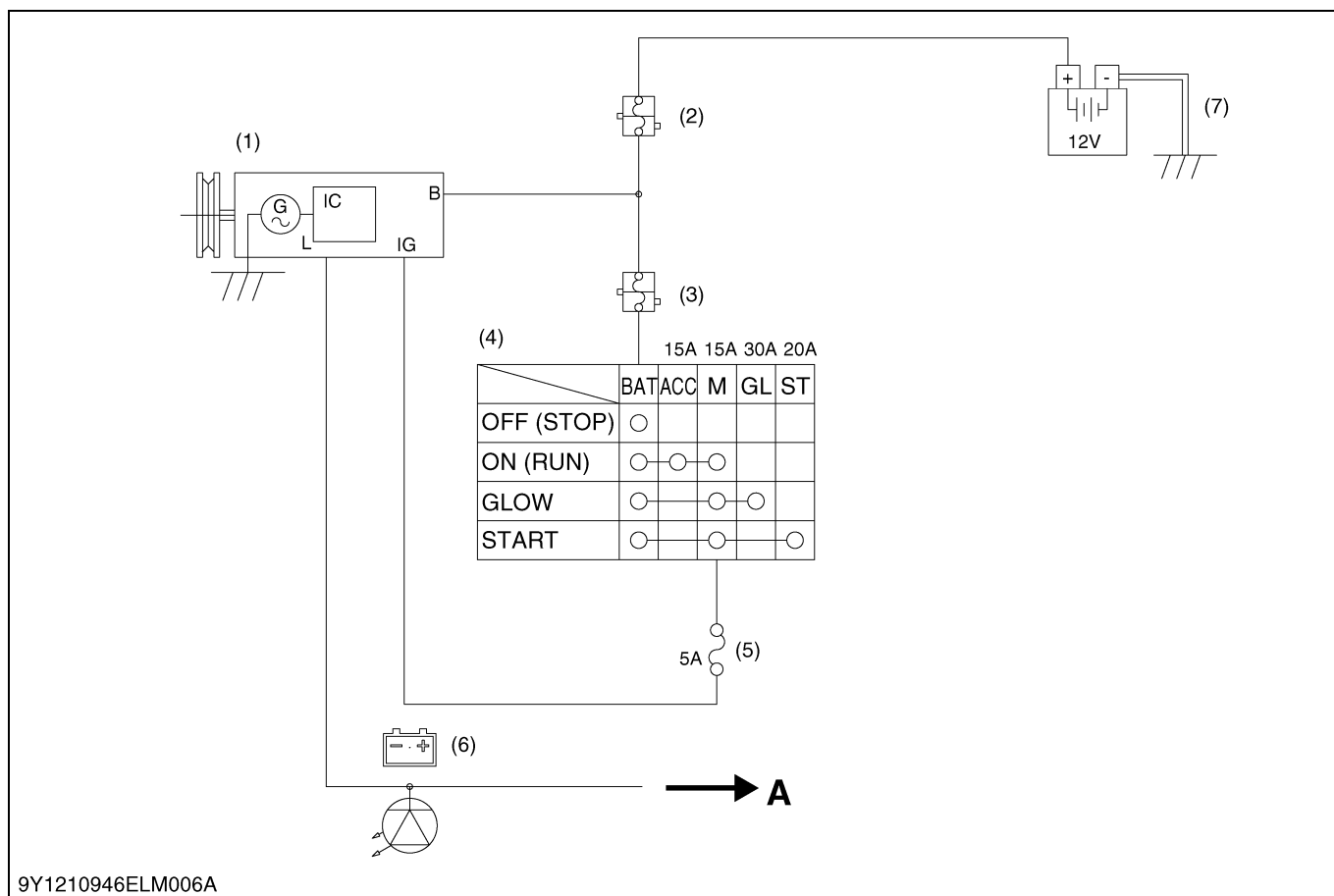
- (1) Stop Solenoid
- (2) Plunger

- (3) Control Rack

9Y1210996ELM0012US0



## 4. CHARGING SYSTEM



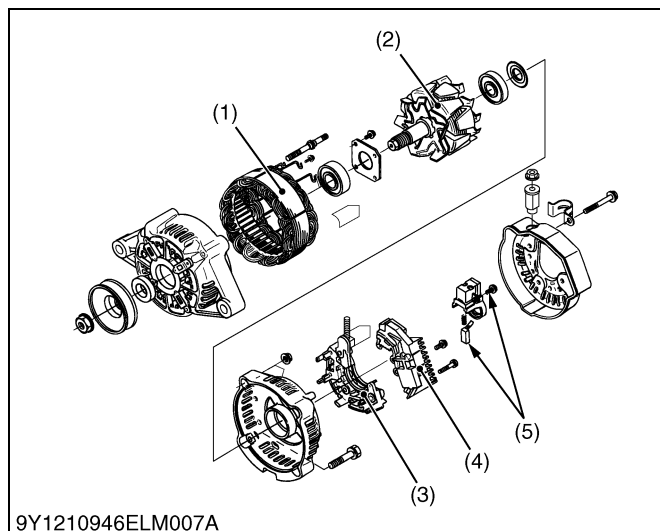
- (1) Alternator (2) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) (3) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) (4) Key Switch (5) Fuse (6) Battery Charge Lamp (7) Battery  
**A: To Panel**

The charging system supplies electric power for various electrical devices and also charges the battery while the engine runs.

This alternator has IC regulator.

9Y1210996ELM0013US0

### [1] ALTERNATOR



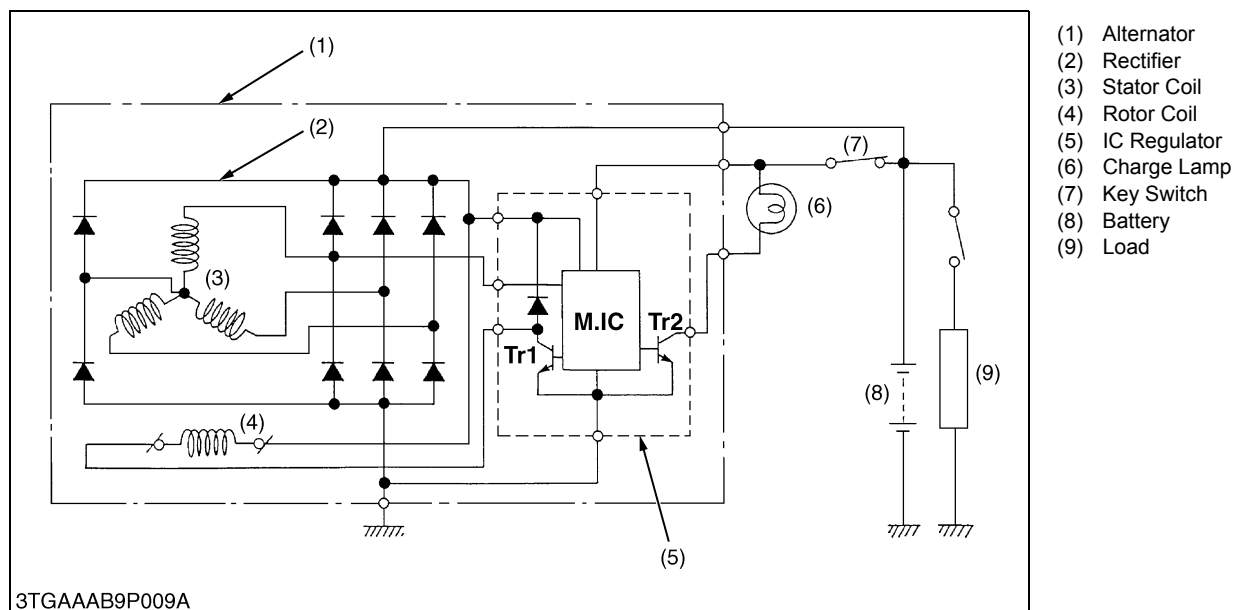
A compact alternator with an IC regulator is used, having the following characteristics:

- Approximately 26 % lighter and 17 % smaller than a standard alternator.
- Cooling performance and safety have been improved by combining the cooling fan with the rotor and incorporating the fan / rotor unit inside the alternator.
- IC regulator is fitted inside the alternator.
- The rectifier, IC regulator and similar components are easy to remove, making it easier to service the alternator.

- (1) Stator (2) Rotor (3) Rectifier (4) IC Regulator (5) Brush Holder

9Y1210996ELM0014US0

## [2] IC REGULATOR



An IC regulator uses solid state transistors, chips or other semiconductor elements instead of the relays in a conventional regulator. Stable characteristics are achieved by cutting off the field current. IC regulators have the following characteristics.

- The control voltage does not change over time, so the need for readjustment is eliminated. Since there are no moving parts, IC regulators are extremely durable and resistant to vibration.
- The overheat compensation characteristics ensure that the control voltage is reduced as the temperature rises, so the battery is charged at just the right level.

The internal circuitry of the IC regulator is shown in the diagram. It consists of a hybrid IC incorporating a monolithic IC. (The internal circuitry of the monolithic IC is extremely complex, so it is shown as simply "**M.IC circuit**".)

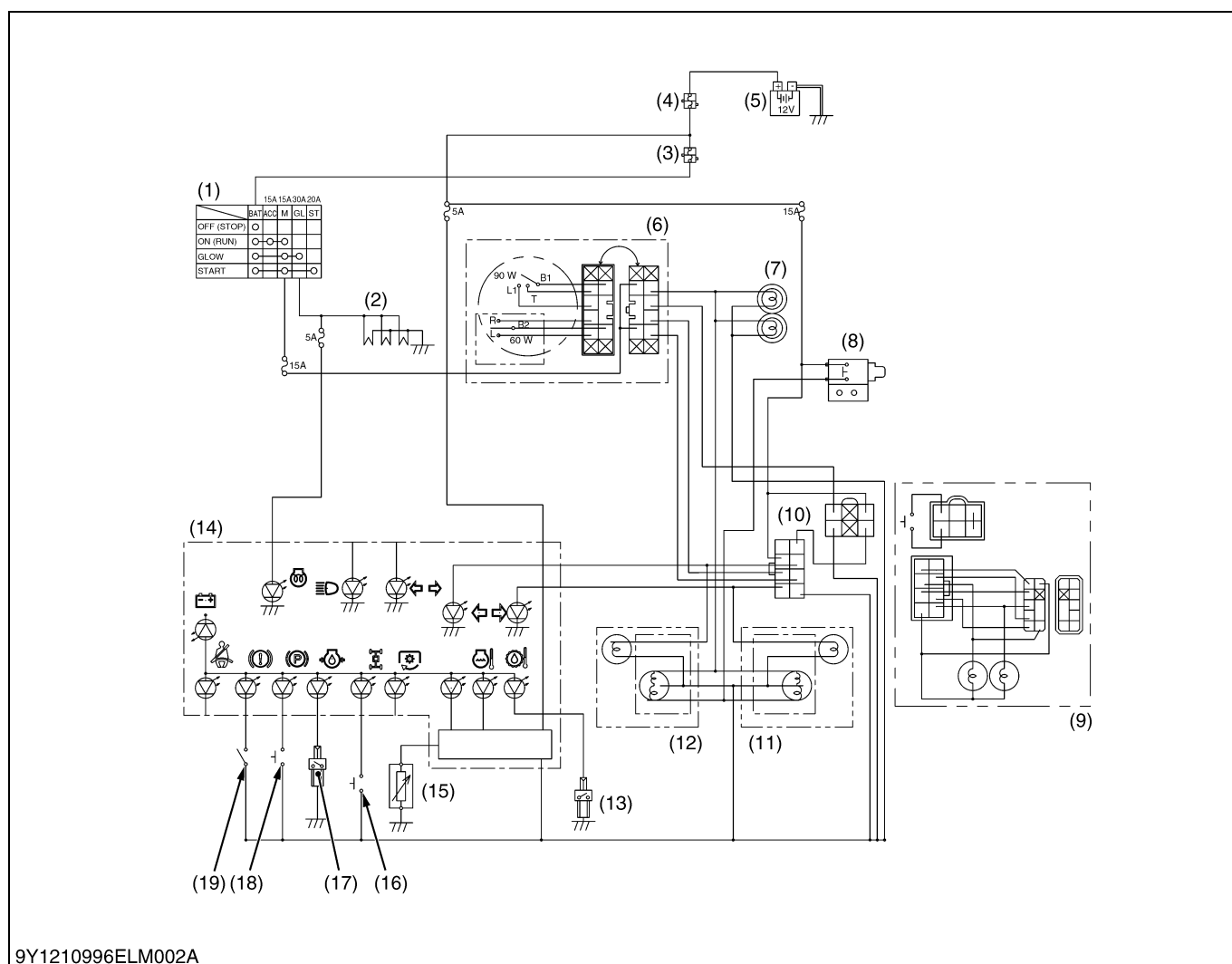
**Tr1** acts as the contacts controlling the field current, and **Tr2** acts as the charge lamp relay controlling the flashing of the charge lamp.

The M.IC circuit controls **Tr1** and **Tr2**, and monitors the alternator output voltage, and detects any drop in **L** terminal voltage or breaks in the rotor coil.

9Y1210996ELM0015US0



## 5. LIGHTING SYSTEM



9Y1210996ELM002A

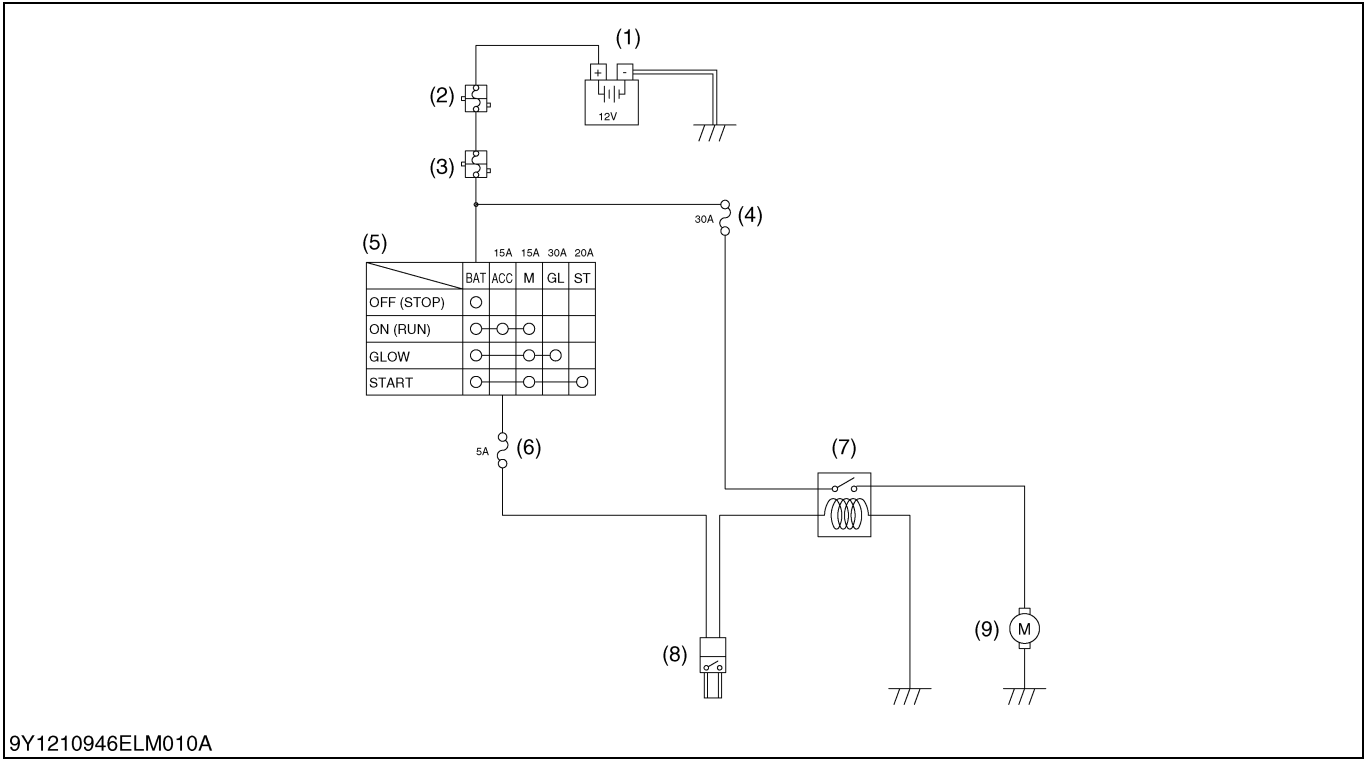
- |                           |                              |                               |                           |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (1) Key Switch            | (7) Head Light (37.5 W)      | (12) Combination Lamp (L.H.)  | (16) 4WD Switch           |
| (2) Glow Plug             | (8) Brake Lamp Switch        | (Option)                      | (17) Oil Pressure Switch  |
| (3) Slow Blow Fuse (60 A) | (9) Hazard Kit (Option)      | (13) Oil Temperature Switch   | (18) Parking Brake Switch |
| (4) Slow Blow Fuse (60 A) | (10) Blinker                 | (14) Meter Panel              | (19) Brake Fluid Switch   |
| (5) Battery               | (11) Combination Lamp (R.H.) | (15) Engine Water Temperature |                           |
| (6) Light Switch          | (Option)                     | Sensor                        |                           |

The lighting system consists of key switch, light switch, head lights, tail lights, etc.

9Y1210996ELM0016US0

6. COOLING SYSTEM

[1] COOLING SYSTEM

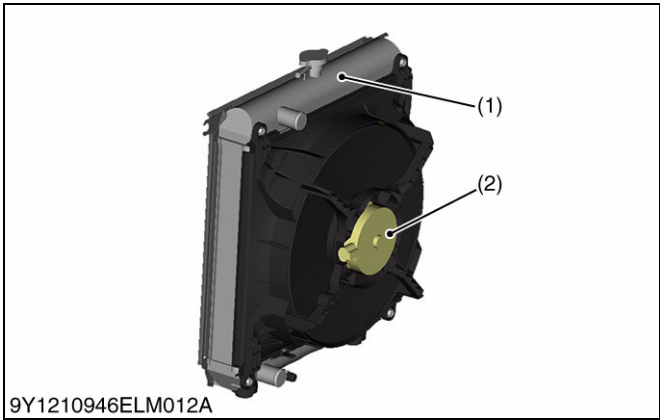


- (1) Battery
- (2) Slow Blow Fuse (60 A)
- (3) Slow Blow Fuse (60 A)
- (4) Fuse
- (5) Key Switch
- (6) Fuse (5 A)
- (7) Radiator Fan Motor Relay
- (8) Radiator Fan Motor Switch
- (9) Radiator Fan Motor

The cooling system consists of radiator fan motor switch, relay, fan motor, etc.

9Y1210996ELM0017US0

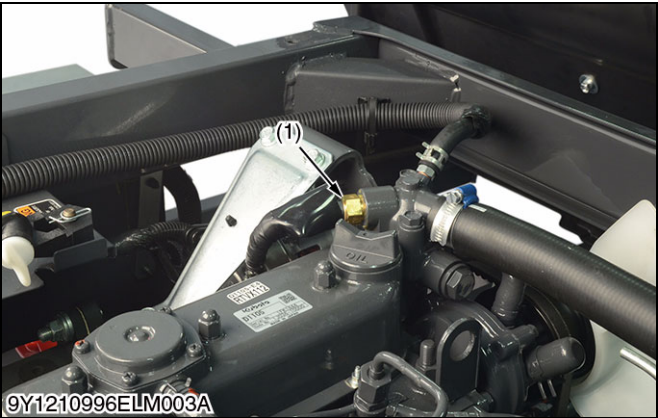
[2] FAN MOTOR



The cooling fan of this vehicle is not driven by the engine drive but an electric motor.  
An electric fan can be installed by separating from the engine.  
And, it can be operated when it is necessary.

- (1) Radiator
- (2) Radiator Fan Motor
- 9Y1210996ELM0018US0

[3] RADIATOR FAN MOTOR SWITCH



The radiator fan motor switch is installed to the water flange of engine, and its tip is in touch with the coolant.

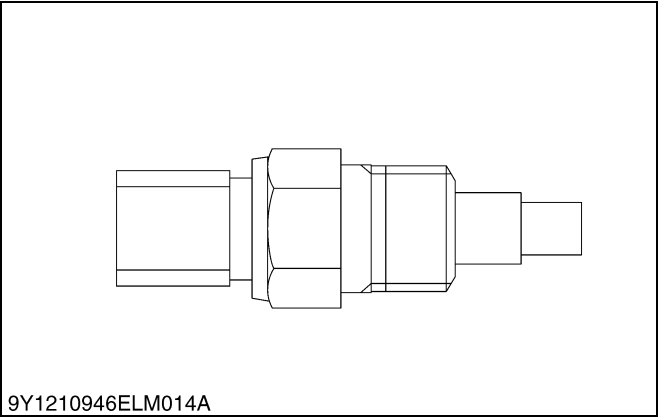
The fan motor rotates when the coolant temperature goes up more than the specified value.

When the coolant temperature falls below the specified value, the fan motor stops.

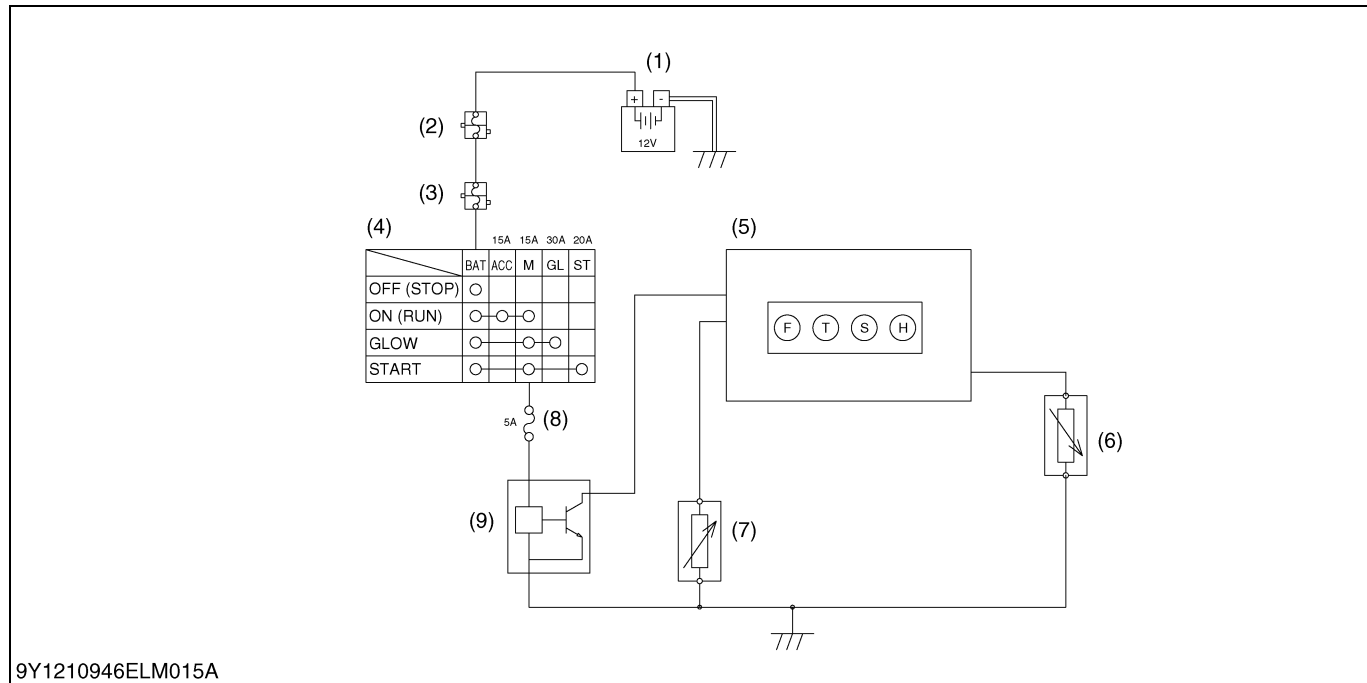
Characteristics of Radiator Fan Motor Switch		
Type	Operation Temperature	
	Fan motor rotate	Fan motor stop
Normally open	87 to 93 °C 189 to 199 °F	83 °C 181 °F

(1) Radiator Fan Motor Switch

9Y1210996ELM0019US0



## 7. GAUGES

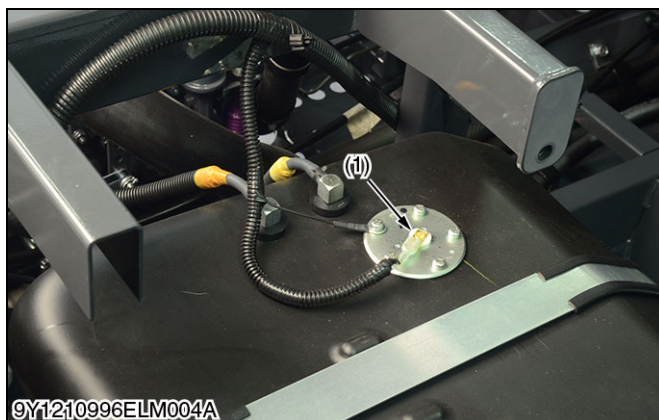


- |                          |                       |                                     |                  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| (1) Battery              | (4) Key Switch        | (6) Fuel Sensor                     | (8) Fuse (5A)    |
| (2) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) | (5) Meter Panel (CPU) | (7) Engine Water Temperature Sensor | (9) Speed Sensor |
| (3) Slow Blow Fuse (60A) |                       |                                     |                  |

The fuel quantity and engine water temperature sensor are indicated by the ammeters. The ammeters indicate each amperage flowing through the fuel level sensor for the fuel quantity detection and through the engine water temperature sensor for the engine water temperature sensor temperature detection.

9Y1210996ELM0020US0

## [1] FUEL QUANTITY



### Fuel

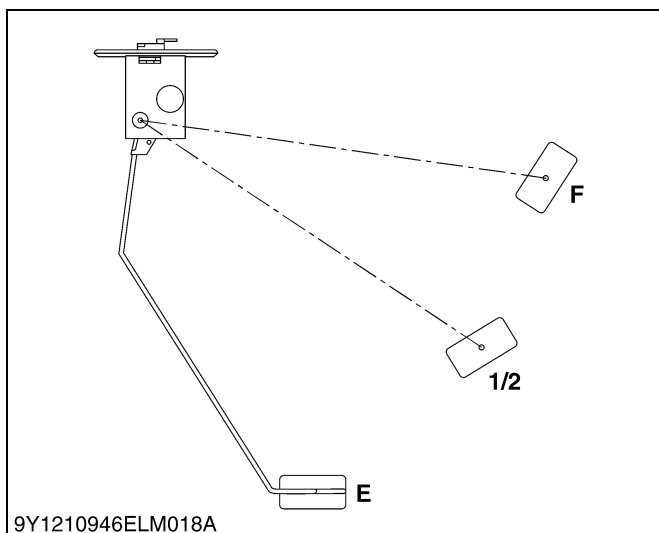
The remaining fuel quantity is detected by the fuel level sensor installed in the fuel tank and indicated on the fuel gauge. For detection, a float and a resistor are used.

As the float lowers, the resistance of the variable resistor varies. The relation between the amount of fuel and the resistance is as follows.

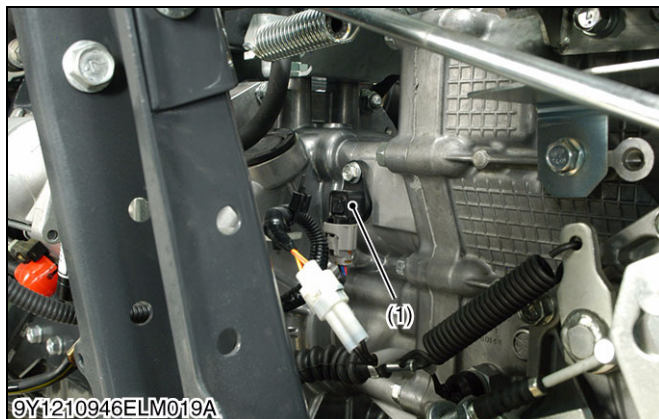
F	1/2	E
1 to 5 $\Omega$	32.5 $\Omega$	103 to 117 $\Omega$

(1) Fuel Level Sensor

9Y1210996ELM0021US0



## [2] TRAVELING SPEED SENSOR

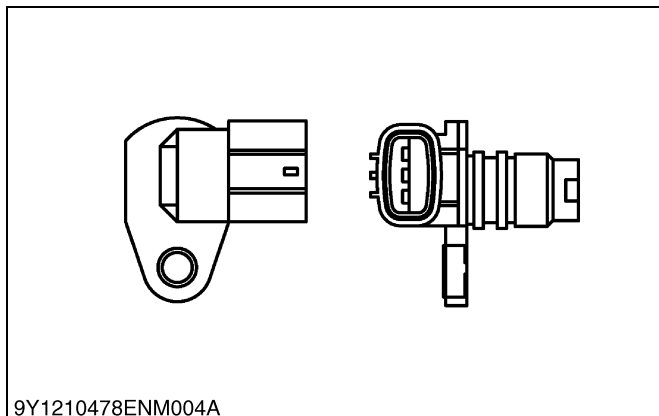


Measure the traveling speed with the rotation sensor at the left side of the transmission case.

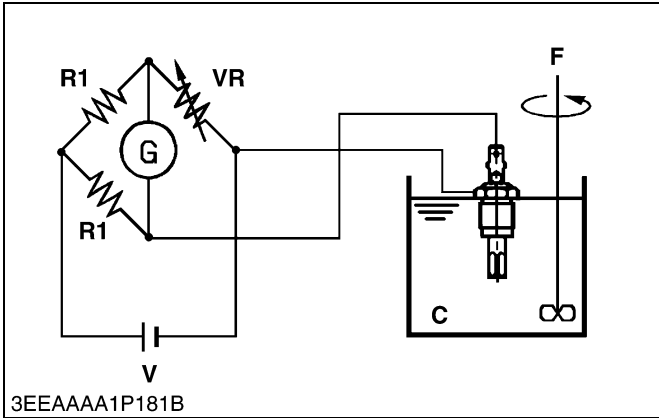
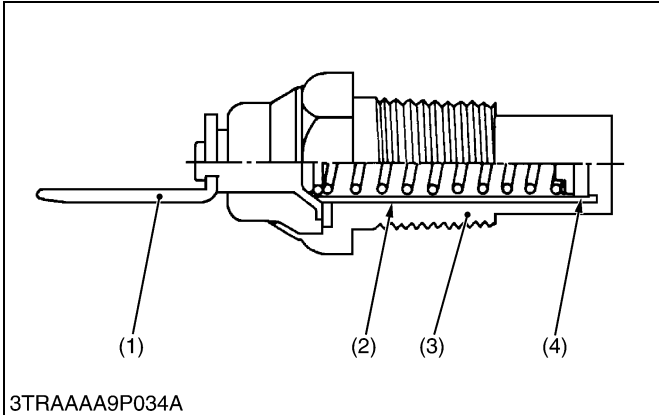
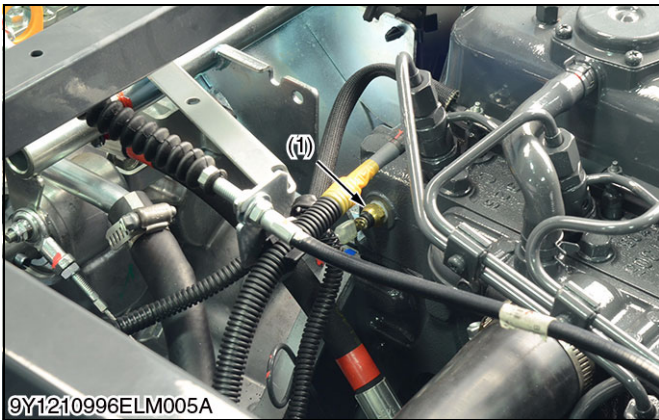
The sensor unit is a MRE (magnetic resistance element) type. For the MRE type, when the pulsar passes the sensor, the magnetic resistance changes and the voltage passing through the sensor changes. This change in voltage is amplified by the internal IC circuit and output to the engine ECU.

(1) Traveling Speed Sensor

9Y1210996ELM0022US0



[3] ENGINE WATER TEMPERATURE SENSOR



Engine Water Temperature Sensor (Thermo Unit)

The engine water temperature sensor is installed to the cylinder head of engine, and its tip is in touch with the coolant. It contains a thermistor (4) whose electrical resistance decreases as the temperature increases.

Current varies with changes in the coolant temperature, and the increases or decreases in the current move the pointer of gauge.

Characteristics of Thermistor		
Temperature	Resistance of VR: H	Condition
50 °C (122 °F)	153.9 Ω	(A)
80 °C (176 °F)	51.9 Ω	
100 °C (212 °F)	27.4 Ω	
120 °C (248 °F)	16.1 Ω	

★ When galvanometer shows 0 (Zero).

Condition	Setting Value
(A)	R1: 54.945 to 55.055 Ω V: DC 6.9 to 7.1 V

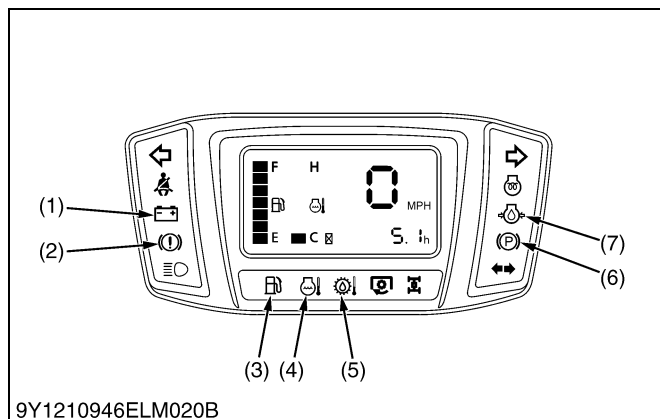
- (1) Terminal
- (2) Insulator
- (3) Body
- (4) Thermistor

C: Coolant or Silicon Oil  
G: Galvanometer  
VR: Variable Resistor  
F: Flow Velocity  
(0.14 to 0.15 m/s)

9Y1210996ELM0023US0

## 8. METER PANEL

### [1] EASY CHECKER™



If the warning in the Easy Checker™ come on during operation, immediately stop the engine, and find the cause as shown below.

#### ■ Engine Oil Pressure WARNING Indicator

If the oil pressure in the engine goes below the prescribed level, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ will come on.

#### ■ Electrical charge WARNING Indicator

If the alternator is not charging the battery, the Easy Checker™ will come on.

If this should happen during operation, check the electrical charging system.

#### ■ Low Brake Level WARNING Indicator

If the brake fluid goes below the prescribed level, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ will come on.

If this should in no oil leak in the brake system, and then add Dot3 brake fluid.

#### ■ VHT Oil Temperature WARNING Indicator

If the HST temperature goes up above 123 °C (253 °F), and the temperature lasts for 5 seconds, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ will come on and the buzzer will sound.

If the HST temperature decrease below 116 °C (241 °F) and the temperature lasts for 5 seconds, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ and the buzzer will turn off.

#### ■ Parking Brake WARNING Indicator

If the parking brake indicator is on during operation, release the parking brake lever immediately.

The parking brake indicator in the Easy Checker™ comes on if the parking brake is applied.

#### ■ Engine Overheat WARNING Indicator

If the coolant temperature goes up above 120 °C (248 °F), and the temperature lasts for 5 seconds, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ will come on and the buzzer will sound.

If the coolant temperature decrease below 115 °C (239 °F) and the temperature lasts for 5 seconds, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ and the buzzer will turn off.

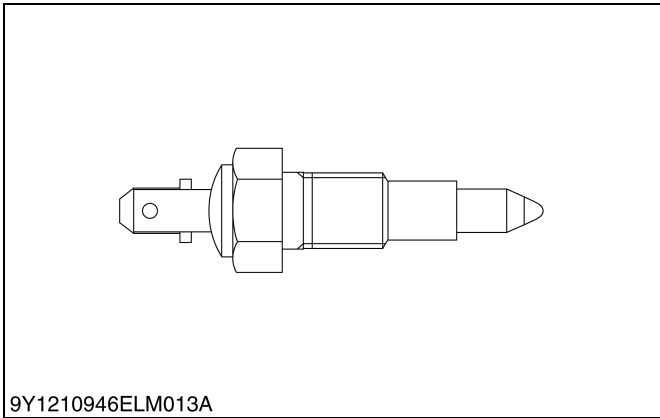
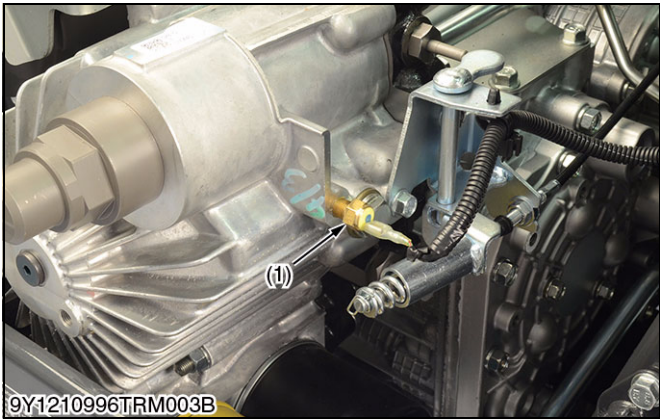
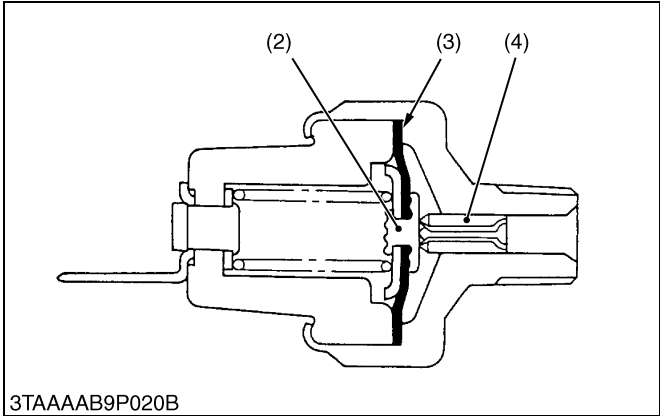
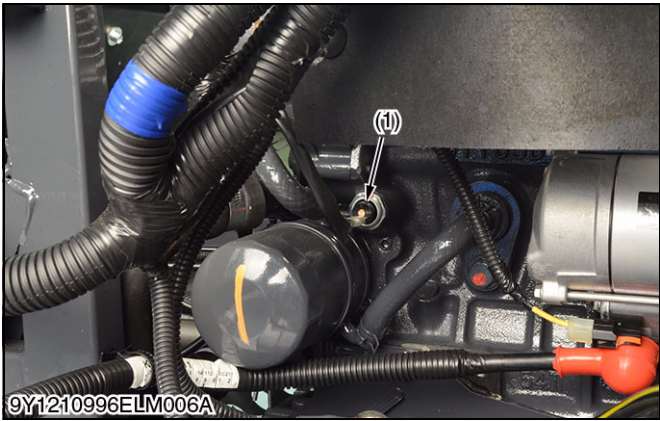
#### ■ Fuel level Indicator

If the fuel in the tank goes below the prescribed level (approx. 3.0 L, 0.79 U.S.gals, 0.66 Imp.gals).

- |                      |                              |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) Charge Lamp      | (5) VHT Oil Temperature Lamp |
| (2) Brake Fluid Lamp | (6) Parking Brake Lamp       |
| (3) Fuel Lamp        | (7) Engine Oil Pressure Lamp |
| (4) Overheat Lamp    |                              |

9Y1210996ELM0024US0





**Oil Pressure Switch**

While oil pressure is high and the force applied to the diaphragm (3) is larger than the spring tension, the terminal contact (2) is open separated from the body contact (4). If the pressure drops below approx. 49 kPa (0.5 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 7.1 psi), the contact closes.

- (1) Oil Pressure Switch

(2) Terminal Contact
- (3) Diaphragm

(4) Body Contact

9Y1210996ELM0025US0

**Oil Temperature Switch**

The oil temperature switch is installed to the left side of HST, and its tip is in touch with the fluid.

The VHT oil overheated, the warning lamp in the Easy Checker™ will come on and the buzzer will sound.

When oil temperature decrease below specified value, the warning lamp in Easy Checker™ and the buzzer will turn off.

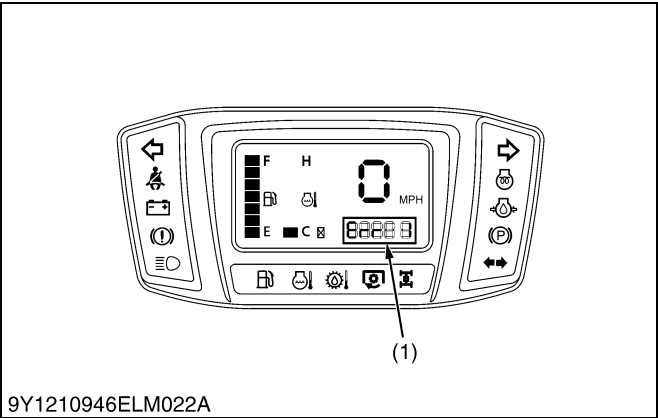
Characteristics of VHT Oil Temperature Switch		
Type	Operation Temperatures	
	Lamp and Buzzer ON	Lamp and Buzzer OFF
Normally open	120 to 126 °C 248 to 25 °F	116 °C 241 °F

- (1) Oil Temperature Switch

9Y1210996ELM0026US0



[2] ERROR CODE DISPLAY



If trouble should occur at the meter panel, the indicator flashes and error code appears as a warning.

If the trouble is not corrected by restarting the machine, solve the problem according to the following table.

(1) Error Code

Error code	Trouble	Check point or solution
Err 1	Water temperature sensor power circuit trouble	Checking battery voltage or replacing meter panel
Err 2	Fuel sensor power circuit trouble	Checking battery voltage or replacing meter panel
Err 3	Meter panel memory reading trouble	Replacing meter panel

9Y1210996ELM0027US0

# SERVICING

## CONTENTS

1. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	8-S1
2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS .....	8-S5
3. TIGHTENING TORQUES.....	8-S6
4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING .....	8-S7
[1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING.....	8-S7
(1) Battery .....	8-S7
(2) Key Switch.....	8-S9
(3) Starter.....	8-S11
(4) Glow Plug .....	8-S12
(5) Safety Switch.....	8-S12
(6) Engine Stop Solenoid .....	8-S13
(7) Charging System .....	8-S13
(8) Lighting System .....	8-S15
(9) Cooling System .....	8-S20
(10)Gauges.....	8-S22
(11)Relays .....	8-S24
(12)Others .....	8-S24
[2] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING .....	8-S25
(1) Starter.....	8-S25
(2) Alternator.....	8-S27
[3] SERVICING.....	8-S29
(1) Starter.....	8-S29
(2) Alternator.....	8-S31

# 1. TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>All Electrical Equipments Does Not Operate</b>	1. Battery discharged or damaged	Recharge or replace	G-33, 8-S8
	2. Battery positive cable disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	8-S7
	3. Battery negative cable disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	8-S7
	4. Slow blow fuse blown	Replace	G-54
<b>Fuse Blown Frequently</b>	1. Short-circuited	Repair or replace	G-53

## BATTERY

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Battery Discharges Too Quickly</b>	1. Battery damaged	Replace	8-S8
	2. IC Regulator damaged	Replace	8-S27
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—
	4. Alternator fan belt slipping	Adjust tension	G-35

## STARTING SYSTEM

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Starter Motor Does Not Work</b>	1. Battery discharged or damaged	Recharge or replace	8-S8
	2. Slow blow fuse blown	Replace	G-54
	3. Safety switch improperly adjusted or damaged	Repair or replace	8-S12
	4. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—
	5. Starter motor damaged	Repair or replace	8-S25
	6. Key switch damaged	Repair or replace	8-S9
<b>Engine Does Not Stop When Key Switch is Turned OFF Position</b>	1. Fuse blown (5A)	Replace	G-53
	2. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—
	3. Engine stop solenoid damaged	Replace	8-S13
	4. Key switch damaged	Replace	8-S9
<b>Starter Works and Engine Does Not Start</b>	1. Engine stop solenoid damaged	Replace	8-S13

**CHARGING SYSTEM**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Charging Lamp Does Not Light when Key Switch is Turned ON Position</b>	1. Fuse blown (5A)	Replace	G-53
	2. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	–
	3. Alternator damaged	Repair or replace	8-S14
<b>Charging Lamp Does Not Go Off When Engine is Running</b>	1. Short circuit between alternator L terminal lead and chassis	Repair or replace	–
	2. Alternator damaged	Repair or replace	8-S14

**LIGHTING SYSTEM**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Head Light Does Not Light</b>	1. Fuse blown (15A)	Replace	G-54
	2. Light switch damaged	Replace	8-S15
	3. Bulb blown	Replace	G-54
	4. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	–
<b>Tail Light Does Not Light</b>	1. Fuse blown (15A)	Replace	G-54
	2. Bulb blown	Replace	G-54
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	–
<b>Glow Indicator Lamp Does Not Light When Key Switch Is in Glow Position</b>	1. Battery discharged or damaged	Recharge or replace	8-S8
	2. Slow blow fuse blown	Replace	G-54
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	–
	4. Key switch damaged	Replace	8-S9
<b>Parking (Position) Light Does Not Light</b>	1. Fuse blown (15A)	Replace	G-54
	2. Parking brake light switch damaged	Repair or replace	8-S18
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	–

**ENGINE OIL PRESSURE**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Oil Pressure Lamp Lights Up When Engine Is Running</b>	1. Engine oil pressure too low	Check and repair	1-S13
	2. Engine oil insufficient	Fill	G-25
	3. Oil pressure switch damaged	Replace	8-S17
	4. Short circuit between oil pressure switch lead and chassis	Repair	—
<b>Oil Pressure Lamp Does Not Light When Key Switch Is Turned ON and Engine Is Not Running</b>	1. Oil pressure switch damaged	Replace	8-S17
	2. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—

**COOLING SYSTEM**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Fan Motor Does Not Rotate When Engine Overheats</b>	1. Radiator fan motor switch damaged	Replace	8-S22
	2. Fuse blown (30A)	Replace	G-54
	3. Radiator fan motor relay damaged	Replace	8-S24
	4. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—
	5. Radiator fan motor damaged	Replace	8-S22
	6. Battery discharged or damaged	Recharge or replace	8-S8
<b>Fan Motor Rotates Always (When Key Switch Is ON Position)</b>	1. Radiator fan motor switch damaged	Replace	8-S22
	2. Radiator fan motor relay damaged	Replace	8-S24

**GAUGES**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Fuel Gauge Does Not Function</b>	1. Fuel gauge damaged	Replace the panel	—
	2. Fuel level sensor damaged	Replace	8-S22
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—
<b>Engine Water Temperature Sensor Gauge Does Not Function</b>	1. Engine water temperature sensor gauge damaged	Replace the panel	—
	2. Engine water temperature sensor damaged	Replace	8-S23
	3. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—

**HORN**

Symptom	Probable Cause and Checking Procedure	Solution	Reference Page
<b>Horn Does Not Sound When Horn Button Is Pushes</b>	1. Fuse blown (10A)	Replace	G-54
	2. Horn switch damaged	Replace	8-S24
	3. Horn damaged	Replace	—
	4. Wiring harness disconnected or improperly connected	Repair or replace	—

9Y1210996ELS0001US0

## 2. SERVICING SPECIFICATIONS

Item		Factory Specification	Allowable Limit
Battery	Voltage	More than 12 V	—
	Potential Difference	Less than 0.1 V	—
	Charging Current	10 to 15A	—
	Charging Voltage	140 to 15A	—
	Dynamo speed	5200 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	—
Glow Plug	Resistance	Approx. 1.1 $\Omega$	—
Alternator	No-load Voltage	More than 14 V	—
• Stator	Resistance	Less than 0.1 $\Omega$	—
• Rotor	Resistance	2.9 $\Omega$	—
• Slip Ring	O.D.	14.4 mm 0.567 in.	14.0 mm 0.551 in.
• Brush	Length	10.5 mm 0.413 in.	8.4 mm 0.331 in.
Thermo Switch	Working Temperature	120 to 126 °C 24.80 to 258.8 °F	—
Starter			
• Commutator	O.D.	30.0 mm 1.181 in.	29.0 mm 1.142 in.
• Commutator	Difference of O.D.'s	Less than 0.02 mm 0.0008 in.	0.05 mm 0.0020 in.
• Mica	Undercut	0.50 to 0.80 mm 0.020 to 0.031 in.	0.2 mm 0.008 in.
• Brush	Length	14.0 mm 0.551 in.	9.0 mm 0.35 in.

9Y1210996ELS0002US0

### 3. TIGHTENING TORQUES

Tightening torques of screws, bolts and nuts on the table below are especially specified.  
(For general use screws, bolts and nuts: Refer to "5. TIGHTENING TORQUES" on page G-12.)

Item	N·m	kgf·m	lbf·ft
Starter motor <b>B</b> terminal nut	5.9 to 11	0.61 to 1.1	4.4 to 8.1
Pulley nut	58.4 to 78.9	5.95 to 8.05	43.1 to 58.2

9Y1210996ELS0003US0



## 4. CHECKING, DISASSEMBLING AND SERVICING

### [1] CHECKING AND ADJUSTING



#### CAUTION

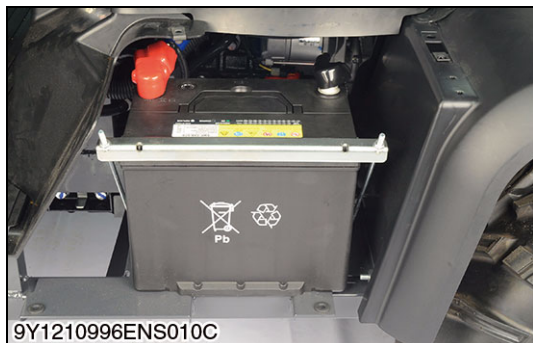
- To avoid accidental short circuit, be sure to attach the positive cable to the positive terminal before the negative cable is attached to the negative terminal.
- Never remove the battery cap while the engine is running.
- Keep electrolyte away from eyes, hands and clothes. If you are splattered with it, wash it away completely with water immediately.
- Keep open sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Hydrogen gas mixed with oxygen becomes very explosive.

#### IMPORTANT

- If the machine is to be operated for a short time without battery (using a slave battery for starting), use additional current (lights) while engine is running and insulate terminal of battery. If this advice is disregarded, damage to alternator and regulator may result.

9Y1210996ELS0004US0

### (1) Battery

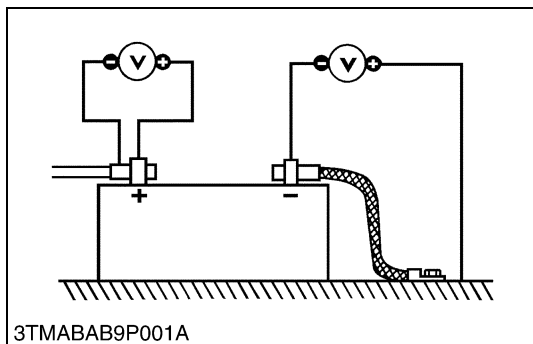


#### Battery Voltage

1. Stop the engine and turn the key switch off.
2. Connect the COM (-) lead of the voltmeter to the battery's negative terminal post and the (+) lead to the positive terminal post, and measure the battery voltage.
3. If the battery voltage is less than the factory specification, check the battery specific gravity and recharge the battery.

Battery voltage	Factory specification	More than 12 V
-----------------	-----------------------	----------------

9Y1210996ELS0005US0

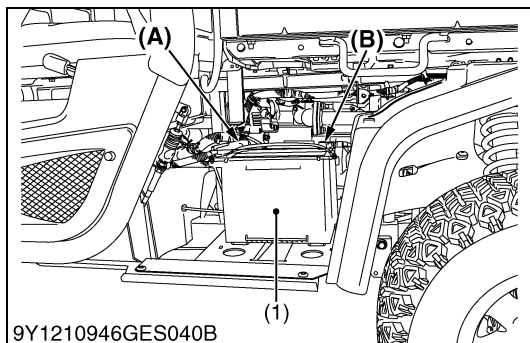


#### Battery Terminal Connection

1. Turn the key switch on, and turn on the head light.
2. Measure the voltage with a voltmeter across the battery's positive terminal post and the cable terminal, and the voltage across the battery's negative terminal post and the chassis.
3. If the measurement exceeds the factory specification, clean the battery terminal posts and cable clamps, and tighten them firmly.

Potential difference	Factory specification	Less than 0.1 V
----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------

9Y1210996ELS0006US0



### Battery Condition and Charging

#### ■ NOTE

- Follow the manufacture's instructions when you change battery or do maintenance.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Mishandling the battery shortens the service life and adds to maintenance costs.

The original battery is maintenance free, but needs some servicing.

If the battery is weak, the engine will be difficult to start and the lights will be dim. It is important to check the battery periodically.

- When exchanging an old battery for new one, use battery of equal specifications in table below.

Battery Type	Volts (V)	Reserve Capacity (min)	Cold Cranking Amps	Capacity at 20 hrs (A. H.)	Normal Charging Rate (A)
24R-670	12	140	670	115	11.5

(For non-accessible maintenance-free type batteries.)

Maintenance-free, non-accessible batteries are designed to eliminate the need to add water. Yet the volume of electrolyte above plates may eventually become depleted due to abnormal conditions such as high heat or improper regulator setting. Use a voltmeter to check the state of charge. (See reference chart below to determine if charging is necessary.)

Battery voltage	Reference state of charge
12.6	100 % (Full charge)
12.4	75 %
12.2	50 %
12.0	25 %
11.8	0 %

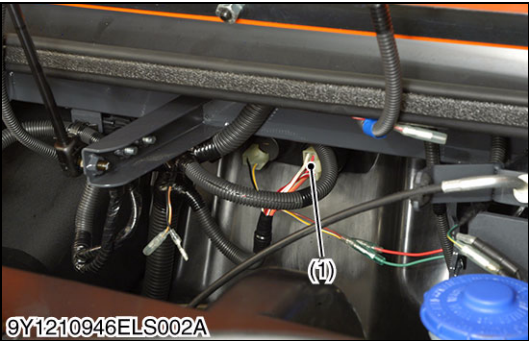
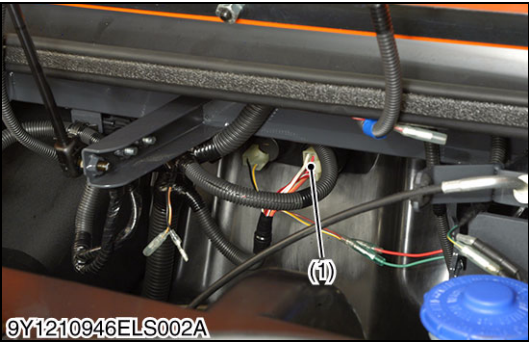
(1) Battery

(A) Positive Terminal

(B) Negative Terminal

9Y1210996ELS0007US0

(2) Key Switch



**Key Switch**

- 1. Disconnect the connector (1) and remove the key switch (2).
- 2. Perform the following checks.

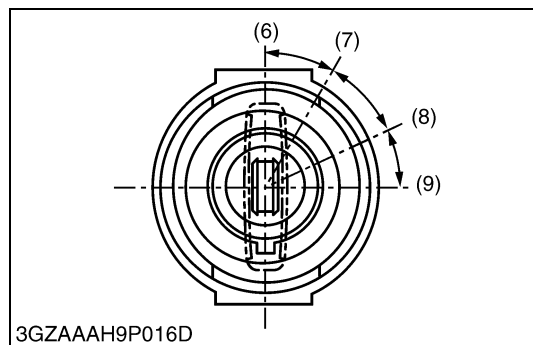
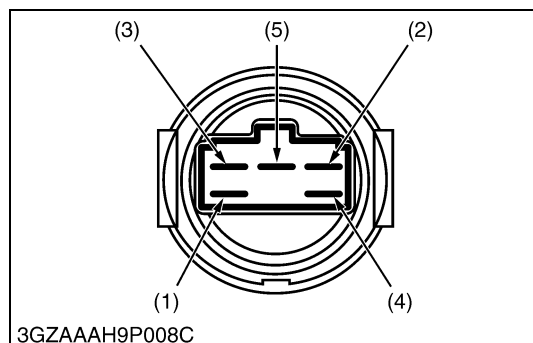
- (1) Connector
  - (2) Key Switch
- 9Y1210996ELS0008US0

**Connector Voltage**

- 1. Measure the voltage with a voltmeter across the connector **B** (red) terminal and chassis.
- 2. If the voltage differs from the battery voltage (11 to 14 V), the wiring harness is faulty.

Voltage	Connector <b>B</b> (Red) terminal – Chassis	Approx. battery voltage
---------	---	-------------------------

- (1) Connector
- 9Y1210996ELS0009US0



### Terminal Continuity

1. Remove the key switch from the instrument panel.
2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across terminals when the key switch is set at "OFF", "ON", "GLOW" and "START" position.
3. If the resistance values specified below are not indicated, the key switch is faulty.

#### 1) Key switch is set at "OFF" position

	B terminal	ACC terminal	M terminal	G terminal	ST terminal
B terminal	–	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity
ACC terminal	Infinity	–	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity
M terminal	Infinity	Infinity	–	Infinity	Infinity
G terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–	Infinity
ST terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–

#### 2) Key switch is set at "ON" position

	B terminal	ACC terminal	M terminal	G terminal	ST terminal
B terminal	–	Continuity	Continuity	Infinity	Infinity
ACC terminal	Continuity	–	Continuity	Infinity	Infinity
M terminal	Continuity	Continuity	–	Infinity	Infinity
G terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–	Infinity
ST terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–

#### 3) Key switch is set at "GLOW" position

	B terminal	ACC terminal	M terminal	G terminal	ST terminal
B terminal	–	Infinity	Continuity	Continuity	Infinity
ACC terminal	Infinity	–	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity
M terminal	Continuity	Infinity	–	Continuity	Infinity
G terminal	Continuity	Infinity	Continuity	–	Infinity
ST terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–

#### 4) Key switch is set at "START" position

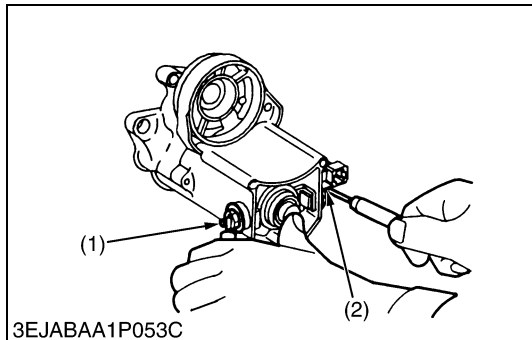
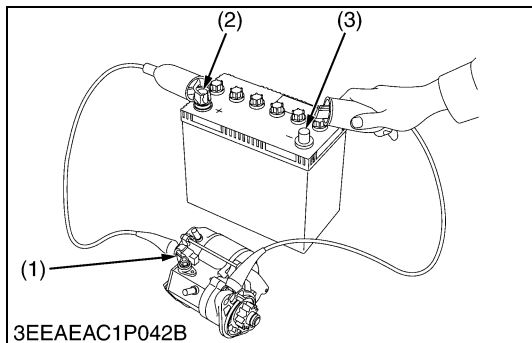
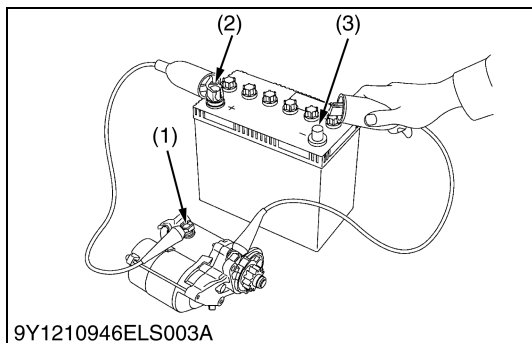
	B terminal	ACC terminal	M terminal	G terminal	ST terminal
B terminal	–	Infinity	Continuity	Infinity	Continuity
ACC terminal	Infinity	–	Continuity	Infinity	Infinity
M terminal	Continuity	Continuity	–	Infinity	Continuity
G terminal	Infinity	Infinity	Infinity	–	Continuity
ST terminal	Continuity	Infinity	Continuity	Continuity	–

- (1) B Terminal
- (2) ACC Terminal
- (3) M Terminal
- (4) G Terminal
- (5) ST Terminal

- (6) OFF Position
- (7) ON Position
- (8) GLOW Position
- (9) START Position

9Y1210996ELS0010US0

### (3) Starter



#### Motor Test



#### CAUTION

- **Secure the starter to prevent it from jumping up and down while testing the motor.**

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable from the battery.
2. Disconnect the battery positive cable from the battery.
3. Disconnect the leads from the starter **B** terminal.
4. Remove the starter from the engine.
5. Connect a jumper lead from the starter **C** terminal (1) to the battery positive terminal (2).
6. Connect a jumper lead momentarily between the starter's body and the battery negative terminal (3).
7. If the motor does not run, starter is failure. Repair or replace the starter.

#### NOTE

- **B terminal:** It is the terminal which connects the cable from the battery to the starter.
- **C terminal:** It is the terminal which connects the cable from the motor to the magnet switch.

(1) C Terminal

(3) Negative Terminal

(2) Positive Terminal

9Y1210996ELS0011US0

#### Magnetic Switch Test

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable from the battery.
2. Disconnect the battery positive cable from the battery.
3. Disconnect the leads from the starter **B** terminal.
4. Remove the starter from the engine.
5. Connect a jumper lead from the starter **S** terminal (1) to the battery positive terminal (2).
6. Connect a jumper lead momentarily between the starter's body and the battery negative terminal (3).
7. If the pinion gear does not pop out, the magnetic switch is failure. Repair or replace the starter.

#### NOTE

- **B terminal:** It is the terminal which connects the cable from the battery to the starter.
- **S terminal:** It is the terminal which connects the cable from the starter switch to the magnet switch.

(1) S Terminal

(3) Negative Terminal

(2) Positive Terminal

9Y1210996ELS0012US0

#### Magnet Switch Continuity Test

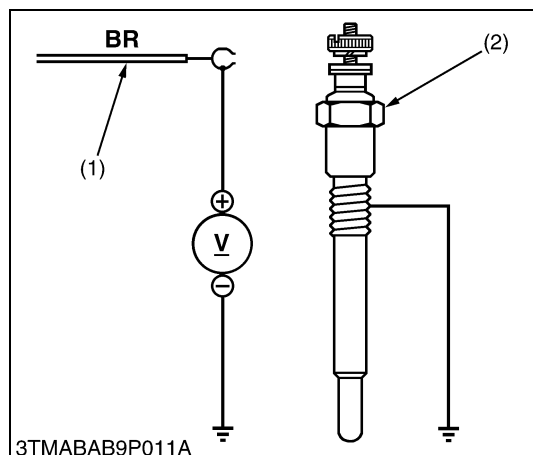
1. Check the continuity across the **C** terminal (1) and the **B** terminal (2) with a circuit tester, pushing in the plunger.
2. If not continuous or if a certain value is indicated, replace the magnet switch.

(1) C Terminal

(2) B Terminal

9Y1210996ELS0013US0

## (4) Glow Plug



### Lead Terminal Voltage

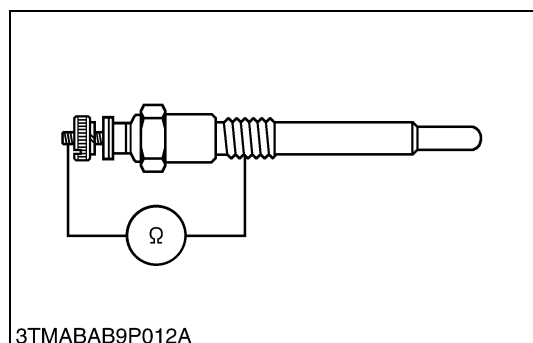
1. Disconnect the wiring lead (1) from the glow plug (2) after turning the key switch off.
2. Turn the key switch key to the **"PREHEAT"** position, and measure the voltage between the lead terminal and the chassis.
3. Turn the key switch key to the **"START"** position, and measure the voltage with a voltmeter between the lead terminal and the chassis.
4. If the voltage at either position differs from the battery voltage, the wiring harness or key switch is faulty.

Voltage (Lead terminal – Chassis)	Key switch key at <b>"PREHEAT"</b>	Approx. battery voltage
	Key switch key at <b>"START"</b>	Approx. battery voltage

(1) Wiring Lead (Positive)

(2) Glow Plug

9Y1210996ELS0014US0



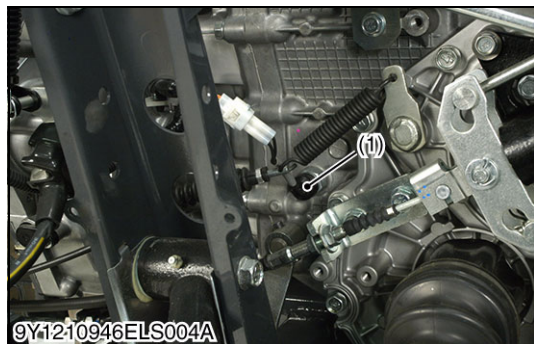
### Glow Plug Continuity

1. Disconnect the lead from the glow plugs.
2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter between the glow plug terminal and the chassis.
3. If 0 ohm is indicated, the screw at the tip of the glow plug and the housing are short-circuited.
4. If the factory specification is not indicated, glow plug resistance the glow plug is faulty.

Glow plug resistance	Factory specification	Approx. 1.1 Ω
----------------------	-----------------------	---------------

9Y1210996ELS0015US0

## (5) Safety Switch



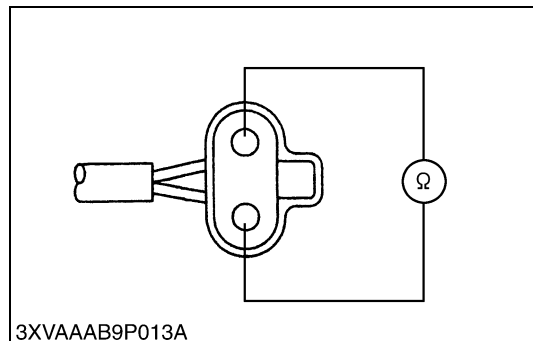
### Safety Switch (Neutral Switch) Continuity

1. Remove the safety switch leads.
2. Connect the circuit tester to the safety switch leads.
3. Measure the resistance between leads.
4. If the safety switch is problem, replace it.

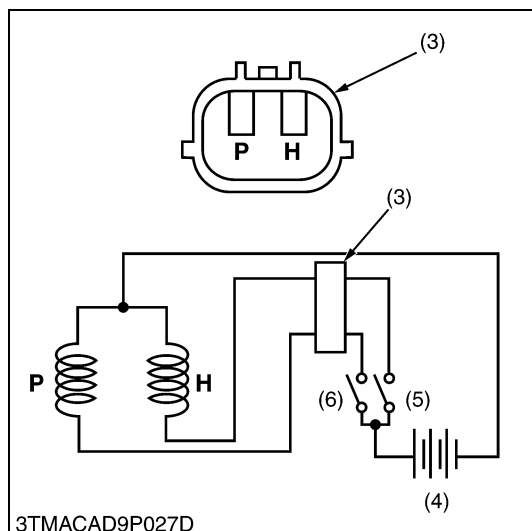
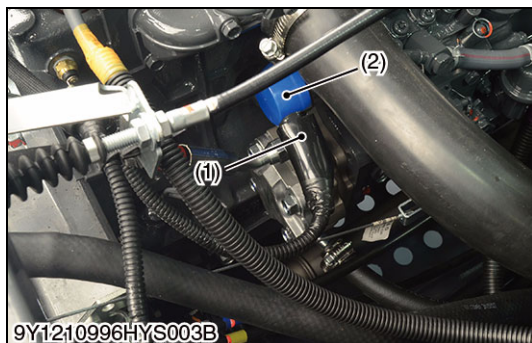
Resistance (Across switch terminal)	Except the neutral position	Infinity
	Neutral position	Continuity

(1) Safety Switch for Main Shift Lever

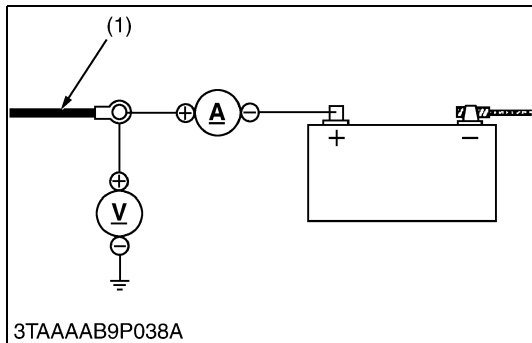
9Y1210996ELS0016US0



## (6) Engine Stop Solenoid



## (7) Charging System



### Engine Stop Solenoid

1. Disconnect the **2P** connector (1) from the engine stop solenoid (2).
2. Remove the engine stop solenoid (2) from the engine.
3. Connect the jumper leads from the pulling coil **P** terminal to the switch (5), and from switch (5) to the battery positive terminal.
4. Connect the jumper leads from the holding coil **H** terminal to the switch (6), and from switch (6) to the battery positive terminal.
5. Connect the jumper leads from the engine stop solenoid body to the battery negative terminal.
6. When switch (6) is turn on, the plunger pulls into the solenoid body and then turn off the switch (6), the plunger comes out.
7. Turn on the switch (5) then turn on the switch (6), the plunger pulls into the solenoid body and it keeps in holding position after turning off the switch (6).
8. If the plunger is not attracted, the engine stop solenoid is faulty.

### ■ IMPORTANT

- **Never apply the current for pulling coil more than two seconds when inspecting.**

- (1) **2P** Connector  
 (2) Engine Stop Solenoid  
 (3) Connector (of Engine Stop Solenoid)  
 (4) Battery

- (5) Switch for Holding Coil  
 (6) Switch for Pulling Coil

**P:** Terminal for Pulling Coil  
**H:** Terminal for Holding Coil

9Y1210996ELS0017US0

### Battery Charging Current

1. After starting the engine, disconnect the battery positive cord (+), and connect an ammeter and voltmeter. Then switch on all electrical loads (such as head lights) and measure the charging current.

### ■ NOTE

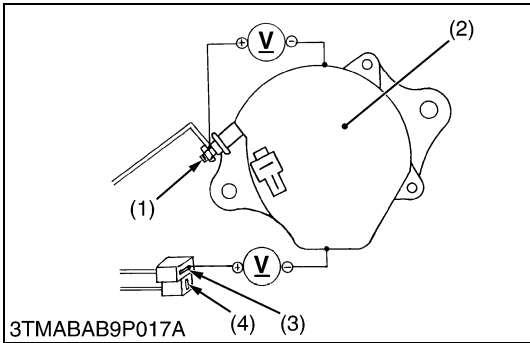
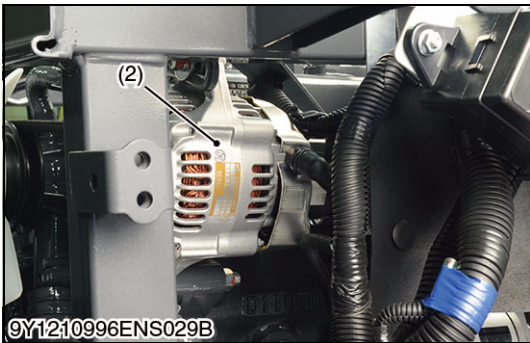
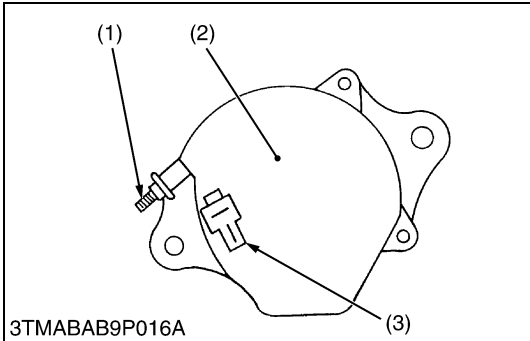
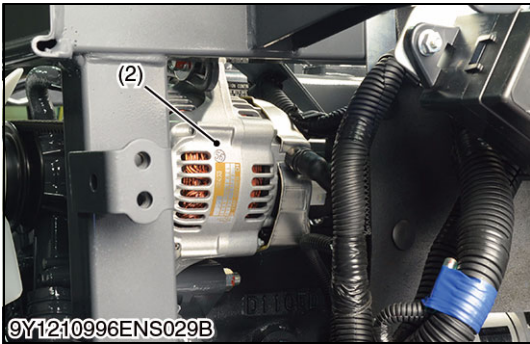
- **Connect an ammeter only after starting the engine.**
- **When the electrical loads is considerably low or the battery is fully charged, the specified reading may not be obtained.**

Current	Factory specification	14 to 15A
Voltage		14 to 15A
Dynamo speed		5200 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)

- (1) Battery Positive Cord

9Y1210996ELS0020US0





**Alternator**

- 1. Disconnect the **2P** connector (3) from alternator after turning the key switch **OFF**.
- 2. Perform the following checkings.

- (1) **B** Terminal
- (2) Alternator
- (3) **2P** Connector

9Y1210996ELS0021US0

**Connector Voltage**

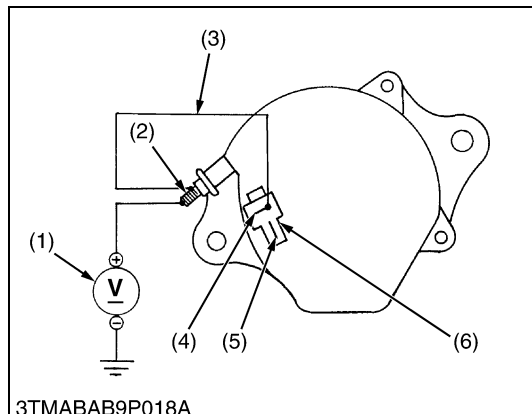
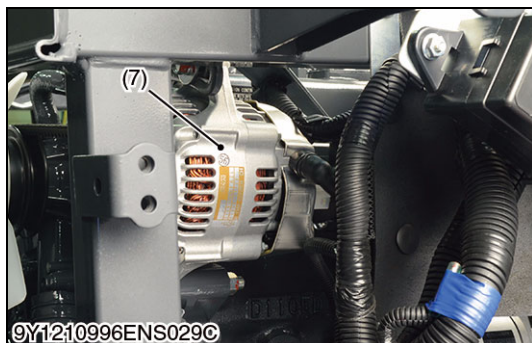
- 1. Turn the key switch **OFF**. Measure the voltage between the **B** terminal (1) and the chassis.
- 2. Turn the key switch **ON**. Measure the voltage between the **IG** terminal (3) and the chassis.

Voltage (Key switch at <b>OFF</b> )	<b>B</b> Terminal – Chassis	Approx. battery voltage
Voltage (Key switch at <b>ON</b> )	<b>IG</b> Terminal – Chassis	Approx. battery voltage

- (1) **B** Terminal
- (2) Alternator
- (3) **IG** Terminal
- (4) **L** Terminal

9Y1210996ELS0022US0





### No-Load Test

1. Connect the **2P** connector (6) to previous positions of the alternator after turning the key switch **OFF**.
2. Connect the jumper lead (3) between **IG** terminal (4) and **B** terminal (2).
3. Start the engine and then set at idling speed.
4. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
5. Measure the voltage between the **B** terminal (2) and the chassis.
6. If the measurement is less than the factory specification, disassemble the alternator and check the IC regulator.

Voltage	Factory specification	More than 14 V
---------	-----------------------	----------------

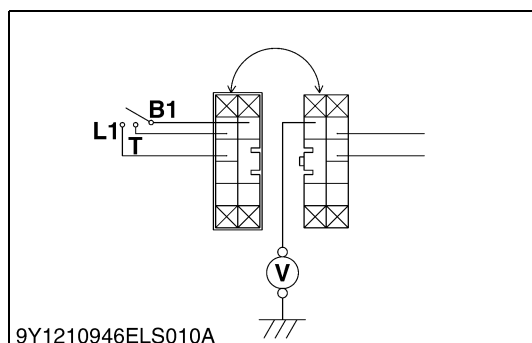
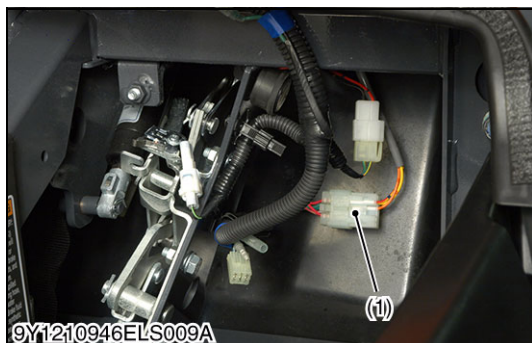
### (Reference)

- Once the engine has started, the alternator temperature rises quickly up to an ambient temperature of 70 to 90 °C (158 to 194 °F). As the temperature goes higher than 50 °C (122 °F), the alternator voltage slowly drops; at higher than 100 °C (212 °F), it drops by about 1 V.

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (1) Voltmeter   | (5) L Terminal   |
| (2) B Terminal  | (6) 2P Connector |
| (3) Jumper Lead | (7) Alternator   |
| (4) IG Terminal |                  |

9Y1210996ELS0023US0

## (8) Lighting System



### Light Switch

1. Disconnect the connector (1) and remove the light switch (2).
2. Remove the light switch (2) and perform the following checks **1)**, **2)**, **3)**.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| (1) Connector | (2) Light Switch |
|---------------|------------------|

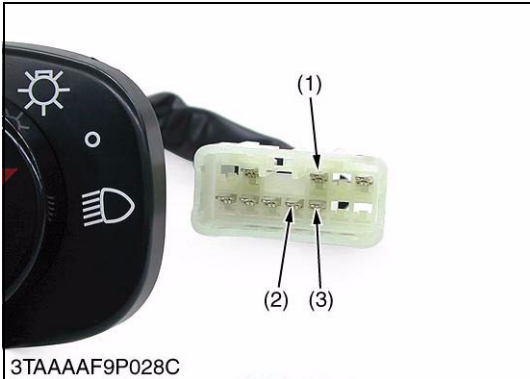
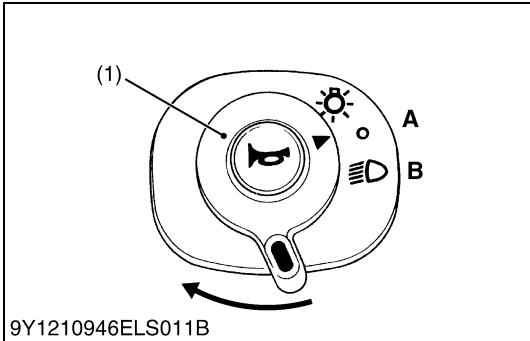
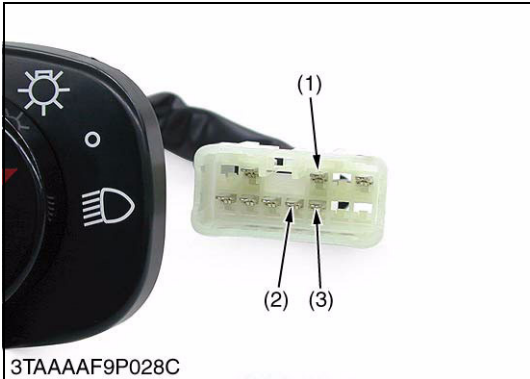
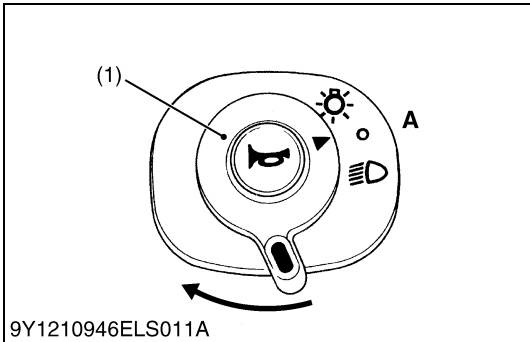
9Y1210996ELS0024US0

### 1) Connector Voltage

1. Connect the light switch connector to the main wire harness.
2. Measure the voltage with a voltmeter across the connector **B1** terminal and chassis when the key switch is **ON** position.
3. If the voltage differs from the battery voltage, the wiring harness and key switch is faulty.

Voltage	B1 terminal – Chassis	Battery voltage
---------	-----------------------	-----------------

9Y1210996ELS0025US0



**2) Head Light Switch Continuity when Setting Switch at "OFF" Position**

- 1. Set the light switch to the **OFF** position.
- 2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the red / yellow lead (1) to the orange lead (3), the red / yellow lead (1) to the yellow lead (2).
- 3. If infinity is not indicated, the head light switch is faulty.

Resistance (Switch at <b>OFF</b> position)	Red / Yellow lead (1) – Orange lead (3)	Infinity
	Red / Yellow lead (1) – Yellow lead (2)	

(1) Red / Yellow Lead  
(2) Yellow Lead  
(3) Orange Lead

**A: Head Light "OFF" Position**

9Y1210996ELS0026US0

**3) Head Light Switch Continuity when Setting Switch at "ON" Position**

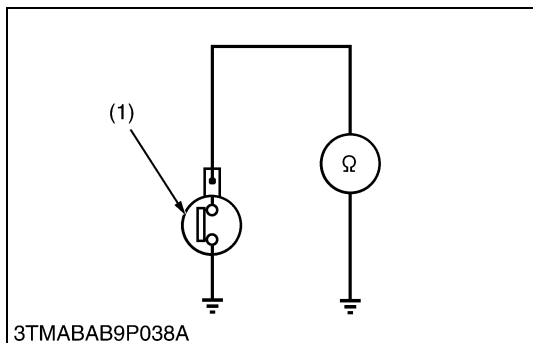
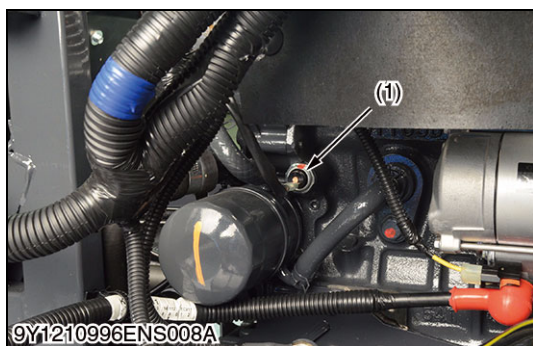
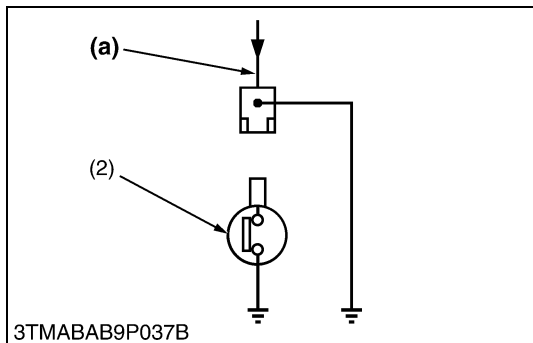
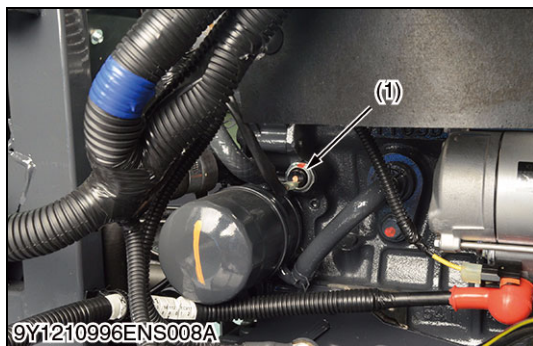
- 1. Set the light switch to the **ON** position.
- 2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the red / yellow lead (1) to the orange lead (3) and the red / yellow lead (1) to the yellow lead (2).
- 3. If infinity is not indicated, the head light switch is faulty.

Resistance (Switch at <b>ON</b> position)	Red / Yellow lead (1) – Orange lead (3)	Continuity
	Red / Yellow lead (1) – Yellow lead (2)	

(1) Red / Yellow Lead  
(2) Yellow Lead  
(3) Orange Lead

**A: Head Light "OFF" Position**  
**B: Head Light "ON" Position**

9Y1210996ELS0027US0



### Engine Oil Pressure Lamp

1. Disconnect the wiring lead (2) from the engine oil pressure switch after turning the key switch **OFF**.
2. Turn the key switch **ON** and connect a jumper lead from the lead to the chassis.
3. If the engine oil pressure indicator lamp does not light, the wiring harness is faulty.

(1) Engine Oil Pressure Switch

(a) From Oil Pressure Lamp

(2) Wiring Lead

9Y1210996ELS0028US0

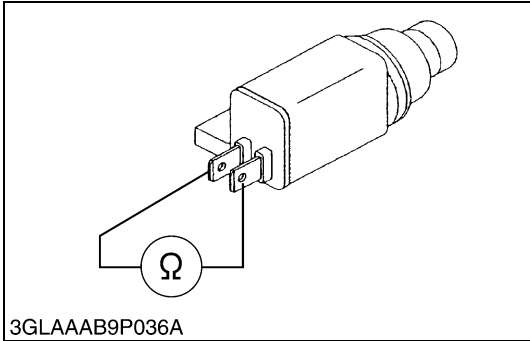
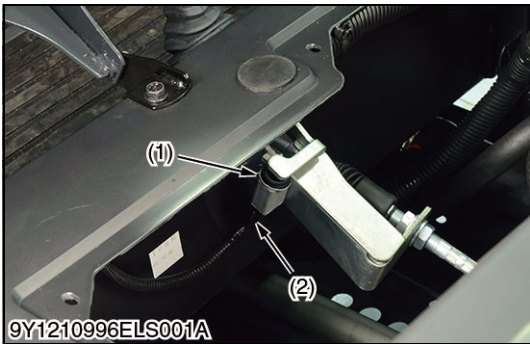
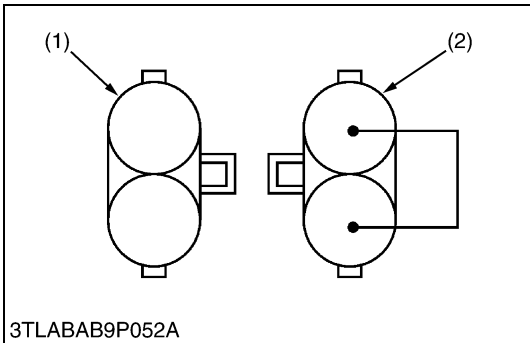
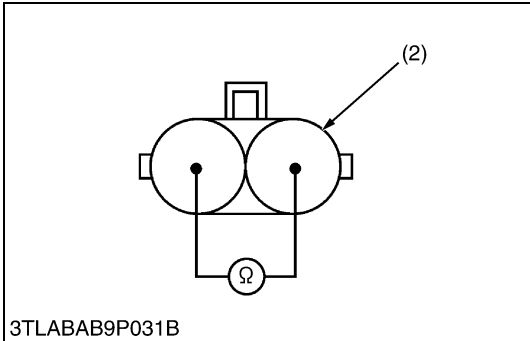
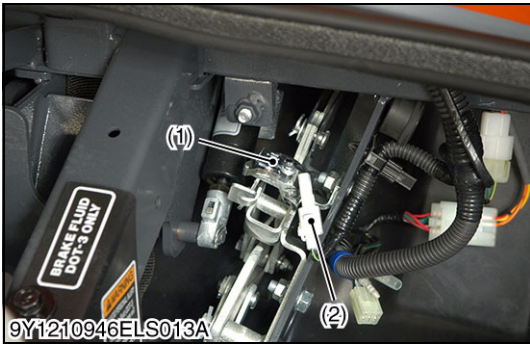
### Engine Oil Pressure Switch Continuity

1. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the switch terminal and the chassis.
2. If 0 ohm is not indicated in the normal state, the switch is faulty.
3. If infinity is not indicated at pressure over 49 kPa (0.50 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 7.1 psi), the switch is faulty.

Resistance (Switch terminal – Chassis)	In normal state	Continuity
Voltage	At pressure over approx. 49 kPa (0.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 7.1 psi)	Infinity

(1) Engine Oil Pressure Switch

9Y1210996ELS0029US0



**Parking Brake Switch Continuity**

- 1. Disconnect the connector from the parking brake switch (1) after turning the key switch "OFF".
- 2. Measure the resistance across the two terminals.
- 3. If continuity is not indicated, the switch is faulty.

Resistance (Across switch terminals)	In normal state	Continuity
--	-----------------	------------

(1) Parking Brake Switch (2) Connector of Parking Brake Switch  
9Y1210996ELS0030US0

**Parking Brake Switch Panel and Wiring Harness**

- 1. Disconnect the connector from the parking brake switch after turning the key switch "OFF".
- 2. Turn the key switch "ON" and connect a jumper lead between the connector terminals of wiring harness.
- 3. If the parking brake indicator lamp does not light, the panel circuit or wiring harness is faulty.

(1) Connector of Parking Brake Switch (2) Connector of Wiring Harness  
9Y1210996ELS0031US0

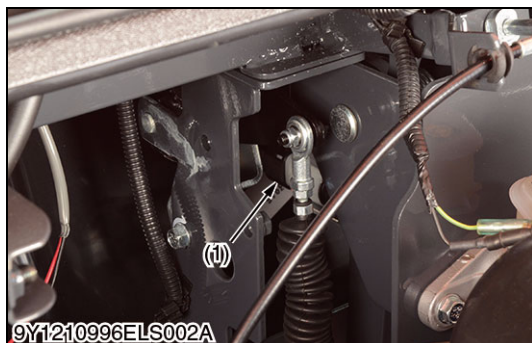
**4WD Switch Continuity**

- 1. Remove the side cover.
- 2. Disconnect the connector (2).
- 3. Connect the circuit tester to the 4WD switch leads.
- 4. Measure the resistance between leads.
- 5. If the 4WD switch (1) is problem, replace it.

Resistance (Across switch terminal)	When switch is pushed	Infinity
	When switch is released	Continuity

(1) 4WD Switch (2) Connector  
9Y1210996ELS0032US0





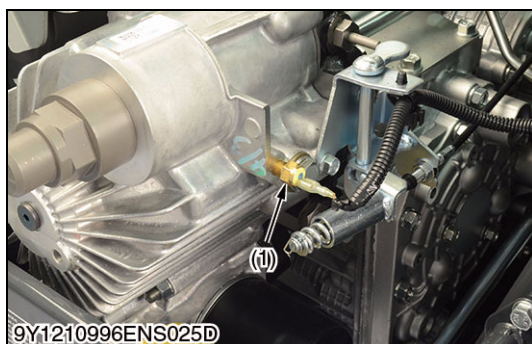
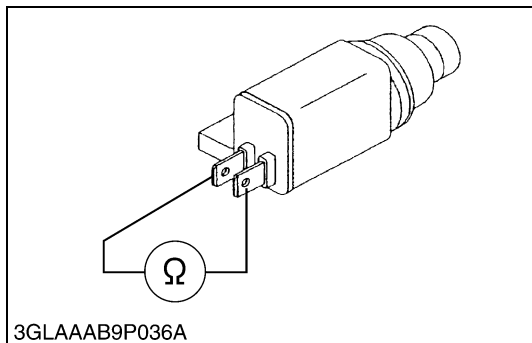
### Brake Lamp Switch Continuity

1. Remove the brake lamp switch leads.
2. Connect the circuit tester to the brake lamp switch leads.
3. Measure the resistance between leads.
4. If the safety switch is problem, replace it.

Resistance	When switch is pushed	Infinity
	When switch is released	Continuity

(1) Brake Switch

9Y1210996ELS0033US0



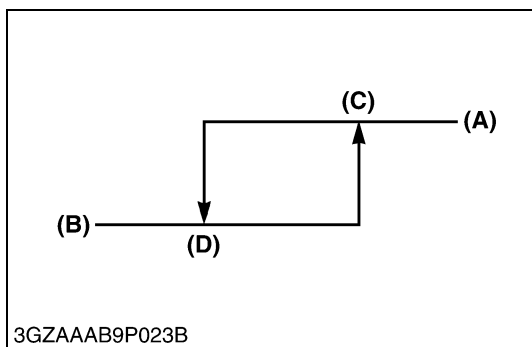
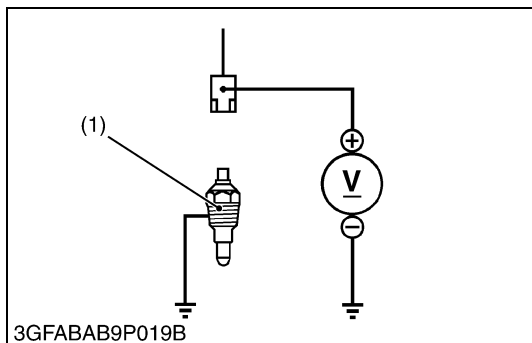
### Oil Temperature Alarm Switch Connector Voltage

1. Disconnect the **1P** connector from the oil temperature alarm switch (1).
2. Turn the key switch to the **ON** position, and measure the voltage with a voltmeter between the connector terminal and the chassis.
3. If no voltage is indicated, the wiring harness is faulty.

Voltage (Connector terminal – Chassis)	Factory specification	Positive voltage
--	-----------------------	------------------

(1) Oil Temperature Alarm Switch

9Y1210996ELS0034US0



### Thermo Switch Continuity

1. Disconnect the **1P** connector, and remove the thermo switch.
2. Using an ohmmeter, check for continuity between the switch terminal and the chassis.
3. If infinity is indicated at temperature over between specifications, the switch is faulty.

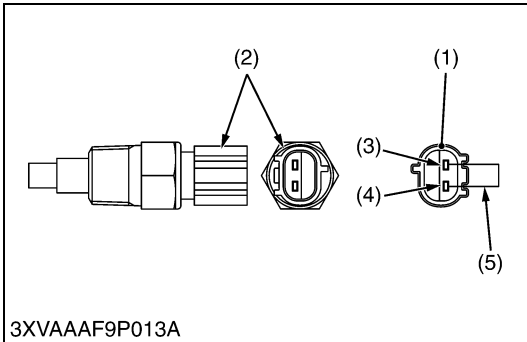
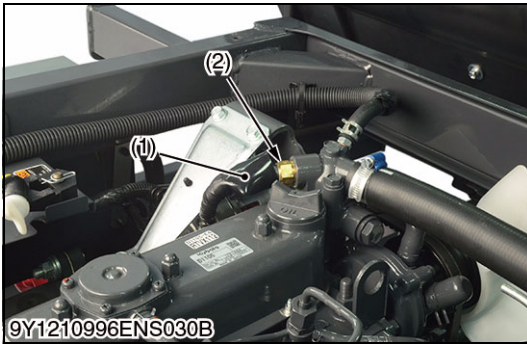
Working temperature	Factory specification	120 to 126 °C 24.80 to 258.8 °F
---------------------	-----------------------	------------------------------------

(A) ON  
(B) OFF

(C) 120 to 126 °C (248.0 to 258.8 °F)  
(D) 116 °C (240.8 °F) or more

9Y1210996ELS0035US0

## (9) Cooling System

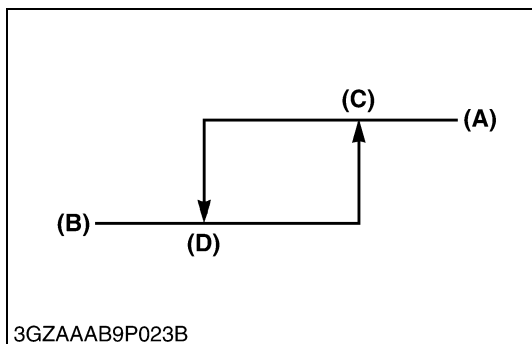
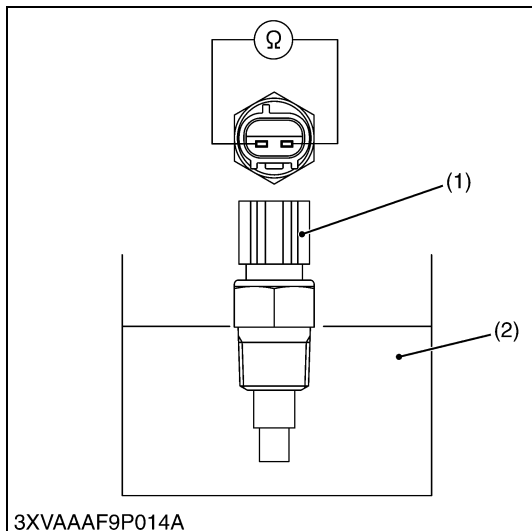
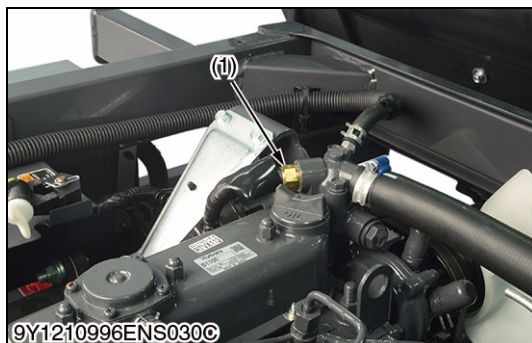


### Radiator Fan Motor Wiring Harness

1. Disconnect the **2P** connector (1) from the radiator fan motor switch (2) after turning the key switch **OFF**.
2. Turn the key switch **ON** and connect a jumper lead (5) from the connector terminal **1** (3) to the connector terminal **2** (4).
3. If the fan motor does not rotate, wiring harness or fan motor relay is faulty.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) <b>2P</b> Connector                                 | (4) Connector Terminal <b>2</b> (to Grand) |
| (2) Radiator Fan Motor Switch                           | (5) Jumper Lead                            |
| (3) Connector Terminal <b>1</b><br>(to Fan Motor Relay) |  |

9Y1210996ELS0036US0



### Radiator Fan Motor Switch

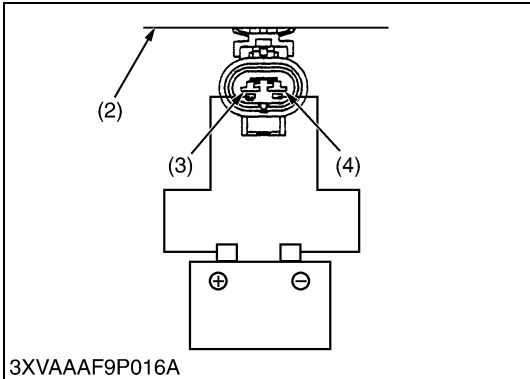
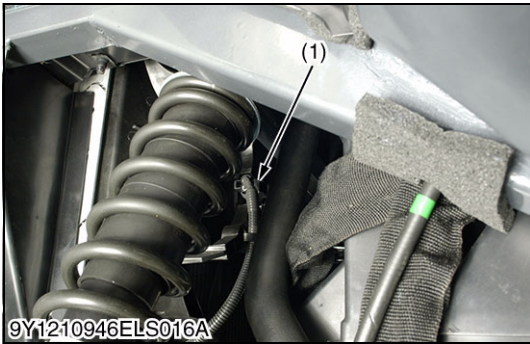
1. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the switch terminals.
2. If infinity is not indicated when the coolant temperature is lower than 83 °C (181 °F), the switch is faulty.
3. If 0 ohms is not indicated when the coolant temperature is higher than 87 to 93 °C (189 to 199 °F), the switch is faulty.

Resistance	At coolant temperature lower than 83 °C (181 °F)	Infinity
	At coolant temperature more than 87 to 93 °C (189 to 199 °F)	Continuity

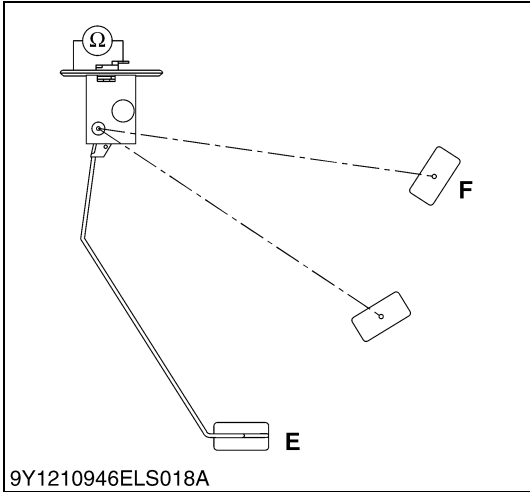
- (1) Radiator Fan Motor Switch  
(2) Coolant

- (A) ON  
(B) OFF  
(C) 87 to 93 °C (189 to 199 °F)  
(D) 83 °C (181 °F)

9Y1210996ELS0037US0



(10) Gauges



**Radiator Fan Motor**

- 1. Disconnect the **2P** connector (1) of fan motor after turning the key switch **OFF**.
- 2. Connect a jumper lead from the **1** terminal (3) to the battery positive terminal post.
- 3. Connect a jumper lead momentarily between the **2** terminal (4) and the battery negative terminal post.
- 4. If the fan motor does not run, replace it.

- (1) 2P Connector

(2) Radiator
- (3) 1 Terminal (Positive Side)

(4) 2 Terminal (Negative Side)
- 9Y1210996ELS0038US0

**Fuel Level Sensor**

**1) Sensor Continuity**

- 1. Remove the fuel level sensor from the fuel tank.
- 2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the sensor terminal and its body.
- 3. If the reference value are not indicated, the sensor is faulty.

Resistance (Sensor terminal – its body)	Reference value	Float at upper-most position	1 to 5 Ω
		Float at lower - most position	103 to 117 Ω

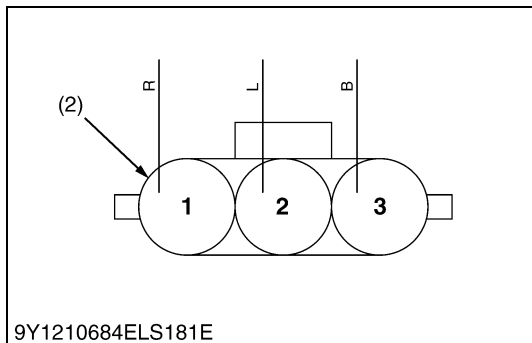
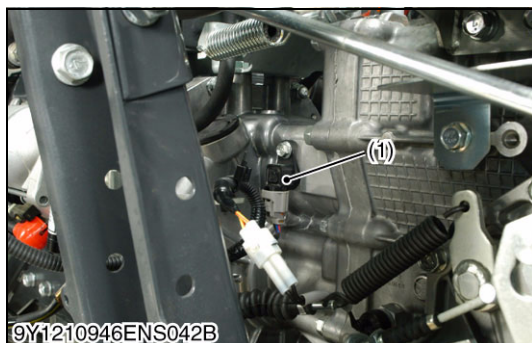
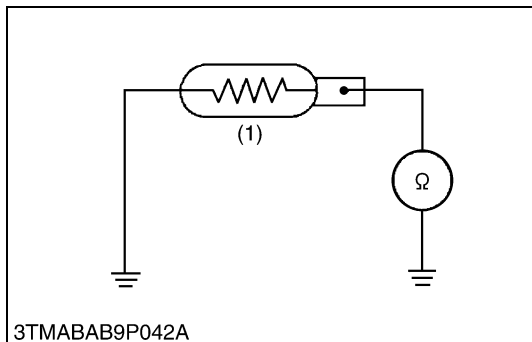
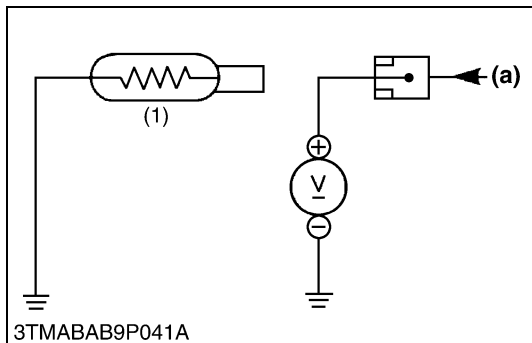
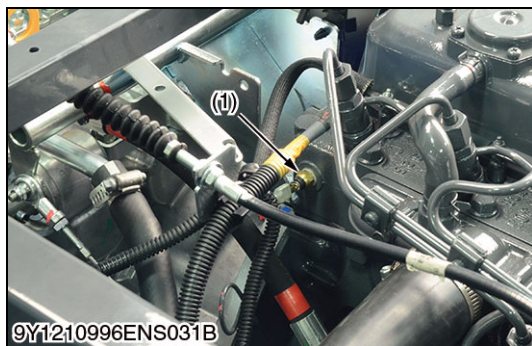
- (1) Fuel Level Sensor

E: Empty

F: Full

9Y1210996ELS0039US0





## Engine Water Temperature Sensor

### 1) Lead Terminal Voltage

1. Disconnect the lead from the engine water temperature sensor after turning the key switch **OFF**.
2. Turn the key switch **ON** and measure the voltage with a voltmeter across the lead terminal and the chassis. If the voltage differs from the battery voltage, the wiring harness, fuse or coolant temperature gauge is faulty.

Voltage	Lead terminal – Chassis	Approx. battery voltage
---------	-------------------------	-------------------------

### 2) Sensor Continuity

1. Measure the resistances with an ohmmeter across the sensor terminal and the chassis.
2. If the reference value is not indicated, the sensor is faulty.

Resistance (Sensor terminal – Chassis)	Reference value	Approx. 16.1 Ω at 120 °C (248 °F)
		Approx. 27.4 Ω at 100 °C (212 °F)
		Approx. 51.9 Ω at 80 °C (176 °F)
		Approx. 153.9 Ω at 50 °C (122 °F)

(1) Engine Water Temperature Sensor (a) From Temperature Gauge

9Y1210996ELS0040US0

## Traveling Speed Sensor Connector Voltage

### ■ NOTE

- Since it is not possible to do unit checking for this sensor, judge the sensor is faulty if the relating electric circuit is normal.
1. Disconnect the connector, and turn the main key switch "ON" position.
  2. Measure the voltage with a voltmeter across the terminals shown in the table below.
  3. If the reference value is not indicated as shown in the table below, check the relating electric circuit.

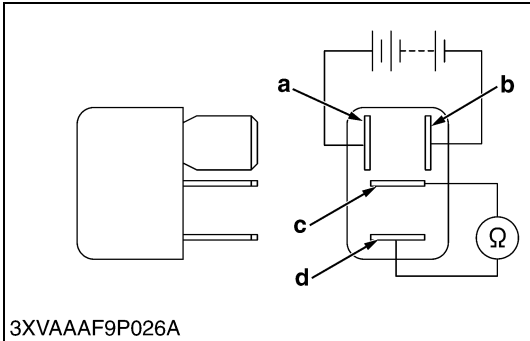
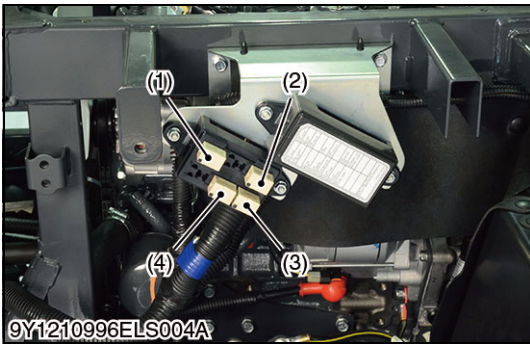
Voltage	Key switch at "ON"	Terminal 1 – Chassis	Approx. battery voltage
		Terminal 2 – Chassis	Approx. 5 V

(1) Traveling Speed Sensor

(2) Connector (Harness Side)

9Y1210996ELS0041US0

(11) Relays



Relay

1. Turn the key switch **OFF**.
2. Raise the seat.
3. Remove the relay which should be checked.
4. Connect the jumper load across the battery positive terminal to relay terminal **1 "a"**, and the battery negative terminal to relay terminal **2 "b"**.
5. Check the continuity with an ohmmeter between the relay terminal **5 "c"** and relay terminal **3 "d"**.
6. If there is continuity, the relay is proper.

- (1) Temperature Meter Relay

(2) Radiator Fan Relay

(3) Starter Relay

(4) Engine Stop Solenoid Relay
- a: **Relay Terminal 1**

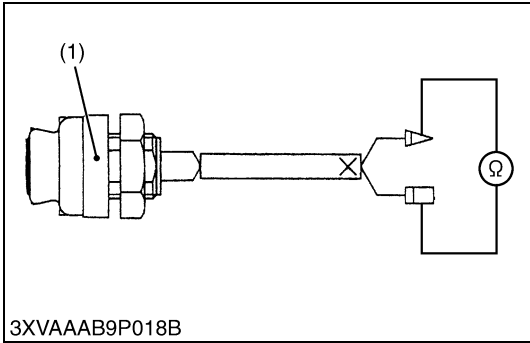
b: **Relay Terminal 2**

c: **Relay Terminal 5**

d: **Relay Terminal 3**

9Y1210996ELS0042US0

(12) Others



Horn Switch Continuity

1. Disconnect the wiring leads from horn switch and remove it.
2. Measure the resistance with an ohmmeter across the horn switch terminals in each position.
3. If the resistance differs from the factory specifications, the horn switch is faulty.

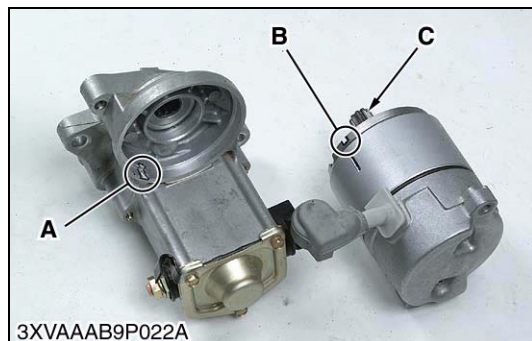
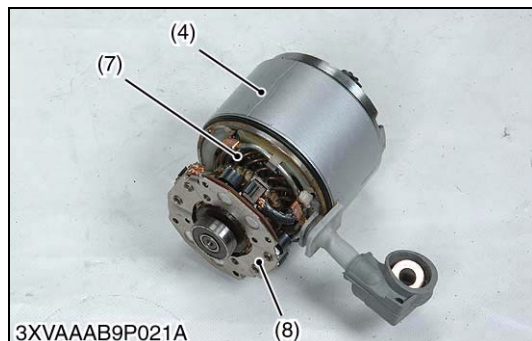
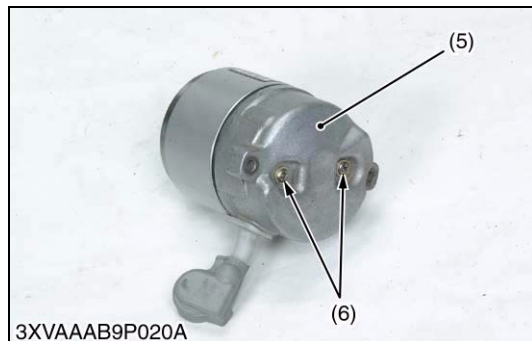
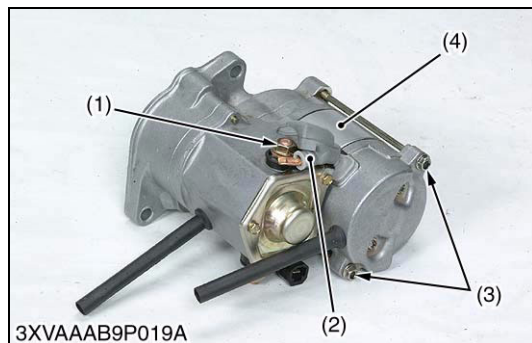
Resistance	OFF	Infinity
	ON	Continuity

- (1) Horn Switch

9Y1210996ELS0043US0

## [2] DISASSEMBLING AND ASSEMBLING

### (1) Starter



#### Motor

1. Remove the **B** terminal nut (1), and disconnect the connecting lead (2) from the magnet switch.
2. Remove the motor through screws (3), and then remove the yoke (4).
3. Remove the end frame screws (6) and then remove the end frame (5).
4. Separate the armature (7), the brush holder (8) from the yoke (4).

#### (When reassembling)

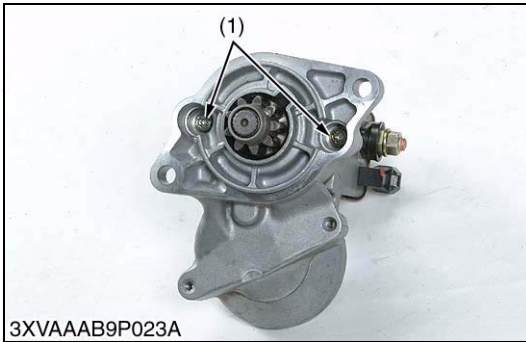
- Apply grease to the spline teeth "**C**" of the armature (7).
- Fit the projection "**B**" on the yoke into the notch "**A**" in the magnet switch.

Tightening torque	Starter motor <b>B</b> terminal nut	5.9 to 11 N·m 0.61 to 1.1 kgf·m 4.4 to 8.1 lbf·ft
-------------------	-------------------------------------	---

- (1) **B** Terminal Nut
- (2) Connecting Lead
- (3) Motor Through Screw
- (4) Yoke
- (5) End Frame
- (6) End Frame Screw
- (7) Armature
- (8) Brush Holder

- A:** Notch  
**B:** Projection  
**C:** Spline Teeth

9Y1210996ELS0044US0



### **Magnet Switch**

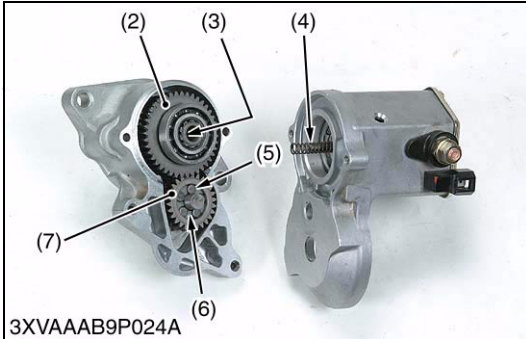
1. Remove the drive end frame mounting screws (1).
2. Remove the overrunning clutch (2), steel ball (3), spring (4), idle gear (7), rollers (5) and retainer (6).

#### **(When reassembling)**

- Apply grease the gear teeth of the idle gear (7) and the overrunning clutch (2), and the steel ball (3).

- |                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| (1) Drive End Frame Mounting Screw | (5) Roller    |
| (2) Overrunning Clutch             | (6) Retainer  |
| (3) Steel Ball                     | (7) Idle Gear |
| (4) Spring                         |               |

9Y1210996ELS0045US0

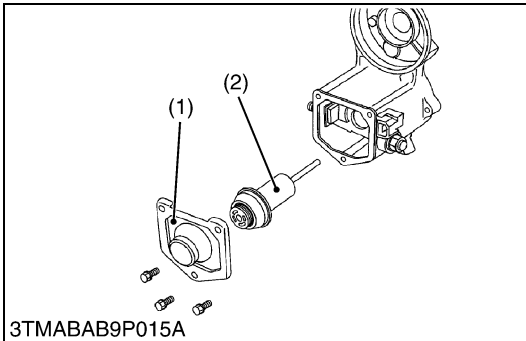


### **Plunger**

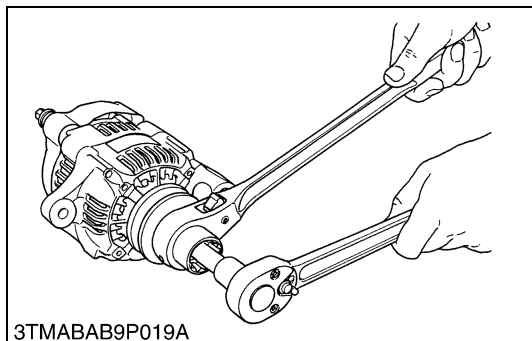
1. Remove the end cover (1).
2. Remove the plunger (2).

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| (1) End Cover | (2) Plunger |
|---------------|-------------|

9Y1210996ELS0046US0



## (2) Alternator



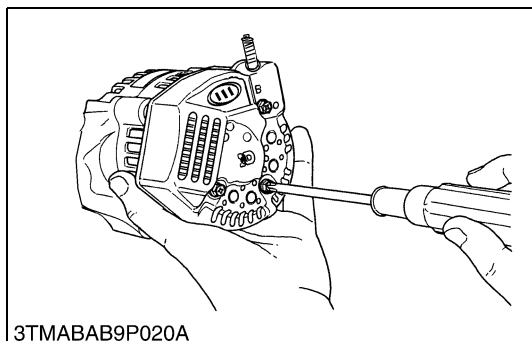
### Pulley

1. Secure the hexagonal end of the pulley shaft with a double-ended ratchet wrench as shown in the figure.
2. Loosen the pulley nut with a socket wrench and remove it.

**(When reassembling)**

Tightening torque	Pulley nut	58.4 to 78.9 N·m 5.95 to 8.05 kgf·m 43.1 to 58.2 lbf·ft
-------------------	------------	---

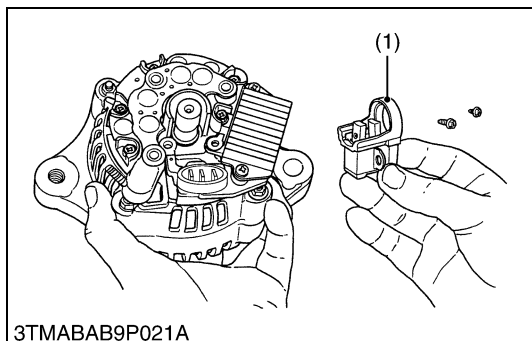
WSM000001ELS0023US0



### Rear End Cover

1. Remove the three rear end cover screws and the **B** terminal nut, and remove the rear end cover.

WSM000001ELS0024US0

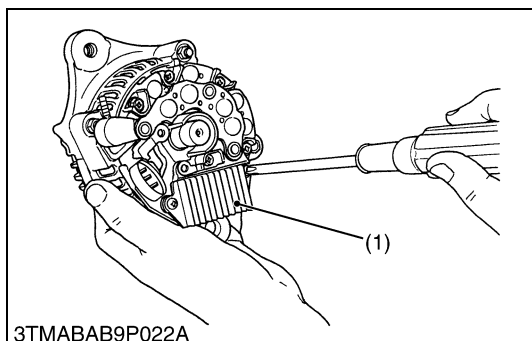


### Brush Holder

1. Remove the two screws holding the brush holder, and remove the brush holder (1).

(1) Brush Holder

WSM000001ELS0025US0

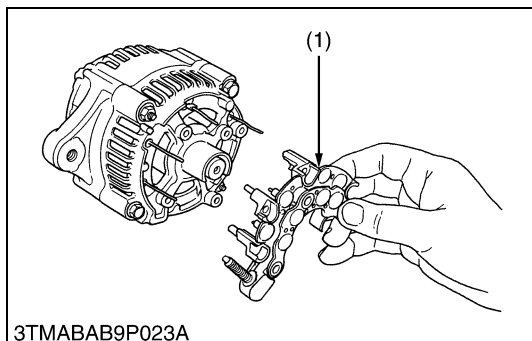


### IC Regulator

1. Remove the three screws holding the IC regulator, and remove the IC regulator (1).

(1) IC Regulator

WSM000001ELS0026US0

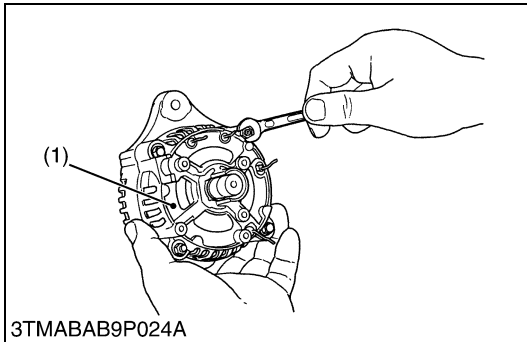


### Rectifier

1. Remove the four screws holding the rectifier and the stator lead wires.
2. Remove the rectifier (1).

(1) Rectifier

WSM000001ELS0027US0

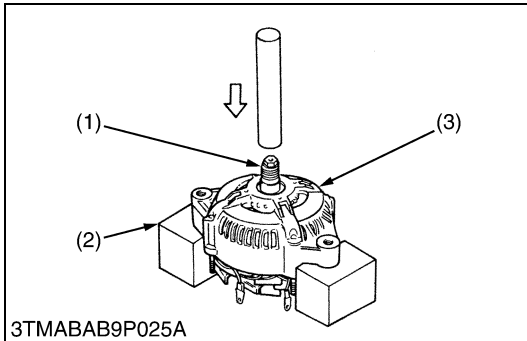


### Rear End Frame

1. Remove the two nuts and two screws holding the drive end frame and the rear end frame.
2. Remove the rear end frame (1).

(1) Rear End Frame

WSM000001ELS0028US0



### Rotor

1. Press out the rotor (1) from drive end frame (3).

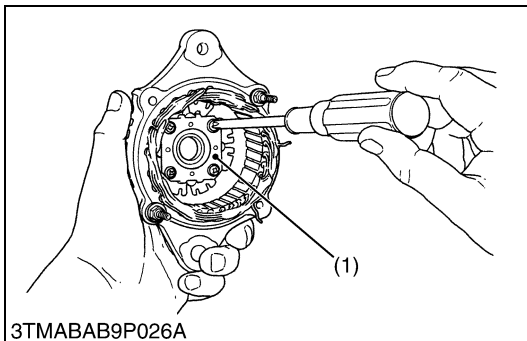
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Be very careful not to drop the rotor and damage the slip ring or fan, etc..

(1) Rotor  
(2) Block

(3) Drive End Frame

WSM000001ELS0029US0

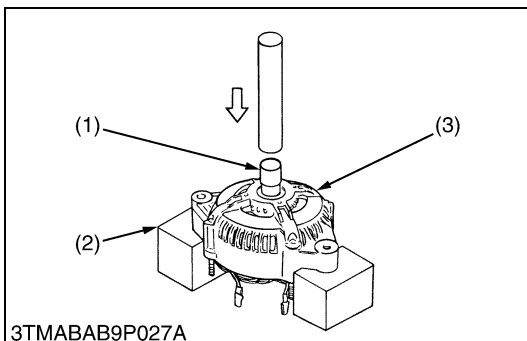


### Retainer Plate

1. Remove the four screws holding the retainer plate, and remove the retainer plate (1).

(1) Retainer Plate

WSM000001ELS0030US0



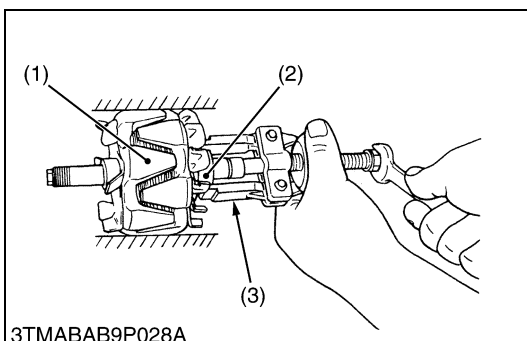
### Bearing on Drive End Side

1. Press out the bearing from drive end frame (3) with a press and jig (1).

(1) Jig  
(2) Block

(3) Drive End Frame

WSM000001ELS0031US0



### Bearing at Slip Ring Side

1. Lightly secure the rotor (1) with a vise to prevent damage, and remove the bearing (2) with a puller (3).

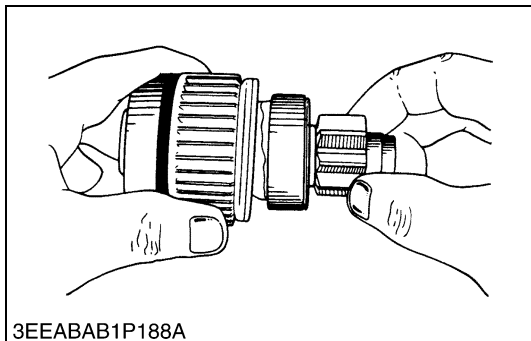
(1) Rotor  
(2) Bearing

(3) Puller

WSM000001ELS0032US0

### [3] SERVICING

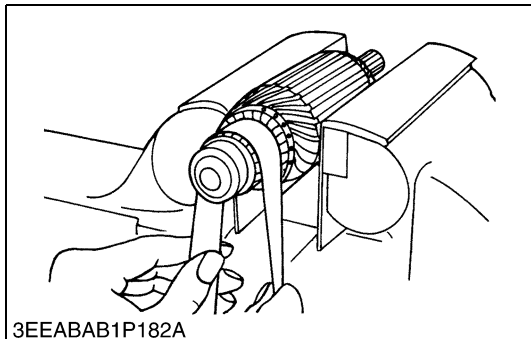
#### (1) Starter



#### Overrunning Clutch

1. Inspect the pinion for wear or damage.
2. If there is any problem, replace the overrunning clutch assembly.
3. Check that the pinion turns freely and smoothly in the overrunning direction and does not slip in the cranking direction.
4. If the pinion slips or does not rotate in the both directions, replace the overrunning clutch assembly.

WSM000001ELS0033US0



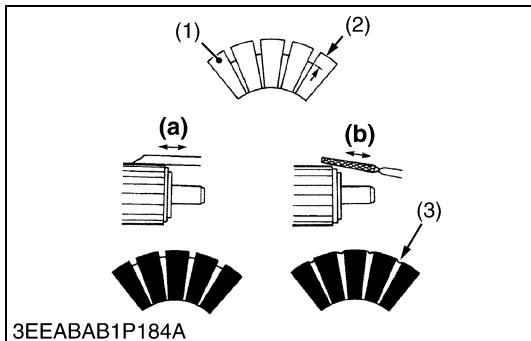
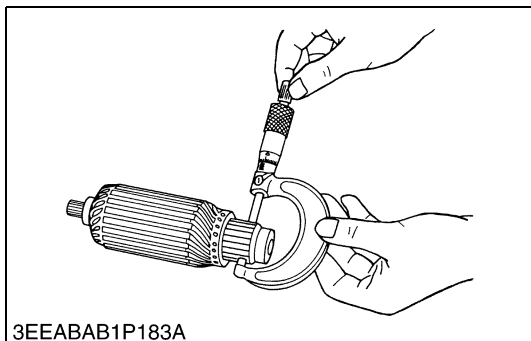
#### Commutator and Mica

1. Check the contact face of the commutator for wear, and grind the commutator with emery paper if it is slightly worn.
2. Measure the commutator O.D. with an outside micrometer at several points.
3. If the minimum O.D. is less than the allowable limit, replace the armature.
4. If the difference of the O.D.'s exceeds the allowable limit, correct the commutator on a lathe to the factory specification.
5. Measure the mica undercut.
6. If the undercut is less than the allowable limit, correct it with a saw blade and chamfer the segment edges.

Commutator O.D.	Factory specification	30.0 mm 1.181 in.
	Allowable limit	29.0 mm 1.142 in.

Difference of O.D.'s	Factory specification	Less than 0.02 mm 0.0008 in.
	Allowable limit	0.05 mm 0.0020 in.

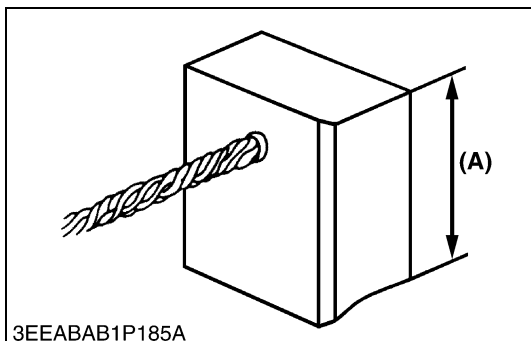
Mica undercut	Factory specification	0.50 to 0.80 mm 0.020 to 0.031 in.
	Allowable limit	0.2 mm 0.008 in.



- (1) Segment  
(2) Undercut  
(3) Mica

- (a) **Correct**  
(b) **Incorrect**

WSM000001ELS0034US0



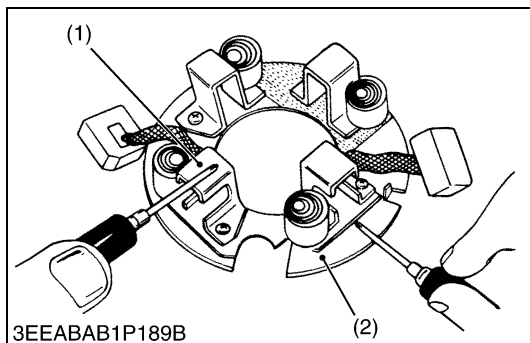
#### Brush Wear

1. If the contact face of the brush is dirty or dusty, clean it with emery paper.
2. Measure the brush length (A) with vernier calipers.
3. If the length is less than the allowable limit, replace the yoke assembly and brush holder.

Brush length (A)	Factory specification	14.0 mm 0.551 in.
	Allowable limit	9.0 mm 0.35 in.

9Y1210996ELS0047US0



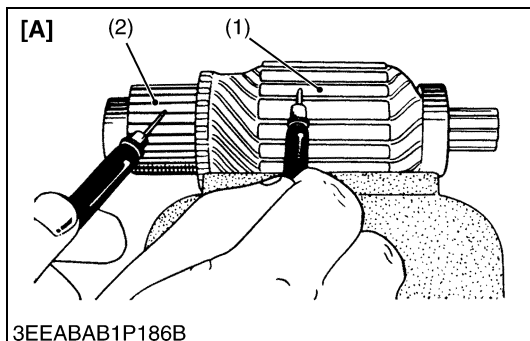


### Brush Holder

1. Check the continuity across the brush holder and the holder support with an ohmmeter.
2. If it conducts, replace the brush holder.

Resistance	Brush holder – Holder support	Infinity
------------	----------------------------------	----------

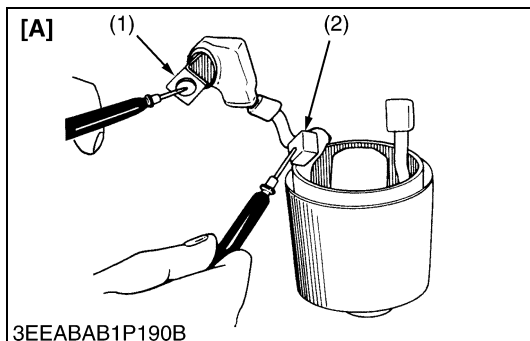
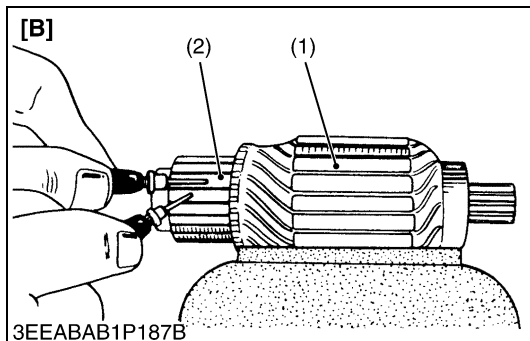
9Y1210996ELS0048US0



### Armature Coil

1. Check the continuity across the commutator and armature coil core with an ohmmeter. **[A]**
2. If it conducts, replace the armature.
3. Check the continuity across the segments of the commutator with an ohmmeter. **[B]**
4. If it does not conduct, replace the armature.

9Y1210996ELS0049US0



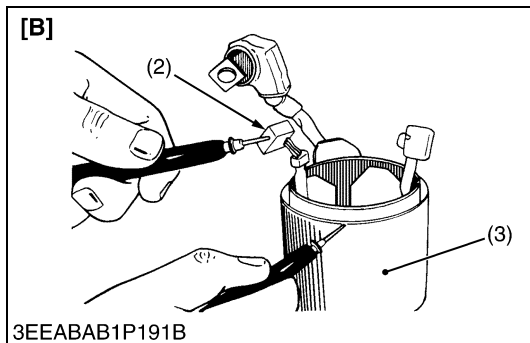
### Field Coil

1. Check the continuity across the lead (1) and brush (2) with an ohmmeter. **[A]**
2. If it does not conduct, replace the yoke assembly.
3. Check the continuity across the brush (2) and yoke (3) with an ohmmeter. **[B]**
4. If it conducts, replace the yoke assembly.

(1) Lead  
(2) Brush

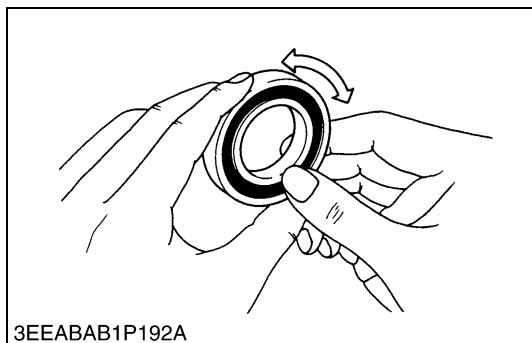
(3) Yoke

9Y1210996ELS0050US0





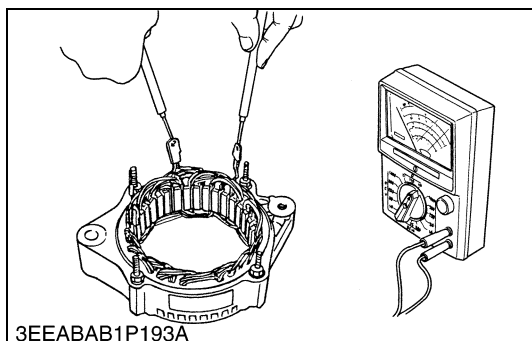
## (2) Alternator



### Bearing

1. Check the bearing for smooth rotation.
2. If it does not rotate smoothly, replace it.

WSM000001ELS0039US0

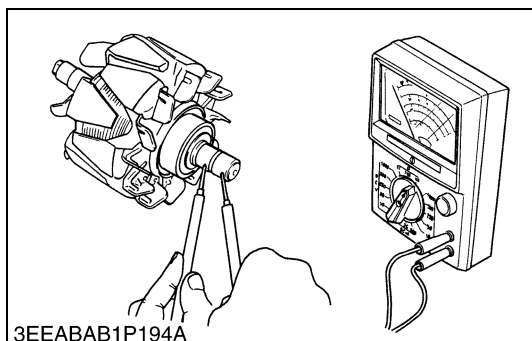


### Stator

1. Measure the resistance across each lead of the stator coil with an ohmmeter.
2. If the measurement is not within factory specification, replace it.
3. Check the continuity across each stator coil lead and core with an ohmmeter.
4. If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, replace it.

Resistance	Factory specification	Less than 1.0 $\Omega$
------------	-----------------------	------------------------

WSM000001ELS0040US0

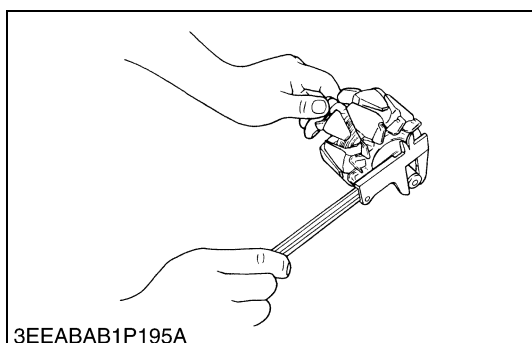


### Rotor

1. Measure the resistance across the slip rings with an ohmmeter.
2. If the resistance is not the factory specification, replace it.
3. Check the continuity across the slip ring and core with an ohmmeter.
4. If the measurement is not within the factory specifications, replace it.

Resistance	Factory specification	2.9 $\Omega$
------------	-----------------------	--------------

WSM000001ELS0041US0

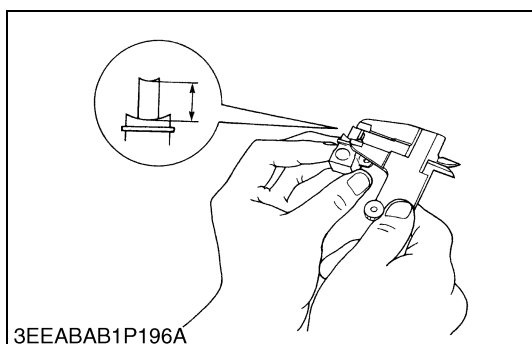


### Slip Ring

1. Check the slip ring for score.
2. If scored, correct with an emery paper or on a lathe.
3. Measure the O.D. of slip ring with vernier calipers.
4. If the measurement is less than the allowable limit, replace it.

Slip ring O.D.	Factory specification	14.4 mm 0.567 in.
	Allowable limit	14.0 mm 0.551 in.

WSM000001ELS0042US0

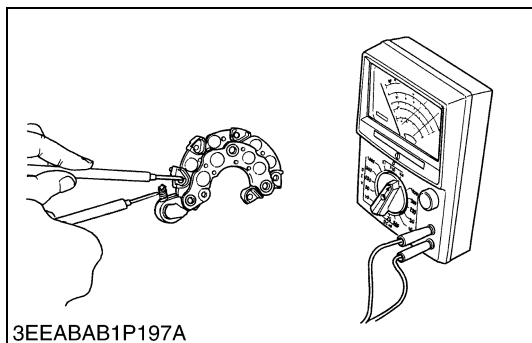


### Brush Wear

1. Measure the brush length with vernier calipers.
2. If the measurement is less than allowable limit, replace it.
3. Make sure that the brush moves smoothly.
4. If the brush is damaged, replace it.

Brush length	Factory specification	10.5 mm 0.413 in.
	Allowable limit	8.4 mm 0.331 in.

WSM000001ELS0043US0



### Rectifier

1. Check the continuity across each diode of rectifier with an analog ohmmeter. Conduct the test in the (R x 1) setting.
2. The rectifier is normal if the diode in the rectifier conducts in one direction and does not conduct in the reverse direction.

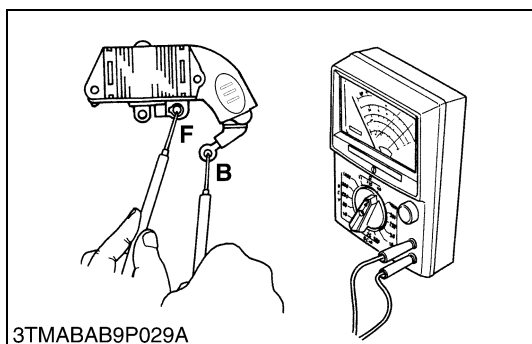
#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not use a 500 V megohmmeter for measuring because it will destroy the rectifier.

#### ■ NOTE

- Do not use an auto digital multimeter. Because it's very hard to check the continuity of rectifier by using it.

WSM000001ELS0044US0



### IC Regulator

1. Check the continuity across the **B** terminal and the **F** terminal of IC regulator with an analog ohmmeter. Conduct the test in the (R x 1) setting.
2. The IC regulator is normal if the IC regulator conducts in one direction and does not conduct in the reverse direction.

#### ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not use a 500 V megohmmeter for measuring because it will destroy the IC regulator.

#### ■ NOTE

- Do not use an auto digital multimeter. Because it is very hard to check the continuity of IC regulator by using it.

WSM000001ELS0045US0

---

**EDITOR:**

KUBOTA FARM & INDUSTRIAL MACHINERY SERVICE, LTD.

64, ISHIZU-KITAMACHI, SAKAI-KU, SAKAI-CITY, OSAKA, 590-0823, JAPAN

PHONE : (81)72-241-1129

FAX : (81)72-245-2484

E-mail : ks\_g.ksos-pub@kubota.com

---